IDP STATUS QUO ANALYSIS REPORT

2027/28

DRAFT

Table of content

(i)List of Acronyms 31

Chapter One: Introduction 37

1.1 Analysis Phase 37

1.2 The Outputs of the Analysis Phase: 37

1.3 Status Quo Analysis per KPA 38

CHAPTER Two: Spatial Planning and Land Use Analysis 39

2. SPATIAL RATIONALE 39

2.1 Strategic Location of Polokwane City 39

2.1.1 Map of Limpopo Province (Polokwane Strategic Location) 40

2.1.2 The Main 7 Clusters of settlements in Polokwane 41

2.1.3 Polokwane Cluster Map Reflecting Location of 45 Wards 41

2.1.4 Description of the 7 Municipal Clusters of settlements 42

2.1.5 Profile of the City of Polokwane 42

2.2 HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT 43

2.2.1 1st ORDER SETTLEMENTS (PROVINCIAL GROWTH POINTS) 43

2.2.2 2nd ORDER SETTLEMENTS (DISTRICT GROWTH POINTS) 44

2.2.3 3rd ORDER SETTLEMENTS (POPULATION CONCENTRACTION POINTS) 44

2.2.4 4th ORDER SETTLEMENTS (LOCAL SERVICE POINTS) 44

2.2.5 National and International legislative guides and programme 45

2.3 SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT TOOLS/LUMS 45

2.3.1 Polokwane Municipal Planning Bylaw,2017 (as amended 2025) and Polokwane Integrated Land Use Scheme, 2022 45

2.3.2 Proclamation R293 of 1962 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927) 46

2.3.3. Proclamation R188 of 1969 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927) 46

2.3.4 Local Government Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000. 46

2.3.5 Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 47

2.3.6 SPLUMA implementation Progress 49

2.4 Land Use Scheme (LUS) 50

2.5. MUNICIPAL PLANNING BY-LAW 2017(as amended 2025) 50

2.6. POLOKWANE URBAN RENEWAL STRATEGY (URS) AND CBD DEVELOPMENT PLAN, 2016 50

2.7. GROWTH POINT ANALYSIS 51

2.8. MUNICIPAL LAND ANALYSES 54

2.9. LAND CLAIMS ANALYSIS 54

DRAFT

2.10. LAND AVAILABILITY ANALYSIS 55
2.11. LAND INVASIONS COURT ORDERS 56
2.12. SPATIAL CHALLENGES AND INTERVENTIONS PLANNED 57
2.12.1 General challenges and Intervention Planned 59
2.13. SPATIAL INTERPRETATION OF THE POLOKWANE MUNICIPALITY 61
2.13.1 Key guiding policies and municipal By-laws 61
2.13.2 Economic opportunities and growth 61
2.14. RURAL DEVELOPMENT 62
2.14.1 Molepo Mall Development 63
2.14.2 Moletjie Mall development 64
2.15. URBAN DEVELOPMENT 68
2.15.1 Integrated Urban Development Framework Plan 68
2.16 ECONOMIC SPIN-OFF DEVELOPMENTS 69
2.16.1 Baobab Gardens Motor City 69
2.16.2 The Greenery 70
2.16.3 Aerial Overview for Greenery 71
2.16.4 Limpopo Provincial Theatre Construction 71
2.16.5 Boost for Limpopo Economy 72
2.17 Urban Renewal projects 72
2.17.1 Cargo and Logistic Hub 73
2.17.2 Truck-inn and Cargo HUB (Polokwane extension 136) 74
2.17.3 Agro-Processing. 74
2.17.4 Industrial Development 75
2.17.5 City wide Development initiatives 76
2.17.6 Commercialisation of Municipal Facilities/Properties 77
2.18 Metropolitan Municipal Requirements 77
2.18.1 ROAD MAP TO METRO 79
2.19 Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital 80
2.19.1 R4-billion New Limpopo Central Hospital 81
2.19.2 Ministerial Visit to the New Limpopo Central Hospital 81
2.20. IDENTIFICATION OF LAND FOR STUDENT ACCOMMODATION 81
2.21. Strategic Land for Mixed Land Use 82
2.21.1 Legislative and policy frameworks 82
2.22 Catalytic Land Development Programme in support of the CEF. 83

DRAFT

2.22.1 Science and Research Park 84
2.22.2 Bakoni Malapa Arts and Cultural Hub 84
2.22.3 Industrial Park or SEZ N1 North Corridor 84
2.22.4 Agro processing 85
2.22.5 Transit Oriented Development (TOD) precinct 85
2.22.6 International Softball stadium 85
2.22.7 Fencing of Softball Stadium 85
2.22.8 Post incubation Hub 86
2.22.9 Eco-Estate at Game reserve 86
2.23 Overall Progress Report on Catalytic Land Development Programme. 86
2.24 Progress Report on key Catalytic Projects 90
2.25 implementation of Circular 88 Progress Report 91
2.26 Intergovernmental Planning 92
2.26.1 Intergovernmental Projects in progress 92
2.26.2 Pilot Projects for Inter-Governmental Planning 92
2.27 IUDF Implementation to Date 93
2.27.1 Capital Expenditure Frameworks (CEF) Modules Progress Status Quo. 93
2.28 IUDG Process Roadmap followed. 94
2.28.1 CEF Success and Challenges 94
2.28.2 Impact of the adjustments budget on CEF priority projects 95
2.29 Challenges experienced in endeavour to seek integration and collaboration. 95
2.30 Approved Land for New Leases 95
2.31 Sales of sites –City Planning and Properties 96
2.31.1 Ivy park Psychiatric Hospital 96
2.31.2 New TUT Campus 97
2.31.3 NETCARE AKESO Psychiatric Hospital 98
2.31.4 Student Tenements on ERF 7339 Bendor Extension 86 99
2.31.5 Student Accommodation at Portion 67 of Syferkuil 921 ls 100
2.31.6 Collaboration with the Private Sector Developments 100
2.33 Green Arch Precinct 100
2.33.1 Green Arch Precinct Designs 100
2.33.2 Green Arch Precinct Construction Started - Hilton-hotel 101
2.33.3 Construction Hilton-hotel 103
2.34 CORPORATE GEO-INFORMATICS 105

DRAFT

2.34.1. Intergraded GIS System 106
2.34.2 Modules that form part of the integrated GIS System 108
2.35 Online AFLA System 108
2.35.1 Going from Inline to Online 109
2.36 Modules launched for the public to submit applications online 109
2.36.1 Building Plans Management System 109
2.36.2 Town Planning Management System 109
2.36.3 Cemetery Management System 109
2.37 Benefits of lodging land development applications on the AFLA portal 109
2.37.1 Convenience and Transparency 109
2.37.2 Cost Savings, Reduced Processing Times and Improved Communication 110
2.37.3 Enhance Data Management and Improved Decision Making 110
2.38 Challenges and Intervention of GIS 110
2.39 Successes of Corporate Geo-Informatics SBU 112
2.39.1 Role of GIS in the City of Polokwane 113
2.40 Special Achievement in GIS Award 113
2.41 Economic Development and Tourism 115
2.41.1 Introduction 115
2.41.2 Local Economic Development (LED) strategy 115
2.41.3 Highlights of the Local Economic Development Strategy: 115
2.41.4 Local Skills Base on LED 116
2.42 Status Quo of Programs and Projects of Economic Development 117
2.42.1 Investment Promotion and Tourism 117
2.42.2 Types of Tourism industries found in Polokwane 117
2.43 Strategies used to promote Polokwane Municipality 118
2.43.1 Polokwane Visitor Information Centre (VIC) 118
2.43.2 Stakeholder relations 119
2.43.3 Tourism Development 119
2.44 Marketing 119
2.45 ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT 120
2.45.1 Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre 120
2.45.2 INCUBATION PROGRAMME AND ITS BENEFITS 121
2.45.3 ELIGIBLE CRITERIA AND ENTRY REQUIREMENTS: 121
2.45.4 ITSOSENG ENTREPRENEURAL CENTRE 122

DRAFT

2.46 BUSINESS SUPPORT CENTRES 122
2.46.1Mankweng University gate 1 Centre 123
2.46.2 Mankweng hospital gate Centre 123
2.46.3 Limpopo Cooks Centre. 123
2.46.4 Knobel Business center 123
2.46.5 Aganang Business center 123
2.47 Business Compliance and Regulation 123
2.48 Interventions for the development of informal trade in Polokwane. 124
2.48.1 Management of Street Trading Permits 124
2.48.2 Developmental Support Through Training and Workshops: 124
2.48.3 Trading opportunities during events hosted by the Municipality 125
2.48.4 Trading Stalls next to the Taxi Rank constructed by the Municipality 125
2.49 Future Plans for LED unit: 125
2.49.1 Infrastructure Development through NDPG Project 125
2.49.2 Implementation of the Limpopo Business Registration Act (LIBRA), 05 of 2003 125
2.49.3 Economic Research and Development: 126
2.49.4 ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT 126
2.50 Building Inspection 126
2.50.1 LEGISLATION AND POLICY PERSPECTIVE 126
2.50.2 Services provided by Council's Building Inspections 127
2.50.3 Building Inspection Key challenges and Interventions 127
2.50.4 Report on the Major Developments Building Plans 127
2.51 PROPERTY MANAGEMENT 128
2.51.1 The Core Function of the Unit 128
2.51.2 Achievements 128
2.51.3 Challenges for property Management 129
CHAPTER Three: Housing and Human Settlements Analysis 130
3.1 HUMAN SETTLEMENT STATUS QUO 130
3.1.1Signing of the Level 2 Housing Implementation Accreditation Protocol 131
3.2 Human Settlements and Housing Projects 132
3.2.1 Human Settlement Plan 132
3.2.2 Housing Demand 132
3.2.3 Level 2 Housing Accreditation 133
3.2.4 Upgrade of informal settlements 134

DRAFT

3.2.5 Servicing and allocation of residential sites 135
3.2.6 Military Veterans Housing Programme 135
3.2.7 Tenure Upgrading 135
3.2.8 Title Deeds Backlog 135
3.2.9 Eradication of Asbestos roofing 137
3.2.10 Priority Human Settlement and Housing Development Areas (PHSHDAs). 137
3.3 Housing Challenges 139
3.4 Opportunities to Mitigate Challenges 142
3.4.1Medium term opportunities for housing delivery 142
3.4.2 Long Term Opportunities for Housing Delivery 144
3.5The Freedom Charter / Breaking New Grounds 144
3.6 Housing Unit Achievements / Success To date 144
3.7 RDP Housing Construction Within the City of Polokwane 145
3.7.1 Urban Households in Polokwane Ext. 133 Phase 3 145
3.7.2 Seshego Extension 133 RDP Houses Phase 1 146
3.7.3 Ceres Village RDP Construction (Aganang Cluster) 147
Municipal Housing Entity (PHA) 148
3.8 Polokwane Housing Association (PHA) 148
3.8.1 Garena Phase 1 Rental Village in Ladanna 148
3.8.2 Seshego CRU 149
3.8.3 Annadale Extension 2 150
3.8.4 Completed Annadale Extension 2 Ready for tenanting 151
3.8.5 Elevated Tank at Annadale Ext 2 154
3.9 PHA Upcoming Projects and Year of Implementation 155
3.10 Designs for the Upcoming PHA key Projects 156
3.10.1 Phase 1-4 Student Accommodation Designs 156
3.10.2 Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing Designs 156
3.11 Land parcels earmarked for Development of New Projects 156
3.12 Proposed Development Options 157
3.13 PHA Key Success over the past 5 years 159
3.14 Annadale Extension 2 at Ladanna 159
3.15 PHA Maintenance Projects 161
CHAPTER Four – Economic Analysis 163
4.1 Statistical overview: Polokwane Local Municipality 163

DRAFT

4.1.2 Total population 164
4.1.3Population projections 165
4.1.4 Population by population group, gender and age 167
4.1.5 Population pyramids 169
4.1.6 Number of households by population group 170
4.2 HIV+ and AIDS estimates 173
4.3Economy 175
4.3.1Gross domestic product by region (GDP-R) 175
4.3.2 Economic growth forecast 177
4.3.3 Gross value added by region (GVA-R) 178
4.4 Historical economic growth 180
4.4.1Primary sector 181
4.4.2 Secondary sector 182
4.4.3 Tertiary sector 182
4.5 Sector growth forecast 183
4.6 Tress index 184
4.7 Location quotient 185
4.9 Labour 186
4.9.1Economically active population (EAP) 189
4.9.2 Labour force participation rate 190
4.10 Total employment 192
4.10.1Formal and Informal employment 194
4.10.2 Unemployment 196
4.11 Income and expenditure 199
4.11.1 Number of households by income category 199
4.11.2Annual total personal income 200
4.11.3 Annual per capita income 202
4.12 Index of buying power 203
4.12.1 Human Development Index (HDI) 204
4.12.2 Gini coefficient 206
4.13 Poverty 208
4.14 Education 210
4.14.1 Functional literacy 213
4.15 Population density 215

DRAFT

4.16 Crime 217
4.16.1 Composite crime index 217
4.16.2 Overall crime index 218
4.17 Tourism 219
4.17.1Origin of tourists 221
4.17.2 Bed nights by origin of tourist 222
4.17.3 Tourism spending 223
4.17.4 Tourism spend per resident capita 224
4.17.5Tourism spend as a share of GDP 225
4.18 International trade 226
4.18.1 Relative importance of international trade 226
CHAPTER Five: Water and Sanitation Analysis 229
5.1 Water and Sanitation Directorate Overview 229
5.1.1 Water Provision 230
5.1.2 Reliability of Water Supply in Polokwane 230
5.1.3 Water Provision – Short Term Interventions 230
5.1.4 Water Provision – Long Term Interventions 232
5.2 Powers and Function of Polokwane Municipality 232
5.3. WATER 233
5.3.1 Principles of Water Service Provision 233
5.3.2 16 Regional Water Schemes (RWS) 233
5.3.3 Water Scheme Sources 234
5.3.4 Water Provision Progress 236
5.3.5 Lepelle Northern Water supplied Schemes. 257
5.3.6 Polokwane Water Supply 257
5.3.7 Technical report approval 258
5.3.8. Impact of limited funding (Water Projects) 258
5.3.9 Free Basic Water 259
5.3.10 Water Quality 261
5.3.11 Blue Drop Score 2023 262
5.3.12 Surface water quality test results 263
5.3.13. Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing water 264
5.3.14. Water Supply to schools 265
5.4. SANITATION 265

DRAFT

5.4.1 Sanitation Provision 265
5.4.2 VIP Sanitation Programs in Rural Areas 266
5.4.3 Moletjie Cluster Rural VIP Sanitation Project 267
5.4.4 Aganang Cluster Rural VIP Sanitation Project 268
5.4.5 Refurbishment of Mankweng Wastewater Treatment Works (WWTW) 268
5.4.6 Green Drop Audit. 269
5.4.7 Sanitation Provision - (Medium- & Long-Term Solutions) 271
5.4.8. Free Basic Sanitation 272
5.4.9. Wastewater Treatment Plants 272
5.4.10. Impact of reduction in RBIG funding (Sanitation Projects) 272
5.4.11 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Sanitation 273
5.4.12 Sanitation in Schools 273
5.4.13 Rural Household Sanitation 274
5.5. BACKLOG OF BASIC SERVICES 275
5.5.1 Regional Water Scheme (RWS) –Demand and Shortfall 275
5.6. SMART METERING 276
5.7 New Pre-Paid Water Meters 277
5.9. AC Pipes Replacement 278
5.9.1 Challenges -AC Pipes Replacement 279
5.9.2 Phase 2 – AC Pipes Replacement 279
5.9.3 Remaining extent of AC Pipes Replacement per cluster 279
5.10 Construction of Borehole Infrastructure for Sandriver North Wellfield 280
5.11 Water Losses 280
5.11.1 Causes of Water losses 280
5.11.2 Water losses Mitigation Strategy 281
5.11.3 Longer term plan to address Water losses. 281
5.11.4 Progress in addressing water Provision Backlogs 282
5.11.5 Planned water expenditure towards new infrastructure 282
5.12 Strategic issues facing municipal water business (Water resilience) 282
5.12.1 Water Resource Security 282
5.12.2 Polokwane City Water Supply 283
5.12.3 Quality of Polokwane Drinking water: (Compliance with SANS 241) 283
5.12.4 Network Management 283
5.12.5 Wastewater Treatment 283

DRAFT

5.12.6 Water Resilience Summary Risk Assessment 284
5.12.7 HR for Water and Sanitation Directorate (Professional Engineers) 284
5.13 Smart Meters 286
5.13.1 Smart Meters Support and Enquiries 286
5.13.2 Turnaround Time when attending Complains. 286
5.14 WATER TANKERS 287
5.14.1 Municipal Water Tankers Fleet 288
5.15 Municipal Boreholes Status Quo 288
5.15.1 City of Polokwane Boreholes Status Quo Report 288
5.16 Pump Station Status Quo 289
5.16.1 SUMMARY OF MUNICIPAL PUMP STATION STATUS QUO IN ALL CLUSTERS 289
5.16.2 Names of the Pump Stations and Status Quo 289
5.17 CHALLENGES WATER SERVICES 290
5.18 Interventions to solve the Challenges. 290
5.18.1 WHY REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT PLANT 291
5.18.2 New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant 292
5.18.3 Regional wastewater treatment plant phase 2B 294
5.18.4 Outfall Sewers Phase 1A 295
5.18.5Construction of the Sand River North Water Treatment Works. 296
5.19 Polokwane Water Utility - Metro Vision 296
5.19.1 KEY WATER INFRASTRUCTURE 297
5.19.2 Recommendations for Polokwane Water Utility 298
5.19.3 SAVE Water Campaign 298
5.19.4 Sebayeng/Dikgale Regional Water Supply (RWS) Phase 10 298
5.19.5 Kalkspruit/Mangongoa Water Supply Project 299
5.20 Water Supply Challenges at Seshego and City Cluster 300
5.20.1 Background on water scarcity in Polokwane 300
5.20.2 Olifantspoort Water Scheme (LNW) 301
5.20.3 Ebenezer Water Scheme (LNW) 301
5.20.4 Dap Naude Dam 301
5.21 Polokwane boreholes 302
5.21.1 Sand River North Boreholes 302
5.21.2 Sand River South Boreholes 302
5.21.3 Sterkloop Boreholes supply 302

DRAFT

5.21.4 New Seshego WTP 302
5.21.5 Luthuli Boreholes 302
5.21.6 Bloodriver Boreholes 302
5.21.7 Seshego Boreholes 302
5.22 Polokwane High Lying Area Water Shortage Challenges 303
5.22.1 The Main Causes of Water shortages 304
5.22.2 Other Challenges affecting supply includes: 304
5.23 Interventions in place to address Water Shortage Challenges 305
5.23.1 Medium Term interventions 305
5.23.2 Long Term interventions 305
5.24 Sebayeng /Dikgale RWS Water Project at Ward 31 306
5.25. Fine for using Municipal Water for Garden irrigation and washing Paving 307
5.26 Save Water Campaign - Use a Bucket for Car wash 307
5.27 Provision of Water Through Regional Water Schemes Across the City of Polokwane Municipality 308
5.27.1 Aganang RWS (3) (Mars) 308
5.27.2 Bakone RWS (2) (GA-Phoffu) 309
5.27.3 Bakone RWS (2) (Ga Ntlolane) 310
5.27.4 Sandriver North WTW, Sandriver north Well fields and Sandriver south well fields, Bloodriver wellfields 311
5.27.5 Mothapo RWS Phase 16 312
5.27.6 Segwasi RWS Phase 6 312
5.27.7 Molepo RWS (Molelemane phase 12B) 313
5.27.8 Boyne RWS Phase 13 314
5.27.9 Olifantspoort RWS (Mmotong wa Perekisi) Phase 13 315
5.27.10 Badimong RWS - Drilling of boreholes 316
5.27.11 Aganang RWS (3) (Rapitsi and Kgabo Park Water Pump) (Ward 45) 317
5.27.12 Aganang RWS (3) (Kgabo Park Water Pipeline 318
5.27.13 Seshego Water Purification Plant 319
5.27.14 Lonsdale Water Project under ward 45 320
CHAPTER Six: Energy Services Analysis 321
6.1. ENERGY SERVICES 321
6.1.1 Electricity License Area (License Owner) 321
6.1.2 Public lights 321

DRAFT

6.1.2 Access to electricity 324
6.1.3 Completed Project - Supply and installation of electrical network in Seshego Zone 8 Extension 133, phase 4 325
6.1.4 Energy Master Plan 326
6.1.5 Free Basic Electricity 327
6.1.6 Free Basic Alternative Energy (solar home system) 328
6.2 Solar Water Geysers 328
6.2.3 Solar water geysers Challenges 328
6.3 Major Projects, Challenges/Achievements by the Municipality to provide Energy. 328
6.4 BACKLOG OF ENERGY SERVICES 329
6.4.1 Rural Areas Electrification 329
6.4.2 Polokwane/Seshego Urban Complex Technical Assessment 329
6.5 Electricity Losses 330
6.5.1 Causes of electricity losses 331
6.5.2 Longer Term plan to address Electricity losses (distribution and revenue) 331
6.5.3 Electricity Losses (Key Findings) 332
6.5.4 Progress in addressing backlogs in basic services (Electrification) 332
6.6 New infrastructure Planned 333
6.6.1 Power Bank and Solar Farm Projects 333
6.6.2 Planned expenditure towards (new infrastructure, operations; maintenance and planning) 334
6.6.3 Maintenance Plan for Electrical infrastructure 334
6.7 Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane) 334
6.7.1 Approved Townships List that Require Electrification 335
6.7.2 Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years) 341
6.8 Electricity Master Plan 344
6.9 Future Township Developments 345
6.9.1 Energy Services Challenges 347
6.9.2 Financial Impact 348
6.9.3 Capacity availability in identified Townships 348
6.10 The Electrification Acceleration Process 348
6.10.1 Rural Electrification Backlog 349
6.10.2 Challenges of Rural Electrification 349
6.11 Installation of High Mast Lights in rural areas 349

DRAFT

6.11.1 Challenges of High Mast lights 349
6.11.2 High Mast Lights Recommendations 349
6.12 Streetlights 350
6.13 Fine for illegal Connections of Electricity 350
6.14 Streetlights Repairs in the City CBD 350
CHAPTER Seven: Environmental and Social Analysis 351
7.1. ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS 351
7.1.1 Climate Description 351
7.1.2 Pollution Levels - Air Quality 351
7.1.3 Topography 352
7.1.4 Geology 352
7.1.5 Hydrology 352
7.1.6 Vegetation 353
7.1.7 Soils 353
7.1.8 Heritage Resources 353
7.1.9 Polokwane Game Reserve 354
7.1.10 Polokwane Frog Colony 355
7.1.11 Moletjie Nature Reserve 356
7.1.12 Biodiversity Summary for the City of Polokwane 358
7.1.13 Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004 358
7.1.14 Biodiversity By-Laws for the City of Polokwane 359
7.1.15 Euphorbia Clivicola 359
7.1.16 Euphorbia groenewaldii 359
7.2. CLIMATE CHANGE AND GLOBAL WARMING 359
7.2.1 Climate Change Response Strategies 360
7.2.2 Climate Change Response Plan 362
7.2.3 Ways to reduce Climate Change 362
7.2.4 Plans to address Climate change in South Africa 362
7.2.5 Impact of Cities on Climate Change 363
7.2.6 City of Polokwane Climate Change Response Strategy 364
7.2.7 Environmental Challenges 364
7.2.8 Major Environmental Achievements 365
7.2.9 Provincial Intervention for Environmental Management – LEDET 365
7.2.10 DFFE Interventions for Greening 366

DRAFT

7.2.11 Approved Capital Projects 366
7.2.12 Construction of ablution facilities at Mankweng Zone 1 Park 367
7.2.13 Upgrading of Triangle Park 369
7.2.14 Upgrading of Tom Naude Park 369
7.2.15 Refurbishment of Chalets at Municipal Game Reserve 371
7.2.16 Polokwane Environmental Forum 372
7.2.17 Capricorn District Environmental Management Forum(CDEMF) 372
7.2.18 Arbor Day Celebration and Greening Programme 372
7.3 Maintenance of Parks and Open Spaces (48 x Municipal Parks) 374
7.3.1. LISTS OF THE MUNICIPAL PARKS 374
7.3.2 Maintenance of Parks through Grass cutting 375
7.3.3 Gardening and Flowers Maintenance 376
7.3.4 Grass Cutting Teams 376
7.3.5 AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme 376
7.3.6 Availability of Alien Invasive Species Eradication Plan 378
7.4. National Arbor City Competition 378
7.5. AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT 378
7.5.1 Air Quality Management Plan developed and adopted/approved by Council 378
7.5.2 Submission of AQO Annual Report & report on implementation of Air Quality Management Plan 379
7.5.3 Developed an Air Quality By-Laws 380
7.5.4 Air quality monitoring stations and monitoring of ambient air quality pollutants 380
7.5.5 Designation of Air Quality Management Officer 381
7.6 ENVIRONMENTAL GOVERNANCE AND CROSS CUTTING ISSUES 382
7.6.1 Municipal Projects consider EIA 382
7.6.2 Municipal commenting on EIA as Affected and Interested Parties 382
7.6.3 Environmental Outlook 383
7.6.4 Environmental Management Framework (EMF)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) 383
7.6.5 Environmental advocacy/ empowerment/ education and awareness 384
7.6.6 Availability of an organizational structure supporting environmental functions 384
7.6.7 Allocation and availability of budgets for staffing of environmental unit, environmental advocacy, EMF, SEA and EIA 384
7.7. ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH 384
7.7.1 Food and Water Samples 385

DRAFT

7.7.2 Noise Level Meter 386
7.7.3 THE ROLES OF HEALTH SERVICES SBU IN THE MUNICIPALITY 388
7.7.4 Scope of Practice of Environmental Health Practitioners: 388
7.7.5 Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement by EMIs 392
7.7.6 Allocation and availability of Air Quality Management related work budget 393
7.8 WASTE MANAGEMENT 393
7.8.1 Waste Management Services Municipal Wide 393
7.8.2 Vision and Mission-Waste SBU 393
7.8.3 Core Functions of Waste SBU 393
7.8.4 Personnel of Waste SBU 394
7.8.5 Types of Equipment Required 394
7.8.6 Service Level Standards: Operations 395
7.8.7 Weekly Waste Collection Service 395
7.8.8 Waste Facilities (Landfill sites and Transfer Stations) 395
7.8.9 Rural Skips Distribution Summary 396
7.8.10 Current Waste Management Projects 396
7.8.11 Contracted Services under Waste Management 396
7.8.12 IMPLEMENTATION OF BY-LAW 397
7.9 Challenges for cleanliness of the City 397
7.9.1 Designation of Waste Management Officer 397
7.9.2 South African Waste Information System (SAWIS) reporting 397
7.10. Designation of Waste Management Officer 398
7.10.1 Waste Management Service 399
7.10.2 Aganang Clusters Waste Removal Services 399
7.11 New Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP) 2025-2030 400
7.11.1 Polokwane New IWMP was endorsed by MEC of LEDET 401
7.11.2 Recycling and Recovery of Waste 401
7.11.3 Refuse Removal Trends 402
7.11.4 Licensed Landfill Sites 403
7.11.5 Waste Management Challenges 403
7.11.6 Waste Management Status Quo 405
7.11.7 Waste Collection in Rural Areas 406
7.12 Waste Management Services Status Quo 406
7.12.1 Status Quo on Rendered Services 406

DRAFT

7.12.2 Rural Waste Transfer Stations and landfill sites status quo 408
7.12.3 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Maja/Chuene/Molepo Cluster) 409
7.12.4 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Moletjie and Aganang clusters) 409
7.12.5 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Mankweng and Sebayeng/Dikgale clusters) 410
7.12.6 Rural Villages with Communal Waste Collection Service Once a Week 411
7.12.7 Plan to improve Cleanliness of the City CBD 415
7.12.8 Waste Management Challenges and Intervention 415
7.12.9 Management of illegal Dumping in the City, Seshego and Westenburg 416
7.12.10 General Method of Dealing with Illegal Dumping 419
7.12.11 Challenges in addressing illegal dumping problem. 419
7.12.12 Progress Report on Waste Management Capital Projects 420
7.12.13 Square Concrete Street Bins Purchased for the City CBD 421
7.12.14 240L Bins Purchased 421
7.12.15 Completed Seshego Transfer Station 422
7.12.16 Construction of perimeter fence completed at Extension of weltevreden landfill site 423
7.12.17 Completed Westenburg Transfer Station 424
7.12.18 Skip Bins Procured by Council 425
7.13 By-Law Enforcement & Security 426
7.13.1 SBU challenges and intervention 427
7.13.2 CCTV Camera Installation 427
7.14. Safer City Concept 428
7.14.1 Safer Schools Campaigns 429
7.15 DISASTER MANAGEMENT AND FIRE SERVICES 430
7.15.1 Fire Services Status Quo 430
7.15.2 Polokwane Fire Stations 430
7.15.3. Challenges of Fires Services Unit 431
7.15.4. Achievements 431
7.16 Fire Services statistics 431
7.17 STATUS QUO FOR DISASTER MANAGEMENT SUBUNIT 432
7.17.1 Challenges of Disaster management 433
7.17.2 Achievements of Disaster management 433
7.17.3 Joint awareness Session 434
7.17.4 Total number of incidents attended to 434
7.17.5 Municipal Disaster Management Advisory Forum Meeting 435

DRAFT

7.17.6 Two New Fire Trucks Procured and Delivered (Red fleet) 436
7.18 TRAFFIC AND LICENSES ANALYSIS 436
7.18.1 Traffic and licenses services 436
7.18.2 Roles and responsibilities: Traffic and Licenses 437
7.18.3 City of Polokwane Traffic Fleet 438
7.18.4 New Traffic Vehicles Procured and Delivered 438
7.18.5 City of Polokwane Main Traffic Department at Ladanna 440
7.18.6 Upgrading of Mankweng Traffic and licensing Centre 441
7.18.7 Revenue Enhancement Streams 444
7.18.8 Basic Service Delivery Projects (BSD) 445
7.19 Licensing Services: 446
7.19.1. Licensing Transactions Over a period of 12 months (2025/2026) 446
7.19.2 Polokwane Road Accidents Statistics 448
7.19.3 Traffic and Licences Challenges: 448
7.19.4 Measures to address Challenges: 448
7.20 SPORT AND RECREATION ANALYSIS 449
7.20.1 Municipal Swimming Pool at CBD 450
7.20.2 Nirvana Swimming Pool Re-opened to the Public (Ward 19) 451
7.20.3 New Peter Mokaba Stadium 453
7.20.5 Two Premier Soccer League Teams Hosted at the new and old Peter Mokaba Stadium 455
7.20.6 Horticultural Services 455
7.20.7 Sport and Recreational Facilities 455
7.21 New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane 456
7.21.1 Profile information on New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane 456
7.21.2 Softball Stadium Concept Designs 458
7.21.3 Fencing of Softball Stadium Progress 459
7.21.4 Construction of EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium 459
7.21.6 EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium Completed 460
7.21.7 Aerial Overview of EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium 461
7.21.8 Construction of Mankweng Stadium 462
7.21.9 Laastehoop Sports Complex (Finalization) 463
7.22 Sports Ground Grading Status Quo 465
7.22.1 Matena Football Club Sport filed Grading (Ward 45, Aganang Cluster) 465
7.22.2 Sports Field Grading Program 465

DRAFT

7.22.3 Tennis Court Renovations 467
7.22.4 Upgrading of Seshego Stadium Completed 468
7.22.5 Grand stand for Seshego Stadium Renovated 470
7.22.6 Overview of Newly Upgraded Seshego Stadium Hosting PSL Games 471
7.22.7 Mayoral Charity Golf Cup 471
7.22.8 Polokwane City Marathon 472
7.23 CULTURAL SERVICES 473
7.23.1Cultural Services 473
7.24 Libraries 473
7.24.1 Challenges and Interventions for Libraries 473
7.24.2 Purchase of New Library Books 477
7.25 Museums 479
7.25.1 Objectives of the Museum 479
7.25.2 Museums located within the City 479
7.25.3 Irish House Museum 480
7.25.4 Hugh Exton Photographic Museum 481
7.25.5 Polokwane Art Museum 481
7.25.6 Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum 482
7.26 Heritage Sites 483
7.26.1 Eersteling Monument 484
7.26.2 Concentration Camp heritage site 484
7.27 Other heritage sites that have been identified 485
7.27.1 Moletjie Rock Art Shelter 485
7.27.2 Challenges for museums Unit 487
7.28 Cultural Desk 487
7.28.1 Key programs within the Cultural Desk Subsection 487
7.28.2 Cultural Desk Challenges 489
CHAPTER Eight - Good Governance and Public Participation Analysis 490
8.1 Performance Management System (PMS) 490
8.1.1 THE LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK FOR PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT 490
8.1.2 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE MANUAL 491
8.1.3 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS 491
8.1.4 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT AND MEASURES AT VARIOUS LEVELS 492
8.2 ORGANISATIONAL PERFORMANCE 492

DRAFT

8.3 INDIVIDUAL PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT OF SENIOR MANAGERS 492
8.3.1 PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENTS AND EVALUATION OF SENIOR MANAGERS 492
8.3.2 THE PROCESS OF MANAGING PERFORMANCE 493
8.4 Alignment of the IDP, Budget and SDBIP 493
8.5 Performance Reporting 494
8.5.1 Automated Performance Reporting System 494
8.6 Assurance over Performance Information 494
8.7 PMS Challenges 495
8.8 MUNICIPAL CLUSTERS OFFICES 496
8.8.1 Municipal Cluster Offices 496
8.9 The Clusters Offices Status Quo Review 497
8.9.1 City Cluster Office - Municipal Head Office 498
8.9.2 Molepo–Chuene–Maja Cluster Office 498
8.9.3 Mankweng Cluster Office 499
8.9.4 Sebayeng–Dikgale Cluster Office 499
8.9.5 Seshego Cluster Office 500
8.9.6 Aganang Cluster Office 501
8.9.7 Moletjie Cluster Office 501
8.10 Recommendations for Municipal Clusters Office Full Operations 502
8.11 INTERNAL AUDIT FUNCTION 503
8.11.1 Definition, objectives and mandate of Internal Audit Function 503
8.11.2 Internal Audit Strategy and Strategic Coverage Plan 503
8.11.3 Audit and Performance Audit Committee (APAC) 503
8.11.4 Audit of Performance Management Information 504
8.11.5 Operation Clean Audit (OPCA) 505
8.11.6 Resources availability for Internal Audit 505
8.11.7 Report of the Chief Audit Executive on AGSA Audit Opinions 505
8.11.8 Auditor General (SA) Audit Opinion 506
8.11.9 FINANCIAL MISCONDUCT BOARD 507
8.12 PUBLIC PARTICIPATION AND COUNCIL SUPPORT 507
8.12.1 Key Municipal Stakeholders 507
8.12.2 Relationship with Traditional Leaders 508
8.12.3 The building blocks of Good Governance 510
8.12.4 Ward Committee and Community Development Workers (CDW's) 512

DRAFT

8.13 SECRETARIAT 513
8.13.1 Main objectives of Secretariat unit 513
8.13.2 Challenges and Constraints: Secretariat 513
8.13.3 Interventions and Improvement Measures 514
8.14 COUNCIL AND POLITICAL GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE 514
8.14.1 Political Parties Represented in Council: 515
8.14.2 City of Polokwane Council Meeting 516
8.14.3 Portfolio Committees 516
8.14.4 Municipal Public Account Committee (MPAC) 518
8.14.5 Local Geographic Names Committee 519
8.14.6 Rules and Ethics Committee 520
8.15 COMMUNICATION AND MARKETING 521
8.15.1 Complaints Management System 522
8.15.2 New electronic and social media channels of communication 522
8.15.3 City of Polokwane Newsletters 523
8.16 LEGAL SERVICES 523
8.16.1 Core Functions of Legal Services 524
8.16.2 Legislation & Law Enforcement 524
8.16.3 Litigation 525
8.16.4 Governance and Corporate Affairs 526
8.16.5 Properties 526
8.17 RISK MANAGEMENT 527
8.17.1 Risk Management core responsibilities 527
8.17.2 Risk Management Committee 527
8.17.3 The Risk Champions Committee 528
8.17.4 Top 12 Strategic Risks Identified 528
8.18 Fraud and Corruption Strategy 528
8.18.1 Polokwane Municipality statement of attitude to fraud 528
8.18.2 Whistle Blowing Policy 529
8.19 EXECUTIVE SUPPORT / SPECIAL FOCUS PROGRAMMES 529
8.19.1 Core Function of the Executive Support/Special Focus SBU 530
8.19.2 Special Focus Challenges 531
8.20 Health and Social Development 532
8.20.1 Health Facilities Analysis 532

DRAFT

8.20.2 Regional Hospitals in the City of Polokwane 532
8.20.3 HIV /AIDS Prevalence in Polokwane 534
8.20.4 Number of HIV+ people - Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National 534
8.20.5 Awards Received by Special Focus 536
8.21 National Strategic Plan (NSP) on Gender Based Violence and Femicide(GBVF) 536
8.21.1 The NSP on GBVF 536
8.21.2 Integration of the NSP on GBVF priorities to the Municipal IDP 537
8.22 NSP ON GBVF AND WYPD PRIORITIES 541
8.22.1 Special Focus IDP Strategic Objectives and Strategies 541
8.23 Legislative Background 543
8.23.1 Protection of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination (PEPUDA) 543
8.23.2 Bill of Rights: Chapter two of SA Constitution 543
8.23.3 Protection from Harassment Act 544
8.23.4. Preventing and Combating of Human Trafficking in Human Persons Act 545
8.23.5 Employment Equity Act 545
8.23.6 National Strategic Plan on Gender Based Violence 545
8.23.7 Gender-Responsive Budgeting, Planning, Monitoring, Evaluation and Auditing Framework 546
8.23.8 National Youth Policy 546
8.23.9 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities 546
8.24 Gender Related Treaties that South Africa is a signatory to 546
8.24.1 CEDAW 547
8.24.2 Beijing Platform for Action Protocol on the Rights of Women in Africa 547
8.24.3 Sustainable Development Goals – goal 5 547
8.24.4 Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities (CRPD) 547
8.25 SWOT analysis for Special Focus Unit 548
8.25.1Challenges that affect Negatively the Vulnerable Groups in the City 548
8.25.2 GBVF Hotspots under the City of Polokwane 549
8.25.3 Key NSP Assessment Areas 549
8.26 Project Management Unit (PMU) 552
8.26.1 Roles and Responsibilities for PMU 552
8.26.2 NEIGHBORHOOD DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME 552
8.27 Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) 553
8.27.1 Objectives of EPWP Phase V 554

DRAFT

8.27.2 Community Work Programme 555
8.27.3 EPWP Jobs Targets 555
8.28 PMU Challenges 555
8.28.1 Proposed Intervention on PMU Challenges 556
8.29 Technical Report Approval 556
8.30 Capital Expenditure Framework(CEF) 556
8.31 2025/26 Grants performance. 557
8.32 Overall governance dashboard 558
8.33. INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP) 558
8.33.1 Legislative Background Introduction 558
8.33.2 Integrated Development Planning 559
8.33.3 Evolution of the IDP (Trends since 2001-2031) 560
8.33.4 Medium Term Development Plan (MTDP) 2024-2029 561
8.33.5 IDP/ Budget Process Plan 561
8.33.6 The IDP/Budget Committees 562
8.33.7 IDP/Budget Technical Committee 562
8.33.8 IDP/Budget Steering Committee 562
8.33.9 IDP Representative Forum 562
8.34 IDP/Budget Public Participation and Stakeholder Engagements Process 562
8.34.1 IDP /Budget Public Participation Meetings (April 2026) 563
8.35 MEC IDP Assessments 566
8.35.1 MEC rating for Polokwane Municipality IDP 566
8.36 Strategic Planning Session (Bosberaad) 566
8.37 District Development Model (DDM) 567
8.37.1The District Development Model – One Plan 567
8.37.2 The Approach 567
8.37.3 DDM Gazette 567
8.38 The Living IDP Portal 568
8.38.1 The Future of Municipal Planning 568
8.38.2 What makes it revolutionary: 568
CHAPTER Nine - Municipal Transformation and Organisational Development Analysis 570
9.Human Resource (HR) 570
9.1 ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE 570
9.1.1 Political Governance Structure 571

DRAFT

9.2 ADMINISTRATIVE GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE 571
9.2.1. Appointment of Senior Managers 573
9.2.2 New Senior Managers Positions on the organogram 573
9.2.3 Total number of positions in the structure per Directorate 573
9.2.4 Positions and Budget Per Directorate 575
9.3 Skills Development and Training 576
9.3.1 Addressing Weakness in workplace skills. 576
9.3.2 Skills Development Act (SDA) 577
9.3.3 Learnership programmes 577
9.3.4 Institutional Plan 578
9.4 Employment Equity 578
9.4.1 Employment Equity Statistics - Polokwane Municipality 579
9.4.2 Summary of people with disabilities 580
9.4.3 Equity Plan for Polokwane Municipality 580
9.5 Job grade analysis 580
9.6 Vacancy and Turnover 581
9.7 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH & SAFETY (OHS) 582
9.7.1 OHS unit Challenges. 583
9.8 Employee Relations 584
9.9 Employee Assistance Programme (EAP) 585
9.10 Recruitment 587
9.10.1 External Bursary Opportunities 587
9.11 Fleet Management Services 588
9.11.1 Number of Fleet 588
9.11.2 Municipal fleet status quo 588
9.11.3 Procurement of Mixed Fleet units 589
9.11.4 Fleet Management Sourcing Strategy 589
9.11.5 Challenges Within the Fleet SBU 589
9.11.6 Interventions and control measures 589
9.11.7 New Graders Fleet Procured 590
9.11.8 Unveiling of New Graders and compactor waste truck by Executive Mayor at (Ext 44 Greenside (Ward 08) 591
9.11.9Compactor Waste truck and 15 Seater Mini Bus 591

DRAFT

9.11.10 Bakkie for Water and Sanitation and 16 & 22 Seater Busses for Fleet Management services 592
9.11.12 Compactor waste and Roll-on Roll-off (Hooklift) truck for Waste Management and Cherry picker for Energy Services 592
9.11.13 Front End loader for Waste Management and Grader for Roads and Storm water 593
9.11.14 New Fleet Launched on 16 July 2025 by Executive Mayor 594
9.11.15 30 x Service Delivery Vehicles Hand over by E.M on 25 March 2026 595
9.11.16 14 x traffic Vehicles and 2 x fire Trucks) 596
9.11.17 22 Wheeler truck, two tractors and three double cab bakkies) -11 August 2026 598
9.12 Information Communication and Technology (ICT) 600
9.12.1 ICT - SMART City Concept 602
9.12.2 ICT Governance 602
9.12.3 ICT Strategic Achievements 603
9.12.4 Comment on the Performance of ICT Services Overall 604
9.13Key highlights of service delivery innovations 604
9.13.1 MyPolokwane Citizen App 604
9.13.2 SD-WAN Connectivity Enhancement 605
9.13.3 Community Wi-Fi and Digital Inclusion 605
9.14 ICT Challenges and Interventions 605
9.14.1 Network Upgrade (Cluster Offices) 606
9.14.2 Polokwane SDWAN Connectivity 607
9.15 ICT (Telephone Systems) 608
9.15.1 City of Polokwane Call Centre 608
9.16 Citizen Engagement portal 608
9.17 Record Management 609
9.17.1 Record Management Objectives 609
9.17.2 Challenges/Constraints for Record Management 610
9.18. CYBER SECURITY AWARENESS 610
9.19 Facilities Management 611
9.19.1 List of Municipal Facilities in all Clusters 611
9.19.2 Procedure Manual 615
9.19.3 Priority of work and response times 616
9.19.4 Maintenance of municipal facilities 616
9.19.5 Trades conducted under routine maintenance. 616

DRAFT

9.19.6 Codes and Standards 618
9.20 Refurbishment and renovation of buildings: 619
9.20.1 Refurbishment of Aganang Municipal Hall 619
CHAPTER Ten: Transportation Services Analysis 621
10.1 Leeto la Polokwane 621
10.1.1 Thabo Mbeki Bus Station launched 621
10.1.2 COMPREHENSIVE INTEGRATED TRANSPORT PLAN (CITP) 622
10.1.3 COMMUTER TRANSPORT CORRIDORS AND FACILITIES 622
10.1.4 Deputy Minister of Transport Oversight Visit to the City of Polokwane 623
10.2 Mode of Public Transport Facilities 624
10.2.1 Metered Taxi 626
10.3 Airports 626
10.3.1 Polokwane Municipality Airport 627
10.3.2 Rail 628
10.4 FREIGHT TRANSPORT 628
10.4.1 Road freight 628
10.4.2 AIR FREIGHT 628
10.4.3 RAIL FREIGHT 628
10.5 A SMART WAY TO TRAVEL 629
10.6 Transport implication of the SDF 629
10.7 INTERMODAL / LONG DISTANCE TRANSPORT HUB 629
10.8 LEETO LA POLOKWANE SYSTEM ELEMENT 630
10.8.1 Universal Access (UA) 630
10.8.2 Non-Motorized Transport (NMT) 630
10.8.3 Industry Transition 631
10.8.4 Engagement with the minibus taxi industry 632
10.8.5 Integrated Transport Planning and Operations 632
10.8.6 Intelligent Transport System Modelling 634
10.8.7 Leeto La Polokwane fare increase 635
10.8.8 Leeto Marketing, Communications and Stakeholder Relations 635
10.8.9 Business and Finance 636
10.8.10 Leeto Infrastructure 637
10.9 Construction of 10 x Bus Stop Shelters 637
10.9.1 Shelters and Paving in Flora Park and Seshego 637

DRAFT

10.10 Polokwane's Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTN), ... 638
10.10.1 Upgrading of the PT Facility is completed. 639
10.10.2 Widening of Sandriver Bridge 641
10.11. Leeto La Polokwane (LLP) 642
10.11.1 Benefits of Leeto La Polokwane 644
10.11.2 Ridership on Leeto la Polokwane Bus Service 645
10.12 Upgrading of Transit Mall Phase 1 645
10.12.1 Upgrading of a Transit Mall Progress 645
CHAPTER Eleven: Roads and Storm Water Analysis 649
11.1 ROADS AND STORM WATER 649
11.1.1 Rehabilitation of Boshoff Street in Flora Park 649
11.1.2 Introduction to Roads and Storm water 650
11.1.3 Classification of Roads 652
11.1.4 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Roads. 653
11.2 ROADS BACKLOG 653
11.2.1 Municipal Roads Current Status Quo 653
11.2.2 Potholes Repairs in the City CBD, Seshego, Westernburg. 654
11.2.3 Refurbishment of streets around the City CBD 654
11.2.4 War on pothole programme 655
11.2.5 Grading of Roads 657
11.2.6 Grader's status QUO Report per Cluster (Their Condition) 657
11.2.7 New Low Bed Truck Procured 658
11.2.8 Roads SBU Yellow Fleet Status Quo 658
11. 3 Construction of low-level bridges 659
11.3.1 CONSTRUCTION OF LOW-LEVEL BRIDGES PROGRAMME 659
11.3.2 Areas where low level bridges were constructed and completed 659
11.4 Repairs on Storm Water Drainage 660
11.4.1 Challenges for Storm Water Infrastructure Maintenance 661
11.4.2 Interventions to storm water challenges 661
11.4.3 Blocked Storm Water Drainage infrastructure 662
11.4.4 Unblocking of Storm Water Drainage System in the City 664
11.5 Various Roads Projects under Construction within Various Municipal Clusters 665
11.5.1 Paving of Sekoala primary school road to Mehlakong (ward 29) 665
11.5.2 Dual carriage way access road to Mankweng 666

DRAFT

11.5.3 Upgrading of gravel 1 road to tar at 28 th,29 and 30th street in zone A Seshego 666
11.6 Paving of Economically Strategic Roads..... 667
11.6.1 Upgrading of arterial road D3355 from Monotwane to Matlala clinic (ward 41) 668
11.6.2 Flood Repair and Storm water upgrade in Futura Street to Sandriver stream 668
11.6.3 Paving of road from Sengatane (D3330) to Chebeng (ward 09)..... 669
11.7 Personnel for Roads and Storm Water 669
11.8 Grading of Rural Roads Per Cluster..... 670
11.8.1 Grading of Roads Status Quo 670
11.8.2 Challenges and interventions for Rural Roads Grading 670
11.8.3 Roads SBU Fleet analysis..... 671
11.8 .4 Incomplete Provincial D-Roads (Bermuda Roads) 671
11.9 ROAD PER WARD PROGRAMME 672
11.10 ROADS MARKING PROGRAMME..... 673
11.10.1 Road Marking at Church Street..... 673
11.10.2 Road Marking in the City CBD 673
11.10.3 Road Marking in Mankweng Cluster (Ga Thoka) 674
11.10.4 Road Marking in City Cluster..... 675
11.10.5 Road Marking at Seshego Cluster 676
11.11 ROADS SIGNS PROGRAMME..... 678
11.11.1 Installation of New Road Signs..... 678
11.11.2 Refurbishment of Street Names Boards at Ladanna (Ward 23) 679
CHAPTER TWELVE -Financial Analysis..... 682
12.1. FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT AND VIABILITY..... 682
12.1.1 Revenue Management..... 682
12.1.2 Status on Revenue Management..... 682
12.1.3. Revenue Enhancement 682
12.1.4 Credibility of bills and data 683
12.1.5 Collections from households, businesses and Government Departments..... 683
12.1.6 Implementation of revenue enhancement strategy 684
12.1.7 Key Challenges and Interventions in Revenue Management 684
12.2. FINANCIAL POLICY FRAMEWORK..... 685
12.3 DEBTORS MANAGEMENT 686
12.3.1 Debtor Book 686
12.3.2 Debtors Aging (30 June 2026) 687

DRAFT

12.3.3 Debtors Aging (30 June 2025) Comparative 687
12.3.4 Mankweng Debt 688
12.3.5 Credit Control & Debt Collection Initiatives 688
12.4 Indigent support 689
12.4.1 Status of Municipal Indigent Register 689
12.4.2 Processes in indigent Applications 690
12.4.3 Challenges and Mitigation/Control – Indigent Support 690
12.4.4 Indigent Support 692
12.4.5 Debtors Incentive Scheme 693
12.5 Revenue generation from other SBUs 693
12.6 FINANCIAL POLICY FRAMEWORK 694
12.7 Expenditure Management 695
12.7.1 Expenditure Management Status Quo/Achievement 695
12.7.2 Expenditure analysis 695
12.7.3 Key Contracted Services 697
12.7.4 Operational Costs 697
12.7.5 Overtime 699
12.7.6 Grant Performance 699
12.7.7 Non-core expenditure 700
12.7.8 Challenges and Intervention for Expenditure Management 700
12.7.9 Creditors 701
12.7.10 Payment of creditors 701
12.7.11. Expenditure Flow Chart 702
12.8 BORROWINGS 702
12.8.1 Extent of existing loans, and associated finance and redemption payments. 702
12.9 Key ratios – Financial Health Assessment 703
12.10. Roll Overs Projects 703
12.11. Budget Adjustments 703
12.12 Investments 704
12.13 Asset Management 704
12.13.1 State of Assets 704
12.13.2 State of Infrastructure Assets – Asset Portfolio 705
12.13.3 Asset Consultants 705
12.14 Auditor General Outcomes 706

DRAFT

12.14.1. AUDIT OUTCOMES OPINIONS PER FINANCIAL YEAR 706
12.14.2 Audit Strategy 707
12.15 FINANCIAL SUSTAINABILITY 708
12.16. SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT POLICY (SCM) 708
12.16.1 Supply Chain Committees 708
12.16.2 SCM Challenges on Projects 709
12.17 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS ON A STANDARD CHART OF ACCOUNTS (mSCOA) 710
12.17.1 mSCOA as a Business Reform 711
12.17.2 Implementation of mSCOA by City of Polokwane 711
12.17.3 mSCOA Segments 712
12.18 COST CONTAINMENT 712
12.18.1 UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR AND FRUITLESS EXPENDITURE SUMMARY 713
12.19 APAC) Outcomes 714

DRAFT

(i)List of Acronyms

Abbreviations	Explanation
ABET	Adult Basic Education and Training
ACDP	African Christian Democratic Party
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
ANC	African National Congress
AZAPO	Azanian People Organization
AFS	Annual Financial Statements
AGSA	Auditor General of South Africa
AG	Auditor General
AR	Annual Report
AO	Accounting Officer
APAC	Audit & Performance Audit Committee
B&B	Bed and Breakfast
BBBEE	Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment
BRT	Bus Rapid Transport
CM	City Manager
COPE	Congress of the People
CAS	Controlled Access Site
CBD	Central Business District
CBP	Community Based Planning
CCTV	Closed Circuit Television
CDM	Capricorn District Municipality
CDW	Community Development Worker
GCFO	Group Chief Financial Officer
CEO	Chief Executive Officer
CGICTPF	Corporate Governance of Information and Communication Technology Policy Framework
Cllr	Councillor
COGHSTA	Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs
CRM	Customer Relationship Management

DRAFT

Abbreviations	Explanation
CRMP	Cultural Resources Management Plans
CRU	Central Re-examination Unit
CRZ	Commercial Restricted Zone
DA	Democratic Alliance
DC	Development Corridors
DEA	Department of Environmental Affairs
DORA	Division of Revenue Act
DCoG	Department of Cooperative Governance
DPME	The Presidency Department of Planning Monitoring and Evaluation
DSAC	Department of Sports, Arts and Culture
DWA	Department of Water Affairs
DWAE	Department of Water Affairs and Environment
DWS	Department of Workforce Service
EFF	Economic Freedom Fighters
ECM	Electronic Content Management
EGDP	Economic Growth and Development Plan
EXCO	Executive Committee
EDFS	Environmental Defence Fund Service
EHP	Environmental Health Projects
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
ELMDP	Executive Leadership Municipal Development Programme
EM	Executive Mayor
EMP	Environmental Management Plan
EPWP	Expanded Public works Programme
ERP	Enterprise Resource Planning
ETDP	Education, Training and Development Practices
FFP	Freedom Front Plus
FFC	Financial and Fiscal Commission
FBW	Free Basic Water
FDA's	Functional Development Areas

DRAFT

Abbreviations	Explanation
FIFA	Federation of International Football Associations
FY	Financial Year
GAAL	Gateway Airport Authority
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GGP	Gross Geographic Product
GIS	Geographical Information System
GITOC	Government Information Technology Offices Council
GVA	Gross Value Added
HDI	Human Development Index
HOD	Head of Department
HDI's	Historically Disadvantaged Individuals
HIV	Human Immune Virus
HR	Human Resources
HV	High Voltage
ICT	Information and Communication Technology
ITP	Integrated Transport Plan
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IA	Internal Audit
IGR	Intergovernmental Relations
IIA	Institute of Internal Auditor
IKS	Indigenous Knowledge System
IRPTS	Integrated Rapid Public Transport System
IT&T	Information Technology and Telecommunications
ITS	Intelligent Transport System
IUDG	Integrated Urban Development Grant
IWMP	Integrated Waste Management Plan
JMPF	Joint Municipal Pension Fund
KPA	Key Performance Area
KPI	Key Performance Indicator
LED	Local Economic Development

DRAFT

Abbreviations	Explanation
LEGDP	Limpopo Employment, Growth and Development Plan
LDP	Limpopo Development Plan
LGSETA	Local Government Sector Education Training Authority
LTD	Limited Company
LTP	Limpopo Tourism and Parks
LUMS	Land Use Management Scheme
LV	Low Voltage
MAYCO	Mayoral Committee
MMC	Member of Mayoral Committee
MCPF	Municipal Councillors Pension Fund
MEC	Member of Executive Council
MEPF	Municipal Employee Pension Fund
MEW	Measure of Economic Welfare
MFMA	Municipal Finance Management Act
MGF	Municipal Gratuity Fund
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
MIS	Management Information System
MLL	Minimum Living Level
MPAC	Municipal Public Account Committee
MSA	Municipal Systems Act
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
mSCOA	Municipal Regulations on Standard Chart of Accounts
N1	National Road (Cape town-Beit Bridge)
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective
NDP	National Development Plan
NFMW	National Fund for Municipal Workers
NGO	Non-Governmental Organization
NOX	Nitrogen Oxides
NTC	National Training Centre
NTK	Need To Know

DRAFT

Abbreviations	Explanation
NMT	Non-Motorised Transport
OC	Organizing Committee
OHS	Occupational Health and Safety
OPCA	Operation Clean Audit
PC's	Professional Corporation/Personal Computer
PHA	Polokwane Housing Association
PLM	Polokwane Local Municipality
PHP	People Housing Partnership
PICC	Polokwane International Conventional Centre
PIMS	Planning and Implementation Management Support
PMS	Performance Management System
PPU	Public Participation Unit
PR	Public Relations
PRASA	Passenger Railway Agency of South Africa
PSL	Premier Soccer League
PTIS	Public Transport Infrastructure Support Fund
PTY	Proprietary Company
PPP	Public Private Partnership
RAL	Road Agency Limpopo
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
ROD	Record of Decision
RWS	Regional Water Scheme
SA	South Africa
SABC	South African Broadcasting Corporation
SANRAL	The South African National Roads Agency Ltd
SADC	Southern Africa Development Community
SALGA	South African Local Government Association
SAMWU	South African Municipal Workers Union
SANABP	South African National Association of Blind and Partially Sighted
SANDF	South African Defence Force

DRAFT

Abbreviations	Explanation
SANS	South African Network Service
SAPS	South African Police Service
SBU	Strategic Business Unit
SCADA	Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SCM	Supply Chain Management
SDA	Service Delivery Area
SDBIP	Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SDI	Strategic Development Initiatives
SETA	Sector Education and Training Authority
SMME's	Small and Medium Enterprises
SMS	Senior Management Services
SOP'	Stand Operating Procedure
SOX	Sodium Oxides
SPLUMA	Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act
SPPIA	Standards for Professional Practice of Internal Audits
StatsSA	Statistics South Africa
TLC	Transitional Local Council
UDM	United Democratic Movement
UPVC	Unplasticized Polyvinyl Chloride
VP	Vryheidsfront Plus
VIC	Visitors Information Centre
VIP	Ventilation Improved Pit
WSA	Water Service Authority
WSP	Water Service Provider
WSDP	Water Services Development Plan
ZCC	Zion Christian Church

DRAFT

Chapter One: Introduction

1.1 Analysis Phase

The first step for the review of the IDP is to conduct an analysis of the current state of affairs of the Municipality so that the planning process will be informed by the true reflection of affairs on the ground.

In the analysis phase, The City of Polokwane is obliged to conduct SWOT analysis as far as the **backlogs in service delivery** is concerned. The information provided should enable the municipality to decide on priority issues or problems, with due consideration of the residents'/communities' perceptions and of available facts and figures.

The municipality should be able to know about the concrete nature of these priority issues or problems, such as trends, context, causes and impacts related to these issues, in order to make informed decisions on appropriate solutions.

The analysis phase should also serve as a **gauge** on how the municipality is performing towards the achievements of the **2030 Vision** which has been approved by Council and also to align municipal plans towards the vision.

The identified problems should be considered and prioritised according to levels of urgency and/or importance, thus constituting the key development priorities.

Through the analysis phase, the Municipality must also be aware of existing and accessible assets and resource limitations before making decisions on strategies in order to allocate scarce resources strategically.

It is important that a municipality understands not only the **symptoms**, but also the causes of problems in order to make informed and appropriate decisions. The municipality must not make assumptions on what the problems are in its area. The people affected should be involved in determining the problems and priorities.

1.2 The Outputs of the Analysis Phase:

- ✓ Assessment of the existing level of Development **(with specific reference to service gaps).**
- ✓ Key Development Priorities **(Problems**)
- ✓ Information on dynamics and causes of Key Development Priorities
- ✓ Information on available resources, potentials and assets

The municipality has conducted Status Quo analysis in **all** the KPA's of local government. Below is the status quo report per Directorate/KPA.

DRAFT

1.3 Status Quo Analysis per KPA

	KPA / Directorates
1	**KPA1.Spatial Rationale**
2	**KPA 2. Basic Services and Infrastructure Planning**
3	**KPA 3. Local Economic Development**
4	**KPA 4. Good Governance and Public Participation**
5	**KPA.5 Financial Viability**
6	**KPA 6. Municipal Transformation and Organizational Development**

DRAFT

CHAPTER Two: Spatial Planning and Land Use Analysis

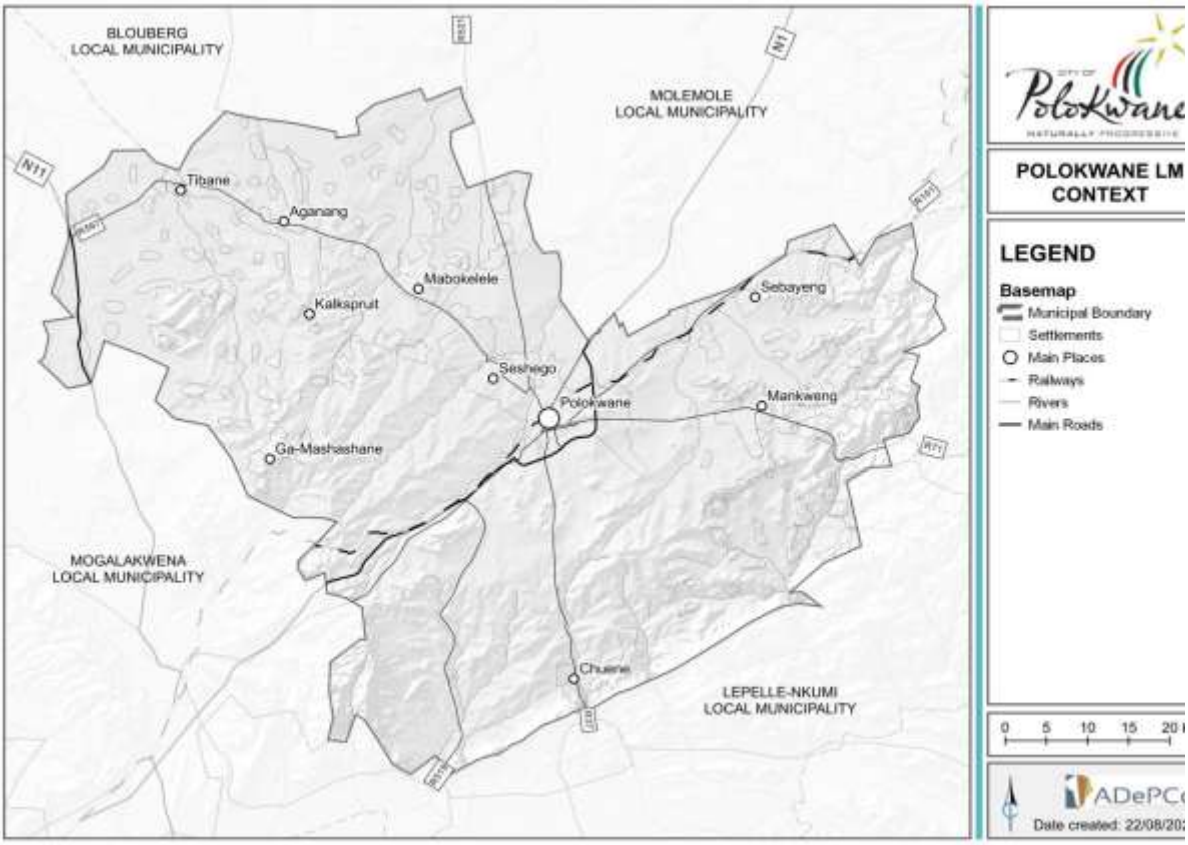
2. SPATIAL RATIONALE

2.1 Strategic Location of Polokwane City

Polokwane meaning "Place of Safety" in Sotho, is a City and also the Capital City of the Limpopo Province, Polokwane is South Africa's largest urban centre north of Gauteng. The City of Polokwane is situated in the **central region** of the Limpopo Province, which is the northern province in South Africa. Polokwane is a part of the Capricorn District Municipality, which includes other local municipalities such as Blouberg, Molemole, and Lepelle Nkumpi. The geographical boundaries of Polokwane are as follows:

- To the north, Polokwane shares boundaries with Blouberg and Molemole local municipalities.
- To the south, it borders the Lepelle Nkumpi local municipality.
- On the west, it is adjacent to the Mokgalakwena Local Municipality, a part of the Waterberg District Municipality.
- On the east, it shares borders with the Greater Tzaneen Local Municipality, which is a part of the Mopani District Municipality.

City of Polokwane boundaries Map



Source: City of Polokwane New SDF

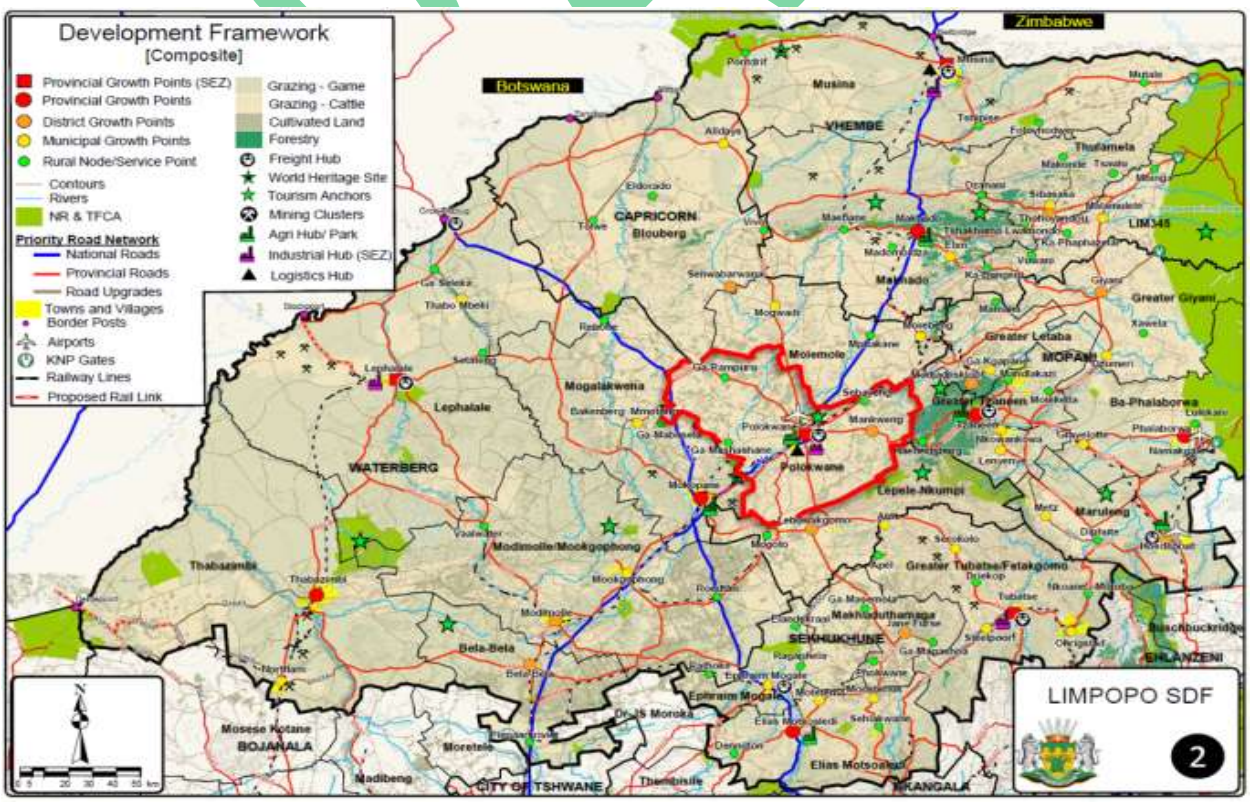
Within the Limpopo region, the city of Polokwane, plays a pivotal role. Positioned along the N1 National Road and at the convergence point of significant road networks, Polokwane boasts exceptional accessibility and connectivity to the wider area.

in 2016, a portion of the former Aganang local municipal area was incorporated into the City of Polokwane. This affected area of Aganang was located northwest of Polokwane and bordered it. This incorporation divided Aganang into two parts, with the southern section, covering approximately **104,000 hectares**, becoming a part of Polokwane.

Consequently, the land area of Polokwane expanded from around **374,000 hectares** to approximately **505,000 hectares,** constituting an increase of about **38%.** In terms of its physical composition, the City of Polokwane is now **35% urbanised and 65% still rural**

City of Polokwane is the **economic hub** of Limpopo Province and is strategically located to be the administrative and economic capital of the Province. It is situated at the cross roads of important national and provincial roads which radiate out into the hinterland providing good access to other towns. There is a definite opportunity for Polokwane to become a logistics hub and freight interchange within the region, also given its proximity to the neighbouring countries of **Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland**. Three of the four Spatial Development Initiatives pass through Polokwane, which repeat the City's strategic location and its importance as far as the economy of the province is concerned.

2.1.1 Map of Limpopo Province (Polokwane Strategic Location)



Source: Limpopo Province SDF

2.1.2 The Main 7 Clusters of settlements in Polokwane

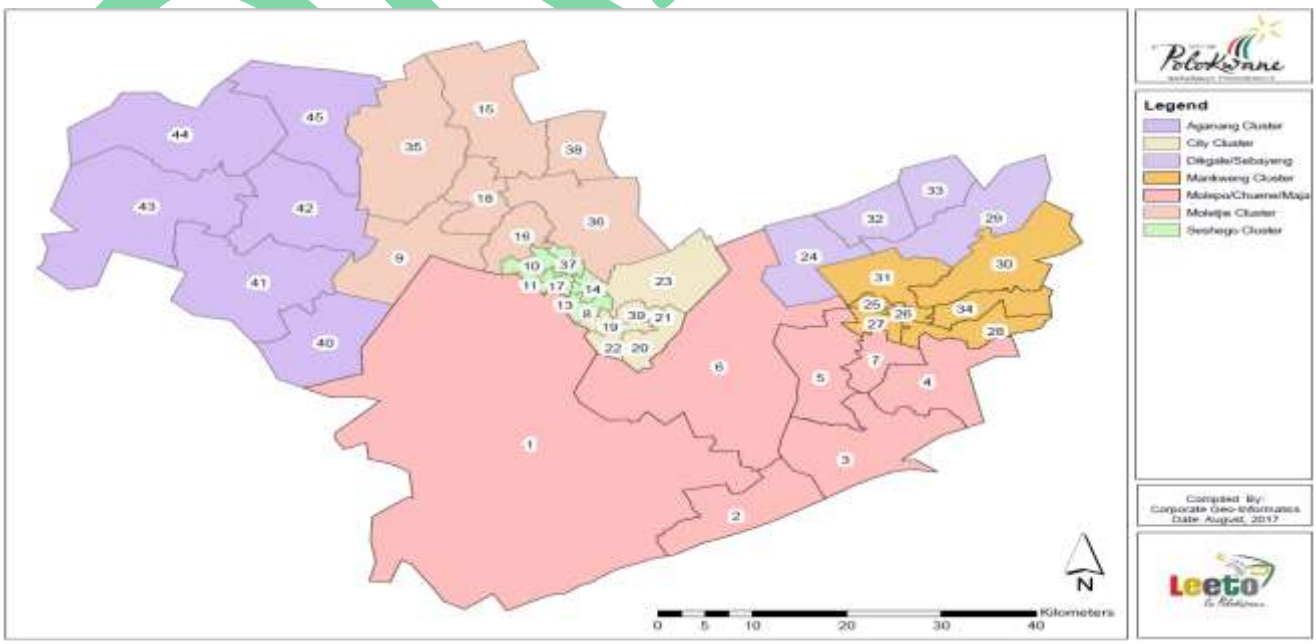
Situated on the outskirts in several clusters are less formal settlement areas which are experiencing enormous influx from rural urban migration trends. These areas are in dire need of upgraded services and infrastructure, both social and engineering, and are struggling to cope with the informal influx of more people who want access to an improved quality and standard of living. Polokwane municipality is made up of Forty-Five (**45) wards**. The 45 wards constitute 7 clusters and clusters are listed below:

	Clusters Name	Wards No.
1	**Mankweng Cluster**	06,07,25,26,27,28, 34
2	**Moletjie Cluster**	09,10,15,16,18,35, 36,38
3	**Molepo / Chuene / Maja Cluster**	1,2,3,4,5
4	**Sebayeng / Dikgale Cluster**	24,29,32,33,30,31
5	**Aganang Cluster**	40,41,42,43,44,45
6	**City Cluster**	08;19,20,21,22,23,39
7	**Seshego Cluster**	11,12,13, 14,17,37

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

2.1.3 Polokwane Cluster Map Reflecting Location of 45 Wards

Map: Polokwane Cluster Map



Source: Polokwane G.I.S SBU:

2.1.4 Description of the 7 Municipal Clusters of settlements

- **Seshego:** located west of the CBD. It is nearest to the economic core of all settlement areas and thus has the best access to the formal economy of Polokwane.

- **Mankweng:** located 30km to the east of the City. It constitutes a large area and is mixed formal and informal. It accommodates the University of Limpopo and is a long-established settlement area.

- **Sebayeng**: located 30 km to the north-east of the City centre and is less formal and newer than Mankweng. The area is experiencing influx and is growing at a rapid rate.

- **Maja:** is located 20km to the south and comprises an informal settlement area, with very limited services and infrastructure. The settlement area sits on the fringe of the rural hinterland and is hence surrounded by a vast clustering of rural / semi-rural areas.

- **Moletjie:** It is about 32 km northeast of City of Polokwane and comprises an informal settlement area, with very limited services and infrastructure. The settlement area sits on the fringe of the rural hinterland and is hence surrounded by a vast clustering of rural / semi-rural areas.

- **Aganang:** is situated 45 km west of Polokwane. It is a rural Cluster and has 4 Traditional Authorities namely Moletji, Matlala, Maraba and Mashashane. The area has been incorporated into the City of Polokwane and is now serving as the seventh cluster area for Polokwane. The area is purely rural and has no township; it has potential in Agriculture and Tourism.

2.1.5 Profile of the City of Polokwane

City of Polokwane is one of the **17 Non Delegated Municipalities** that reports to **National Treasury.**

	Province	Code	Municipality
1	Western Cape	CPT	City of Cape Town
2	North West	NW383	Mafikeng
3	Eastern Cape	NMB	Nelson Mandela Bay
4	Mpumalanga	MP 326	Mbombela
5	Eastern Cape	DC15	OR Tambo

DRAFT

	Province	Code	Municipality
6	Gauteng	COJ	City of Johannesburg
7	**Limpopo**	**LIM354**	**City of Polokwane**
8	Gauteng	EKU	Ekurhuleni
9	Western Cape	WC044	George
10	North West	NW373	Rustenburg
11	KwaZulu-Natal	ETH	eThekwini
12	KwaZulu-Natal	KZN282	uMhlathuze
13	Eastern Cape	BUF	Buffalo City
14	KwaZulu-Natal	KZN225	Msunduzi
15	Northern Cape	NC091	Sol Plaatje
16	Gauteng	TSH	City of Tshwane
17	Free State	MAN	Mangaung

Source: NT Municipal Report

Polokwane City is the vibrant capital of Limpopo Province, situated on the Great North road to Zimbabwe; it is the largest Municipality that serves as a Capital of Limpopo with major economic centre. Its proximity to the neighbouring countries of Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland, as well as its convenient distance from the Kruger National Park and Magoebaskloof that makes it a perfect gateway to Africa and attractive tourist destination in itself.

2.2 HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT

The hierarchy of settlements according to the SDF is indicated in the below table.

2.2.1 1st ORDER SETTLEMENTS (PROVINCIAL GROWTH POINTS)

City Cluster	**Polokwane Provincial Growth Point**
Seshego Cluster	**Seshego Provincial Growth Point**

2.2.2 2nd ORDER SETTLEMENTS (DISTRICT GROWTH POINTS)

Mankweng Cluster	**Mankweng A,B,C Nobody/Mothiba Badimong Laastehoop Moria Phomolong GaMakanye**	**Mankweng District Growth Point**
Sebayeng Cluster	**Sebayeng Ext 1 Sebayeng Unit A-D Ga Mokgopo Ga Dikgale Titibe Vierhoek Marobala**	**Municipal Growth Point**
Aganang Cluster	**Ga Ramoshwane Chloe A and B Ga Rampuru Ga Ngwetsana Kgabo Park Aganang**	**Municipal Growth Point**

2.2.3 3rd ORDER SETTLEMENTS (POPULATION CONCENTRACTION POINTS)

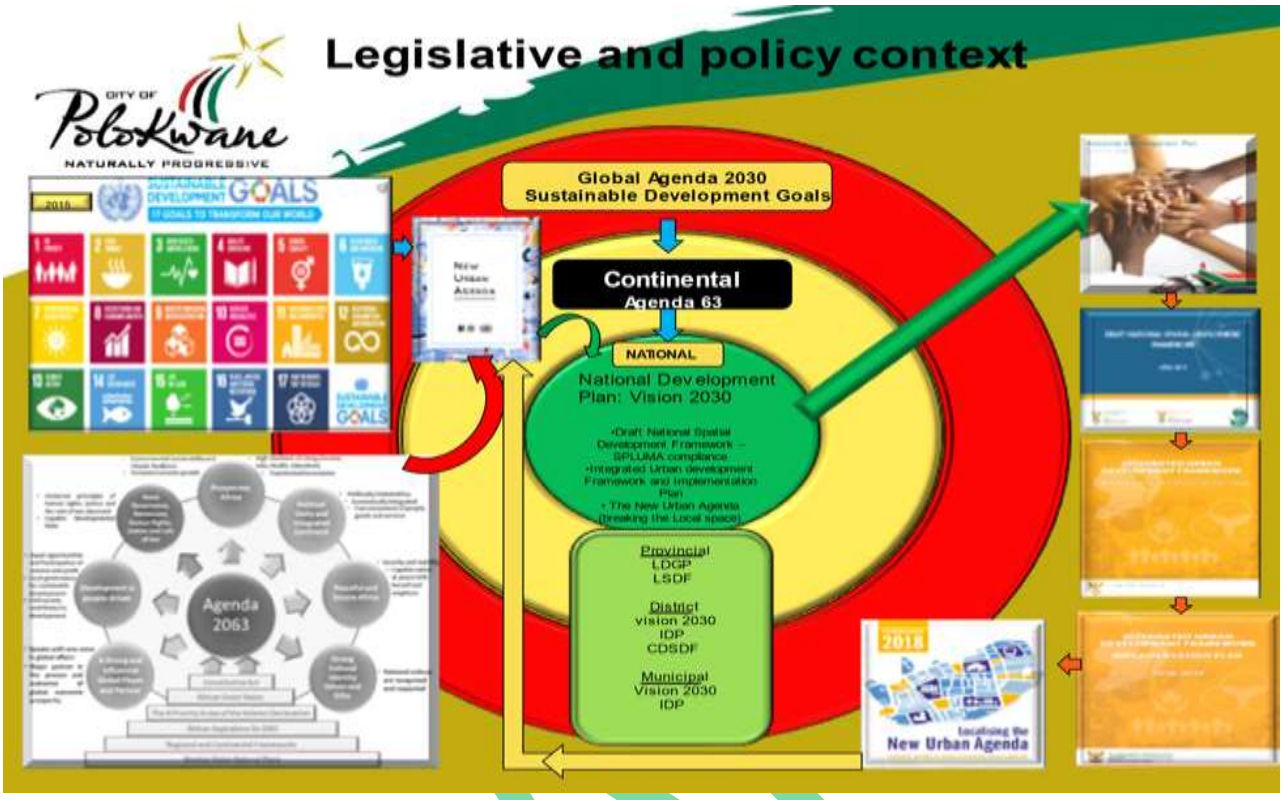
Moletjie Cluster	**Ga Mashashane,Monotwane,Ga Madiba, Mohlonong, Mandela Park,Mapateng, Utjane,Seroba,Segoahleng Mabokelele,Ramongoana**	**Population Concentration Points**
Aganang Cluster	**Setumong Semaneng Ga Selolo Manamela Madietane Phetole Madietane**	**Population Concentration Point**
Chuene Cluster	**Chuene Maja**	**Population Concentration Points**

2.2.4 4th ORDER SETTLEMENTS (LOCAL SERVICE POINTS)

Aganang Cluster	**Tibane Juno Taung Ga Ramokadi Kalkspruit**	**Local Service Point**

DRAFT

2.2.5 National and International legislative guides and programme



Source: PLK town planning SBU

2.3 SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT TOOLS/LUMS

The provision of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 requires that the Municipality must develop a system of planning that guide the spatial and land use planning within the Municipality. The Municipality is administered by the series of planning legislations that govern the administration of land use planning namely:

2.3.1 Polokwane Municipal Planning Bylaw,2017 (as amended 2025) and Polokwane Integrated Land Use Scheme, 2022

All land use and development application are submitted in terms of Polokwane Municipal Planning Bylaw, 2017 (as amended 2025) and **POLOKWANE INTEGRATED LAND USE SCHEME, 2022.** Therefore, mixed tenure rights are found within the Municipality. In this regard, there is a need for upgrading of the R293 tenure system from the deed of grant**,** Permission to Occupy **(PTO)** to Deed of transfer. Those entire townships have to be upgraded in terms of the provision of SPLUMA, Act 16 of 2013 through which the one scheme is developed and land releases on the state land is finalised and incorporated through a formal process.

The Municipality have witnessed the issue of revenue collection and valuation of the properties contradicting with the provision of proclamation R293 of 1962 since it has its own application that differs with the rates act and property valuation**.** There is a great need to deal with the current situation and upgrade the status quo of the townships through the engagement with

the Limpopo provincial department of Corporate Government, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs for those outstanding township to be donated to the Municipality.

2.3.2 Proclamation R293 of 1962 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927)

Polokwane Municipality has the black Township known as Mankweng, Sebayeng and Seshego as developed by the provision of the said legislation. Several issues need to be dealt with in terms of upgrading the status of the Land and the rates collection. Polokwane has witnessed the issues of boycott on the payment of rates by the community of Mankweng for example. The issues cut across the provision and services and better planning since the majority has district potential use such as hospitals, universities, and FET colleges. The following are key challenges:

a. The zoning in terms of the provision of the proclamation R293 of 1962 is govern by the condition attached to the Deed of Grant that does not provide different classification of zoning unlike in terms of the provision of ordinance.
b. There is an Integrated Land Use Scheme to deal with the issue in terms of the SPLUMA Act. Section 2(2) of the SPLUMA may be used but the upgrading of the Tenure System has to be deal with since the act may not automatically change the tenure system.
c. The provision of the scheme as control tool needs to be accompanied by upgrading of all the Townships within those areas under R293 of 1962 as briefed on (b) above. The final approval is still with the provincial governance for other processes since the amendment on the condition still within the ambit of the provincial department.

2.3.3. Proclamation R188 of 1969 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927)

Polokwane was assigned power of dealing with processing of the Land Use Rights in areas under the control of the Traditional Local Authorities. The ownership is Permission to Occupy (P.T.O). In this form, there is no real right registered against the property since the majority of the settlement are not proclaimed and registered with the deed's registry. The provision of the SPLUMA requires that all citizens should have access to secure tenure. In this regard, it is the duties of all the spheres of government to properly plan the development in rural areas for better transfer of ownership to occupants. The introduction of the Rural settlement development strategy is used as a key towards addressing the issues of tenure and better management of the land use rights and associated uses. The Provision of the Land Use Manag ement Scheme for the entire Municipal Area as a control tool need to be accompanied by the upgrading of the Tenure System of all the Rural Settlements within those areas under R188 of 1962.

2.3.4 Local Government Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000.

The focus on the act is based on section 26 of the said legislation that demand that the Municipality in areas of operation must develop the Spatial Development Framework that will provide the guidelines for the Implementation of the Land use management System (Land Use Scheme or Town Planning Scheme). The Spatial Development Framework provides the current and future development plans of the Municipality looking at ensuring the integration

DRAFT

with other components of the IDP. This includes financial spending, environmental management plans etc.

2.3.5 Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) is a national framework for spatial planning and land use management in the Republic. Its intention is to specify the relationship between the spatial planning and the land use management system and other kinds of planning; to provide for the inclusive, developmental, equitable and efficient spatial planning at the different spheres of government; to provide a framework for the monitoring, coordination and review of the spatial planning and land use management system; to provide a framework for policies, principles, norms and standards for spatial development planning and land use management; to address past spatial and regulatory imbalances; to promote greater consistency and uniformity in the application procedures and decision-making by authorities responsible for land use decisions and development applications; to provide for the establishment, functions and operations of Municipal Planning Tribunals; to provide for the facilitation and enforcement of land use and development measures; and to provide for matters connected therewith.

The above act provides new form of planning that demand new planning approaches such as development of the New Spatial Development Framework That complies with the contents as highlighted in section 20 of the said legislation. All above activities should be in line with the provision of or incompliance with section 6 of the SPLUMA, Act 16 of 2013. The principles below provide the guides for the application of the Act:

(a) The principle of spatial justice, whereby—

(i). past spatial and other development imbalances must be redressed through improved access to and use of land.
(ii). spatial development frameworks and policies at all spheres of government must address the inclusion of persons and areas that were previously excluded, with an emphasis on informal settlements, former homeland areas and areas characterised by widespread poverty and deprivation.
(iii). spatial planning mechanisms, including land use schemes, must incorporate provisions that enable redress in access to land by disadvantaged communities and persons.
(iv). land use management systems must include all areas of a municipality and specifically include provisions that are flexible and appropriate for the management of disadvantaged areas, informal settlements and former homeland areas.
(v). land development procedures must include provisions that accommodate access to secure tenure and the incremental upgrading of informal areas; and
(vi). a Municipal Planning Tribunal considering an application before it, may not be impeded or restricted in the exercise of its discretion solely on the ground that the value of land or property is affected by the outcome of the application.

Submission

DRAFT

The principle provides guides in addressing the spatial segregation by putting measures in place for proper planning for both areas' disadvantages and informal settlement. This is done through providing access to the use of land through policy such as SDF that provides spatial information useful for economic development at large (Mining, Agriculture etc.). it is through planned settlement that most of the Informal Settlement has to be eradicated and provides secure tenure. These aspects of secure tenure need to be addressed at large by looking at the rural areas as well.

Our plans and policies should visualise the long term's view of at least 20 years and beyond in an integrated manner. This is through our SDF, Density policies, URS, RSS, HSP, Infrastructure Master Plans, City development Policies, financial planning etc. Both urban and rural should be guarded for managed growth[ii].

"54% of the world's population lives in urban areas, a proportion that is expected to increase to 66 per cent by 2050. Projections show that urbanization combined with the overall growth of the world's population could add another 2.5 billion people to urban populations by 2050, with close to 90 percent of the increase concentrated in Asia and Africa, according to a new United Nations report launched today".

(b) the principle of spatial sustainability, whereby spatial planning and land use management systems must—

(i). promote land development that is within the fiscal, institutional and administrative means of the Republic.
(ii). ensure that special consideration is given to the protection of prime and unique agricultural land.
(iii). uphold consistency of land use measures in accordance with environmental management instruments.
(iv). promote and stimulate the effective and equitable functioning of land markets.
(v). consider all current and future costs to all parties for the provision of infrastructure and social services in land developments.
(vi). promote land development in locations that are sustainable and limit urban sprawl; and result in communities that are viable.

Polokwane Municipality has developed the Economic Growth and Development Plan, a vision 2030 which was adopted by the Municipality in line with the national and provincial Development Plan. The vision 2030 of the Municipality has identified the 6 pillars that aimed addressing the challenges by year 2030 or prior. Each pillars signals the action needed within each directorate in driving the city into a "Smart City". Polokwane for example, it experiences shortage of water, and that is a basic need. The concept aimed at putting measures in place to deal with the management and sustainable uses of limited resources in a sustainable means.

The programs as identified should cleared, be assessed and measures as per the targeted date. Until to date, there is still a great need for the alignment of the projects with the segments of each pillar and be measured or reviewed. This demands the revisiting of the Implementation Plan of the EGDP targeted time.

(c) the principle of efficiency, whereby—

(i). land development optimises the use of existing resources and infrastructure.

DRAFT

(ii). decision-making procedures are designed to minimise negative financial, social, economic or environmental impacts; and

(iii). development application procedures are efficient and streamlined and timeframes are adhered to by all parties.

This principle tries to strengthen the physical cluster of the Implementation [plan of the EGDP with the aim of speed-up services delivery without Red tapes. Process plans and procedures should be clear and provided in various forms. The Introduction of the SPLUMA requires that, the systems and procedures must be transparent and fair.

(d) the principle of spatial resilience, whereby flexibility in spatial plans, policies and land use management systems are accommodated to ensure sustainable livelihoods in communities most likely to suffer the impacts of economic and environmental shocks.

The 2030 vision is a long plan that should be guided by the proper plans of the municipality. However, it is important that the plans should not be rigid or static but encourage flexibility when new development introduced. This enables the developers to be accommodated based on the sufficient evidence that such demand may yield good results at the end. Municipal plans must be accommodating when new initiatives introduced and be aligned with the municipal plans.

(e) the principle of good administration, whereby—

(i). all spheres of government ensure an integrated approach to land use and land development that is guided by the spatial planning and land use management systems as embodied in this Act.

(ii). all government departments must provide their sector inputs and comply with any other prescribed requirements during the preparation or amendment of spatial development frameworks.

(iii). the requirements of any law relating to land development and land use are met timeously.

(iv). the preparation and amendment of spatial plans, policies, land use schemes as well as procedures for development applications, include transparent processes of public participation that afford all parties the opportunity to provide inputs on matters affecting them; and

(v). policies, legislation and procedures must be clearly set in order to inform and empower members of the public.

2.3.6 SPLUMA implementation Progress

The Municipality has full field its obligations in terms of complying with the provisions of SPLUMA. The municipality has established and developed the following;

- Municipal Planning Tribunal and Authorized official
- Municipal Appeal Tribunal
- Delegation of Power
- Development of Tariffs in line with the Act
- Polokwane Municipal Planning Bylaw
- Polokwane Integrated Land Use Scheme

DRAFT

- Polokwane Municipal Spatial Development Framework

2.4 Land Use Scheme (LUS)

POLOKWANE INTEGRATED LAND USE SCHEME, 2022 has been adopted by Council and covers all areas within the boundaries of the areas to regulate land uses for the whole municipal area.

An integrated Land Use Scheme that covers the wall to wall has been finalised to address some of the main short comings of the repealed Polokwane/Perskebult Town planning scheme, 2016 and the repealed LUS, 2017. The previous repealed Town Planning Scheme was limited to the urban area of Polokwane City/ Seshego as well as the adjacent small holdings / farm portions (Urban Fringe Area). The commercial farming area, rural villages and Tribal areas were excluded from the previous repealed land use schemes, but with the enactment of the SPLUMA, the Municipality has **POLOKWANE INTEGRATED LAND USE SCHEME, 2022** which will cover the rest of the municipal boundary.

Capacity building on land use planning and management are amongst the core strategic mandates of the Provincial Department. In terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Act 13:2005 the department is mandated to build the system's capacity in the province – especially Traditional Authorities for land use planning management and control. Mankweng and Sebayeng areas now covered.

2.5. MUNICIPAL PLANNING BY-LAW 2017(as amended 2025)

The Municipality was required to develop a Municipal Planning By-Law (as amended 2025) for its entire area in terms of section 32 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013. The reason for such demand was to have uniform procedures within the Municipality for Spatial Planning and Land Use Management and address the challenges caused by the old order legislations. The Bylaw is fully operational and has also been reviewed and Council adopted July, 2025.

2.6. POLOKWANE URBAN RENEWAL STRATEGY (URS) AND CBD DEVELOPMENT PLAN, 2016

The said plan has highlighted the key issue to be addressed in the retaining of the business within the city and unpacking the development needs as per the provision of the EGDP 2030 vision. Key principles identified for URS and CBD Development plan.

PRINCIPLE 1: URBAN MANAGEMENT AND MAINTENANCE
Action 1: Establishment of Polokwane CBD Manager's Office
Action 2: Establishment of Communication/ Complaints System in CBD Manager's Office
Action 3: Joint Service Agreements for External Stakeholders
Action 4: Minimum Basic Service Levels Commitment

DRAFT

Action 5: Special Precinct: Mini IDP/ Joint Maintenance Scheduling Programme/ Budget
Action 6: Dedicated Response Crews
Action 7: Public Property Management – Neglected Buildings
Action 8: Private Property Management – Neglected Buildings
Action 9: Monitoring and Review
PRINCIPLE 2: SAFETY, SECURITY AND BY-LAW ENFORCEMENT
Action 1: Visible Policing and Support Services
Action 2: CCTV and Other Crime Prevention Mechanisms
Action 3: Design-out Crime and Provision of Street Lighting
Action 4: By-Law Enforcement Campaign/ Capacity Building
Action 5: Implement By-Law Enforcement Programme
Action 6: Speeding Up Of Municipal Prosecution Processes
PRINCIPLE 3: LANDMARKS, PUBLIC SPACES, ARTS, CULTURE AND HERITAGE
Action 1: Enhancement of Gateways and Access Routes
Action 2: Establish Public Arts and Culture Initiatives in Civic Park and Mark Street Park
Action 3: Formalization of the Sterkloop Spruit Public Open Space
Action 4: Developing of the Water land Iconic Public Space
Action 5: Strengthening of the Provincial Sports and Recreation Precinct
Action 6: Enhance Priority NMT Movement Network
Action 7: Proper Management of the Visual City Scape
PRINCIPLE 4: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT
Action 1: Informal Trading / Micro-retailing Formalization
Action 2: Revitalization of the African Market Square
Action 3: Waste Management and Recycling
Action 4: Expansion of Urban Development Zone
Action 5: Incentives
PRINCIPLE 5: SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT
Action 1: Social Capacity Building and Training Strategy
Action 2: Provision of Community Facilities
Action 3: Provide Access to Broadband Telecommunication at Iconic Public Spaces

The above principle will enable the city to restructure and consider key elements that will address the current challenges faced by the Municipality. If proper plans are integrated, the municipality will further attract investors to the city that will address city decay. Managing the city need dedicated team of both the external and internal to deal with the challenges holistically. Safety, open space management, LED and social development are important. Key strategic projects in response to the above principles are detailed in the page 89-98 of the said document. The above document has also been reviewed and is enroute to Council for adoption.

2.7. GROWTH POINT ANALYSIS

Polokwane Municipality has the provincial growth point which functions as a first order settlement. However, the geographical area of Polokwane Municipality is predominantly rural including considerable land under traditional authority. Polokwane has a large portion of the population living in rural or peri-urban areas, which for most part is unplanned and poorly serviced. All spatial planning must take cognizance of the population and contribute to the improvement of their living conditions.

The Limpopo Spatial Rationale identified a hierarchy of settlements from provincial growth point to scattered settlements. Development interventions are proposed in terms of infrastructure provision and government services in such a manner that the natural economic potential of growth points is further stimulated. Interventions at scattered settlements are such that basic services are provided to ensure that the quality-of-life objective in the Growth and Development Strategy is achieved, but that prevents over investment in places that are depopulating.

1. **Provincial Growth Point: City and Seshego**
2. **District Growth Point: Mankweng**
3. **Municipal Growth Point: Sebayeng and Aganang**
4. **Population Concentration Points: Aganang, Moletjie and Chuene**

LINKAGE TYPE	ROAD	DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINE
N1 Trans-Limpopo Corridor **This corridor is an extensive and complex linear development system of regional and municipal significance. Given the national status of the road, direct access to adjacent land uses is usually impossible. High visibility is a major feature, and the corridor includes linear activity spines providing access to adjacent developments.**	**N1**	**The aim is to focus on industrial and agro-processing activities and associated businesses along the N1. Effective land use development and change management along the N1 remain paramount to balance excellent mobility and secondary accessibility and visibility.** **The following imperatives are required to achieve development success:** **•Upgrade the railway line and associated infrastructure.** **•Expand existing agro-processing facilities near the corridor nodes to benefit from these linkages.** **•Promote light industrial and agro-processing initiatives along the corridor.** **•Upgrade, manage and maintain the corridor to ensure ease of movement and facilitate development initiatives.**
Activity Corridors **These corridors are the main routes**	**R81, R71, R37, R101**	**The aim is to reinforce the use of current mobility roads linking:** **•Polokwane and Tzaneen**

DRAFT

LINKAGE TYPE	ROAD	DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINE
within the urban area, linking the City of Polokwane with adjacent municipalities and towns.		•Polokwane and Mogalakwena •Polokwane and Molemole •Polokwane and Sebayeng The movement of residents to and from their place of employment remains the core purpose. Guidelines applied in this regard will be to: •Introduce nodal development with a mixed-use character focusing on major intersections along the route. •Enforce limited direct access to and from these routes to ensure their mobility function. •Improve public transport offerings along these routes. Development along the R71 towards Mankweng will mainly take the form of light industrial development to promote the growth of non-polluting industrial nodes close to the main distribution line and low-income residential areas to provide employment opportunities closer to growing residential areas.
Activity Spines These urban-level routes form the primary distribution network within and between different urban areas.	R521, R567	The aim is to reinforce the use of current mobility roads linking Polokwane and Seshego. The movement of residents to and from their place of employment remains the core purpose. Guidelines applied in this regard will be to: •Introduce nodal development with a mixed-use character focusing on major intersections along the route. •Enforce limited direct access to and from these routes to ensure their mobility function.

DRAFT

LINKAGE TYPE	ROAD	DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINE
		•Improve public transport offerings along these routes.

2.8. MUNICIPAL LAND ANALYSES

The Municipality is currently intending to develop the Land Audit report in order to account on the opportunities that the land may impact looking beyond 2030 vision. The map below provides the developable properties within the register of the Municipality.

There is more land that the Municipality has not investigated or yet transferred to the Municipality that needs to be researched. The commissioning of the Land Audit may pave the way for proper land management and the need to address urban challenges. The current land parcels of the municipality are not enough in terms of the projected 2060 urbanisation rate in Urban areas. It is vital that the Municipality advance its strategy in land acquisition with the 2060 urbanisation rate in mind. In this case, having a backlog of housing demand of almost 60000, what will the situation be if the strategic land is not used efficiently through planning approaches such as densification and compact settlement and do away with urban sprawl.

2.9. LAND CLAIMS ANALYSIS

A number of land claims have been lodged with Government within the Polokwane Municipal area of jurisdiction. However, the majority of these claims are not yet concluded or finalized. It is currently not possible to determine their likely impact on spatial development. There is concern from some quarters that more unsustainable rural settlements might be established as a result of restitution of land rights.

From a spatial development point of view, land claims do not necessarily impact on the type of land use. It, however, do have an impact in delaying development processes. Prospective developers are obliged to seek consent of the respective Land Claims Commissioner prior to undertaking any form of development, that is, either for township establishments or change in land use. Although consultations do not hinder development, they do derail the speed at which development moves.

The claimants that receive their land through restoration process becomes a challenging issue that impact negatively to the Municipality especially in areas that are within the Municipal proclaimed scheme. It also plays a negative role and foster illegal invasion. No settlement plans or Township established, and people tend to develop on those land. Such occupants tend to demand services on the area not well surveyed and declared suitable from environmental point of view.

DRAFT

2.10. LAND AVAILABILITY ANALYSIS

The municipality owns a sizable number of land parcels within the urban area. This includes erven within proclaimed townships, farm portions, agricultural holdings and proclaimed townships for mixed housing developments primarily to cater for the housing gap which is outlined in detail in the Housing Chapter.

Table: The below table represents vacant municipal owned townships

#	NAME	LOCALITY	NUMBER OF UNITS
1	Polokwane X72	Doornkraal	800 Residential 1
2	Polokwane X79	Doornkraal	500 Residential 1
3	Polokwane X78	Doornkraal	2863x “Residential 1”; 5x “Residential 2”; 7x “Residential 3”; 2x “Business 3”; 1x “Special”; 5x “Institutional” (Church) 7x “Educational” 4x “Municipal”; 13x “Public Open Spaces” 1x “RSA”
4	Polokwane X108	Portion 188 (a ptn of ptn 8) of Doornkraal680 LS	200 Industrial 2 Sites
5	Polokwane X126	Engelschedoornboom 668LS	500 Residential 1 Erven
6	Polokwane X124	Portion 12 of the remainder of Krugersburg 933 LS	19 erven zoned “Special”: “Business 2: 1 Erf ±6 650m². “Municipal”: 1 Erf ±917m²
7	Polokwane X127	Engelschedoornboom 668LS	500 Residential 1 Erven
8	Southern Gateway X1 PICC	N1 southbound (Pretoria road) and Lawton Road, in the southwestern corner of Polokwane city adjacent to the Nirvana suburb and Ivydale Agricultural Holdings Portions 407, 408, 409, 410, 411 and 412 of the farm Sterkloop 688 LS	The “Special” zoned Erf for a Convention Centre: Tunnel Level Basement Level, Ground Floor First Floor Second Floor The “Special” zoned Erf for a Hotel The “Public Open Space” zoned Erf will be used as a Green Belt Buffer
9	Polokwane X106	Portion 171 Doornkraal 680 LS	190 Residential Erven
10	Polokwane X107	Portion 191 Doornkraal 680LS	142 Residential Erven
11	Polokwane X133	Klipfontein 670 LS Stoefontein 678 LS	3000 sites 208, 422 Ha 138,1129 ha

#	NAME	LOCALITY	NUMBER OF UNITS
12	Polokwane X134	Farm Volgestruisfontein 667 LS	2591 sites 178.4699 Ha
13	Nirvana X 5	Portion 74 and 75 of Ivy Dale Agricultural Holdings	105 sites 8. 92224 Ha

Source: PLK Town planning SBU

Township establishment processes for Mixed Housing Development (BNG) are currently underway for the below farm portions:

Table: Land with Township Establishment in progress.

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	SIZE
Portion of portion 7 of the Farm Palmietfontein 24KS	104.8367Ha
Farm Weltevreden 746 KS	Part of 5 980.00 Ha
Portion 151 to 160 Farm Sterkloop 688 LS	215 Ha

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

Although the Municipality does not own land in the Tribal Authority's area of jurisdiction, the provisions of the development objectives and development planning in general still vests within the Municipality's guidelines and control. These processes are illustrated in detail in the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act16 of 2013 (SPLUMA) By-Laws as well as Proclamation R188 of 1969 regulations.

2.11. LAND INVASIONS COURT ORDERS

As land invasions were starting to be a problem in the City of Polokwane, Council has obtained **Court orders** which protect the following land parcels.

1. Polokwane Extension 40
2. Polokwane Extension 108
3. Polokwane Extension 78
4. Polokwane Extension 106 and 107
5. Erf 6045 Pietersburg, Mikes Kitchen
6. Portion 1-16 of the farm Pelgrimshoop 630 LS
7. Erf 60 and 374 Seshego 9G
8. Erf 36 Seshego 9F
9. Erf 2406 Seshego E (Church)
10. Erf 5289 Pietersburg Extension 11
11. Erf 8518 Seshego Zone 1 extension

DRAFT

13. Erf 815 Mankweng E

Farms:

1. Farm Engelshedoornboom 688LS
2. Farm Volgestruisfontein 667 LS
3. Farm Klipfontein 670 LS
4. Holding 76 of Ivy Dale Agricultural Holdings
5. Farm Doorndrai 606/ LS
6. Farm Sterkloop 688 LS

Court Orders are fully implemented in dealing with land invasion to assist the City with proper Land Management and Planning. But the challenging issue is the cost lost due to unplanned invasion since it is unknown. A comprehensive strategy to deal with the Land invasion is crucial for the municipality in order to safe guard its properties.

2.12. SPATIAL CHALLENGES AND INTERVENTIONS PLANNED

Spatial analysis

i. Planning control and Outdoor advertising

Challenges

- inadequate control over illegal land use practices within the city
- shortage of staff
- inadequate control over illegal outdoor advertising
- management of contracts for outdoor advertising projects

Interventions

- Enforcement of Polokwane Integrated Land Use Scheme, 2022 to deal with contraventions relating to the illegal land practices over a property and issuing of notices.
- Charging of Non permitted use penalties and vigorous law enforcement
- Appointment of contractors for the removal of illegal outdoor advertisement
- Currently reviewing the Outdoor Advertisement By-Law, 2019, within the jurisdiction of the City of Polokwane. The review aims to ensure that the by-law remains relevant, legally compliant, and aligned with the developmental vision of the municipality

ii. Land Use Management

Challenges

- Installation of engineering services on approved municipal townships.
- Installation of engineering Services on new approved municipal townships.

DRAFT

- Lack of Truck in Facilities.
- Townships without Street names

Interventions

- The process of servicing municipal township has started. City & Regional SBU has appointed engineer to start with the designs for (Dilokong X 1) and thereafter contractors will be appointed to install services. The Detailed design report has been submitted for approval.
- List of Municipal Townships attached that require services to be installed. City & Regional SBU Services SBU to budget for and appoint engineers and contractors.
- Application for Truck Inn Facility lodged on Polokwane Extension 136 (Municipal Township). Municipal Planning Tribunal has decided on the application, and it is approved.
- Polokwane Local Geographic Names Policy has been adopted to deal with naming of streets within townships.

iii. Spatial Planning

Challenges

- Spatial Inequalities/Injustices
- Inadequate ownership of land in rural areas
- Lack of alignment in municipal plans
- Confusion in Multiple legislation not repealed by SPLUMA

Interventions

- Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grant (NDPG) is a grant that unlocks investments, by funding neighbourhood development projects to improve the life of residents in targeted areas, generally townships. The partnership of the municipality and National Treasury with this program, enable the municipality to implement projects identified in municipal plans in order to curb spatial inequalities.

- The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has approached the municipality on some portions which are owned by the state. The intention is to release land owned by state to the municipality in order to unlock development and promote ownership. For example, Portions affected by invasions (**Mamahule Area**) will be the initial intervention areas. The Precinct plan for Dalmada and Kalkfontein has been finalised and approved.

- Enhancing the status of the municipal airport has been prioritised. Mixed land uses are to be promoted around portions surrounding the airport. Terms of reference to conduct feasibility studies have been drafted in order to get a consultant to carry out the relevant studies.

- The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is one of the fundamental policies of the Government that seek to action the National Development Plan for the future needs. The purpose of the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is

DRAFT

to fundamentally provide a micro plan for a specific area with proper development guides. A Capital Expenditure Framework (CEF) is a long-term infrastructure plan that flows from a Spatial Development Framework. The CEF was developed in order to incorporate those Strategic Development Areas that details the Future Priority Development Areas, as such there will be alignment between planning, infrastructure and financial plans.

- Through the Urban Renewal Strategy and CBB Plan, 2016, areas where student accommodation is to be promoted has been identified. Plans to acquire the subject land is one of the priorities for affordable student housing and social housing.

- Polokwane Municipal Bylaw, 2017(as amended 2025) has been and approved by Council and currently in operation and covers the whole municipal area. Council has recently adopted an updated version of the Bylaw. **POLOKWANE INTEGRATED LAND USE SCHEME, 2022**, has been adopted and will cover areas within the boundaries of the Municipality in order to regulate land uses through the whole municipal area.

- The Municipality has integrated the two schemes which are now repealed to have a single wall to wall Land Use Scheme for the entire Municipal area of jurisdiction in order to comply with SPLUMA Act and Municipal Planning Bylaws.

2.12.1 General challenges and Intervention Planned

Spatial Challenges	Intervention Planned
• Inadequate ownership of land in rural areas • Illegal land uses • Lack of human resource to fast-track updating of spatial data regularly • Property Management (Leasing and valuation roll) • Limited Funding (Development of the strategies and feasibility studies) • Land claims • Illegal townships • Rapid unplanned occupation of land within urban fringe emanating from land claims and demarcation of site by Traditional Authorities e.g. Mamahule, Jansen Park, Moremadi, Morgen Zone/Juju Valley, Mamadimo and Kwena Moloto II • Poor integrated human settlement with institutional facilities • Limited power on the administration of R293 proclamation • Underutilised airport infrastructure • Fresh produce market for regional trade • Lack of commitment on the establishment of Cargo HUB or Agro-processing HUB • Townships without Street names • Management of Contracts for Outdoor Advertising Projects	• Enforcement of Polokwane Integrated Land Use Scheme, 2022 to deal with contraventions relating to the illegal land practices over a property and issuing of notices. • Charging of Non permitted use penalties and vigorous law enforcement • Appointment of contractors for the removal of illegal outdoor advertisement • Currently reviewing the Outdoor Advertisement By-Law, 2019, within the jurisdiction of the City of Polokwane. The review aims to ensure that the by-law remains relevant, legally compliant, and aligned with the developmental vision of the municipality. • The process of servicing Municipal Township has started. City Planning Services SBU has appointed engineer to start with the designs for (Dilokong X1) and the contractor will be appointed to install services. • List of Municipal Townships attached that require services to be installed. City

DRAFT

Spatial Challenges	Intervention Planned
• Installation of services on approved municipal townships. • Installation of Services on new approved municipal townships. • Lack of Truck in Facilities. • Spatial Inequalities/Injustices • Lack of Alignment in Municipal Plans • Lack of areas earmarked for Student Accommodation and policy to address the need • Confusion in Multiple legislation not repealed by SPLUMA	Planning Services SBU to budget for and appoint engineers and contractors. • Polokwane Local Geographic Names Policy has been adopted to deal with naming of streets within townships. • Release of land owned by state to the municipality in order to unlock development **(Mamahule Area)** and ownership **(Biko Park & Hospital View in Seshego)** will be the initial intervention areas. • • Council has obtained **Court orders** which protect the Council land parcels from Land invasion • • Neighborhood Development Partnership Grant (NDPG) is a grant that unlocks investments, by funding neighborhood development projects to improve the life of residents in targeted areas, generally townships. The partnership of the municipality and National Treasury with this program, enable the municipality to implement projects identified in municipal plans in order to curb spatial inequalities. • The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has approached the municipality on some portions which are owned by the state. The intention is to release land owned by state to the municipality in order to unlock development and promote ownership. For example, Portions affected by invasions (**Mamahule Area)** will be the initial intervention areas. • Enhancing the status of the municipal airport has been prioritised. Mixed land uses are to be promoted around portions surrounding the airport. The feasibility studies have been finalised and approved by Council. • The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is one of the fundamental policies of the Government that seek to action the National Development Plan for the future needs The purpose of the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is to fundamentally provide a micro plan for a specific area with proper development guides. A Capital Expenditure Framework (CEF) is a long-term infrastructure plan that flows from a Spatial Development Framework. The CEF was developed in order to incorporate those Strategic

DRAFT

Spatial Challenges	Intervention Planned
	Development Areas that details the Future Priority Development Areas, as such there will be alignment between planning, infrastructure and financial plans. • Through the Urban Renewal Strategy and CBB Plan, 2016, areas where student accommodation is to be promoted has been identified. Plans to acquire the subject land is one of the priorities for affordable student housing and social housing. • Polokwane Municipal Bylaw, 2017 (as amended 2025) has been and approved by Council and currently in operation and covers the whole municipal area.

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.13. SPATIAL INTERPRETATION OF THE POLOKWANE MUNICIPALITY

2.13.1 Key guiding policies and municipal By-laws

a. SDF
b. EGDP
c. URS/CBD Development Plan
d. Density policies
e. Rural Settlement Strategy
f. Telecommunication mast policy
g. Spaza and Tavern Policy
h. IUDF

2.13.2 Economic opportunities and growth

1) Polokwane Municipality is a gate way to Africa
2) SEZ/Industrial park development
3) Post incubation hub at Polokwane extension 26
4) Cargo Hub/Agro-processing HUB
5) Truck-Inn/Logistic HUB
6) Development of Science Park
7) Eco-estate around the Bakoni Malapa
8) Arts and Cultural Hub

DRAFT

9) Urban Renewal projects (development of the High-rise office and residential accommodation)
10) Limpopo Academic Hospital

2.14. RURAL DEVELOPMENT

In terms of the Rural settlement development challenges, the Municipality must comply with section 3-8 of the SPLUMA.

Approximately 70% of the area in Polokwane Municipality is Rural and need to be careful considered. Through public participation on the Draft Rural Settlement Strategy, it was discovered that, rural areas have potential in Nodal development and those areas close to our Sub-urban areas. This tends to have major development along the main roads and attract people to seek residential properties, business etc. in the assessment, it was found that there are:

- Informal settlement within road reserve and flood lines
- Uncoordinated spatial settlement
- Poor streets and roads in informal settlement
- Un-planned desired land use types
- Unclear determination of the property's sizes
- Poor Cemetery planning and maintenance
- Land allocation disputes
- Poor monitoring and evaluation on the registered servitudes, flood lines, road reserves.

This goes beyond to old settlement as they extend. In this regards, Spatial Planning has developed the **Rural Settlement Strategy, 2017** with the aim of addressing this spatial pattern. Once the document has presented, the Traditional Local Authority has seen the potential and realize to partner with the Municipality through development of those area. Letters of request was received and need urgent attention.

Our Land Use Scheme survey conducted in 2012/2013 has data that portray zoning of that area and captures in the system. The following challenges have to be addressed:

a. Development of the proper integrated human settlement that will be sustainable: this are the benefit
   - Building Plans approval fees
   - Rezoning
   - Managing land use since we have two land use Scheme and Town Planning Scheme that covers the wall-to-wall scheme.
   - Proper planning for other services such as Roads, Water and sanitation etc.

b. Land survey for all settlement in Polokwane municipal Jurisdiction:
   - Proper stand numbers and streets
   - Land dispute resolution
   - Proper stats
   - Proper maintenance etc.

DRAFT

c. Land Use Survey for the whole Municipality
   - Proper zoning and
   - conflict resolution
   - Business Registration and management
   - Adhere to SPLUMA

2.14.1 Molepo Mall Development

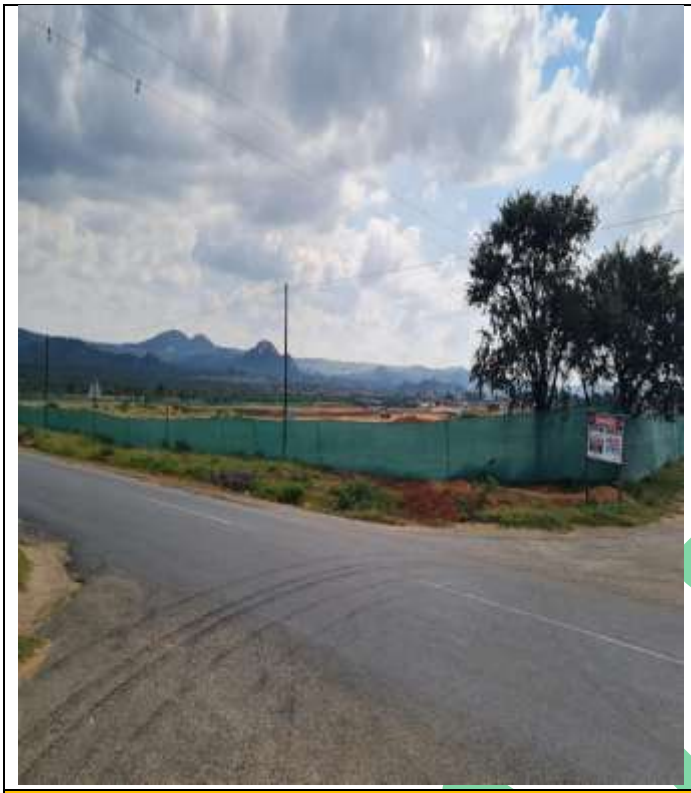
The mall is being constructed on the farm Laastehoop 1054 LS (Sebjeng Village along the D4040 road). The subject project is located under Functional Area 2: Mankweng/Sebayeng Region and classified under Communal Rural.

The shopping mall is anticipated to be completed in **December 2026** with **Shoprite** as one of the main Anchor tenants., the centre will serve as strategic commercial node within the rural areas, providing residents with convenient access to retail goods, banking facilities, restaurants, and other essential amenities that are often only available in distant **urban centres**. The developments will contribute positively to local economic development by creating both temporary construction employment and permanent job opportunities when Completed.

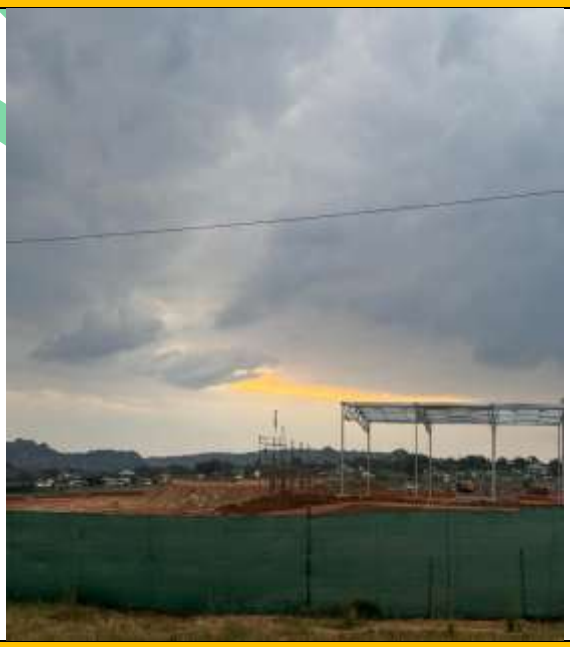
Molepo Mall is still under Construction as at **13 July 2026**

Molepo Mall Construction

DRAFT



Molepo Mall Construction



Molepo Mall Construction

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.14.2 Moletjie Mall development

The mall is being constructed on a part of portion 62 of the Farm Locatie of Maletzie 606LS (Mabokelele Village).

The subject project is located under Functional Area 3: Moletjie/Aganang under Mabokelele Population Concentration Point. The character area allows for the concentration of business

and community services within village neighbourhood areas, to serve the needs of the surrounding villages. The subject property is along the district road R567 which is an activity spine, providing mobility linking Polokwane, Seshego right until Botswana

The construction of **phase one** of shopping mall which is **13170m²** is expected to be completed in **October 2026**. The multi-million-rand shopping centre is set to bring convenient shopping closer to residents who currently travel to Seshego, Polokwane and surrounding areas. The project is a collaboration between the **Royal Moletši Traditional Council** and private developers. Phase One of retail space will have anchors like Shoprite alongside several national brands outlets including KFC, Hungry Lion, Debonairs Pizza, Mr Price, Pepkor brands and more.

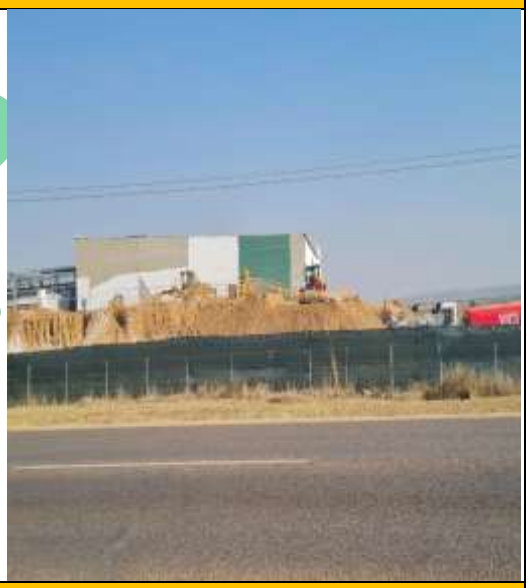
These key developments in the rural clusters supports the principles of spatial justice and spatial sustainability by improving access to services for historically underserved rural communities. The shopping malls will reduce the need for long-distance travel to urban centres, resulting in lower transportation costs for residents and improved convenience.

Future investment and infrastructure upgrades, including improvements to roads, public transport facilities, water supply, electricity networks, and telecommunications infrastructure will emanate from the projects. The developments are therefore considered desirable and in the public interest as it promotes economic growth, employment creation, service delivery, investment attraction, and improved quality of life for the surrounding rural communities while supporting the broader objectives of sustainable spatial development.

Moletjie Mall as at **17 July 2026**

DRAFT

Moletjie Mall Development



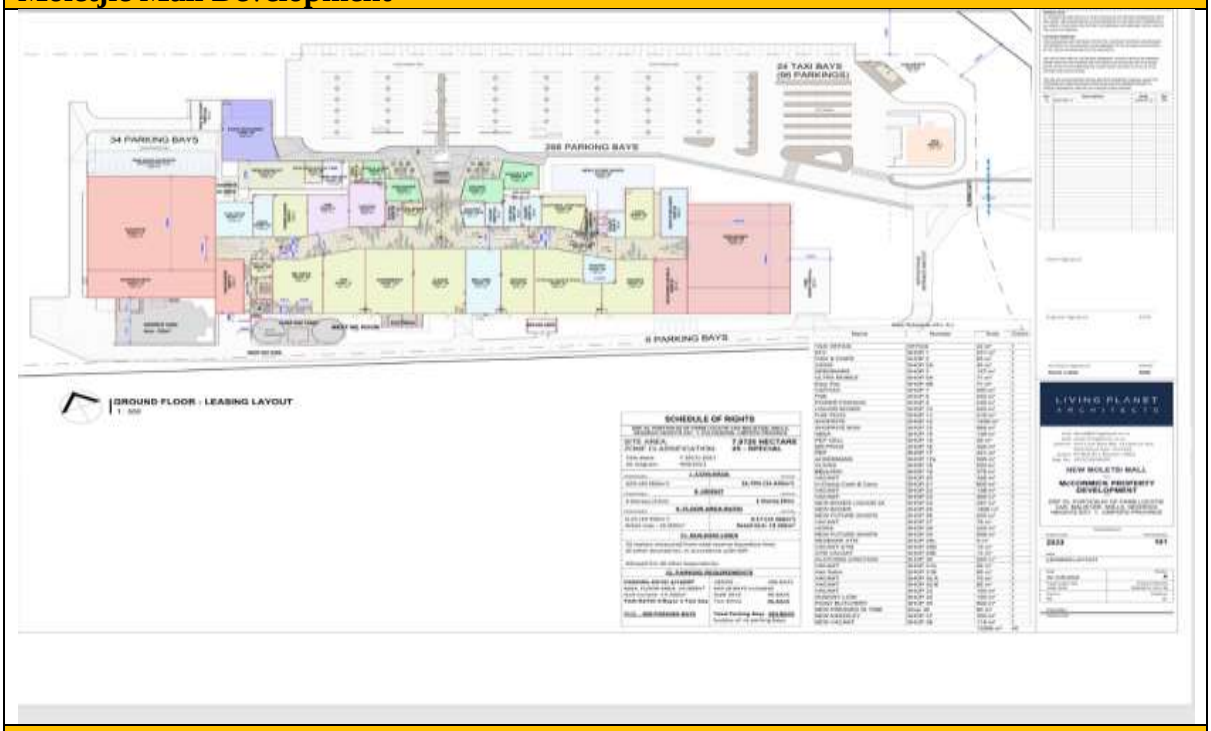
Moletjie Mall Development

Moletjie Mall Development

Moletjie Mall Development

Moletjie Mall Development

Moletjie Mall Development



Moletjie Mall Development

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.15. URBAN DEVELOPMENT

2.15.1 Integrated Urban Development Framework Plan

The City of Polokwane tend to develop policies that demand integration of all resources and different directorate to interact with one another. Looking at the directionless, the Municipality tends to shift away from purpose built (Future planning) and concentrate on basic services rather advance proactive Plans that aim at advancing service delivery mechanism looking at the 2030-2050 urbanization challenges. Government policies are being development with a long terms vision, but it is left with the planners to properly re-shape the city toward the future

needs. Advance skills and commitment of the planners is required. The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is one of the fundamental policies of the Government that seek to action the National Development Plan for the future needs.

The purpose of the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is to fundamentally provide a micro plan for a specific area with proper development guides. In this case, The CBD and parts of the Industrial area and some neighbourhoods were left without being guided by any of those SDA's. In terms of Table 66 of the current Spatial Development Framework, 2010, it was noted that the IUDF must be developed. Therefore, the proposed development strategy seeks to incorporate those SDA's in to an Integrated Urban Framework Plan that details the Future and Integrated plan for the Provincial growth point.

The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is a response to our urbanisation trends and the directive by the National Development Plan (NDP) to develop an urban development policy that will cater for the increasing numbers by ensuring proper planning and necessary infrastructure to support this growth. Polokwane Municipality has to develop its own Integrated Urban Framework Plan that will propose a detail plan on the City Development Strategy looking towards on a sustainable urbanisation model at the following key policy levers:

- Integrated urban planning and management
- Integrated transport and mobility
- Integrated sustainable human settlements
- Integrated urban infrastructure
- Efficient land governance and management
- Inclusive economic development
- Empowered active communities.
- Effective urban governance.
- Sustainable finances

DRAFT

2.16 ECONOMIC SPIN-OFF DEVELOPMENTS

2.16.1 Baobab Gardens Motor City

Baobab Boulevard township is surrounded by existing township developments on three sides. On the north eastern side is Bendor X87 (i.e., **Thornhill shopping centre**, an area approved for an office development with the rest being a residential development consisting of both single and sectional title residential development). Next to the Munnik road on the northern side are townships such as Bendor X32 and 44 (i.e. mostly residential development consisting of both single and sectional title residential development and a filling station). Adjacent to De Wet Drive to the south west of the application site is a township for up market single residential development known as Polokwane extension 11 (Sterpark). The area to the south is vacant and part of the Remaining Extent the Farm Krugersburg 993 LS. The site occupies an important location in relation to other significant features of the City. The site is close to the newly completed N1 ring road and therefore has excellent and direct connections to the south and north-east.

The location advantages are amongst other, the following:

i. The eastern area has a large concentration of middle to higher income housing at Polokwane extension 138 that will include the botanical gardens and Bendor 126 for mixed land uses.
ii. The huge volume of existing "older" motor industry/motor dealership rights in Polokwane city, and similar rights approved in recent years elsewhere outside the CBD such as along the N1 (now R101) south impact negatively on the development of Polokwane X124 for motor and motor related businesses. Most of the motor dealerships are "established" in their current locations and the remaining motor dealerships are currently being established in new locations such as MGM Group at Polokwane X124 (Baobab Boulevard) and others at the southern N1/R101 entrance such as Jeep/Mercedes/Mitshibishi/Dodge (pre-owned on Erf 141 Ivypark) and Audi (on Erven 2 and 3 Ivypark). Westvaal dealership (Chevrolet/Opel/Isuzu) will relocate to Erf 2506 Ivypark X52.
iii. **Mall of the north** is a secondary activity node with Munnik road an activity spine/corridor and mixed-use development is allowed in this development area. The area is close to the Mall of the North regional shopping centre and therefore also close to the N1 ring road. Baobab Boulevard therefore has excellent and direct connections to the south and north-east.
iv. Baobab Boulevard is part of the Mall of the North secondary activity node/Munnik road corridor and far enough from Polokwane CBD to functionally service a huge surrounding residential community. In conjunction with Thornhill shopping centre which is opposite the road on the most north eastern side of Baobab Boulevard the "combined Mall of the North node" is even more functional, without compromising the operations of the CBD.
v. The north-eastern part of the city has been rapidly expanding in recent years, and the quality and nature of Baobab Boulevard once fully developed will be a huge attribute to the area and also to Polokwane City.
vi. Secondary nodes and activity corridors are part of the urban structure, particularly in a rapidly growing city. The CBD is the central, economic heart of the city with a role to serve the high order retail and general business needs of the community. Activity nodes and corridors that lead into the city provide complementary economic opportunities and speciality functions, such as Mall of the North and Baobab Boulevard. Multi-nodal cities such as Polokwane are function-oriented, and these uses need not to be located in the CBD because they have specific space needs and operational requirements.

2.16.2 The Greenery

The Greenery – named in tribute to the **municipal nursery** that used to be located on the site, opened its doors with 23 handpicked retailers that include well-known favourites and a variety of local stores and speciality services.

DRAFT

The Greenery, Polokwane's much-anticipated neighbourhood shopping centre, celebrated its grand Limpopo opening on 26 October 2023.

The 11,000m^2 centre offers a fresh, upmarket, and vibrant neighbourhood retail establishment to residents' doorsteps.

The modern convenience centre is located on the corners of **Grobler, Oost, and Thabo Mbeki** Streets, and in close proximity to schools, medical facilities, and other local amenities. This not only gives it superb visibility but excellent accessibility for local shoppers. The Greenery features an impressive offering of latest specification anchor tenants

2.16.3 Aerial Overview for Greenery

Aerial Overview for Greenery

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.16.4 Limpopo Provincial Theatre Construction

The construction of **Limpopo Provincial Theatre** has started. The location of the **R376-million** theatre is at the **Bakone Malapa cultural precinct**, it is **10km** south of Polokwane city centre, along the R37 road to Burgersfort. The complete theatre will be handed over to the community of Limpopo by **31st May 2026.**

Limpopo Provincial Theatre Construction

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

The construction of the long-awaited and much-talked about Limpopo Provincial Theatre has finally taken off. This is after the **official sod turning ceremony** was conducted. At the helm of the event held at Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum, the site of the planned theatre. The news will come as a relief for the people of Limpopo, as they have had to wait all eight years

The location of the **R376-million** theatre, the Bakone Malapa cultural precinct, is 10km south of Polokwane city centre, along the R37 road to Burgersfort.

This 24-month venture will result in a modern theatre, complete with a main hall seating 600, a secondary hall for 200. Further facilities will include a restaurant, coffee shop, bookshop and bar. This project is going beyond a cultural hub, but a commitment to the success of our artists and the advancement of Limpopo's cultural and economic stature. This theatre will serve as a cultural epicentre for the province, a dedicated space that elevates and celebrates the diverse artistic expressions within Limpopo. At the same time, it will provide a platform for local artists to showcase their talents, fostering a sense of community pride and identity."

2.16.5 Boost for Limpopo Economy

The theatre in particular is significant here at Limpopo Province because our province has rich cultural heritage. A provincial theatre, therefore, becomes a beacon for preserving and promoting the unique history, traditions and stories that define the local identity.

Moreover, we are opening up a stage for economic growth and development. The completed structure should stimulate the creative and cultural industries, generating employment opportunities for various professionals such as stage managers, voice-over artists, designers and performers."

2.17 Urban Renewal projects

DRAFT

Polokwane Municipality has adopted the Urban Renewal Strategy and CBD Development Plan 2016. This policy has set the key principles that support the current Program of “Re a ga” Polokwane that highlight the following:

The City of Polokwane has launched programme called "Re aga Polokwane", that is geared towards ensuring that the City and its citizens are working together to build the city of Polokwane. The "Re aga Polokwane" programme – strengthening the partnership in **building a smart city by 2030 and beyond**. Polokwane is the Capital city of the Limpopo Province-opportunity for economic growth and experience rural urban migration. Polokwane is likely to face urbanisation challenges as the signs have already surfaced such as engineering capacity and high demand of housing typologies. Major projects being embarked by the City of Polokwane:

- ✓ the **replacement of 177km of AC (asbestos cement) pipes** in the municipality's jurisdiction.
- ✓ **to replace conventional water and electricity m**eters with smart meters in a number of areas in the City.
- ✓ the introduction of a **rapid bus service**;
- ✓ a **waste management project**.
- ✓ as well as a major **student accommodation** drive to support the growing number of students in the city.
- ✓ Other **Public Private Partnership on Mixed use development** through a Long-term development
- ✓ Water Master Plans
- ✓ Urban Renewal projects
- ✓ etc.

Key strategic/Catalytic development projects on the Long Terms Development leases and other Municipal initiative includes:

- Development of the Eco-estate on the part of the Game reserve or theme park
- Proposed Sasol Depot at the proposed Polokwane Extension 136
- Support initiatives for Agro processing, Logistic Hub

2.17.1 Cargo and Logistic Hub

The State of Province Address 2019, the Limpopo Premier Honorable Mathabatha has highlighted the progress made with regard to the proposed SEZ in the province and the district and provincial SDF identified Polokwane for SEZ based on the Agro-processing and Logistics.

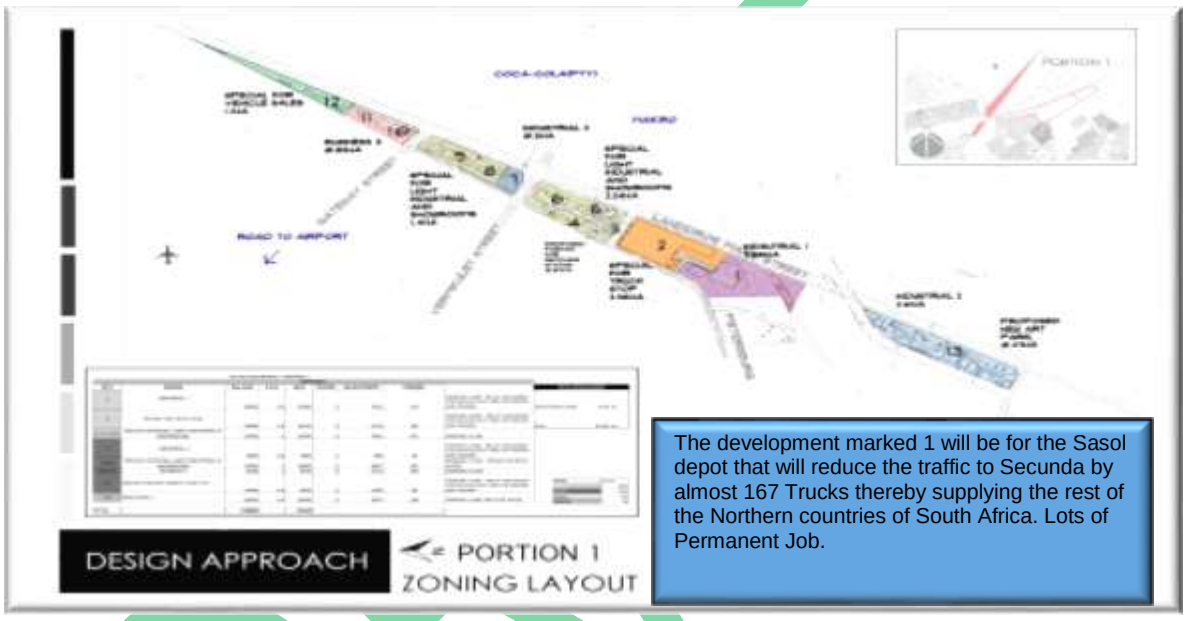
The municipality has concluded the pre-feasibility study for Agro-processing and Logistics Hub which was approved by Council and submitted to the Office of the Premier for consideration

DRAFT

as a provincial catalytic project. The project has also been presented at the provincial EXCO Lekgotla and provincial Economic Cluster.

2.17.2 Truck-inn and Cargo HUB (Polokwane extension 136)

The Figure below illustrates the proposed Township with the uses as highlighted. The **Long-term development leases** were awarded in line with the development of the Cargo and Logistic Hub concept. An **industrial Township** with the following uses:



- **Industrial zone properties for Sasol depot, Tanker's park-inn, cargo truck-inn, Vehicle sales lot.**
- **Public Garage**
- **Special for other uses.**

2.17.3 Agro-Processing.

Agro-processing industry is a subset of manufacturing that processes raw materials and intermediate products derived from the agricultural sector. Agro-processing means transforming products that originate from agriculture, forestry and fisheries. The Standard Industrial Classification also categorises the following eleven divisions under the agro-processing industry: food, beverages, paper and paper products, wood and wood products, textiles, wearing apparel, furniture, tobacco, rubber products, footwear and leather and leather

products. Polokwane has a strong logistic support from different part of the region and can be able to take that advantage.

Part of the development of the agro-processing, the industrial development becomes the key, since three modes of transport (Air, Rail and Road) are integrated within the identified area being Polokwane International Airport. The Agro-processing industry is among the sectors identified by the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), the New Growth Path and the National Development Plan for its potential to spur growth and create jobs because of its strong backward linkage with the primary agricultural sector. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) has established a Directorate: Agro-processing Support to complement the interventions undertaken by several governmental departments, notably, the Department of Trade and Industry, by focusing on supporting the establishment and growth of Small and Medium Enterprises (SMEs) for Agro-processing. Polokwane by far, has already earmarked the need for the Agro- processing and Logistics Hub to support the economic growth and development with the support of the sector departments.

2.17.4 Industrial Development

Polokwane Municipal Economic growth is being hampered by the less production in terms of the Manufacturing sector. The Municipality has dedicated the land on the Old N1 Road (North) now known as the Landros Mare Street as part of the Commercial and Industrial Development. In order to improve the **Airport Precinct**, all the encore development that complement the Agro-processing and Logistic Hub must be prioritised within the area. The main issue for the success of the industrial development is cantered around the following key factors for the success of the industries:

- power supply.
- communications - including transport, telecommunications.
- labour supply - including workers with the right skills.
- access to market - where the goods are sold.
- grants and financial incentives - usually from governments.
- raw materials.

The DTI has collaborated with a range of institutions and stakeholders in developing strategies and policies to achieve rapid industrialisation of the country's manufacturing sectors. The institutions and stakeholders include other government departments, particularly in the Economic Sector and Employment Cluster, the National Economic Development and Labour

DRAFT

Council, and organised business formations, such as Business Unity South Africa (BUSA) and Industry Associations.

The **DTI** has identified institutions and partners that support the implementation of its industrial development mandate which include:

- National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications (NRCS)
- National Metrology Institute of South Africa (NMISA)
- South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)
- Industrial Development Corporation (IDC)
- The South African National Accreditation System (SANAS)

In order for the Polokwane to successful have an area that support fully the Industrial development, the SBU on economic Development and Trade must be energised in order to access funding and attract investors through the support of the DTI for betterment of the Limpopo Economy and nationally.

NB: The projects in this regard to do a comprehensive feasibility study has commenced in order to deal with the aspects of the SEZ establishment after detail studies and approaches are dealt with.

2.17.5 City wide Development initiatives

The Municipality has developed the Urban Renewal Strategy and the CBD Development Plan, 20169(currently under review). The idea was to rejuvenate the city to be a functional business zone with Mixed Land Use Development that will complement the cities vision of being the SMART CITY. The Urban Development Framework developed by the National Department of COGTA laid a several levers that now incorporated in the **CEF** approved by Cogta as presented above. The municipality strive to align the said Policy with the URS and CBD Plan for its identified projects.

The proposed idea will strengthen the attraction of the Investors and office accommodation on the scattered Municipal services points around the city. The down Town area is mostly affected by the illegal land uses. It is from the said plans that the Municipality must enable major urban regeneration through Private Public Partnership for developing the area. Land acquisition is a best tool for the Municipality to develop high density development within the

DRAFT

area and be supported by the relaxation of the development control and introduction of the incentive on development.

Several land parcels were identified for mixed uses looking at the potential impact that the development will have in the economic growth and addressing the unemployment rate. The approach will be sent to the Council regarding establishing the Data base for the prospective developer who have financial muscle to carry any task that the Municipality intend to develop. This include following the SCM processes and national Treasury Regulations.

2.17.6 Commercialisation of Municipal Facilities/Properties

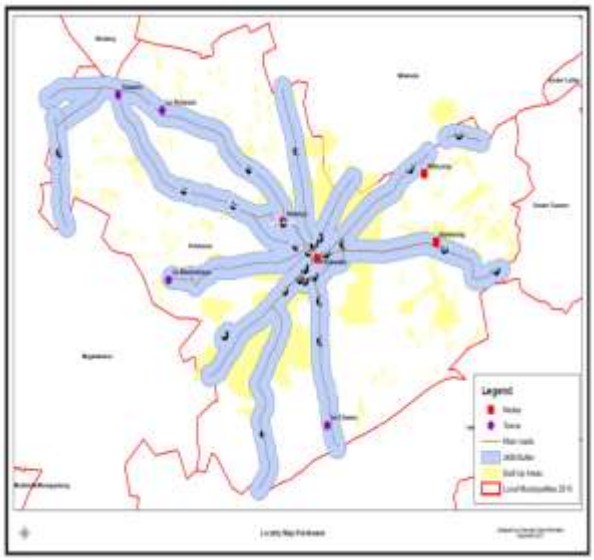
The municipality has number of the community facilities and other amenities that need urgent attention. This includes the **Peter Mokaba stadium, the game reserve, Jack Botes hall Airport, Library Garden and Showground** that may pose positive impact to the community if well managed. Some of these activities need expertise from the people who are specialising in such field. Learning from other cities that own such facilities, the majority are outsourced through the services of the private companies to generate more revenue and lessen the burden of expenditure by the Municipality. For example, the Game reserve may be turned in an Eco-estate that promote the men contact with the nature. The stadium for multipurpose centre Bakoni Malapa for Innovation art and cultural Hub as it is strategically located within the Corridors.

2.18 Metropolitan Municipal Requirements

It is the prerogative of the Municipality to become a metropolitan Municipality within the next 3-4 years. The basics should be laid in order to have a proper road map in achieving the Metropolitan status. The Municipal Structures Act, Section 2 provides that – Category A Municipality if that area can reasonably be regarded as-

(a) a conurbation (continuous network of urban communities) [metropolitan] featuring-

DRAFT



(i) areas of high population density.

(ii) an intense movement of people, goods, and services.

(iii) extensive development; and

(iv) multiple business districts and industrial areas.

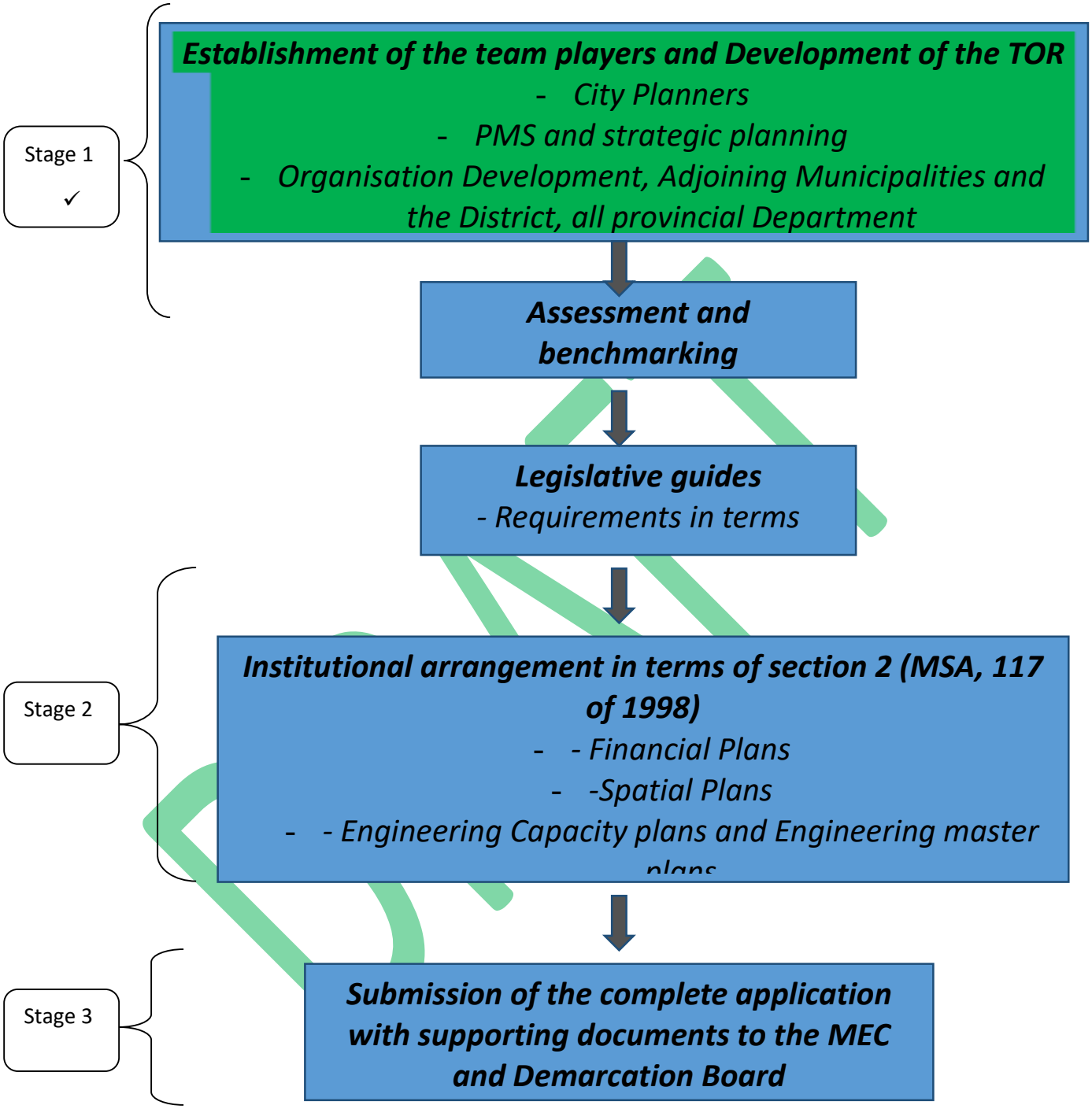
(b) a centre of economic activity with a complex and diverse economy.

(c) a single area for which integrated development planning is desirable; and

(d) having strong interdependent social and economic linkages between its constituent units. Should apply to the relevant authority for consideration and such application should be assessed looking at the above criteria and other requirement that the demarcation board may require

DRAFT

2.18.1 ROAD MAP TO METRO



2.19 Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital

City of Polokwane and Edu park donated Remaining Extent of Erf 6861 Pietersburg Extension 30, measuring 19.90 Hectares. The aforesaid Donation was in line with a **Council Resolution** dated 28th of February 2012.

The aforesaid Council Resolution contain the conditions which the Donee must comply with before the transfer of the ownership such as rezoning and that was already adhered to. The recent Council resolution also provides conditions that the Donee should adhered to and has since started to communicate with the Municipality.

Progress to date, the donation agreement has been signed and **construction has commenced**.

Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital

The construction is underway on the R5.3 billion Limpopo Central Hospital — a 488-bed facility offering full specialized services and academic training in support of the medical school. The project is expected to be completed by **December 2026**

Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.19.1 R4-billion New Limpopo Central Hospital

Plans are afoot to deliver Limpopo's first academic hospital that will see the province's residents no longer having to travel to Gauteng to receive tertiary medical services.

This is going to be a **488-bed hospital** providing over **20 services**. Those services, amongst others, include **all disciplines of surgery, trauma, burns, oncology, gynaecology, neonatal care, paediatrics and emergency medicine.**

This state-of-the-art facility will be essential in ensuring that our citizens have access to quality healthcare services.

Preliminary estimates show that the project is expected to generate 1 220 part-time jobs during the construction phase and create 2 461 full-time equivalent jobs in Polokwane and surrounding areas, once the hospital is fully operational.

The project would cost a whopping **R4-billion** funded by the National Health Department on behalf of the provincial health Department.

2.19.2 Ministerial Visit to the New Limpopo Central Hospital

A significant progress is visible within the New Limpopo Central Academic Hospital project constructed within the vicinity of Peter Mokaba Stadium, the hospital is going to be a game changer. The hospital is one of five academic hospitals in the country, that will be equipped with advanced medical technologies to provide top-notch diagnostic procedures and treatments.

The hospital will have a **488 bed** capacity and also serve as a major teaching hospital for the University of Limpopo Faculty of Health Sciences and School of Medicine. It will promote medical education and research. The implementing agent of the project is the Development Bank of Southern Africa.

The implementing agent of the project is the Development Bank of Southern Africa.

2.20. IDENTIFICATION OF LAND FOR STUDENT ACCOMMODATION

Erf 20802 – 20815 and 20818 – 20821 Polokwane Extension 106 zoned Residential 3 have already been advertised for **student accomodation.** Some other erven in Polokwane Extenstion 79 also advertised for hign density residentail developments. Additionally Council has adopded the **CBD Urban Renewal Strategy** of which one of its objectives was to identify a strategy to curb illegal accommodation and devise a means for student accommodation.

DRAFT

The area in downtown CBD is in such a decay state, and vulnerable students are residing here in appalling state.

The list of five institutions namely the **University of Limpopo**, **UNISA Polokwane Campus**, **TUT Polokwane Campus**, **Capricorn FET College**, **Boston City Campus** and **Business College** which developers and the Municipality could partner with in order to meet the demand for student accommodation within the CBD. Only three of these institutions currently have accommodation available - **University of Limpopo located in Mankweng**, **TUT Polokwane Campus and Capricorn FET College** both located in Polokwane Town.

2.21. Strategic Land for Mixed Land Use

The majority of illegal land uses are located within the north-western part of the CBD as depicted (Buite, Boom, Bok, Dahl, Devenish, Excelsior and Onder Street). The majority of illegal land uses relate to student boarding accommodation and rental units, (approximately 33 properties), Some of the most serious problems associated with illegal land uses are illegal water/ electricity connections and temporary partitions within building structures. Amongst others, large numbers of people (up to 20 and more) use existing houses for informal accommodation purposes. Plans to aquire the subject land is one of the priorities for affordable student housing and or social housing. Block 1 to 6.The **Map Below** indicate the location of block 1-6.

Number 7 to 8 can be open for the mixed use for the city main library, open market on the 2-4th floor while the ground floor can be used as City parking or taxi holding as currently being used.

2.21.1 Legislative and policy frameworks

The Spatial Analysis chapter and the development growth of Polokwane Municipality is guided by the following legislative and policy frameworks:

DRAFT

i. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (108 of 1996)
ii. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (16 of 2013)
iii. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Regulations: Land Use Management. and General Matters, 2015
iv. National Development Plan, 2012
v. Town Planning and Township Ordinance 15 of 1986 to be repealed by the
vi. Polokwane Economic Growth and Development Plan, Vision 2030
vii. Administration and Control of Townships Regulations R293 of 1962
viii. Proclamation R188 of 1969 Regulations
ix. Communal Land Rights Act (11 of 2004)
x. Upgrading of Land Tenure Rights Act (112 of 1991
xi. Interim Protection of Informal Land Rights Act No 31 of 1996
xii. Extension of Security of Tenure Act (Act no. 62 of 1997)
xiii. Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act No 19 of 1998
xiv. Restitution of Land Rights Act No 22 of 1994
xv. Land Administration Act No 2 of 1995
xvi. National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998
xvii. Planning Profession Act No 36 of 2002
xviii. LIBRA, Act 5 of 2003 and its regulation (Limpopo Business Registration Regulations 2015)

The next Housing Analysis will therefore be guided by the following legislative and policy frameworks:

i. National Housing Act (107 of 1997)
ii. Breaking New Ground, 2005
iii. National Housing Code, 2009
iv. Rental Housing Act (50 of 1999)
v. Limpopo Housing Act (2 of 2006)
vi. The Social Housing Act (16 of 2008)

2.22 Catalytic Land Development Programme in support of the CEF.

Below are the **9 key catalytic projects** that will unlock economic growth in those spaces and contribute towards job creation and ultimately reduce unemployment in the City of Polokwane.

DRAFT

2.22.1 Science and Research Park

Science and Research Park to be establish at Weltevreden Farm at the southern part of the new interchange at N1-By-pass. The Municipality has already **awarded the land** amount to **274ha land** for development of the Science Park of which the studies has already commenced. Limpopo connection is currently conducting **Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA)** and engineering capacity assessment. The development form part of the **Dilokong Corridor** in support of the National Development Plan **(NDP**).

2.22.2 Bakoni Malapa Arts and Cultural Hub

Bakoni Malapa arts and cultural hub as proposed will support the issues of artists in terms of the **film and recording studio, theatre, incubation stall**.
This will increase tourism at the Municipal facility. That will form belt of the **sport precinct** as proposed in the **SDF,** that stretches from Peter Mokaba stadium. The Feasibility study (**DSAC)** and Township Application processes funded by the Polokwane Municipality. Bulk engineering services to be provided by Polokwane Municipality to the area and funded under the IUDG. This project is part of implementing the **CEF.**

2.22.3 Industrial Park or SEZ N1 North Corridor

- **Industrial Park or SEZ N1 North Corridor** site identification around the **airpor**t will be a key towards **application for the expansion of the Municipal Boundary further to the North** in order to cater for at least **200km²** of land.
- Since the northern part of the City border with the **Molemole Municipality** just **5-10KM** from the City, it is prudent that Polokwane Municipality start with application to request the expansion of its Boundary (land) to at least **40km** from the current boundary to includes the SEZ or Industrial Park development.
- Municipality has received Lots of proposals for Townships by private developers of which that is encouraging in the area for Facilities such as Tertiary education facility (admin block, faculty departments, on campus student housing, warden housing, recreational facilities). Public garage, convenient shopping centre and food court to be assessed based on the Spatial Development Framework of the Municipality. The revised SDF has included the extending of the urban edge for support of the proposed SEZ/Industrial Park and Development within the earmarked areas. The initiatives will support Job creation and Economic Growth.

DRAFT

2.22.4 Agro processing

- **Agro-processing** - the support for the proposed development concept is centred on the **Logistic and Agro-processing** taking advantage of the transport modes available that includes:
  - **Air network (airport).**
  - **Rail network (railway Station).**
  - **Road's network (Bus, taxi station).**
- The Municipality will take advantage over the identified **Musina /Makhado SEZ and Tubatse SEZ** as Logistic Hub.
- Polokwane as a Capital City of Limpopo Province is also a gateway to Africa and rest of the World.
- Several MOU were signed for trade with the African Countries and the Municipality intend to participate in the market to boost in the **Economic Growth** through Manufacturing and processing of **raw materials**.

2.22.5 Transit Oriented Development (TOD) precinct

Transit Oriented Development (TOD):

TOD precinct –will be development phases as part of supporting the **SEZ:** airport corridor or industrial parks. The TOD precinct development will include **truck inn.** All the roads from the SADC connects to Polokwane CBD. The massive industrial sites connect with the said modes of transport. Good positioning of the Land use with are compactable with each other and further be supported by the vast land available for future development. The Council has already release land for the feasibility by the Directorate Transportation to establish the **Truck inn**.

2.22.6 International Softball stadium

- **International Softball stadium** - Polokwane Municipality has receive funding from **SRSA** through the **UIDG** to **design and construct** an international softball stadium over the **next 3 years.**
- **30M** was budget allocated for the 2020**/21 FY.**
- Polokwane Municipality has made a **pocket of land available** within its **sport precinct hub** for this development.
- The Concept designs have been approved with all stakeholders.
- The municipality is engaging **DCOG** support on maximisation of this project to showcase Real-time spatial transformations,

2.22.7 Fencing of Softball Stadium

DRAFT

Fencing of Softball Stadium

2.22.8 Post incubation Hub

- **Post incubation Hub** - the intension is to lease and develop a park with the aim of providing the alternative and opportunity to the incubates and investors that we attract during our marketing.
- The installation of services is complete. The perimeter fencing and access road is also complete. The municipality will be going out on public to advertise for long-term development leases for certain erfs of the industrial park.

2.22.9 Eco-Estate at Game reserve

- **Eco-Estate at Game reserve -**proposal for the **Eco-estate** will boost the Polokwane Game reserve for **tourism and accommodation facilities** and attract **investors** on the South eastern part of the City as the **future expansion** of the City.
- This will be a **high marketed residential development** where man is in contact with nature.

2.23 Overall Progress Report on Catalytic Land Development Programme.

DRAFT

CATALYTIC PROJECT NAME	PROJECT STATUS QUO	PROJECT OWNER & PROGRESS (MUNICIPAL OR PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT)	ESTIMATED ECONOMIC SPINOFFS.
1.LIMPOPO CENTRAL HOSPITAL (LCH) LOCATION: ERF 6861 PIETERSBURG EXTENSION 30, NEAR EDUPARK Size: 19.90 Hectares Project cost: **Approximately 5 billion**. 488-bed tertiary hospital	*Progress to date: 56% (04 August 2026, confirmed by the project Social Facilitator deployed by DBSA).* The Limpopo Central Hospital (LCH) (Academic Hospital) will be the first in Limpopo province.	PROJECT SEAT: DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH/ DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS LAND DONATED BY POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY	Project cost: **Approximately 5 billion**. 2400 temporary jobs during construction and more than 1000 permanent jobs upon completion.
2.PROVINCIAL THEATRE. ARTS AND CULTURAL HUB *Located along the R37, Dilokong Corridor. Provincial State theatre structure development is projected to cost R315 000 000 construction.*	***Construction underway*** *The construction of the state theatre underway and completion is anticipated in April 2027. A provincial task team established to deal/source funds for Bulk Engineering Services.*	***Stakeholders: Department of Sports, Arts and culture (DSAC) and LDSAC. Municipality. Department of Public Works.***	Bakone Malapa arts and cultural hub as proposed, will support the issues of artists in terms of the film and recording studio, theatre, incubation stall. 350 temporary jobs during construction and 50 permanent jobs upon completion.
3.SCIENCE AND RESEARCH PARK AND NEW TUT CAMPUS	Progress to date: Township register and proclamation be finalised November 2024. Bulk services for the township	***LEDA/ESKOM/TUT***	8362 temporary jobs during construction 1532 during implementation

DRAFT

CATALYTIC PROJECT NAME	PROJECT STATUS QUO	PROJECT OWNER & PROGRESS (MUNICIPAL OR PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT)	ESTIMATED ECONOMIC SPINOFFS.
	remain a challenge. Polokwane Municipal Planning Tribunal approved the Township on 26 April 2022 (Ivy Park Ext 63). Environmental Authorisation issued and General Plan approved by Surveyor General. Tshwane University of Technology (TUT) has on plans to build a brand-new campus in the City of Polokwane. The property is located on portion of Erf 3208, Ivypark Extension 63.		

DRAFT

CATALYTIC PROJECT NAME	PROJECT STATUS QUO	PROJECT OWNER & PROGRESS (MUNICIPAL OR PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT)	INVESTMENT TO DATE and (area of projects as per the Spatial Plans)
4. SEZ (Agro-processing and logistic) N1 North Corridor	Feasibility study finalised and approved by Council. The municipality is engaging Department of Public Works for the purpose of land disposal.	Polokwane Municipality (Budgeted)	Planning and Social 100% for planning Within the Functional Area 1
5. Softball stadium	Planning Completed and construction has commenced	Polokwane Municipality and National Department of Sports	Planning and Economic 100% Planning done. 56% in Construction
6. Post incubation Hub	The bulk services, access road and perimeter fencing are complete.	Municipality but to seek funding from Department of Small Business Development	Economic and Planning 100% spent for planning. 100% spent on Construction and supervision. Within the Functional Area 1
7.Urban renewal-Municipal Tours	Planning for the project has commenced in 2021/2022 Financial Year as budgeted. (subject to Budget availability)	Polokwane Municipality	Planning For appointment of the service provider- Within the Functional Area 1
8.Housing – Mixed housing (Social, Gap and Student housing) (Municipal entity)	Annandale extension 2 construction commence for provision of rental housing. Student housing at 106 and 108 underway.	Municipal entity	Planning, Social and Economic 100% Within the Functional Area 1
9.Urban renewal projects-Transit Oriented Development (TOD): <u>Truck inn (Municipal).</u>	Truck inn land availability approved by Council. Feasibility already approved. Incorporated in the reviewed ITPS and to be part of the freight Plan as project to be implemented in 2021/2022.	Polokwane Municipality	Planning and Economic 100% feasibility completed and 0% for implementation. Within the Functional Area 1

DRAFT

CATALYTIC PROJECT NAME	PROJECT STATUS QUO	PROJECT OWNER & PROGRESS (MUNICIPAL OR PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT)	INVESTMENT TO DATE and (area of projects as per the Spatial Plans)
10.Urban renewal projects in the CBD - Mixed housing around Buite and Bok Streets (Municipal)	Assessment of the land ownership is in progress and development of incentive for developers to be finalised. Application of UDZ underway and to be supported by Council Resolution.	Polokwane Municipality/Private Developers	Planning and Economic Consultation with Land Owners Within the Functional Area 1
11. Polokwane Mixed Housing Development (leased properties)	Polokwane extension 136, 138 and Bendor 126, East Ridge X 3 approved for mixed use development.	Leased properties for revenue enhancement	Planning and Economic 95% Township Planning approved

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

DRAFT

2.24 Progress Report on key Catalytic Projects

CATALYTIC PROJECTS	PROGRESS REPORT
Provincial State theatre	**Construction underway** The construction of the state theatre underway and completion is anticipated in April 2027. A provincial task team established to deal/source funds for Bulk Engineering Services.
SEZ N1 North Corridor, Transit Oriented Development precinct – Truck inn development	The purpose of the Polokwane Logistics and Agro-processing Hub is to grow and expand the industrial area located along the R101 adjacent to Polokwane's existing industrial area. The feasibility study has been conducted with a detailed master plan outlining project implementation
Eco-Estate at Game reserve	Township establishment application submitted and circulating for comments
Limpopo Central Hospital (Academic)	**Construction underway**
New Netcare Akeso Psychiatric Hospital	**The Hospital is complete and fully operation**

TUT, CET & CDM	Council resolved to release the land. Executed to the institutions for implementation. General plan submitted to surveyor General for approval
ERF 6858 Pietersburg Ext 30 (Edu Park Medical school student accommodation)	The property is zoned Educational and University of Limpopo plans to build 200 beds student accommodation

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.25 implementation of Circular 88 Progress Report

Planning Indicators	Progress in Implementation
Number of hectares of land procured and suitable for Greenfields's development	**None**
Number of hectares of land procured and suitable for Brownfield development	**None**
Number of hectares of land proclaimed (township establishment completed)	**178 846ha**
Number of dwelling units developed per hectare	**70.5962ha**
Percentage density reduction in total informal settlements	**80%**
Number of informal settlements targeted for upgrading	**2**
Number of households living in informal settlements targeted for upgrading	**1000**
Number of informal settlements targeted for upgrading with upgrading plans	**2**
Number of informal settlements upgraded (services provided): In Situ	**7**
Number of informal settlements targeted for formalisation (services provided): Relocated	**1**
Number of households living in informal backyard rental agreement	**Above 1000**
Number of sites serviced	**Approximately 6000 (Informal settlement)**
Number of Title deeds transferred to eligible beneficiaries	**10 441**

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

DRAFT

2.26 Intergovernmental Planning

Polokwane Municipality is part of the **provincial infrastructure committee and other committees as per the directorates** that report to **HOD's** forum and presented to the **Exco-Lekgotla (Province).** All planned projects from the **SONA, SOPA**, and District are aligned to the Municipal plans for implementation and the **CEF.**The Municipality also form part of **other forums** at the **District level** such as:

- Provincial Intergovernmental Structure.
- National Planning forums (**SPLUMA, LED, Human settlement).**
- District Intergovernmental Structures: i.e.
- **Mayor Forum**
- **MM Forum and other technical forum**
- **Speaker Forum**
- **Communicators Forum**

2.26.1 Intergovernmental Projects in progress

The Municipality has identified a number of key spatial targeting areas that will further compliment the priority development areas and other areas within the municipality.

Intergovernmental Projects in progress

Brownfield Development	Greenfield Development
• Urban renewal projects in the CBD- Polokwane Towers • Urban renewal projects in the CBD - Mixed housing around Buite and Bok Streets • Urban renewal projects- Transit Oriented Development (TOD) around Itsoseng, bus station, Train station and Airport. • Housing – Mixed housing (Social, Gap and Student housing) • Industrial Development - Light industries development (small scale industries) to partner with Department of Small Business	▪ Polokwane Mixed Housing Development (leased properties) ▪ Science Park by LEDET (LEDA project) ▪ Commercialisation of the Strategic Assets such as the Game reserve for mixed use ▪ Development of the Arts and Cultural HUB (Bakoni Malapa) (Polokwane and DSAC) ▪ Logistic or Cargo Hub and Agro-Processing Hub to support SEZ (Feasibility study) ▪ Softball stadium (On Going) jointly with National Department of Sports and recreation. ▪ Academic Hospital (**Construction Stage**) land released for Department of Health and Social Development and Public works

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.26.2 Pilot Projects for Inter-Governmental Planning

(A). International softball stadium

DRAFT

Polokwane municipality has received funding from SRSA (National **Department of Sports & Recreation South Africa)** through the **UIDG** to **design and construct** an **international softball stadium** over the next **3 years. R24.7 M was** allocated in the year **2020/21 Fy.**

Council has made available **a pocket of land** within its sport precinct hub for this development. **Concept designs** have been **approved** with all stakeholders. The municipality is engaging **DCOG** support on maximisation of this project to **showcase Real-time spatial transformations**.

(B). Provincial State Theatre

The National Department to design and construct **provincial State Theatre. Provincial Treasury** allocated approximately **R20 Million;** and additional allocation will be requested from **National Treasury** for **2023/24** Fy. Polokwane Municipality has budgeted **R2 Million** as from the 2020/21Fy-2021/22Fy for **Planning process. The project is currently at 95% expenditure.**

The Municipality has further budgeted **R8.7 Million** for **Engineering services** for 2023/24Fy.Council has made available **a pocket of land** within its **Bakoni Malapa** for feasibility study for this development. The **DSAC, Public works, Treasury** has already budgeted the cost associated with the project of Provincial State Theatre to be developed as from the **September 2023**. Planning has commenced in order to support on maximisation of this project to **showcase Real time spatial transformations**.

2.27 IUDF Implementation to Date

COGTA introduced a consolidated grant **(IUDG)** for Intermediate City Municipalities (ICM). **Polokwane** and **uMhlathuze** were identified as the **two pilot** municipalities. The ICM program aims at supporting the Municipalities in areas of Spatial Planning, Infrastructure/Capital projects and preparing financial access to the new **IUDG grant**. As such, the municipalities were requested to develop a **Capital Expenditure Framework**, which is a **long-term infrastructure plan** that flows from a **Spatial Development Framework** (SDF). The process of developing the Capital Expenditure Framework was approached by dividing it in **3 different CEF Modules**.

1) **Module 1: Planning,**
2) **Module 2: Infrastructure,**
3) **Module 3: Finance**

2.27.1 Capital Expenditure Frameworks (CEF) Modules Progress Status Quo.

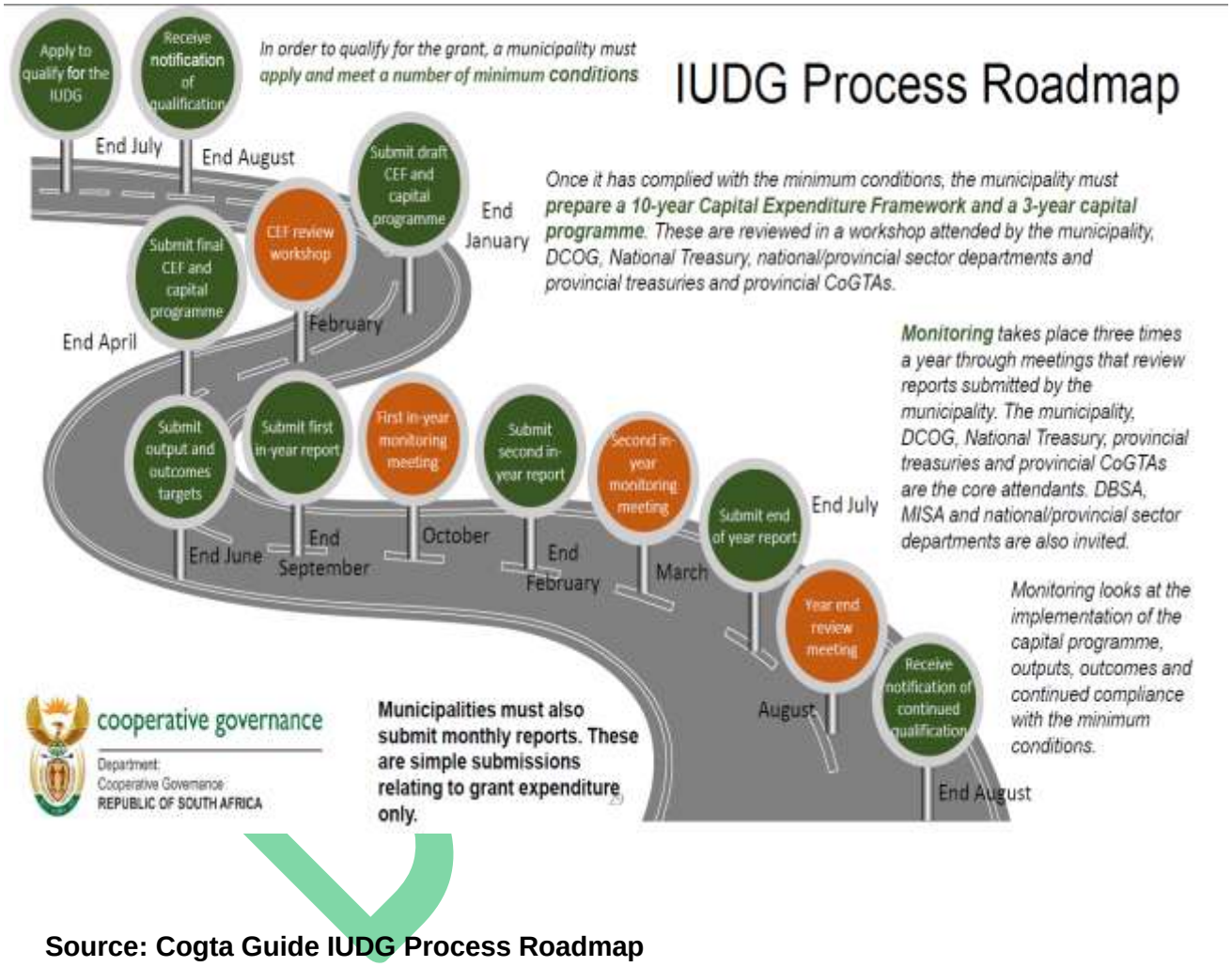
1) **Module 1: Planning** was more focused with the Spatial Transformation Agenda, which involved dividing the municipal in functional areas, in this instance went further to priority development areas. **Development strategies for the above-mentioned areas has been developed. The Functional Area 4 developed as part of the CEF submission.**
2) **Module 2: Infrastructure** was more focused on technical assessments, which involves, **backlogs and capacity** being guided by development strategies completed

DRAFT

in **Module 1 of Planning**. The module will indicate the backlogs, existing and required capacity of bulks and networks in the coming years.

3) **Module 3: Finance** is more focused on the long-term financial plan (**assumptions and projections**), which involves a fit on the development strategies for functional areas by **identified by planning**, together with the backlogs and need **outlined by infrastructure**. An analysis should also be provided to ensure staying within affordability margin.

2.28 IUDG Process Roadmap followed.



Source: Cogta Guide IUDG Process Roadmap

2.28.1 CEF Success and Challenges

Success	Challenges
• Approved CEF aligned with the IDP. • Well defined spatial targeted area in line with the SDF.	• Alignment and unfunded budget due to community needs analyses.

Success	Challenges
• Well defined projects with funding (External and Leases). • Possibility of attracting investors in ideal location. • Driving the spatial agenda of the City.	• Unequal Share due to Municipal community's composition (Urban 30% and Rural 70%). • Financial sustainability due to culture of non-payment. • Budget vs Community needs. • Prioritisation of projects and their return.

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.28.2 Impact of the adjustments budget on CEF priority projects

The adjustment of the CEF and **resubmission** to National Treasury. Reducing the planned projects guided by available budget. Community redress on the planned and pronounced projects. Rescheduling of the Projects and planned program of implementation have been moved to outer **years.**

2.29 Challenges experienced in endeavour to seek integration and collaboration.

(A)Misalignment of Planning Cycle for Municipalities and Sector Departments.

The introduction of the **IUDF and DDM** in dealing with the alignment of the budget and intergovernmental projects pave the positive input to foster such relationship. Alignment of the Spatial Planning and project from the national, province, district and local municipality **SDF** as categorised by the **SPLUMA** is becoming a key in directing where investment should be prioritised.

(B)Priority Interventions that must be addressed dealing with the community needs.

Priority should be given to Municipality Funded **mandate projects** in the IDP and Unfunded **mandate Projects** Should be referred to the Relevant Department to address the need (**e.g., Library). Such** projects should be addressed by the DDM. Effectiveness of the forums on the priority projects and monitoring. Grants alignment vs Priority needs on the ground.

2.30 Approved Land for New Leases

The Council of Polokwane has approved about **21 properties** within the established township (**Brownfield development)** and 6 portions of farms (**green field development).** Notice on intention to lease the land was released and two objections received and address since they were related to water. Notice for invitation of bids in underway as per the resolution of Council

DRAFT

2.31 Sales of sites –City Planning and Properties

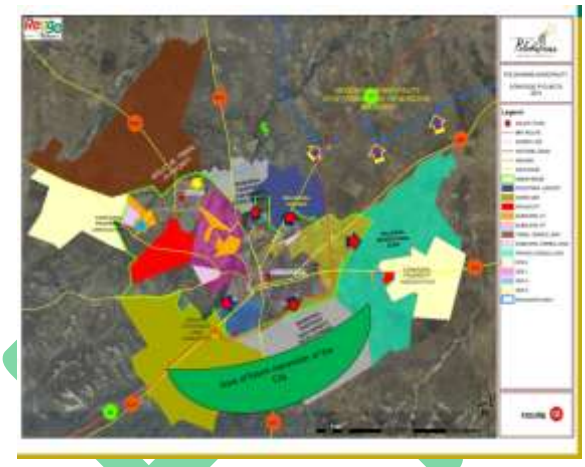
Progress with the sales of sites:

- ✓ Polokwane X 72
- ✓ Polokwane X 79
- ✓ Bendor
- ✓ Nirvana X 3
- ✓ Flora park

ESTABLISHED TOWNSHIP SERVICES COST:
Water and Sanitation

	MUNICIPAL OWNED TOWNSHIP NAME	Equivalent stands	Water			Sanitation		
			Reticulation	Bulk	Total	Reticulation	Bulk	Total
1	Polokwane 72	800		9 631 230	9 631 230		5 201 153	5 201 153
2	Polokwane 79	500		6 019 519	6 019 519		3 250 721	3 250 721
3	Polokwane 78	900	9 236 509	10 835 134	20 071 643	12 128 180	5 851 296	17 979 477
4	Polokwane 108 Polokwane 26 Industrial Park	1048	10 724 614	12 580 794	23 305 408	14 082 164	6 794 007	20 876 171
5	Polokwane X126	500	5 131 394	6 019 519	11 150 913	6 737 878	3 250 721	9 988 598
6	Polokwane X127	500	5 131 394	6 019 519	11 150 913	6 737 878	3 250 721	9 988 598
7	Polokwane X106	190		2 287 417	2 287 417		1 235 274	1 235 274
8	Polokwane X107	142	1 457 316	1 709 543	3 166 859	1 913 557	923 205	2 836 762
9	Polokwane X133	3000	33 788 364	36 117 112	66 665 476	40 427 268	19 504 329	59 931 591
10	Nirvana X05	200	2 052 558	2 407 807	4 460 365	2 695 151	1 300 286	3 995 436
	TOTAL	7 777	64 522 149	93 627 593	158 149 742	84 722 073	50 561 713	135 283 786

Township servicing



Land Ownership & Future needs

2.31.1 Ivy park Psychiatric Hospital

A privately driven 150 beds hospital development to be located along the N1 at Ivydale Agricultural holding, is on the cards to cater for the much-needed hospital beds in the City. The project cost is estimated at R450 million for direct construction. The township was approved by Polokwane Municipal Planning Tribunal. This development is expected to create **600 jobs** during construction and **450 jobs** permanent upon completion.

DRAFT

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.31.2 New TUT Campus

Tshwane University of Technology (TUT) has on plans to build a brand-new campus in the City of Polokwane. The property is located along Silicon Road next to the Municipal Airfield opposite the Polokwane Game.

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

A portion of the Remaining Extent of Weltevrede 746 LS measuring 40 hectares is valued at R1 430 000 Excluding VAT. Tshwane University of Technology (TUT), Department of Higher Education and Training –Limpopo Community Education and Training (CET) College, Capricorn District Municipality (CDM) and CoGHSTA-Limpopo province requested donation of land to establish Polokwane Campus (TUT), Head Office and Community Learning Centre (CET) and Disaster Management Centres (CDM and COGHSTA).

The envisaged development by the institutions referred to is estimated to cost over two billion rands. Polokwane Local Municipality stands to benefit monthly from rates and taxes payable upon completion estimated at over a million rand.

The larger Polokwane Municipality community will benefit from services to be provided by these institutions. Hundreds to thousands of temporary jobs will be created during development phase and hundreds to a thousand during their lifetime.

2.31.3 NETCARE AKESO Psychiatric Hospital

The 86-beds hospital is to officially opened in **April 2026** on Erf 43242 Polokwane Ext 138 Grobler Street side. The private psychiatric facility provides inpatient and outpatient consultations with psychiatrists, psychologist and occupational therapists The estimated number of jobs to be created is **472** Temporary and 120 permanents.

NETCARE AKESO Psychiatric Hospital

NETCARE AKESO Psychiatric Hospital

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.31.4 Student Tenements on ERF 7339 Bendor Extension 86

The subject property is located in Die Meer Street Bendor, the site property is 6819m² in extent whilst also the overall character of the area is mixed residential housing characterized by free-standing housing and also group housing such as flats. The development was approved in 2020, the overall project has two phases which are supposed to amount to 204 habitable student rooms. The first phase of development has 102 rooms whilst the second phase has another 102 rooms. In overall there are students which are currently living there.

A total of R 156,808,379.22 has been spent on the project. The overall job creation turnover of 22 professional consultants, 1200 construction jobs and 30 operational long-term jobs

DRAFT

Student Tenements on ERF 7339 Bendor Extension 86

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.31.5 Student Accommodation at Portion 67 of Syferkuil 921 ls

The student accommodation is located on Portion 67 of Syferkuil 921 LS in **Mankweng area**. The portion is behind the Mankweng Hospital.

The development covers a total of 271 Single rooms, 41 Disabled rooms and 1290 double rooms. This student accommodation is aimed at addressing accommodation shortages that are facing Mankweng.

2.31.6 Collaboration with the Private Sector Developments

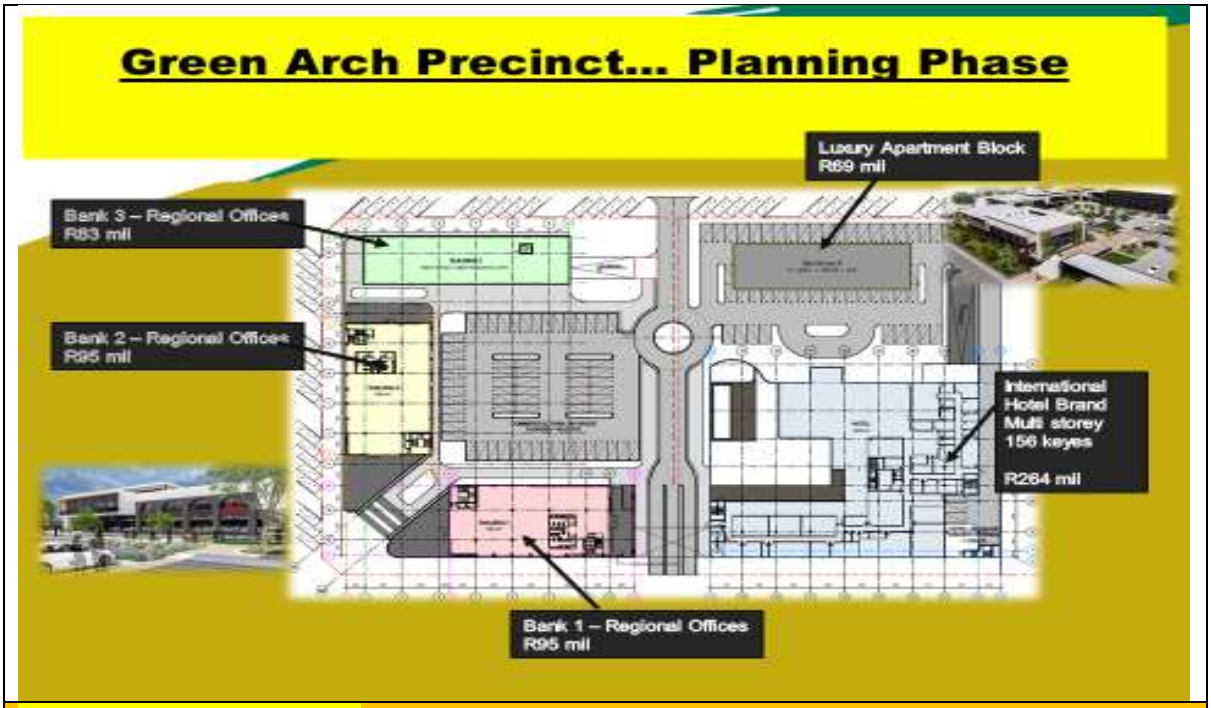
1) New Netcare- Akeso Psychiatric Hospital - (Operating).
2) The Greenery Shopping Centre – (Operating).
3) Park Inn Hotel – (Operating).
4) Builders Express – Baobab Gardens- (Operating).
5) Green Arch Precinct - (Construction Phase).

2.33 Green Arch Precinct

Green Arch Precinct is Currently in Construction Phase just opposite Greenery shopping Centre.

2.33.1 Green Arch Precinct Designs

DRAFT



Green Arch Precinct Designs

Green Arch Precinct Designs

2.33.2 Green Arch Precinct Construction Started - Hilton-hotel

The Hilton Garden Inn Polokwane will be a seven-storey, multi-million-rand development located at the Green Ark Precinct on the corner of Grobler and Oost Street. The precinct's ground-breaking and initial construction started in 2025, with the hotel itself officially slated to open its doors by **2028**

Developed by Net Worth Properties in partnership with international investors, the project forms a massive boost to the local economy, spanning both business amenities and long-stay apartments. When completed, the upcoming property aims to support the region's expanding corporate, mining, and government travel demand

the investment amount pledged to the precinct is **R765m** based on the current signed deals. This figure is expected to increase significantly as further negotiations with prospective tenants and partners are concluded.

To date, the developer, Networth Group, has already spent in excess of **R72.2m** on key elements such as rezoning, bulk infrastructure upgrades and professional and legal fees related to the development,

Once the development is fully operational, it is estimated to increase the city's tax and revenue base by **R9.9m per annum**, of which **R5.2m** will be generated from the hotel component alone.

This not only boosts the city's economic footprint but also strengthens the financial foundation required to deliver quality services to residents and businesses

Green Arch Precinct Construction Started

Green Arch Precinct Construction Started

Green Arch Precinct Construction Started

2.33.3 Construction Hilton-hotel

Hilton-hotel as at **12 August 2026**.

Construction Hilton-hotel

Construction Hilton-hotel

2.34 CORPORATE GEO-INFORMATICS

The City of Polokwane has a fully-fledged and functional Corporate Geo-Informatics Strategic Business Unit under Planning and Economic Directorate to manage all spatial data in the Municipality.

GIS is an abbreviation for **'Geographic Information Systems'**. It is a computer-based tool used to store, analyse, manage and distribute spatial data within Polokwane Municipality's jurisdiction. GIS is an important decision making tool used for manipulation, queries, analyse and presentation of spatial data to enhance decision. GIS is a critical tool that supports a number of municipal legislative requirements contained in the Municipal System Act (No. 32 of 200), the Municipal Structures Act (No. 117 of 1998), and the Spatial Data Infrastructure Act (No. 54 of 2003), the Promotion of Access to Information Act (No. 2 of 2000), Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (No. 16 of 2013), Infrastructure Development Act (No. 23 of 2014) and the Property Rates Act (No. 6 of 2004).

Most importantly, GIS is a vital tool to support the Municipal Integrated Plans **(IDPs),** undertaken in accordance with the Polokwane Spatial Development Framework **(SDF)** and with projects have a recorded spatial location.
GIS is the only technology that will allow the City of Polokwane to manage its assets spatially in an interactive environment and thereby ensure that all municipal assets are managed electronically.

The SBU: Corporate Geo-Informatics is expected to make a significant contribution to the planning process in the municipality. Currently, the SBU is working on ensuring that **Revenue SBU** receives clean and accurate **Property data** which will enable accurate **billing** of properties.

A spatial land audit that is GIS based will be conducted to support the Spatial Development Framework and Land Use Management System in the municipality. GIS will play a pivotal role in the maintenance and monitoring of these plans as they change overtime. For example, **Municipal boundary demarcation adjustment,** land subdivision and ownership transfer, amendment schemes and urbanization.

DRAFT

Professional Land Surveyors are not limited to preparing plot plans and placing boundary markers. In addition to being experienced in all types of land surveying and Geomatics services, they consult and incorporate the use of technological innovations and data management techniques as it relates to our communities and infrastructure.

Utilizing products like online Geographic Information Systems (GIS) that help municipalities **manage their assets**, save time and efficiently deploy resources; quickly provide the accurate spatial data, boundary definitions and geo-referenced information clients need to move their land development or infrastructure projects toward successful completion.

Surveyors always play a key role in **urban planning**, responsible for data collection and for the management of different design and engineering plans such as transportation, water system, and power system plan using proper metric standards (e.g., coordinate system, accuracy, drafting specifications, etc.).

2.34.1. Intergraded GIS System

The **integrated GIS system** - With this system, the City of Polokwane has developed an integrated GIS system where the majority of systems that were **running independent** of each other will be running from a federated platform underpinned by geographic information system (GIS) or spatial data. The municipality will for the first time empower all of its employees and its customers with relevant information that they'd need when carrying out their responsibilities.

The City of Polokwane being the largest business hub in the Limpopo Province and being the most strategically located City in the heart of the Limpopo, it attracts all major economic opportunities and play a significant role in the socio-economic space by providing the best services to its residents. The municipality also as a population concentration centre where people from all walks of life migrated to the City in search for a better life. In order for the City to plan better and efficiently, the use of spatial data become paramount to the City's planning and development. The municipality has since embarked on a journey to become one of the role players in the data driven institutions in the country.

The Integrated Geographic Information system has been developed to streamline and improve the institutional business process flow and to restore customer confidence in the institution by providing efficient and reliable services.

DRAFT

The introduction of the integrated GIS system in the municipality is aimed at transforming the organization to a point where every person or official/s who make use of the spatial data to make well informed decisions, have access to spatial data and its attributes at all times. The system integration in the municipality is designed to empower the Council decision makers such as SBU's Managers, Directors and City Manager to explore data independently even if one is working with data from various sources.

The new technology (Integrated GIS System) has made it possible now than ever to capture, store and manipulate large quantities of data in a more cost-effective manner. The integrated GIS system gives decision makers a competitive edge in the sense that it does not only prove them with reports on what had happened but rather report on what is happening, e.g., **Town Planning Application Management Module System (TPAMS)** provide town planners and management a real time feed on those applications that are being processed by the municipality. Similar protocol is being followed with **Building Plans Application Management System (BPAMS)** and **Cemetery Management System (CMS).**

Polokwane Municipality is one of the leading municipalities in the country with technological innovations which lead to improved service delivery. For the first time all land development applications can be tracked in real time by the applicants and developers. This cutting-edge technology is embedded in the cadastral data of Polokwane Municipality. With systems like the integrated GIS, it allows the municipality to streamline workflows, reduce redundancies and improves overall efficiency by integrating into existing systems.

The integrated GIS system function as a tool through which the various databases or systems that were running independent of each other will now be accessed and managed from a **single central point** with map enabled functionalities. This promotes collaboration and data sharing across different teams and departments by establishing a common language and a shared understanding of location-based information.

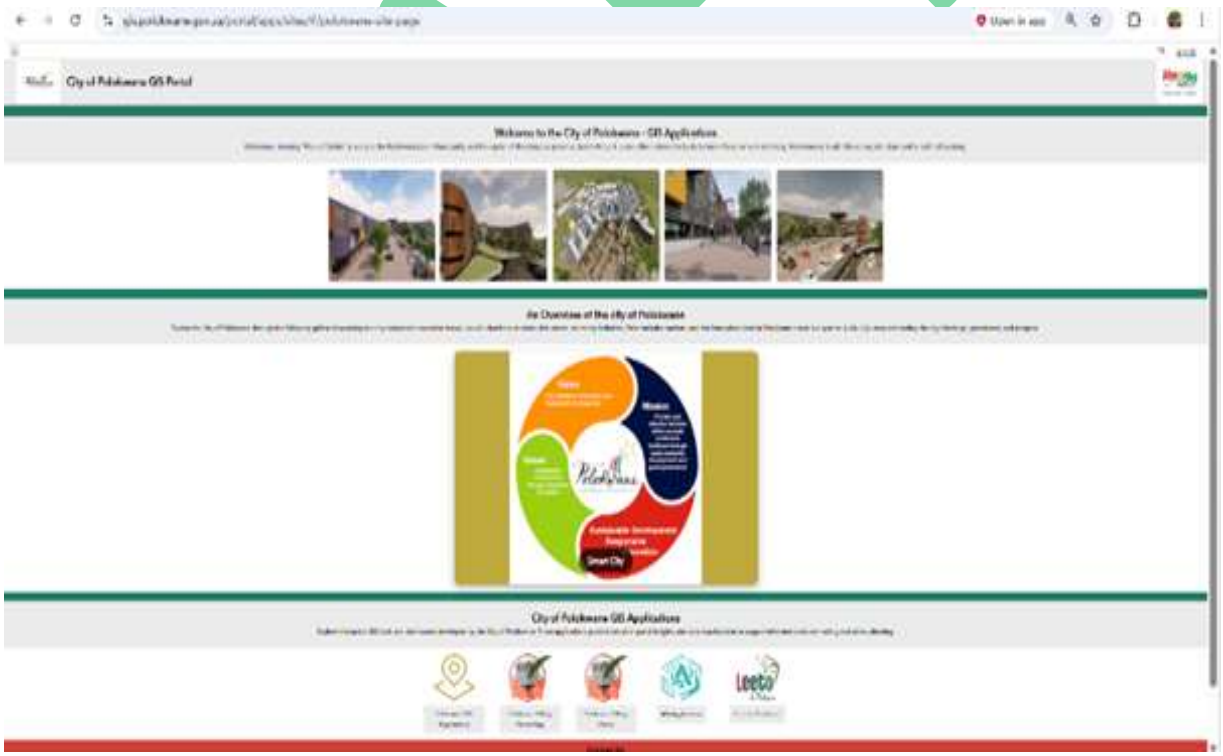
The advantages of using such a system are that end users need not be academically trained to navigate through the various platforms. It enables the municipality to gain competitive advantage by leveraging location intelligence to identify new opportunities, improve customer service and innovate new products and services. The following application modules form part of the integrated GIS System:

DRAFT

2.34.2 Modules that form part of the integrated GIS System

a) Land Information Management System **(LIMS)**
b) Town Planning Application Management System **(TPAMS)**
c) Building Plans Application Management System **(BPAMS)**
d) Cemetery Management System **(CMS)**
e) Billing Information Management
f) Document Management System
g) Infrastructure Asset Management
h) Valuation Roll

For quick access to any of the above listed modules please click the link below and you will be taken to the new Polokwane Integrated GIS System landing page. https://gis.polokwane.gov.za/portal/apps/sites/#/polokwane-site-page



2.35 Online AFLA System

The new automated system aims to streamline the application process, improve communication and enhance the overall land development applications for town planning, building plans and burial applications management. The AFLA portal offers numerous benefits

including increased efficiency, transparency and cost savings for both applicants and the municipality.

2.35.1 Going from Inline to Online

The municipality has successfully launched an online system to process land development application. The system was warmly received by the members of the public and has been in use from the 1st of September 2024. The municipality has discontinued manual building plans and town planning applications.

2.36 Modules launched for the public to submit applications online

Modules launched for the public to submit applications online are as follows:

2.36.1 Building Plans Management System

Assisting you to electronically lodge building development applications like additions, new building plans, site development plans, demolitions, revisions and as built.

2.36.2 Town Planning Management System

Assisting you to electronically lodge land development applications like rezoning, subdivision, township establishment and other city planning developments.

2.36.3 Cemetery Management System

Now you can lodge a burial application online at local cemeteries.

2.37 Benefits of lodging land development applications on the AFLA portal

2.37.1 Convenience and Transparency

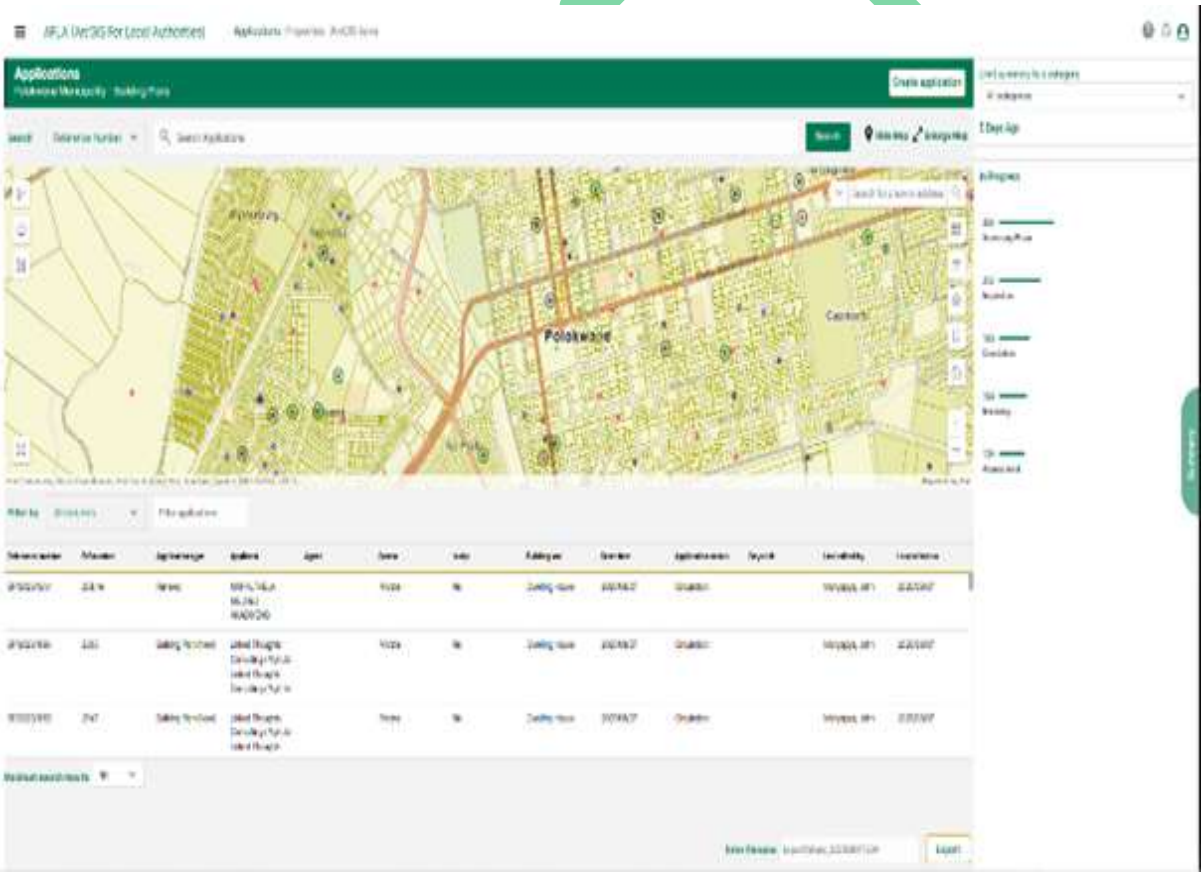
This has increased efficiency, transparency and cost savings for both applicant and the municipality. AFLA is convenient and accessible by allowing applicants to lodge applications and supporting documents from anywhere, at any time, eliminating the need for physical visits and reducing delays.

2.37.2 Cost Savings, Reduced Processing Times and Improved Communication

The printing, postage and other costs associated with paper-based applications has been reduced. There is increased transparency and accountability as applicants receive clear status updates and notifications making the process more accountable.

2.37.3 Enhance Data Management and Improved Decision Making

Audit queries have been reduced as there are digital workflows which minimises errors and omissions in applications leading to fewer delays and rejections. The quality of decisions has improved. Information management has improved as AFLA provides an online repository for all application data making it easier to track, analyse and manage information.



2.38 Challenges and Intervention of GIS

Challenges	Intervention
GIS SECTION ▪ Delays in land parcels registration (subdivision and consolidation) lead to spatial data inaccuracies and may affect the municipal billing system. ▪ Delay in allocation of street names in proclaimed townships leads to inaccurate billing records. ▪ Lack of a GIS strategy to guide the municipality with regards to the use and maintenance of spatial data. ▪ Difficulty in tracking illegal land occupation due to lack of updated imagery. ▪ Non submission of GIS data from completed projects by respective strategic business units (Energy services, Water & Sanitation and Roads). ▪ Under performing ICT hardware and network availability in remote areas. .	• The GIS system has been integrated with the financial system **(Munsoft)** to ensure accurate billing at all times. • The Local Geographic Names Committee was established by the Council to implement the Polokwane Local Geographic Names policy. • The municipality has allocated a budget for the development of a GIS Strategy for the 2026/2027 financial year. • The municipality procures aerial photography during the general valuation period, a plan to procure a drone is underway. • The Integrated Geographic Information system has been developed to streamline and improve the institutional business processes and to restore customer confidence in the institution by providing efficient and reliable services. • The municipality is in a process to procure hardware compatible with implemented systems; however, there are budget limitations.
LAND SURVEYING ▪ Aging land surveying equipment, out of warranty and parts are no longer available.	• The SBU has a budget allocated for the maintenance of the available equipment, however, there is a need to budget for procurement of new equipment.

DRAFT

Challenges	Intervention
▪ Inadequate use of modern technological instrument to improve service delivery *e.g.* Drone technology ▪ Increased dispute over boundary encroachment ▪	• The municipality has budgeted for the application for a Remote Pilot License (RPL) to operate a drone for the 2026/2027 financial year. • Boundary Awareness Campaign on all affected wards has been budgeted for the financial year 2026/2027.

Source: PLK GIS SBU

2.39 Successes of Corporate Geo-Informatics SBU

Despite all the challenges mentioned above the SBU: corporate Geo-Informatics had brought in the following successes within the Directorate.

Below is the list of **Success** for the SBU.

- Successfully implemented seven **(8)** of the eight **(8)** modules.
- Through the full implementation of the integrated GIS system, the municipal authority will be able to track all land development applications right from the moment the application is lodged with the municipality to the decision stage.
- The integrated GIS system will make it easy for authorities and municipal officials to draw statistical reports from the system which will pass the audit master's test.
- Continues with the support for site identification across the municipality.
- The SBU plays an important role in IDP project spatial presentation and continuous mapping of all municipal strategic capital projects as reflected in the SDBIP.
- Assisted service providers who are carrying out municipal duties by rendering its technical services such as land surveying and spatial data dissemination to minimise errors and save Council its resources.
- The collaborative work between GIS and Revenue unit has resulted in the billing having accurate data which reduced the amount of dispute from members of the community through the integration of the GIS and Billing Systems. However, the process of updating and correcting the data on both the Billing and GIS system is continuous.

DRAFT

- The SBU is currently engaging with other relevant departments streamline the flow of spatial data in the municipality.
- The municipality has successfully renewed the enterprise license agreement (ELA) with ESRI South Africa for a period of three years. This will enable the municipality to improve in its service delivery as mandated by municipal structures act.
- The SBU has successfully resolved all the boundary dispute that were lodged with the municipality during the period under review.
- The SBU Corporate Geo-Informatics provided training to all municipal officials working on the use of online GIS system.
- The SBU has successfully integrated the AFLA system to the municipal Electronic Document Management System. This will allow all documents produced in the AFLA modules to be legally stored in a secured records management environment and accessible for future decision making and applications for access to information by stakeholders.

2.39.1 Role of GIS in the City of Polokwane

- The City of Polokwane has been using GIS technology for over **a decade**, and this technology has proven to be a catalytic tool when it comes to decision making relating to land development and other related activities. Therefore, various SBU's either directly or indirectly make use GIS in carrying out their functions. But even though the tool has been in the City of Polokwane for **many years, the system has not been fully utilized.**
- With the Introduction of **Integrated GIS System,** this means that the use of spatial data ought to be placed right in the hands of the people who are taking decisions on land development matters. The consolidation of various systems into GIS platform is one way of allowing for automatic updating of information that can be seen by everyone at the same time and this will eliminate the duplication of work by different SBUs and will ultimately lead to efficient productivity and save municipal resources. This merely shows that the Corporate Geo-informatics SBU has a major role to play in realising the municipality's **Smart City 2030** vision.

2.40 Special Achievement in GIS Award

Polokwane Municipality **Honored with Special Achievement in GIS Award**

DRAFT

GIS Technology Provider Esri Recognized Polokwane Municipality at Annual User Conference **REDLANDS, California in *July*, 2026—**Esri, the global leader in geographic information system (GIS) technology, presented *Polokwane Municipality* with the Special Achievement in GIS (SAG) Award at the annual Esri User Conference (Esri UC). Selected from hundreds of thousands of candidates, *Polokwane Municipality received* the award for its innovative use of mapping and analytics software, as well as leadership in the field of *Local Government*.

Since 1998, the SAG Award has been given to organizations each year for their application of GIS to reveal patterns and trends from data to address pressing challenges across industries. "Each year, users demonstrate how crucial mapping technology is for our connected world, where almost every critical problem we face has a geographic component," said **Esri president Jack Dangermond.** "Recognizing these organizations is an honor since they are using GIS to not only improve their own decision-making but are innovating through their work to the benefit of our whole geospatial community."

A total of 187 organizations from the commercial industry, defense, transportation, nonprofit work, telecommunications, and government sectors were honored. Esri staff annually nominate hundreds of candidates from around the world for consideration, and Jack Dangermond (Esri Founder) selects the finalists.

Manager GIS Receiving the GIS Award

Source: PLK GIS SBU

DRAFT

2.41 Economic Development and Tourism

2.41.1 Introduction

The SBU has four (4) sections: i.e.

1) Investment Promotion and Tourism
2) Enterprise Development.
3) Business Compliance and Regulation.
4) Economic Research and Development.

2.41.2 Local Economic Development (LED) strategy

The City of Polokwane 2020-2024 Local Economic Development (LED) strategy. The strategy advocates for the strengthening of the multi-sectoral response against the rising levels of unemployment, inequality and poverty facing PLM. The strategy was launched at a time when the local economy is facing one of its worst crises in history. The pace at which the economy is growing is not sufficient enough to take care of the mounting socio-economic needs of the local population.

The strategy provides a "package of game changing solutions" to some of the socio-economic challenges. In partnership with other stakeholders Provincially and Nationally, Economic Development and Tourism Unit leads efforts in ushering the local economy on the path of a turnaround. With the unwavering support of all social partners (labour, private sector and all spheres of government), the idea to create an inclusive local economy with a high job absorption capacity (as cherished in the National Development Plan (NDP, the Limpopo Development Plan (LDP) and the Integrated Development Plan (IDP)) is still feasible.

This strategy gives effect to objective No 3 of section 152 of the constitution. Objective No 3 underscores the need for PLM to design and implement impactful strategies that improve the socio-economic conditions of local communities. Due to changes in the local economy over the past 10 years because of shifting global, national and provincial contexts, PLM took a decision to review its 2008 LED strategy in order to realign it with its **2030 Economic Growth and Development Plan (EGDP).** The triple crisis of poverty, unemployment and inequality remain the Municipality's unresolved developmental challenges. This strategy outlines some of the measures PLM intends to implement in the next five years (2020/2024) to address some of these developmental concerns.

2.41.3 Highlights of the Local Economic Development Strategy:

DRAFT

1. **VISION 2024**

   "Towards a job absorbing economy"

2. **GOALS**

   i. Reduction of unemployment rate
   ii. Report a steady GVA growth rate
   iii. Improve ease-of-doing business
   iv. Promote economic inclusion and social cohesion
   v. Enhance development coordination capabilities

3. **STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES**

i. Prioritization of high job creation investments
ii. Unleash sectoral potential and growth
iii. Enhance investment competitiveness
iv. Widen access to economic opportunities and choices
v. Strengthen multi-sectoral response

DRAFT

2.41.4 Local Skills Base on LED

Education is important to the economic growth in a country and the development of its industries, providing a trained workforce and skilled professionals is required. The education measure represents the highest level of education of an individual, using the 15 years and older age category. (According to the United Nations definition of education, one is an adult when 15 years or older. IHS uses this cut-off point to allow for cross-country comparisons. Furthermore, the age of 15 is also the legal age at which children may leave school in South Africa).

Within the City of Polokwane, the number of people without any schooling decreased from 2012 to 2022 with an average annual rate of -5.44%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category, increased from 119 043 to 176 544. The number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 5.91%, with the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increasing with an average annual rate of 0.90%. Overall improvement in the level of education is visible with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education.

2.42 Status Quo of Programs and Projects of Economic Development

2.42.1 Investment Promotion and Tourism

The objective of the section is to market Polokwane as a tourists and investment destination. The Municipality has a potential of high growth and development potential for the economy to grow sustainably. The strategic location of Polokwane also offers opportunities and in addition businesses that trade, transport and conduct business across the border should need a space of their own in Polokwane and this can only be achieved by promoting Polokwane and the advantages it offers.

Polokwane should be known for its advantageous business policies that incentivise development of desired uses in the municipality while offering a distinct competitive advantage when seeking access to the rest of the continent and providing great opportunities for businesses to grow and prosper. Marketing is a tool ever increasing in necessity for any industry and sphere. It also helps shape perceptions that dictate the emotions associated with the subject being advertised.

As part of a marketing strategy to attract, retain and promote investments and tourism within the Municipality, Polokwane needs tools in order to reach out and grab the attention of potential investors and businesses by bringing them to Polokwane to stay and invest. These tools include the use of media as well as structures present in Polokwane that offer growth potential and prospects for economic development; by highlighting the vision and goals Polokwane has and the plans being made to achieve these goals, it becomes increasingly attractive, and the goals become more achievable.

2.42.2 Types of Tourism industries found in Polokwane

1. Transportation e.g., car rentals
2. Accommodation
3. Food and Beverages
4. Recreation and entertainment
5. Travel agents
6. Tour operators
7. Tourist guides
8. Event Organisers
9. Health and Wellness

DRAFT

A number of strategies and platforms are utilised to market the Municipality, locally, nationally and Internationally.

2.43 Strategies used to promote Polokwane Municipality

Below are the Strategies that are used to promote the Municipality i.e.

1) Information Centre
2) Stakeholder relation
3) Tourism development
4) Marketing

2.43.1 Polokwane Visitor Information Centre (VIC)

The Municipality in partnership with Limpopo Tourism Agency operates a Visitor Information Centre that was built and donated to the Municipality by the **National Department of Tourism**. The centre provides tourism and investment information to the residents of the Municipality, National and International visitors. This is done through walk inns, telephone, email and other social media platforms.

Business is encouraged to partner with the Municipality and ensure that their information is available at the centre and the Municipality also has a database of all businesses operating within the Municipality which is revised often to ensure accuracy.

Polokwane Visitor Information Centre (VIC)

DRAFT

2.43.2 Stakeholder relations

The Municipality has assisted the tourism industry to establish a Tourism Association which the Municipality supports through the following:

- Secretariat services for the Association
- Venue for its meetings
- Procurement of marketing platforms
- Accommodation for the Executive members when they attend trade shows outside the Municipal boundaries

The Municipality also established a Local Economic Development Forum that comprises of business representatives and other Government Departments and Parastatals within the Economic cluster. The Municipality provides support by providing the following to the Forum:

2.43.3 Tourism Development

The Municipality in partnership with other institutions provides support to the tourism industry in order to develop tourism within the Municipality. This is done through the following activities:

- Training based on the skills gaps that are identified within the sector.
- Provision of marketing opportunities such as hosting of exhibitions
- Workshops
- Networking sessions for industry to collaborate.

2.44 Marketing

The Municipality is busy exploring new channels to be used in response the global challenge.

- Trade shows
- Exhibitions
- Adverts in identified platforms
- Social media
- Investor's Guide (Hard and E-Copy)
- Visitor's Guide (Hard and E-Copy)

DRAFT

2.45 ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT

Enterprise Development is one of the key focus areas within Economic Development and Tourism in Polokwane Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and is a provincial priority as stated in the provincial growth and development strategy. It is therefore essential that Polokwane Municipality support entrepreneurs not only through selected programmes but to be incorporated in the implementation of all projects geared towards providing service delivery to the communities. Services offered by Enterprise Development to all SMMEs and Cooperatives:

- SMMEs Database
- Skills Audit
- Business Profiling
- Capacity building and skills development
- Provision of access to market through flea markets and exhibitions.
- Conducting effective monitoring of projects/co-operatives /and SMME
- Provision of access to finance from other institutions
- Facilitate business to business linkages big or small

The Municipality has also provided Infra-structure in a form of facilities to promote enterprise development initiatives as described below:

2.45.1 Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre

Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre is an SMME Incubation Centre that was founded by Polokwane Municipality's Local Economic Development SBU.

Primarily, this manufacturing incubator was founded upon the need to provide development support services to SMME's involved in the strategic sectors of the local economy, especially manufacturing.

This initiative ties in with the targets of ASGISA and LDP, which among others, are employment creation and poverty alleviation.
In order to achieve this, LED SBU is conducts **Business Incubation Programme** aimed at providing intensive business counselling to SMME's that have a potential to grow into a successful business.

Fencing of Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre Completed

DRAFT

Fencing of Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre Completed 1

Fencing of Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre Completed 2

2.45.2 INCUBATION PROGRAMME AND ITS BENEFITS

Incubation programme is a three-year programme whereby SMME's will receive the following services:

- Business management advice
- Facilitation of access to finance
- Accounting/Bookkeeping systems advice
- Regular visits by Business Development Officer to ensure progress
- Trainings on specific skills needed by the SMME
- Linkages to markets
- Linkages to industry experts
- Assistance in marketing their business
- Access to key business information

2.45.3 ELIGIBLE CRITERIA AND ENTRY REQUIREMENTS:

To participate in this programme, SMME's need to complete and submit an application form at Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre 's office. The applicant must also meet the following criteria:

- The business must be located within the boundaries of Polokwane Municipality
- The business must be a manufacturing enterprise.

- The owner must be prepared to sign a three (3) year lease agreement with Polokwane Municipality and should also demonstrate intent to abide by all rules.
- The business must have been trading for at least 1 year or more.
- Business owners must be South African citizens
- Women and Disabled will be given first preference.
- Owners must submit proof of residence.

2.45.4 ITSOSENG ENTREPRENEURAL CENTRE

Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre provide incubation program for SMMEs for a period of 3 years. Developmental support services to SMMEs is offered in different sectors of the economy with focus on manufacturing sector of the local economy. Our services include the following:

- Provision of subsidized rental services to SMME and Co-operatives
- Facilitation of access to market/market linkages.
- Facilitation of capacity building with other stakeholders
- Facilitations of access to finance to SMME and Co-op.
- Provision of other non-financial support services to SMME and co-op

The sectors that the center was designed to incubate 41 SMMEs who are doing mainly the following:

- Art & Crafts - Includes bead work, paintings, crafted products etc.
- Steelwork Includes welding, aluminum products, steel pipes, others steel products such as readily made shacks, toilets etc.
- Woodwork – Includes furniture, or any other wood products.
- Upholstery – includes furniture, car seats, leather work etc.
- Textile – include bags, shoes.
- Clothing – includes all types of clothes such as traditional, wedding, uniforms, evening wear and casual wear.

The center is established to provide SMME with incubation programme which offers services such as access to market, commercial and technical training, monitoring and evaluation, subsidized cubicles and other related enterprise developmental programmes. The facility has thus by far been very instrumental in promoting the plight of SMME and continues to play a critical role in advancing SMME development support.

2.46 BUSINESS SUPPORT CENTRES

The municipality has constructed stalls in some clusters in an attempt to offer support to emerging entrepreneurs. This forms part of the municipality initiative to provide business Centre development support programme. The following is the list:

DRAFT

2.46.1Mankweng University gate 1 Centre

The facility is located closed to University of Limpopo gates …. Offering various products to the student community and the general public around Mankweng The center has 86 Entrepreneurs provided with subsidies infrastructure by municipality. The main activity of SMMEs in the center is trading / selling of products and services such as fruit and vegetables, Pap and vleis, Fast food, shoe repair, IT, hair dressing general merchandise etc.

2.46.2 Mankweng hospital gate Centre

The facility is able to accommodate at least 58 SMME offering different types of ranging from food, veggies, etc.

2.46.3 Limpopo Cooks Centre.

The municipality has allocated 24 units to SMME involved in cooking targeting taxi commuters and many other customers in town. Entrepreneurs undergo developmental training which focuses on aspect of health and safety and other commercial training to improve on their business.

2.46.4 Knobel Business center

The municipality has constructed 12 stalls to enterprises offering variety of services including among others, cooked food, fruit and vegetables, shoe repair etc. The facility assists patients who visits the hospital and also community members in an around the area.

2.46.5 Aganang Business center

The facility is located at Aganang cluster office and has become instrumental in servicing the communities in the area. The municipality has allocated 12 stalls to SMME who sells food, maize, shoe repair etc.

2.47 Business Compliance and Regulation

Informal trade economy plays a large and vital role in the overall economy of Polokwane, Limpopo and South Africa as a whole as it forms the very livelihood for thousands of people. Informal Trade consists of economic activity outside the influence and control of institutions. The livelihoods of many people across the country are dependent on the informal economy, especially in rural areas and therefore it is vital to support and sustain this sector of the economy as well.

DRAFT

The objective of the section is to demarcate special areas for informal trade to take place, to regularize the informal economy and to have more efficient transformation from informal to formal economy.

Strategic Interventions The value of the informal trade sector should not be underestimated and/or discredited but should rather be harnessed and employed to stimulate growth in the economy of Polokwane. However, negative perceptions towards informal traders often exist in Polokwane as this sector is regarded as caused excess pollution and chaos in the inner city. This notion is premised on the fact that no proper structures and trading spaces exist for entrepreneurs, and they therefore occupy any available area.

By implementing viable and manageable interventions for the informal trade economy, the benefits of this economic activity can be felt, and sustainable economic growth and development be supported. The management of these interventions and processes becomes an institutional function supported by the infrastructure developed to assist and cater for the needs of both the informal traders and the Municipality. The economic activities generated by informal trade can be improved by regulation of informal trade without going as far as formalizing the sector. The reason being that formalizing the sector can make advantages offered be lost and the efforts fruitless. Rather opportunity should be created that assist and support the informal trade economy and, in the process, create a better image of Polokwane.

2.48 Interventions for the development of informal trade in Polokwane.

The following interventions are implemented for the development of informal trade in Polokwane.

2.48.1 Management of Street Trading Permits

Permits are issued for different categories/ sectors within the Municipality, and they are renewed monthly. There are **1450 permits issued** across different areas within the Municipality - City cluster, Seshego cluster, Mankweng cluster, Aganang cluster. Permits are issued to Traders under the following categories:

1) Fruits and Vegetables
2) Meat and Porridge
3) Bunny Chow
4) Accessories
5) Shoe repair
6) Home utensils
7) Photography

2.48.2 Developmental Support Through Training and Workshops:

DRAFT

The street traders that have permits are offered developmental support through trainings and workshops. The Municipality conducts workshops and trainings to empower street traders to run successful business and comply with Municipal by-laws and policies. There are some workshops conducted in partnership with parastatals, and private sector.

2.48.3 Trading opportunities during events hosted by the Municipality

The communities are given trading opportunities during events hosted in Municipal Infrastructures such as stadium. The events such as soccer matches, festivals and church gatherings. These events offer economic spin-offs through trading.

2.48.4 Trading Stalls next to the Taxi Rank constructed by the Municipality

(i) Bok Street Traders Stalls next to the Taxi Rank – accommodates **25 traders.**

(ii) Church Street Traders Stalls next to the Taxi Rank – accommodates **19 traders.**

2.49 Future Plans for LED unit:

2.49.1 Infrastructure Development through NDPG Project

The Municipality through NDPG programs for infrastructure development, has got plans for construction of informal trading stalls. The infrastructure development will assist informal traders within **Seshego cluster** to improve business operating conditions, which will in turn improve the quality of life and also contributing to the cleanliness of the Municipality.

2.49.2 Implementation of the Limpopo Business Registration Act (LIBRA), 05 of 2003

The Act provides for law regarding the registration and carrying on of businesses in the Province, establishment of the Limpopo Directorate of Business Registration and Business Registration Centres.

The implementation of LIBRA will provide full control of the functions within the Municipal environment. The Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism will

DRAFT

provide training related to the LIBRA functions at a Municipal level. Through the performance of the function, the Municipality will retain all the revenue generated

2.49.3 Economic Research and Development:

The economic analysis as per the Performance of the Local Economy and the Investment Trends is Compiled each financial year. The 2023/24 Economic Analysis was compiled to guide the City in planning Process.

2.49.4 ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT

Business Development Centres - Most of the business centres have aged, decayed and dilapidated. Some could not have proper infra structure due to overcrowding to accommodate the demand for SMEs. The state of the centres requires urgent attention.

2.50 Building Inspection

Building Inspection is the statutory function assigned to local authorities in terms of the constitution. The National Building Regulation and Building Standards Act (103 of 1977) as amended also assigns duties to local authorities, the most important of which are the approval of building plan application, enforcement of the regulation and the issuing of certificates of occupancy. Building activities controlled and regulated by Council's Building Inspections Unit include:

- Erection of new buildings
- Alteration/extension/conversion of existing buildings
- Erection of temporary structures
- Demolition of existing buildings/structures
- Occupation of buildings

2.50.1 LEGISLATION AND POLICY PERSPECTIVE

The following legislative requirements are used by the SBU on a daily basis in the application and enforcement of the Act on National Building Regulations and Building Standards (Act 103 of 1977) as well as in the evaluation and approval of building plans, hoarding, demolition and other applications in terms of the following:

- The National Building Regulations Act (Act 103 of 1977) as amended
- Act on architects (Act 35 of 1970)
- The Polokwane Municipality Integrated Lund Use Scheme 2022

DRAFT

2.50.2 Services provided by Council's Building Inspections

Services provided by Council's building Inspections include the following:

- Building plan approvals
- Minor works approvals (for work such as swimming pools, small 'Wendy' houses etc.)
- Extension of the validity of an approved building plan
- Temporary structures approvals
- Demolitions approvals
- Occupation certificate approvals

In additions, other responsibilities are:

- Building Inspection during the construction period
- General enforcement of building Regulations
- Investigation and resolving building complaints, contraventions and illegal building work
- Maintaining statistics on building construction activities

2.50.3 Building Inspection Key challenges and Interventions

Key challenges:

- Delays in internal assessment of building plan applications.
- Delays by applicants in addressing issues raised with their building plan and occupation certificate applications.
- Illegal construction and illegal occupation of buildings.

Required intervention:

- Development of a Standard Operation Procedure (SOP) manual for building plan applications.
- Constant communication and reminders with applicable SBUs for faster processing of applications
- Communication with applicants to address issues and finalize their applications
- Development of a building control by-law.

2.50.4 Report on the Major Developments Building Plans

ERF NUMBER	TOWNSHIP	DESCRIPTION	AREA	PROGRESS
ERF 1339	PIETERSBURG EXTENSION 4	GREEN ARCH DEVELOPMENT	14 460.4m2	CONSTRUCTION OF REGIONAL BANK OFFICES AND HOTEL IN PROGRESS

DRAFT

ERF NUMBER	TOWNSHIP	DESCRIPTION	AREA	PROGRESS
ERF 68	EAST RIDGE EXTENSION 3	NEW FILLING STATIONS AND SHOPS	3517M2	THE FILLING STATION IS NOW OPEN AND TRADING
ERF 43242	POLOKWANE EXTENSION 138	NETCARE AKESO PSYCHIATRI HOSPITAL	4620.87M2	OPEN AND TRADING
ERF 43908	POLOKWANE EXTENSION 144	NEW TAKEALOT WAREHOUSE	8331m2	OPEN AND TRADING
6861/RE	PIETERSBURG EXTENSION 30	NEW LIMPOPO ACADEMIC HOSPITAL	87333M^2	CONSTRUCTION IN PROGRESS
ERF 53	SESHEGO HEIGHTS EXTENSION 1	NEW MOLETSI MALL	9000m2	CONSTRUCTION IN PROGRESS

Source: PLK Building Inspection SBU

2.51 PROPERTY MANAGEMENT

2.51.1 The Core Function of the Unit

The core function of the Strategic Business Unit Property Management is the Management of Municipal Immovable Properties and property rights transfer in general. The Strategic Business Units deals with the generating of the Portfolio/Council report for:

- Property acquisition
- Property disposal – (Lease, sale, donation)
- Registration of servitudes
- Policy development
- Property register
- Property valuation – appointment of Valuer
- Facilitation of SG Diagrams – property sales/acquisition
- Property transfers
- Property development – Investigating best and optimum use of property.
- Implement the communication strategy to ensure adequate service delivery.
- Apply and adhere to best property practices.

Represent the City as an expert in the field of Property Management when interfacing with key stakeholders. Coordinate, collect and analyse valuation data and formulate valuation specific recommendations for line management.

2.51.2 Achievements

DRAFT

- Academic Hospital Near Edu Park- Construction commenced
- Municipal Long terms lease development approved.
- Fundigenix Proprietary Limited (Checkers Centre)
- The Greenery Shopping Centre- Erf 1340 Pietersburg X 40
- Netcare Akeso Hospital – Construction commenced

2.51.3 Challenges for property Management

- Illegal occupation of municipal land
- Human Capital
- Outdated land register
- Encroachments – neighbouring properties

DRAFT

CHAPTER Three: Housing and Human Settlements Analysis

3.1 HUMAN SETTLEMENT STATUS QUO

The Human Settlements Business Unit (SBU) is headed by the Manager and supported by two Assistant Managers responsible for the Housing Beneficiary Management and Construction Project Management sections (Project Managers). Each section has clearly defined responsibilities and plays a critical role in delivering the Municipality's human settlements programmes and achieving its service delivery objectives.

The Municipality is continuously strengthening its institutional capacity to effectively fulfil its legislative mandate and anticipated responsibilities in respect of housing delivery and human settlements development. As part of this commitment, the Municipality concluded and **signed the Implementation Protocol for Level 2 Housing Accreditation with the Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA), which came into effect on 1 February 2024.**

To support the implementation of the delegated accreditation functions, the Municipality established a dedicated Human Settlements Unit in 2019. The Unit is responsible for coordinating and implementing the Municipality's housing programmes, including project planning, beneficiary administration, contract management, project implementation, monitoring and reporting, in accordance with the Housing Act, the National Housing Code, the Implementation Protocol and other applicable legislative and policy frameworks.

The Municipality continues to strengthen the institutional capacity of the Human Settlements Unit to ensure that it is adequately resourced and structured to discharge the functions and responsibilities associated with Level 2 Housing Accreditation and to improve the delivery of sustainable human settlements.

In a historic moment for the province of Limpopo, Polokwane Municipality has become the first municipality to be granted the authority to oversee housing and human settlement initiatives independently.

Section 153 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No. 108 of 1996), requires municipalities to structure and manage their administration, budgeting and planning processes in a manner that prioritises the basic needs of communities and promotes their social and economic development.

Despite this constitutional obligation, the Municipality continues to operate within a challenging socio-economic environment. Global and national economic pressures have exacerbated existing developmental challenges, resulting in increased demand for housing and human settlements services amid constrained fiscal resources. Continued population growth, high levels of unemployment and limited funding have placed significant pressure on the Municipality's ability to deliver housing opportunities at the pace required to meet the growing demand.

Furthermore, sustained urbanisation and circular migration into the City have intensified the demand for housing and basic municipal infrastructure. The influx of people seeking employment and improved socio-economic opportunities has outpaced the availability of serviced land and housing opportunities, leading to the proliferation of informal settlements,

DRAFT

overcrowded living conditions and the increasing use of backyard accommodation. These housing conditions undermine the constitutional objective of providing access to adequate housing and continue to present significant planning and service delivery challenges for the Municipality.

The Human Settlements Unit is therefore required to strengthen its institutional capacity, planning, project implementation and beneficiary management processes to respond effectively to these challenges while ensuring compliance with national housing legislation, policy frameworks and the Municipality's developmental objectives

3.1.1Signing of the Level 2 Housing Implementation Accreditation Protocol

The monumental agreement was formalized through the **signing of the Level 2 Housing Implementation Accreditation Protocol**, a significant milestone that marks a new era in housing administration for the region.

The pivotal accord was signed by the Head of Department (HoD) of the Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA) in Limpopo, **Dr. Modjadji Malahlela**, and the City Manager of Polokwane, **Ms. Thuso Nemugumoni.**

The ceremony was graced by the presence of MEC for COGHSTA, **Honourable Basikopo Makamu**, and Polokwane Executive Mayor, **Cllr Makoro John Mpe,**

Housing Implementation Protocol Signing

Source: PLK Human Settlement SBU

3.2 Human Settlements and Housing Projects

3.2.1 Human Settlement Plan

The Human Settlement Plan is the anchor of human settlements and housing provision across the City. Over the past years, in line with the IDP, the City developed and annually reviewed the five-year Human Settlement Plan, which presents human settlement and housing realities of the City, and identifies strategies for addressing prevalent housing policy gaps.
The HSP has coordinated a variety of programmes that delivered different housing opportunities to different income groups.

The delivery of adequate housing is a constitutional obligation and a key driver of social, economic and spatial development. Sustainable human settlements contribute to improved living conditions, poverty alleviation, job creation, environmental sustainability, the restoration of human dignity and social integration.

The Five-Year Human Settlements Plan, reviewed each year provides the Municipality's strategic framework for planning, coordinating and implementing housing programmes. It is reviewed regularly to ensure alignment with national and provincial policy frameworks, changing demographic and socio-economic conditions, and the Municipality's developmental priorities

3.2.2 Housing Demand

The demand for housing within the Municipality continues to increase due to rapid urbanisation, population growth, the formation of new households and other socio-economic factors. This growing demand has contributed to the expansion of backyard rental accommodation, overcrowding in formal dwellings and increased pressure on existing housing and municipal infrastructure.

A proxy for the increasing demand for housing is the National Housing Needs Register which comprise of families awaiting State housing assistance. The registered housing needs on National Housing Needs Register stand at **58 953**. However, the overall housing demand of the City can be estimated at maximum of **61 000** considering top structure housing need of people in existing Townships, rural areas, housing need arising from blocked housing projects, and consolidation housing.

This growing housing demand underscores the need for sustained investment, strategic planning and accelerated implementation of housing programmes to reduce the housing backlog and support the development of sustainable human settlements.

Table 2.15: Categorical analysis of the housing need

Housing Programme	Demand	Data Source	Programme & funding source
Greenfield Development	± 58 953	NHNR	IRDP- HSDG FLISP – HSDG Project linked- HSDG
Informal Settlement	± 1 000	Polokwane Municipality	UISP - HSDG

DRAFT

Housing Programme	Demand	Data Source	Programme & funding source
Rural	± 3 000		Rural housing – HSDG
Rental			Institutional – HSDG CCG – HSDG Private funding
Consolidation	± 100		Consolidation- HSDG
Blocked	± 1 000	Polokwane municipality COGSHTA	HSDG
Serviced Sites			IRDP/HSDG
EEDBS	66		HSDG
Title Deed Registration	3 161	Polokwane municipality	HSDG
Asbestos roofing	±841	Polokwane municipality	HSDG

Source: Polokwane municipality: Human Settlements

3.2.3 Level 2 Housing Accreditation

As a Level 2 Housing Accredited Municipality, Polokwane Municipality plays an expanded role in the planning, implementation and management of human settlements programmes. This Plan assesses the Municipality's housing needs, identifies development opportunities and challenges, and outlines strategic interventions to improve the efficiency, effectiveness and sustainability of housing delivery.

Despite the prevailing economic challenges, the Municipality remains committed to creating an enabling environment for both public and private sector investment in human settlements and housing delivery. To support progressive access to adequate housing, the Municipality continues to implement a range of strategic initiatives, including land use planning, township establishment and the development of basic municipal infrastructure in approved housing development areas.

In addition, the Municipality is strengthening its institutional capacity to effectively fulfil its legislative mandate and anticipated responsibilities in respect of housing delivery and human settlements development.

A dedicated Human Settlements Unit was established in 2019, and, as part of the Municipality's accreditation journey, the Level 2 Housing Accreditation Implementation Protocol was formally concluded on 1 February 2024. These measures are intended to enhance the Municipality's capacity to plan, implement, monitor and manage human settlements programmes in accordance with national housing legislation, policy frameworks and the requirements of Level 2 Housing Accreditation.

DRAFT

Medium-Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) Human Settlements and Housing Projects

The Municipality will continue to implement the following priority housing programmes over the Medium-Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period:

- Construct and deliver **Breaking New Ground (BNG)** housing units through the Urban Housing Programme, Rural Housing Programme and Informal Settlements Upgrading Programme to provide adequate, secure and sustainable housing opportunities for qualifying beneficiaries.

  During the 2024/2025 financial year **[2025/2026 reporting period]**, the Municipality appointed ten (10) contractors on **19 February 2025** for a period of three (3) years. The contracts are scheduled to expire during the **2027/2028 financial year**. The contractors were appointed to construct low-cost housing units in both urban and rural areas within the Municipality's jurisdiction.

  MTEF human settlements and housing allocations (204/2025 – **2027/2028 financial year**)

YEAR	UNITS ALLOCATION	BUDGET
2024/25	**404**	**R 73 193 488.00**
2025/26	**255**	**R 46 198 860.00**
2026/27	**260**	**R 47 104 720.00**
TOTAL	**919 Units**	**R 166 497 068.00**

  To date, 372 out of the 404 housing units allocated for the 2024/2025 financial year have been completed, representing an overall completion rate of 92%. The remaining 32 units are at various stages of completion and are being monitored to ensure that they are completed and certified.

3.2.4 Upgrade of informal settlements

- Upgrade informal settlements through the provision of engineering services, tenure security, and integrated human settlements development. Significant progress has been made in the upgrading of informal settlements within the Municipality.
- The remaining two informal settlements, **Seshego F (Freedom Park)** and **Polokwane Extension 106**, have been successfully upgraded through the relocation of qualifying beneficiaries to planned settlement areas in ext 126 and 127. The Municipality is currently implementing the final phase of the informal settlement upgrading programme, which involves the construction of top structures (housing units) for relocated beneficiaries.

DRAFT

3.2.5 Servicing and allocation of residential sites

- **Allocation of the servicing residential sites** to qualifying beneficiaries in approved development areas to promote secure land tenure and sustainable human settlements.

3.2.6 Military Veterans Housing Programme

- In support of the National Military Veterans Housing Programme, the Municipality donated 50 serviced residential sites in Polokwane Extension 78 for the development of housing opportunities for qualifying military veterans. This initiative demonstrates the Municipality's commitment to supporting national human settlements programmes and improving access to secure and adequate housing for deserving military veterans. To date approximately 40 housing units have been built through CoGHSTA

3.2.7 Tenure Upgrading

- Secure tenure is a central part of the housing development process. The municipality in collaboration with CoGHSTA is running a programme of Township upgrading, Title Deed restoration and registration. Incomplete Township in the areas of Seshego and Mankweng are currently finalised and proclaimed. Through the Title Deed restoration programme, focus is placed on the following long Townships which are long overdue:
    - **Westenburg**
    - **Annandale**
    - **Nirvana**
    - **Seshego**
    - **Mankweng and**
    - **Sebayeng.**
- To date the Municipality has **2041 backlog** for the restoration of title deeds programme, with approximately 100 title deeds issued to the beneficiaries.

3.2.8 Title Deeds Backlog

- **Table : Title Deeds Backlog**

TOWNSHIP NAME	SUBSIDIZED UNITS	TRANSFERRED	OUTSTANDING	CURRENT ALLOCATION
WESTENBURG (RDP)	968	959	9	0
EXT 44	1 631	1 631	24	0
EXT 40	393	393	0	0
EXT.40 NEW PROJECT	116	116	0	0
EXT.40 NEW PROJECT	29	0	0	29

DRAFT

TOWNSHIP NAME	SUBSIDIZED UNITS	TRANSFERRED	OUTSTANDING	CURRENT ALLOCATION
EXT 71	1109	1098	11	0
EXT 73	569	565	4	0
EXT 75	492	491	1	0
EXT 76	1327	1325	2	0
ZONE AX1	738	594	144	0
ZONE 5	862	617	244	01
ZONE H	21	0	21	0
ZONE 6A -8148	257	141	116	116
ZONE 6B -8147	49	20	29	29
ZONE 6 (MOHLAKANENG)	133	95	41	41
ZONE B (LEPAKENG)	120	0	0	120
ZONE A EXT (MPHONEGELE)	12	0	12	0
ZONE C (MOKABAPARK)	74	23	51	26
ZONE C (MOLEPOPARK)	31	8	23	13
ZONE C (SAMUEL THEMA)	101	0	101	0
LITHULI 9A	517	512	5	0
LITHULI 9F	240	228	12	0
LITHULI 9G	320	302	18	18
LITHULI 9H	212	201	11	0
LITHULI 9L	1064	1006	58	
SEBAYENG B	500	453	47	0
MANKWENG UNIT G	377	0	377	0
MANKWENG E	94	9	85	0
MANKWENG F EXT 2	297	0	297	0
MANKWENG G EXT 1	503	0	503	0
MANKWENG C	1	0	1	0
EXT 106	130	130	0	0
EXT. 78	1625	1530	95	0
ZONE D (BIKOPARK) 1397/01-33 1400-1788	26 152	0 0	26 152	0 0

DRAFT

TOWNSHIP NAME	SUBSIDIZED UNITS	TRANSFERRED	OUTSTANDING	CURRENT ALLOCATION
SESHEGO A X2 HOSPITAL VIEW	477	0	477	0
ANNADALE	18	18	0	0
EXT 133	1018	1018	0	0
EXT.133	130	5	125	0
WESTENBURG (EEDBS)	263	197	66	10
EXT. 127	257	0	257	0
EXT.134	413	413	0	0

- **Source: PLK Human Settlement SBU**

3.2.9 Eradication of Asbestos roofing

- Asbestos roofing materials were widely used in state-funded housing developments prior to 1994. In terms of current government regulations and public health legislation, asbestos is classified as a hazardous material that poses significant risks to human health. While some homeowners have replaced asbestos roofing through private home improvement initiatives, a substantial number of households continue to reside in dwellings with asbestos roofs.

- To address this challenge, the Municipality, in partnership with the Limpopo Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA) and the Housing Development Agency (HDA), commenced the **Asbestos Roof Replacement Programme** during the **2023/2024 financial year**.
- As part of the programme's achievements:
- **approximately 2050 asbestos roofs** in **Seshego** areas were successfully replaced.
- A further 302 **housing units** in Nirvan, Westernburg and Polokwane Ext 44 are currently undergoing roof replacement.
- The HDA has completed an assessment of the remaining housing units requiring asbestos roof replacement in **Mankweng and Sebayeng** and formal assessment reports are available to guide the implementation of the remaining phases of the programme.

3.2.10 Priority Human Settlement and Housing Development Areas (PHSHDAs).

- It is true that the City inherited some dysfunctional spatial pattern and continues to see some depressed human settlements in an around the urban edges of the city. The rapid urbanisation, unemployment, population growth, slow infrastructure investment has forced people to live in unplanned areas without basic infrastructure and social amenities.

DRAFT

- To deal with this challenge, following the National spatial transformation and consolidation framework, the city has identified and demarcated locations as Priority Human Settlements and Housing Development Areas (PHSHDAs). This is a national spatial transformation approach to building new, integrated, functional, and inclusive settlements.
- The programme intends to support Municipalities to prioritize housing development applications in terms of SPLUMA thus directing housing finance to areas that promote an inclusive residential market instead of further segregating people by income, race, and gender.
- This should enable the city to consolidate and access funding to deal, in an integrated manner with the Human Settlement needs of such identified communities, the identified PHDAs of the City include

- **Polokwane CBD and surrounding** – extending from the South-western gateway of Polokwane covering Polokwane Extensions,
- **Polokwane R71 corridor** extending from the eastern Polokwane along the R71, covering Dalmada AH, Mamahule**,** Nobody, running through to Boyne,

- These Priority Human Settlements and Housing Development Areas are experiencing fast growth and somewhat unplanned development. Transforming these regions is crucial in the overall objective of creating integrated and sustainable human settlements. The Housing Development Agency (HDA) facilitated the development plans for the two PHSHDAs**.**

These achievements demonstrate the Municipality's continued commitment to implementing integrated and sustainable human settlements programmes that improve the quality of life of residents, promote spatial transformation and contribute towards the progressive realisation of the constitutional right to adequate housing.

Polokwane CBD and Surrounding

Figure A: Polokwane CBD and Surrounding

DRAFT

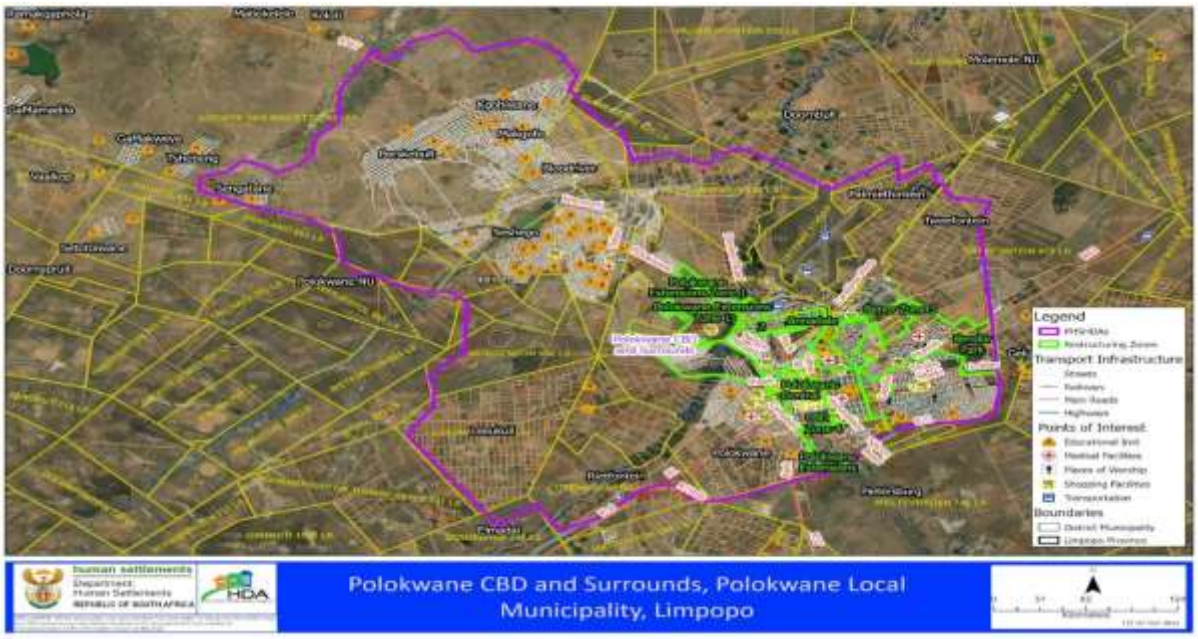


Figure B: Polokwane R71 Corridor

3.3 Housing Challenges

The City's housing environment is made up of urban and rural settlements. Despite all efforts, a variety of institutional and environmental challenges continue to exist, namely:

- **Growing housing demand in relation to supply** due to a variety of factors including new family formation, unemployment, and limited financial resources to deliver at scale.
- **Unemployment:** which means households are unable to invest in their own housing needs.
- **Unplanned/unsustainable human settlements on the urban edge:** several communities are dysfunctional in the sense that such communities are located in areas without basic services, far from economic activities, social amenities.
- **Well-located land is expensive:** publicly owned strategically located land is relatively low. Acquiring privately owned land is overwhelming and expensive. On the other hand, planning requirements and geotechnical challenges limits delivery on a scale.
- **Human Settlements Development Grants (to municipalities) constraints:** fluctuating HSDG (allocation) to municipality does not allow a steady delivery peak.
- **Unsustainable social housing entity (PHA):** The Municipal social housing entity is continuously struggling to stabilize. The huge debt of rentals owed to the entity makes it difficult for the entity to thrive.
- **Insufficient human capital:** which is influenced by several factors including increasing population, the increased Municipal jurisdiction, and the process of transferring housing functions (Municipal housing accreditation) to the Municipality. A number of activities/projects that emerged have evidenced that the City is lacking in terms of human resources to manage and coordinate human settlements and housing delivery.
- **Institutional capacity building:** the evolution of national housing policy as well as the accreditation of the City demands enhancement of existing skills and knowledge, as new functions and systems of operation are adopted by the City.
- **Unoccupied houses due to untraceable beneficiaries:** uncopied houses appear to be a perpetual challenge facing the city. It undermines all the financial efforts of the State in promoting the Constitutional rights of the people.
- **Planning alignment:** there is a need for improved planning and alignment of delivery plans and prioritization of projects between the city and provincial housing sector Department;
- **Unsigned implementation protocol:** which is necessary to expedite and put to motion the housing accreditation of the city and therefore fast-track housing service delivery.
- **Urban planning and approval processes are slow and frustrating:** prescribed urban planning and approval processes ae overwhelming.
- **Insufficient bulk infrastructure:** The City is growing at a rate faster than that of infrastructure investment. As such some infrastructure is constrained (sewer plants, water storage, electrical transmission).
- **Lack of proper roads and storm water drainage infrastructure in newly established Townships:** it has now become a norm that newly established townships do not have surfaced roads and storm water drainage systems, and this leads to flooding some areas during heavy seasons;

DRAFT

- **Limited affordable housing stock:** there is a severe shortage of affordable housing stock for middle-income groups.

❑ More Land is needed **:**

  ❑ The identification, assessment, development and release of land for human settlements have been an ongoing exercise for the City. But in the past 7 years, the land delivery pace slowed down because of high costs associated with acquisition, planning, and development.
  ❑ The occurrence of this trend amid a growing population and great urbanisation has placed vacant municipal land under threat of invasion.
  ❑ To address the housing demand of the City, about 500 – 1 000 hectares (ha) of land will be required (with appropriated densities). The reality is that well located pockets of land in and around the urban core are privately owned and protected

❑ Obtain Fully Functional Municipal housing accreditation level 2;

❑ Policy determination.

❑ Public Private Partnerships for housing delivery.

❑ Intensified housing education.

❑ Institutional reengineering.

❑ Intergovernmental relations/support.

DRAFT

3.4 Opportunities to Mitigate Challenges

The Municipality encourages the Brownfield development and discourages Greenfield developments. This initiative of brownfield development encourages densifying the existing land available for various use. Through spatial planning policies analyses, the development of the land will help alleviate the increase demand for housing, including the gap market and student accommodation around the City.

3.4.1Medium term opportunities for housing delivery

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	PROGRAMMES	TARGET	STATUS
Polokwane Ext 72	Sites reserved for middle and high income earners First Home Finance and Subsidy Assistance (FHFSA) and open market)	800 (Res 1)	•Township proclaimed •Services installed (Water and Sanitation).
Polokwane Ext 78	IRDP (low, medium to high density) (FHFSA) and open market)	1 137 (Res 1) 5 X Res 2 7 X Res 3 2 X Bus 3	• Township proclaimed, • Services installed (Water, sewer, electricity) Only sites earmarked for middle to high income are yet to be sold.
Polokwane Ext 79	IRDP (middle and high income earners) (FHFSA) and open market)	500 (Res 1)	• Township proclaimed • Services installed.
Ext 133	Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)	2 969 (Res 1)	• Township proclaimed • Site allocated • Services installed (Water and Sanitation, electricity infrastructure is currently being installed) Construction of low income houses is in phases

DRAFT

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	PROGRAMMES	TARGET	STATUS
Polokwane Ext 126	ISUP	497 (Res 1)	• Township proclaimed • Services installed (Water and Sanitation). • Site allocated Construction of low income houses is in phases
Polokwane Ext 127	ISUP	497	• Township proclaimed • Services installed (Water and Sanitation). • Site allocated Construction of low income houses is in phases
Polokwane Ext 76 **(Erf 40206)**	Social housing	240 units	• Township completed • Bulk services (water, sanitation, electricity) The regulator (SHRA) raised and issue with the appointment of service provider. The project will be advertised
Annadale Ext 2	Social Housing	494	• Tenanting begun. • Currently 355 tenants allocated
Polokwane Ext 108 and 106	Social housing (medium to high density)	19 x Res 3 Ext 106 1 x Bus 3 in Ext 108 (Erf 23145)	• Township complete • Bulk services installed (water, sanitation, electricity) PHA to plan on the land parcels
Ext 134	Integrated Residential Development Programme IRDP	1 399 low 1 163 Middle to high income sites	• Township complete • Bulk services installed (water, sanitation) • 400 low cost units are built Only sites earmarked for middle to high income are yet to be sold.
Kingdom park	IRDP	± 7000	• Township approved by MPT
Pietersburg 40 (Phase 3)	IRDP	-	• Township established. • Re-designing of the Township needed

Source: PLK Human Settlement SBU

DRAFT

3.4.2 Long Term Opportunities for Housing Delivery

Property Description	Extent	Ownership	Proclamation Status	Proposed Development
Ptn 75 of Ivydale Agricultural Holdings	4.96112 Ha	Municipality	Farm	Mixed Housing Development
179 Sterkloop LS	83 ha	Municipal	Farm	Mixed Housing Development
Pilgrimshoop 1,2,3,5	92.6 ha	Municipality	Farm	Mixed housing development

Source: PLK Human Settlement SBU

3.5The Freedom Charter / Breaking New Grounds

The Freedom Charter States That there shall be Houses, Security and Comfort. Housing Remains a cornerstone of human dignity and a key indicator of the Society Progress. Government Commitments to **Breaking New Grounds** in the integrated Human Settlements has led to Significant Strides in Providing Housing for all Particularly the Vulnerable groups around the City of Polokwane. Progress is very Visible in all Corners of the City.

3.6 Housing Unit Achievements / Success To date

- Approval of Level 2 Housing Accreditation and signing Implementation Protocol 2024
- As the Municipality's first housing project implemented following the attainment of Level 2 Housing Accreditation, the Human Settlements Unit successfully implemented the construction of 404 low-cost housing units. The project has reached an overall completion level of 98%, representing a significant milestone in strengthening the Municipality's capacity to deliver sustainable human settlements under its accredited housing mandate.
- Provincial Govan Mbeki Best Level 1 Accredited Municipality, 2013
- Provincial Level 1 Accreditation winner, 2013.
- Provincial Level 1 Accredited Municipality, 2012.
- First National Govern Mbeki runner up:
- Provincial Govan Mbeki Winner for Best Municipality for Enhanced PHP Projects, 2011.
- Govan Mbeki Housing Award for Best Municipality, 2008
- Southern African Institute of Housing for Housing Excellence, 2005.

DRAFT

3.7 RDP Housing Construction Within the City of Polokwane

3.7.1 Urban Households in Polokwane Ext. 133 Phase 3.

Urban Households in Polokwane Ext. 133 Phase 3.

3.7.2 Seshego Extension 133 RDP Houses Phase 1

Seshego Extension 133 RDP Houses Phase 1

Seshego Extension 133 RDP Houses Phase 1

Seshego Extension 133 RDP Houses Phase 1

Source: PLK Human Settlement SBU

3.7.3 Ceres Village RDP Construction (Aganang Cluster)

RDP Construction at Ceres Village(Aganang Cluster)

RDP Construction at Ceres Village(Aganang Cluster)

Source: PLK Human Settlement SBU

Municipal Housing Entity (PHA)

3.8 Polokwane Housing Association (PHA)

The City of Polokwane is a leader within the province as it has an established housing entity (***Thabatshweu Housing Company PTY LTD)*** – trading as Polokwane Housing Association - PHA), but the responsibilities that come with the fully and effective functioning of the PHA need to be addressed during the next five-year period to ensure that a sound base is established for building sustainable **integrated human settlements**. The focus should be on identification of mechanisms to fast-track delivery of social housing, GAP Market Housing and Student Housing. This will also result in the Service Delivery Agreement (SDA) being reviewed to incorporate these aspects. This will improve the property portfolio of the PHA and assist towards the establishment thereof as a viable municipal entity.

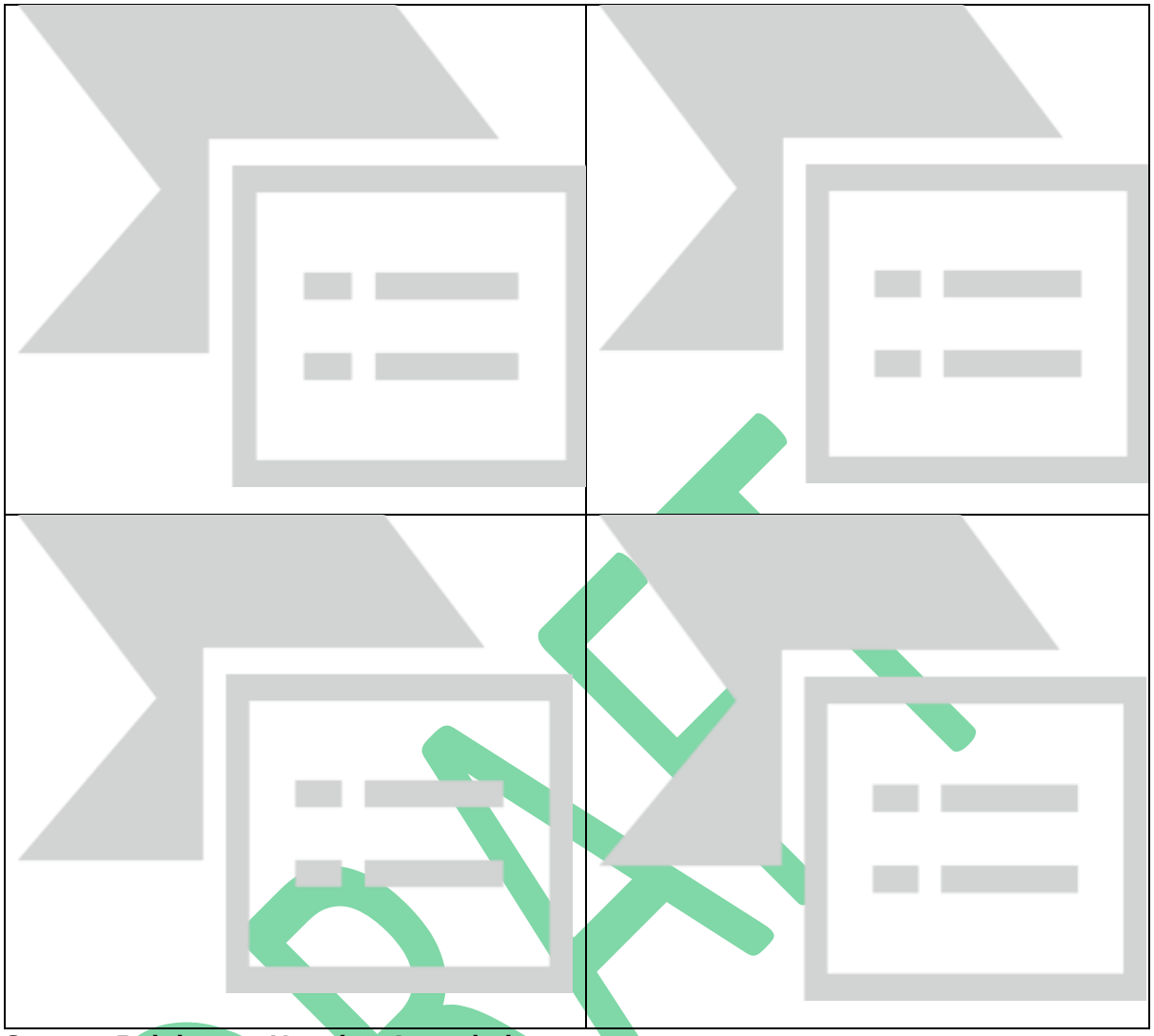
Critical for the operational requirements of the PHA will be the adherence and compliance of all integrated settlement establishment (spatial plans) with the Spatial Development Framework of the City of Polokwane. The PHA must also develop mechanisms to effectively deal with the conclusion and finalisation of the Annadale EXT 02 housing project and to review and update the housing chapter which will include implementing effective maintenance programme. The development of a communication plan will assist the PHA to create awareness and obtain buy-in from the private sector with regards to planned developments. Human settlement demand database and other forms of pieces of information required need to be updated regularly and communicated to all various stakeholders as means to obtain buy-in. The PHA is also responsible for effective co-ordinated and regulated building and development within the municipal area.

PHA is currently managing **508 units** located in the City of Polokwane, **Ladanna** with an estimated **1,524** residents and **193** Community Residential Units. Seshego **CRU** with an estimated 567 residents. The projects are known as the **Ga-rena Hosing Rental Village and Seshego CRU** and both projects consist of a mixture of one-, two- and three-bedroom units and shops, Live and work units for the CRU project. Both are within a radius of 12km from the CBD and provides housing with easy access to transport and social amenities / places of interest.

3.8.1 Garena Phase 1 Rental Village in Ladanna

Garena Phase 1 Rental Village in Ladanna

DRAFT



Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

3.8.2 Seshego CRU

Seshego CRU

- Seshego CRU with an estimated **567** residents.
- **Project type:** Conversion of Seshego hostel into Community Residential Units.
- **Project history:** Approved for occupation by existing hostel dwellers.

DRAFT

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

3.8.3 Annadale Extension 2

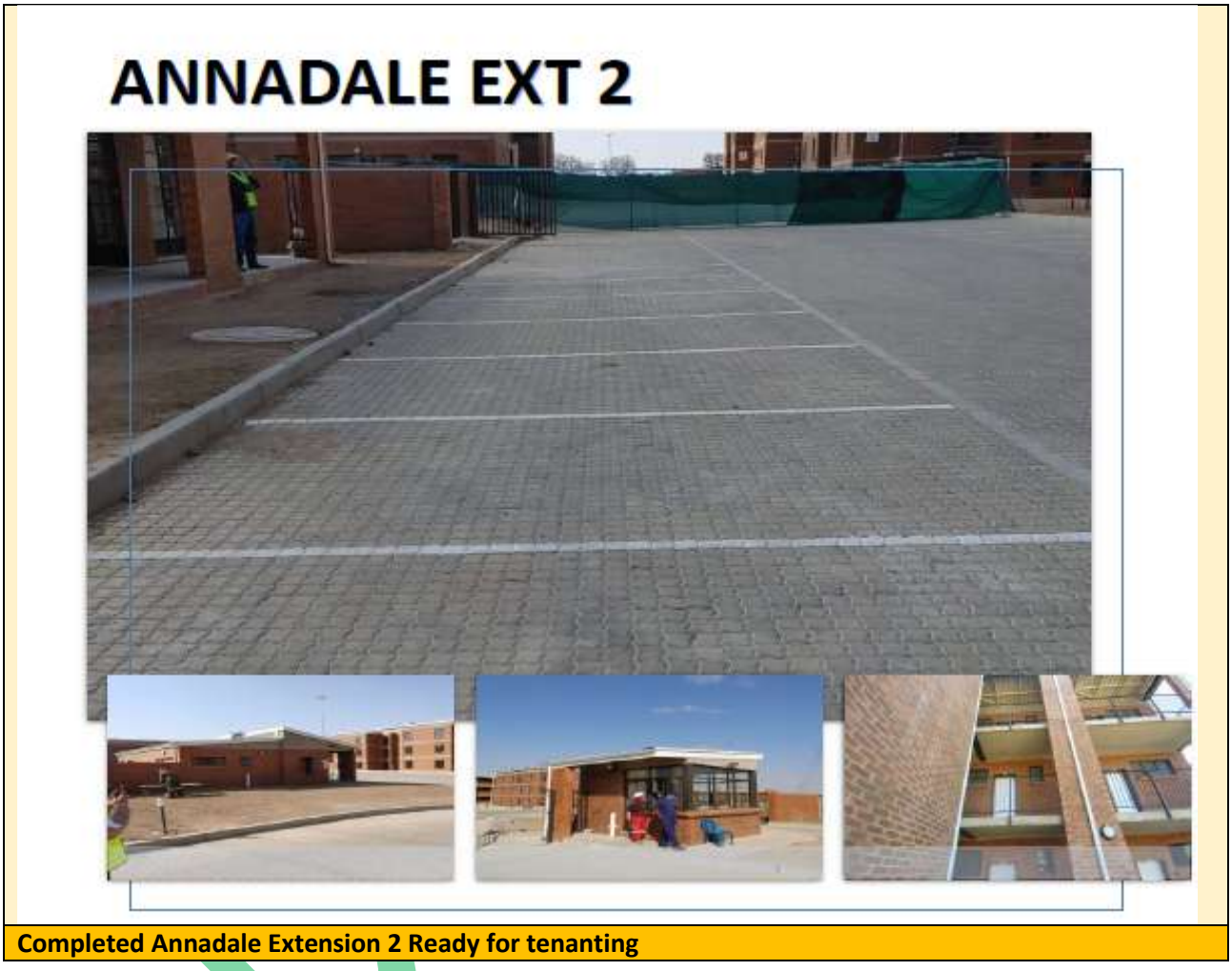
Annadale Extension 2 consists of **494** social housing units. Annadale Extension 2 is located on the Corner of Railway and Market streets and consists of Erf 513, 514, 515 and 516. Erven 514 and 515 have been consolidated to enable the project development. Construction of 494 High Density (Residential 3) Units / Flats comprising of:

No. of units	Size of the units	Description
174	31m²	One bedroom Flats

320	40m²	Two Bedroom Flats

Source: Polokwane Housing Association

3.8.4 Completed Annadale Extension 2 Ready for tenanting



Completed Annadale Extension 2 Ready for tenanting

Completed Annadale Extension 2 Ready for tenanting

Annadale Ext 2 Completed

Annadale Ext 2 Completed

Interior Annadale Ext 2

Interior Annadale Ext 2

Source: Polokwane Housing Association

3.8.5 Elevated Tank at Annadale Ext 2

Elevated tank at Annadale Ext 2

Elevated tank at Annadale Ext 2

Elevated tank at Annadale Ext 2

Source: Polokwane Housing Association

3.9 PHA Upcoming Projects and Year of Implementation

Table A: Project Types

No	Project Types	Units	Year of Implementation
1.	**Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing**	**240**	2026-2029
2.	**Social Housing Bendor Ext 100**	**198**	2030-2034
3.	**Zone RE Weltevreden for Student accommodation**	**1000**	2035-2038
4.	**Student beds**	**5116**	2038/2041

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

Table B: Projects Names

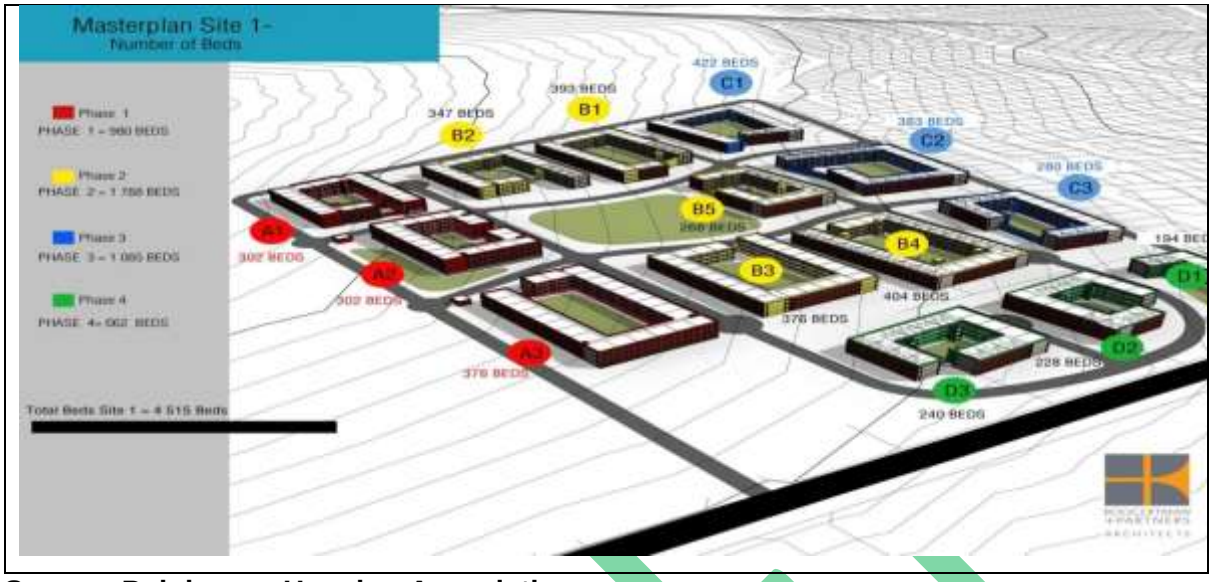
No	Project Name	Units	Year of Implementation
A.	**Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing**	**240**	2026-2029
B.	**Social Housing Bendor Ext 100**	**198**	2030-2034
C.	**Zone RE Weltevreden for Student accommodation**	**1000**	2035- 2038
D.	**Polokwane Ext 106 Students beds**	**5116**	2038-2041

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

DRAFT

3.10 Designs for the Upcoming PHA key Projects

3.10.1 Phase 1-4 Student Accommodation Designs



Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

3.10.2 Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing Designs

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

3.11 Land parcels earmarked for Development of New Projects

Planned Development Start date from 2026-2027, The land parcels earmarked for development are the following: i.e.

- ✓ **Polokwane Ext 106 &108 to deliver 5116 student bed housing units. Planned construction**
- ✓ **Polokwane Ext 76 to deliver 240 high density housing. Panned construction**
- ✓ **Bendor Ext 100 to deliver 198 social housing units.**
- ✓ **Construction Total number of housing units = 6 308 housing units**

All these land parcels are situated within the development zone of Polokwane Municipality with vibrant development activities around them. Townships have been established on these land parcels and there are no bulk requirements.

3.12 Proposed Development Options

The following will be the development options that PHA will consider:

(a)Delivering housing on a development lease approach

- ➢ The developer takes the risks of developing and managing housing units over an agreed period of time. At the end of the period the facility is transferred to PHA

(b)Delivering housing as a developer

- ➢ PHA raises the funding required and provide management services like the Ga- Rena model**.**

(c)Acquiring CRU housing stock to provide property management services.

- ➢ PHA acquires these projects from CoGHSTA in an effort to grow its property portfolio.

(d)Providing student accommodation.

- ➢ The entity has Investigated the possibility of providing student accommodation. Each stream makes clear the following:
- ❖ Type of development,
- ❖ unit numbers,
- ❖ facilities/amenities etc.
- ❖ Status of land – town planning processes
- ❖ Funding options and envisaged budget
- ❖ Target market

(e)**Project development agreement** – i.e.,

PHA as developer vs developmental lease and all that which goes with either option**.**

- ➢ The **development lease** seems to be the preferred model to follow as PHA will not have any risk at all. At the end of the lease, the properties will be transferred to PHA.

DRAFT

This approach is similar to the one the municipality has with developers on the **Motor City development**.

- The **developer approach model** will expose PHA to all kinds of risks that PHA is not ready to deal with.

PHA manages social housing stock in close cooperation with the residents through tenant committees and tenant meetings. It wants to provide **quality accommodation** in affordable ways, also working against slum conditions and promoting civic pride. PHA management product aims at being participatory and integrative of physical, social and human aspects.

a. Housing development

Polokwane Housing Association continues to identify possibilities for new housing development in the inner City, through Greenfield development, refurbishment or conversion of buildings and offices for residential uses. It wants to develop housing in response to unnecessary dislocation of people that are sometimes caused by so-called urban renewal processes.

b. Housing Information

A housing information desk provides information and advice on how to access various affordable housing options and housing subsidies, as well as information on housing policy, rights and responsibilities.

C, community Empowerment

PHA wants to support its tenant community through linkages to other social support services and empowerment programmes. It also wants to ensure that low-income housing, social and non-social housing in the inner city is on the agenda of relevant role players—local and provincial government, financial institutional, etc.—through an active advocacy programme. In conjunction with its partners, it advocates inner city residential opportunities for those previously excluded and without access. This is done through local community forums, participation in discussions on urban renewal, and so forth.

DRAFT

3.13 PHA Key Success over the past 5 years

- Maintain **unqualified** audit opinion for 8 years
- Maintain level 2 accreditation for 8 years
- Settling the NHFC Loan
- Successfully implementing 494 social housing units in Annadale Ext 2 which is **100%** complete

3.14 Annadale Extension 2 at Ladanna

Annadale Extension 2 at Ladanna

Annadale Extension 2 at Ladanna

Annadale Extension 2 at Ladanna

Annadale Extension 2 at Ladanna

Annadale Extension 2 at Ladanna

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

3.15 PHA Maintenance Projects

No	Projects	Units	Year of Implementation	Proposed Budget
A.	Ga-Rena Phase 1 Refurbishment Project	24	**2026-2027**	Maintenance Budget
B.	Annadale Ext 2 Kids Play Area Provisioning	02	**2026-2027**	Maintenance Budget
C.	Ga-Rena Phase 1 Fence Rehabilitation and Access Control (Biometric)	01	**2026-2027**	Maintenance Budget
D.	Annadale Ext 2 Security upgrades (Access Control Biometric)	01	**2026-2027**	Maintenance Budget

No	Projects	Units	Year of Implementation	Proposed Budget
E.	Carports/Shades Installation	494	**2027-2029**	Maintenance Budget
F.	Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing Units	240	**2026-2029**	**CCG 70% NHFC 30%** Development leases
G.	Polokwane Ext 72,79,106,108 Student Accommodation	519	**2026-2029**	**PPP** Development leases

DRAFT

CHAPTER Four – Economic Analysis

4.1 Statistical overview: Polokwane Local Municipality

The following Statistical Overview Report aims to quantify the economic, demographic and socio-economic environment of Polokwane Local Municipality in context of its neighbouring regions, the district, the province and South Africa. A better understanding of the demographic, economic and socio-economic environment could inform stakeholders to implement and monitor plans and policies that will allow for a healthy, growing and inclusive economy and society.

Understanding the changes in the composition of the population with respect to population group, age and gender is vital in the face of growing pressure on food, energy, water, jobs and social support on the country's citizens. An understanding of how the total fertility rates, age-specific fertility rates, sex ratios at birth, life expectancies and international migration affect the respective population groups, ages and genders is essential for effective planning on a spatial level. The first section of the Statistical Overview Report will aim to disentangle the changes in the Polokwane Local Municipality demographics in context of other locals of the region, the districts, the Province and South Africa.

The second section will provide insights into the economic environment of Polokwane Local Municipality in relation to the other local municipality in the region, the district, the province and South Africa's performance. The changing economic environment subsequently has an effect on the ability of the economy to create jobs. This section will therefore also include analysis on the employment and subsequent income dynamics of Polokwane Local Municipality.

The third component of the Statistical Overview will investigate issues pertaining to the socio-economic environment of residents in Polokwane Local Municipality. Analysis will include a review of the Human Development Index (HDI), Gini, poverty, education, population density, crime, bulk infrastructure, international trade and tourism indicators relative to that of the other locals of the region, the districts, the Province and South Africa.

4.1.1Demography

"Demographics", or "population characteristics", includes analysis of the population of a region. Distributions of values within a demographic variable, and across households, as well as trends over time are of interest.

In this section, an overview is provided of the demography of the Polokwane Local Municipality and all its neighbouring regions, Capricorn District Municipality, Limpopo Province and South Africa as a whole.

DRAFT

4.1.2 Total population

Population statistics is important when analysing an economy, as the population growth directly and indirectly impacts employment and unemployment, as well as other economic indicators such as economic growth and per capita income.

TABLE 1. TOTAL POPULATION - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

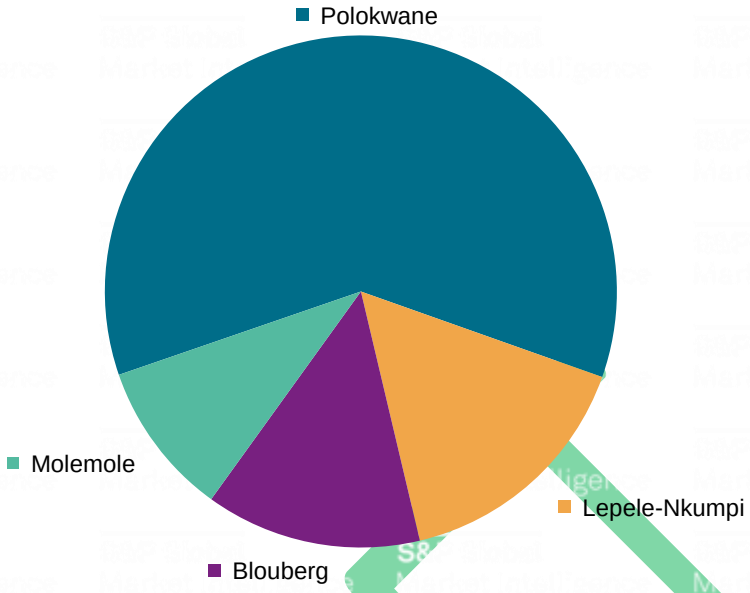
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2015	767,000	1,300,000	5,640,000	56,600,000	*59.1%*	*13.6%*	*1.35%*
2016	778,000	1,310,000	5,700,000	57,500,000	*59.4%*	*13.6%*	*1.35%*
2017	787,000	1,320,000	5,760,000	58,200,000	*59.6%*	*13.7%*	*1.35%*
2018	796,000	1,330,000	5,820,000	59,000,000	*59.8%*	*13.7%*	*1.35%*
2019	805,000	1,340,000	5,880,000	59,700,000	*60.0%*	*13.7%*	*1.35%*
2020	814,000	1,350,000	5,940,000	60,400,000	*60.2%*	*13.7%*	*1.35%*
2021	820,000	1,360,000	5,990,000	61,000,000	*60.4%*	*13.7%*	*1.34%*
2022	825,000	1,360,000	6,030,000	61,600,000	*60.5%*	*13.7%*	*1.34%*
2023	833,000	1,370,000	6,080,000	62,200,000	*60.6%*	*13.7%*	*1.34%*
2024	841,000	1,390,000	6,140,000	62,900,000	*60.7%*	*13.7%*	*1.34%*
2025	847,000	1,400,000	6,180,000	63,600,000	*60.7%*	*13.7%*	*1.33%*
Average Annual growth							
2015-2025	***1.00***%	***0.73***%	***0.92***%	***1.16***%			

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

With 847 000 people, the Polokwane Local Municipality housed 1.3% of South Africa's total population in 2025. Between 2015 and 2025 the population growth averaged 1.00% per annum which is very similar than the growth rate of South Africa as a whole (1.16%). Compared to Capricorn's average annual growth rate (0.73%), the growth rate in Polokwane's population at 1.00% was slightly higher than that of the district municipality.

DRAFT

CHART 1. TOTAL POPULATION - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

When compared to other regions, the Polokwane Local Municipality accounts for a total population of 847,000, or 60.7% of the total population in the Capricorn District Municipality, which is the most populous region in the Capricorn District Municipality for 2025. The ranking in terms of the size of Polokwane compared to the other regions remained the same between 2015 and 2025. In terms of its share the Polokwane Local Municipality was significantly larger in 2025 (60.7%) compared to what it was in 2015 (59. 1%).When looking at the average annual growth rate, it is noted that Polokwane ranked second (relative to its peers in terms of growth) with an average annual growth rate of 1.0% between 2015 and 2025.

4.1.3Population projections

Based on the present age-gender structure and the present fertility, mortality and migration rates, Polokwane's population is projected to grow at an average annual rate of 0.4% from 847 000 in 2025 to 865 000 in 2030.

DRAFT

TABLE 2. POPULATION PROJECTIONS - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2025-2030 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

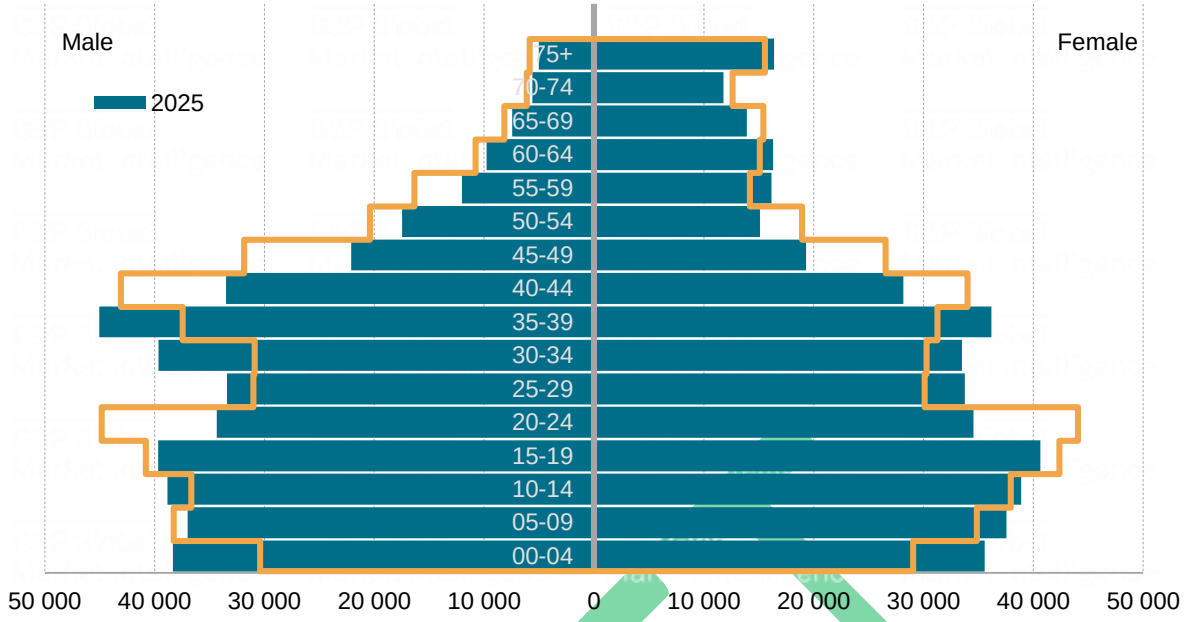
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2025	847,000	1,400,000	6,180,000	63,600,000	*60.7%*	*13.7%*	*1.33%*
2026	851,000	1,400,000	6,200,000	64,100,000	*60.8%*	*13.7%*	*1.33%*
2027	854,000	1,400,000	6,220,000	64,500,000	*60.8%*	*13.7%*	*1.32%*
2028	858,000	1,410,000	6,240,000	65,000,000	*60.9%*	*13.7%*	*1.32%*
2029	861,000	1,410,000	6,260,000	65,500,000	*61.0%*	*13.8%*	*1.32%*
2030	865,000	1,420,000	6,280,000	65,900,000	*61.0%*	*13.8%*	*1.31%*
Average Annual growth							
2025-2030	***0.43***%	***0.31***%	***0.33***%	***0.72***%			

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The population projection of Polokwane Local Municipality shows an estimated average annual growth rate of 0.4% between 2025 and 2030. The average annual growth rate in the population over the projection period for Capricorn District Municipality, Limpopo Province and South Africa is 0.3%, 0.3% and 0.7% respectively.

DRAFT

CHART 2. Population pyramid - Polokwane Local Municipality, 2025 vs. 2030 [Percentage]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The population pyramid reflects a projected change in the structure of the population from 2025 and 2030. The differences can be explained as follows:

- In 2025, there is a slightly larger share of young working age people between 20 and 34 (24.7%), compared to what is estimated in 2030 (24.4%). This age category of young working age population will decrease over time.
- The fertility rate in 2030 is estimated to be significantly higher compared to that experienced in 2025.
- The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is projected to be significantly smaller (23.9%) in 2030 when compared to 2025 (26.7%).

In 2025, the female population for the 20 to 34 years' age group amounts to 12.0% of the total female population while the male population group for the same age amounts to 12.7% of the total male population. In 2030, the male working age population at 12.3% still exceeds that of the female population working age population at 12.1%, although both are at a lower level compared to 2025.

4.1.4 Population by population group, gender and age

The total population of a region is the total number of people within that region measured in the middle of the year. Total population can be categorized according to the population group, as well as the sub-categories of age and gender. The population groups include African, White, Coloured and Asian, where the Asian group includes all people originating from Asia, India and China. The age subcategory divides the population into 5-year cohorts, e.g. 0-4, 5-9, 10-13, etc.

DRAFT

TABLE 3. POPULATION BY GENDER - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [NUMBER].

	Male	Female	Total
Polokwane	419,214	427,780	846,994
Blouberg	88,245	102,064	190,309
Molemole	64,412	72,094	136,507
Lepele-Nkumpi	104,944	116,651	221,595
Capricorn	**676,815**	**718,589**	**1,395,404**

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Polokwane Local Municipality's male/female split in population was 98.0 males per 100 females in 2025. The Polokwane Local Municipality appears to be a fairly stable population with the share of female population (50.51%) being very similar to the national average of (50.44%). In total there were 428 000 (50.51%) females and 419 000 (49.49%) males. This is different from the Capricorn District Municipality as a whole where the female population counted 719 000 which constitutes 51.50% of the total population of 1.4 million.

TABLE 4. POPULATION BY POPULATION GROUP, GENDER AND AGE - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [NUMBER].

	African		White		Coloured		Asian	
	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male
00-04	34,400	37,200	658	686	279	269	229	164
05-09	36,300	35,600	711	833	273	319	224	212
10-14	37,400	37,300	1,020	1,040	211	263	271	241
15-19	39,100	38,300	1,040	947	234	257	261	209
20-24	33,500	33,300	647	590	250	240	167	210
25-29	32,400	32,200	867	723	313	286	170	229
30-34	32,500	38,400	495	612	317	379	187	282
35-39	34,700	43,300	900	940	362	432	257	383
40-44	26,700	31,800	892	976	310	406	234	364
45-49	17,900	20,300	936	1,090	237	259	200	430
50-54	13,800	16,000	878	981	216	179	234	336
55-59	15,100	10,800	719	842	167	160	162	207
60-64	15,300	8,680	735	832	122	118	108	143
65-69	13,100	6,680	643	593	101	88	71	78
70-74	11,000	5,000	684	535	69	42	36	39
75+	15,100	4,250	1,120	729	59	31	64	28
Total	**408,000**	**399,000**	**12,900**	**13,000**	**3,520**	**3,730**	**2,880**	**3,560**

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025, the Polokwane Local Municipality's population consisted of 95.33% African (807 000), 3.06% White (25 900), 0.86% Coloured (7 250) and 0.76% Asian (6 430) people.

The largest share of population is within the young working age (25-44 years) age category with a total number of 283 000 or 33.4% of the total population. The age category with the second largest number of people is the babies and kids (0-14 years) age category with a total share of 26.7%, followed by the teenagers and youth (15-24 years) age category with 149 000 people. The age category with the least number of people is the retired / old age (65 years and older) age category with only 60 200 people, as reflected in the population pyramids below.

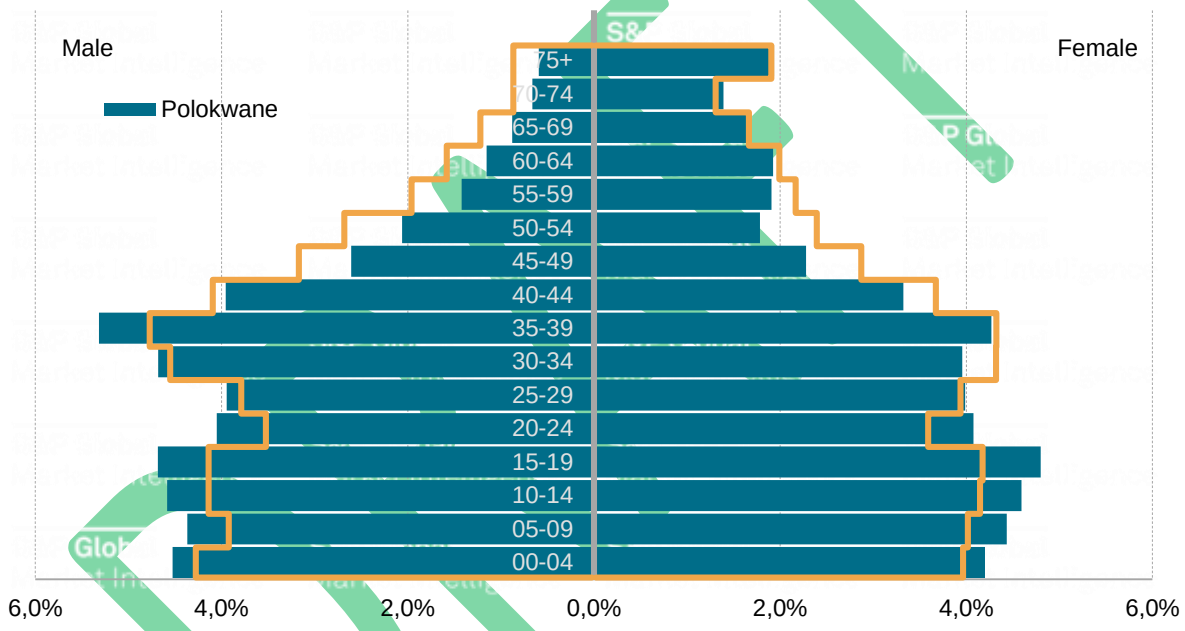
DRAFT

4.1.5 Population pyramids

A population pyramid is a graphic representation of the population categorised by gender and age, for a specific year and region. The horizontal axis depicts the share of people, where the male population is charted on the left-hand side and the female population on the right-hand side of the vertical axis. The vertical axis is divided in 5-year age categories.

With the African population group representing 95.3%of the Polokwane Local Municipality's total population, the overall population pyramid for the region will mostly reflect that of the African population group. The chart below compares Polokwane's population structure of 2025 to that of South Africa.

CHART 3. POPULATION PYRAMID - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY VS. SOUTH AFRICA, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]

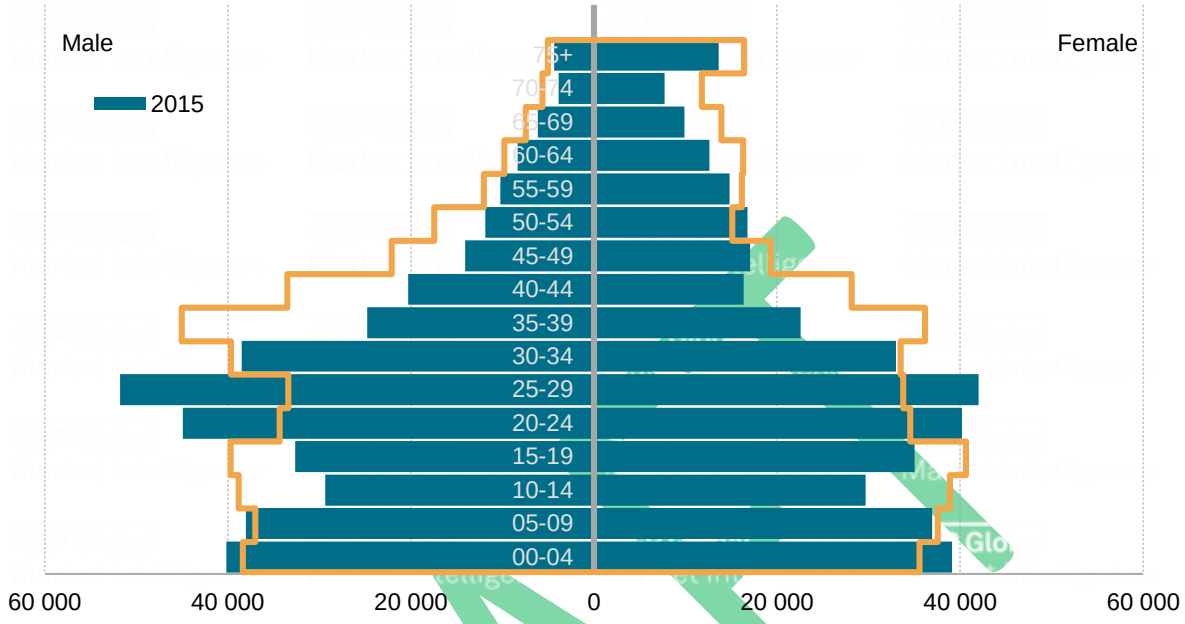


Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

By comparing the population pyramid of the Polokwane Local Municipality with the national age structure, the most significant differences are:

- There is a slightly larger share of young working age people - aged 20 to 34 (24.7%) - in Polokwane, compared to the national picture (23.7%).
- Fertility in Polokwane is slightly higher compared to South Africa as a whole.
- Spatial policies changed since 1994.
- The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is significantly larger (26.7%) in Polokwane compared to South Africa (24.5%). Demand for expenditure on schooling as percentage of total budget within Polokwane Local Municipality will therefore be higher than that of South Africa.

CHART 4. POPULATION PYRAMID - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015 VS. 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

When comparing the 2015 population pyramid with the 2025 pyramid for the Polokwane Local Municipality, some interesting differences are visible:

- In 2015, there were a significantly larger share of young working age people - aged 20 to 34 (32.7%) - compared to 2025 (24.7%).
- Fertility in 2015 was significantly higher compared to that of 2025.
- The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is significantly larger in 2015 (27.8%) compared to 2025 (26.7%).
- Life expectancy is increasing.

In 2025, the female population for the 20 to 34 years' age group amounted to 15.0% of the total female population while the male population group for the same age amounted to 17.6% of the total male population. In 2015 the male working age population at 12.7% still exceeds that of the female population working age population at 12.0%.

4.1.6 Number of households by population group

A household is either a group of people who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or it is a single person living on his/her own. An individual is considered part of a household if he/she spends at least four nights a week within the household. To categoryze a household according to population group, the population group to which the head of the household belongs, is used.

DRAFT

TABLE 5. NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2015	237,000	386,000	1,610,000	17,000,000	*61.5%*	*14.7%*	*1.40%*
2016	245,000	396,000	1,660,000	17,400,000	*61.7%*	*14.7%*	*1.40%*
2017	250,000	403,000	1,690,000	17,800,000	*61.9%*	*14.8%*	*1.41%*
2018	252,000	406,000	1,710,000	17,900,000	*62.1%*	*14.8%*	*1.41%*
2019	251,000	403,000	1,700,000	17,900,000	*62.4%*	*14.8%*	*1.40%*
2020	250,000	398,000	1,680,000	17,900,000	*62.6%*	*14.9%*	*1.40%*
2021	253,000	403,000	1,700,000	18,100,000	*62.8%*	*14.9%*	*1.40%*
2022	259,000	413,000	1,750,000	18,600,000	*62.9%*	*14.8%*	*1.40%*
2023	263,000	419,000	1,780,000	18,900,000	*62.8%*	*14.8%*	*1.39%*
2024	267,000	426,000	1,810,000	19,200,000	*62.8%*	*14.8%*	*1.39%*
2025	269,000	428,000	1,820,000	19,600,000	*62.7%*	*14.7%*	*1.37%*
Average Annual growth							
2015-2025	***1.25***%	***1.05***%	***1.25***%	***1.43***%			

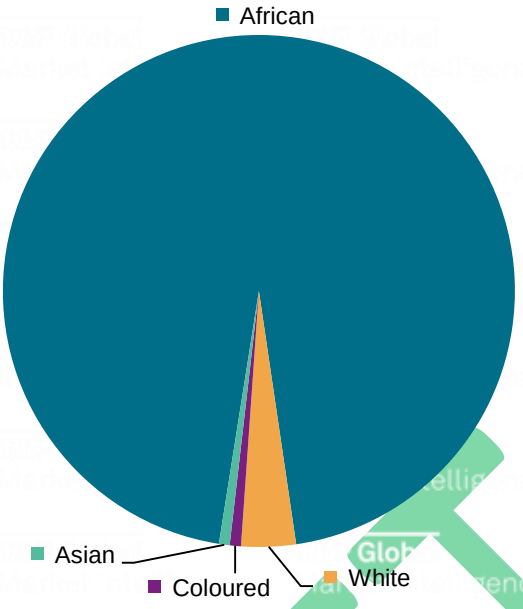
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Relative to the district municipality, the Polokwane Local Municipality had a higher average annual growth rate of 1.25% from 2015 to 2025. In contrast, the province had an average annual growth rate of 1.25% from 2015. The South Africa as a whole had a total of 19.6 million households, with a growth rate of 1.43%, thus growing at a higher rate than Polokwane.

The composition of the households by population group consists of 95.2% which is ascribed to the African population group with the largest amount of households by population group. The White population group had a total composition of 3.4% (ranking second). The Coloured population group had a total composition of 0.7% of the total households. The smallest population group by households is the Asian population group with only 0.7% in 2025.

CHART 5. NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]

DRAFT

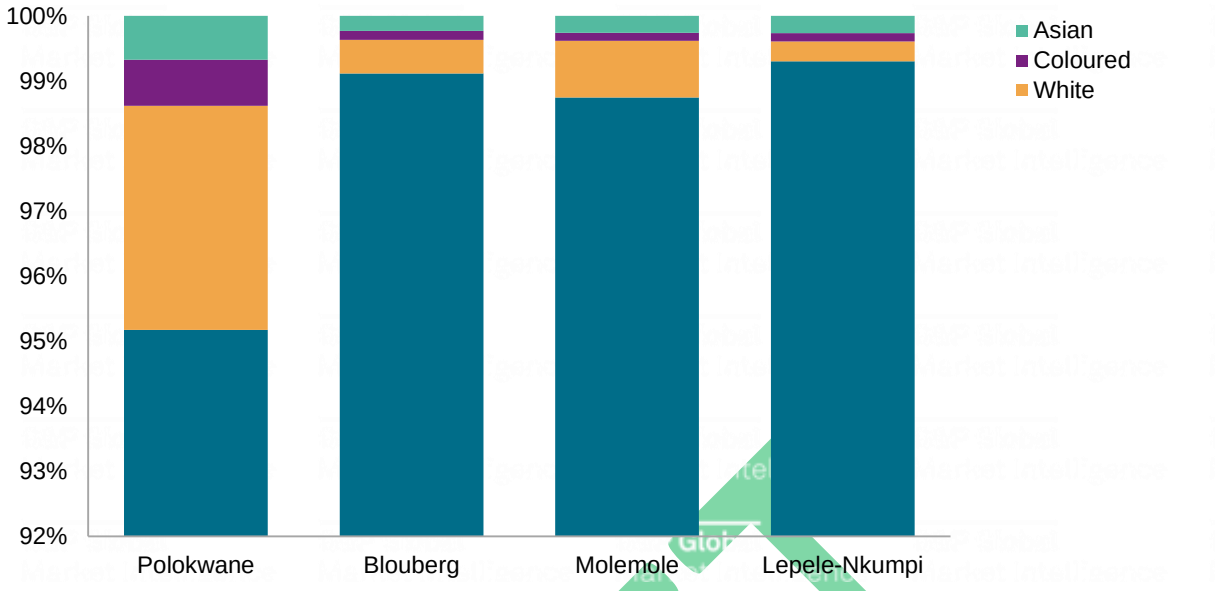


Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The growth in the number of African headed households was on average 1.32% per annum between 2015 and 2025, which translates in the number of households increasing by 31 300 in the period. Although the Asian population group is not the biggest in size, it was however the fastest growing population group between 2015 and 2025 at 2.85%. The average annual growth rate in the number of households for all the other population groups has increased with 1.24%.

DRAFT

CHART 6. NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The growth in the number of African headed households was on average 1.32% per annum between 2015 and 2025, which translates in the number of households increasing by 31 300 in the period. Although the Asian population group is not the biggest in size, it was however the fastest growing population group between 2015 and 2025 at 2.85%. The average annual growth rate in the number of households for all the other population groups has increased with 1.24%.

4.2 HIV+ and AIDS estimates

HIV and AIDS can have a substantial impact on the growth of a particular population. However, there are many factors affecting the impact of the HIV virus on population progression: adult HIV prevalence rates; the speed at which the virus progresses; age distribution of the virus; the mother-to-child transmission; child treatment; adult treatment; and the percentage by which the virus decreases total fertility. ARV treatment can also prolong the lifespan of people that are HIV+. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV live for approximately 10 years before reaching the final stage of the disease (called AIDS). When patients reach this stage, recovery is highly unlikely.

HIV+ and AIDS estimates are defined as follows:

The HIV+ estimates are calculated by using the prevalence rates from the HIV/AIDS model built by the Actuarial Society of Southern Africa (ASSA-2008). These rates are used as base rates on a provincial level. S&P Global slightly adjusted the provincial ASSA-2008 data to more accurately reflect the national HIV Prevalence rate per population group as used in the national demographic models. The ASSA model in turn uses the prevalence rates from various primary data sets, in particular the HIV/AIDS surveys conducted by the Department of Health and the Antenatal clinic surveys. Their rates are further adjusted for over-reporting and then smoothed.

DRAFT

TABLE 6. NUMBER OF HIV+ PEOPLE - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE]

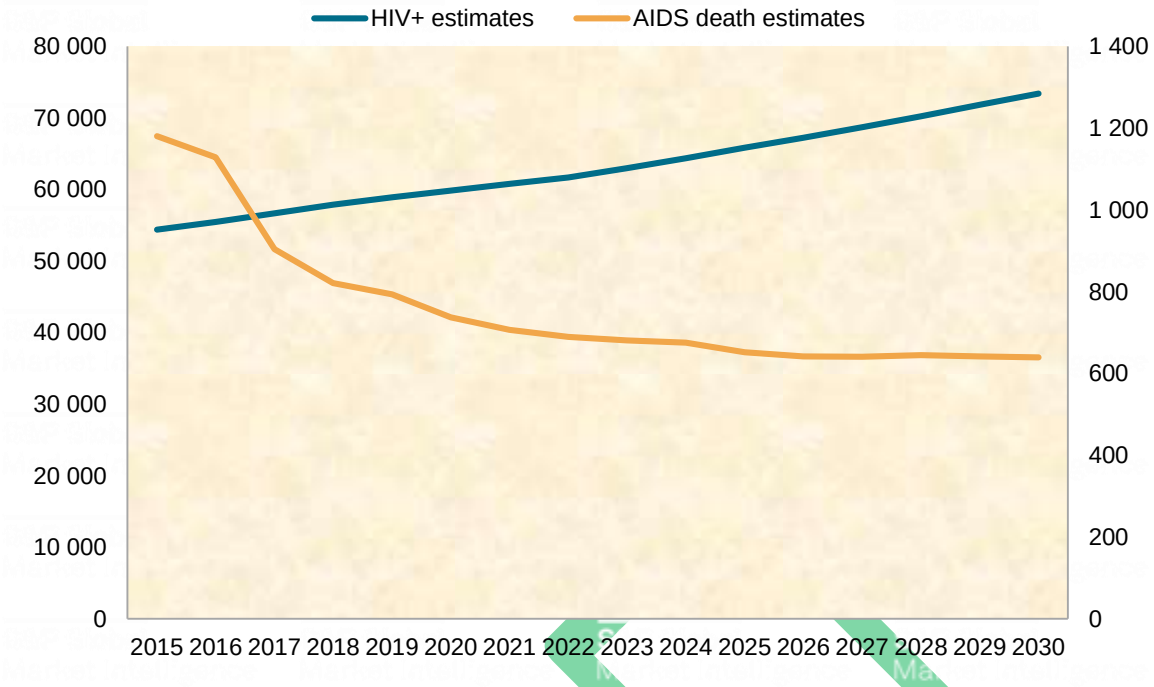
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2015	54,400	88,600	387,000	6,460,000	*61.4%*	*14.1%*	*0.84%*
2016	55,500	90,100	394,000	6,610,000	*61.6%*	*14.1%*	*0.84%*
2017	56,700	91,900	402,000	6,790,000	*61.7%*	*14.1%*	*0.84%*
2018	57,900	93,800	411,000	6,970,000	*61.7%*	*14.1%*	*0.83%*
2019	58,900	95,400	418,000	7,150,000	*61.8%*	*14.1%*	*0.82%*
2020	59,900	96,800	425,000	7,330,000	*61.8%*	*14.1%*	*0.82%*
2021	60,800	98,200	432,000	7,510,000	*61.9%*	*14.1%*	*0.81%*
2022	61,700	99,700	439,000	7,710,000	*61.9%*	*14.1%*	*0.80%*
2023	63,000	102,000	448,000	7,920,000	*61.9%*	*14.1%*	*0.80%*
2024	64,400	104,000	458,000	8,140,000	*61.8%*	*14.0%*	*0.79%*
2025	65,900	107,000	469,000	8,360,000	*61.8%*	*14.0%*	*0.79%*
Average Annual growth							
2015-2025	***1.93%***	***1.88%***	***1.94%***	***2.61%***			

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025, 65 900 people in the Polokwane Local Municipality were infected with HIV. This reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 1.93% since 2015, and in 2025 represented 7.78% of the local municipality's total population. The Capricorn District Municipality had an average annual growth rate of 1.88% from 2015 to 2025 in the number of people infected with HIV, which is lower than that of the Polokwane Local Municipality. The number of infections in the Limpopo Province increased from 387,000 in 2015 to 469,000 in 2025. When looking at South Africa as a whole it can be seen that the number of people that are infected increased from 2015 to 2025 with an average annual growth rate of 2.61%.

CHART 7. AIDS PROFILE AND FORECAST - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2030 [NUMBERS]

DRAFT



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Presenting the number of HIV+ people against the number of people living with AIDS, the people with AIDS added up to 1180 in 2015 and 652 for 2025. This number denotes an decrease from 2015 to 2025 with a high average annual rate of -5.76% (or -528 people). For the year 2025, they represented 0.08% of the total population of the entire local municipality

4.3Economy

The economic state of Polokwane Local Municipality is put in perspective by comparing it on a spatial level with its neighbouring locals, Capricorn District Municipality, Limpopo Province and South Africa.

The Polokwane Local Municipality does not function in isolation from Capricorn, Limpopo Province, South Africa and the world and now, more than ever, it is crucial to have reliable information on its economy for effective planning. Information is needed that will empower the municipality to plan and implement policies that will encourage the social development and economic growth of the people and industries in the municipality respectively.

4.3.1Gross domestic product by region (GDP-R)

The gross domestic product (GDP), an important indicator of economic performance, is used to compare economies and economic states.

Gross domestic product by region (GDP-R) represents the value of all goods and services produced within a region, over a period of one year, plus taxes and minus subsidies.GDP-R can be measured using either current or constant prices, where the current prices measures the economy in actual Rand, and constant prices measures the economy by removing the effect of inflation, and therefore captures the real growth in volumes, as if prices were fixed in a given base year.

TABLE 7. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2015	121.1	138.4	319.8	4,420.8	*87.5%*	*37.9%*	*2.7%*
2016	134.8	153.8	351.9	4,759.6	*87.6%*	*38.3%*	*2.8%*
2017	142.8	162.7	371.3	5,078.2	*87.8%*	*38.4%*	*2.8%*
2018	152.6	173.7	396.2	5,363.2	*87.8%*	*38.5%*	*2.8%*
2019	160.9	183.1	418.7	5,625.2	*87.9%*	*38.4%*	*2.9%*
2020	161.5	183.7	422.4	5,562.8	*87.9%*	*38.2%*	*2.9%*
2021	184.1	209.6	490.5	6,206.8	*87.8%*	*37.5%*	*3.0%*
2022	197.3	224.4	525.0	6,666.6	*87.9%*	*37.6%*	*3.0%*
2023	204.8	232.8	542.1	7,037.7	*88.0%*	*37.8%*	*2.9%*
2024	215.6	245.1	570.7	7,352.4	*88.0%*	*37.8%*	*2.9%*
2025	226.8	257.9	604.2	7,641.8	*87.9%*	*37.5%*	*3.0%*

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

With a GDP of R 227 billion in 2025 (up from R 121 billion in 2015), the Polokwane Local Municipality contributed 87.93% to the Capricorn District Municipality GDP of R 258 billion in 2025 increasing in the share of the Capricorn from 87.49% in 2015. The Polokwane Local Municipality contributes 37.53% to the GDP of Limpopo Province and 2.97% the GDP of South Africa which had a total GDP of R 7.64 trillion in 2025 (as measured in nominal or current prices). It's contribution to the national economy stayed similar in importance from 2015 when it contributed 2.74% to South Africa.

TABLE 8. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE, CONSTANT 2015 PRICES]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2014	2.5%	2.2%	1.1%	1.4%
2015	2.3%	2.1%	1.9%	1.3%
2016	2.4%	2.1%	0.1%	0.7%
2017	1.3%	1.3%	1.4%	1.2%
2018	1.6%	1.4%	1.1%	1.6%
2019	0.0%	0.0%	0.1%	0.3%
2020	-4.9%	-5.1%	-6.4%	-6.2%
2021	5.0%	5.0%	5.5%	4.9%
2022	2.0%	1.9%	1.1%	2.1%
2023	-0.4%	-0.3%	0.7%	0.8%
2024	0.7%	0.7%	0.9%	0.5%
Average Annual growth 2015-2024	***0.84***%	***0.78***%	***0.52***%	***0.65***%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025, the Polokwane Local Municipality achieved an annual growth rate of 0.71% which is a very similar GDP growth than the Limpopo Province's 0.90%, but is higher than that of South Africa, where the 2025 GDP growth rate was 0.53%. Similar to the short-term growth rate of

DRAFT

2025, the longer-term average growth rate for Polokwane (0.84%) is also very similar than that of South Africa (0.65%). The economic growth in Polokwane peaked in 2021 at 5.04%.

TABLE 9. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - REGIONS WITHIN CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2015 TO 2025, SHARE AND GROWTH

	2025 (Current prices)	Share of district municipality	2015 (Constant prices)	2025 (Constant prices)	Average Annual growth
Polokwane	226.8	*87.93%*	123.6	134.4	***0.84%***
Blouberg	9.2	*3.57%*	5.0	5.4	***0.77%***
Molemole	10.9	*4.21%*	6.0	6.1	***0.23%***
Lepele-Nkumpi	11.1	*4.30%*	6.1	6.1	***0.07%***

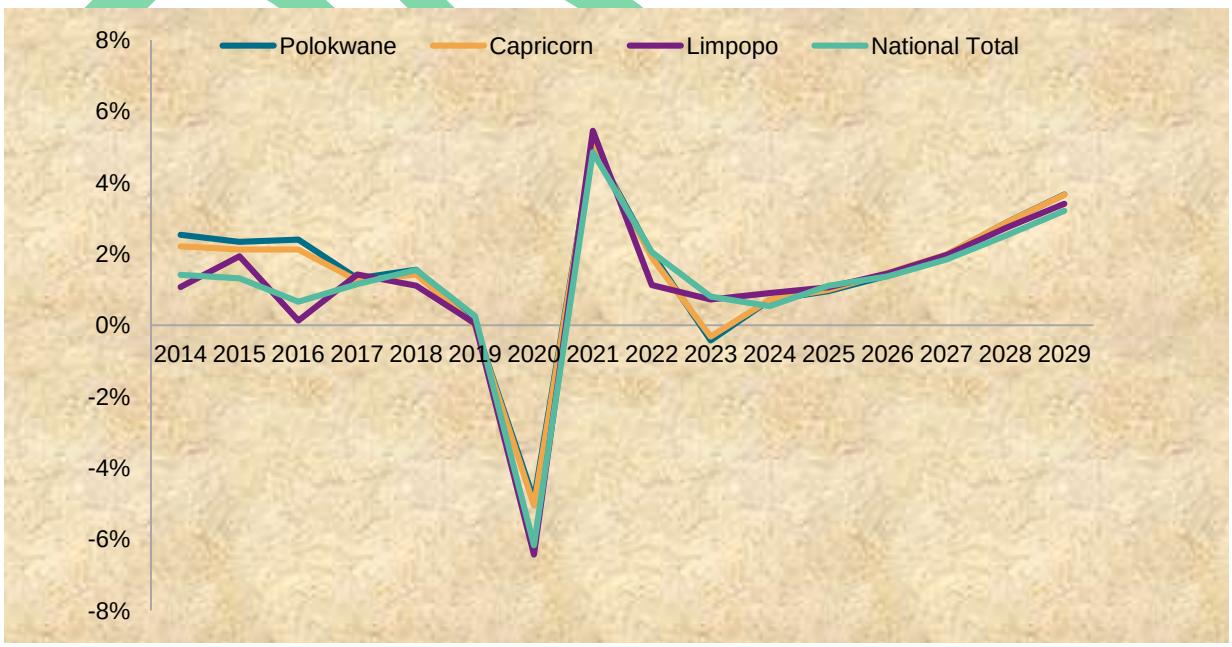
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Polokwane had the highest average annual economic growth, averaging 0.84% between 2015 and 2025, when compared to the rest of the regions within Capricorn District Municipality. The Blouberg Local Municipality had the second highest average annual growth rate of 0.77%. Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality had the lowest average annual growth rate of 0.07% between 2015 and 2025.

4.3.2 Economic growth forecast

It is expected that Polokwane Local Municipality will grow at an average annual rate of 2.75% from 2025 to 2030. The average annual growth rate in the GDP of Capricorn District Municipality and Limpopo Province is expected to be 2.77% and 2.62% respectively. South Africa is forecasted to grow at an average annual growth rate of 2.46%, which is lower than that of the Polokwane Local Municipality.

CHART 9. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2030 [AVERAGE ANNUAL GROWTH RATE, CONSTANT 2010 PRICES]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

TABLE 10. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - REGIONS WITHIN CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2015 TO 2030, SHARE AND GROWTH

	2030 (Current prices)	Share of district municipality	2015 (Constant prices)	2030 (Constant prices)	Average Annual growth
Polokwane	304.8	*87.78%*	123.6	154.0	***1.48%***
Blouberg	12.9	*3.71%*	5.0	6.4	***1.62%***
Molemole	14.7	*4.23%*	6.0	7.0	***1.08%***
Lepele-Nkumpi	14.9	*4.28%*	6.1	6.9	***0.87%***

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2030, Polokwane's forecasted GDP will be an estimated R 154 billion (constant 2010 prices) or 88.3% of the total GDP of Capricorn District Municipality. The ranking in terms of size of the Polokwane Local Municipality will remain the same between 2025 and 2030, with a contribution to the Capricorn District Municipality GDP of 88.3% in 2030 compared to the 88.4% in 2025. At a 2.75% average annual GDP growth rate between 2025 and 2030, Polokwane ranked the third compared to the other regional economies.

4.3.3 Gross value added by region (GVA-R)

The Polokwane Local Municipality's economy is made up of various industries. The GVA-R variable provides a sector breakdown, where each sector is measured in terms of its *value added* produced in the local economy.

TABLE 11. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]

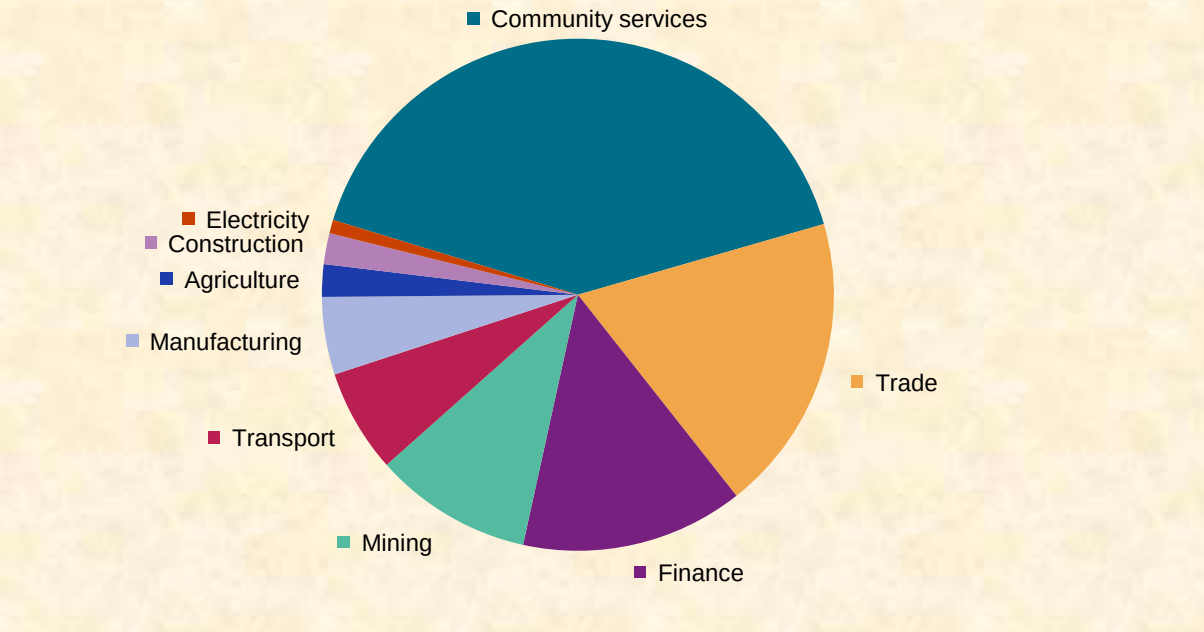
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
Agriculture	4.2	5.1	18.3	216.1	*82.7%*	*22.9%*	*1.94%*
Mining	20.4	24.8	118.0	477.1	*82.4%*	*17.3%*	*4.28%*
Manufacturing	10.0	11.0	20.5	936.5	*91.5%*	*48.9%*	*1.07%*
Electricity	1.7	2.3	17.0	272.5	*76.0%*	*10.3%*	*0.64%*
Construction	4.0	4.5	9.2	154.9	*89.6%*	*43.4%*	*2.58%*
Trade	38.5	42.1	74.8	964.6	*91.5%*	*51.5%*	*3.99%*
Transport	13.3	14.5	26.0	542.1	*91.7%*	*51.3%*	*2.46%*
Finance	28.8	33.5	79.5	1,610.7	*85.8%*	*36.2%*	*1.79%*
Community services	83.4	94.0	180.0	1,701.9	*88.7%*	*46.4%*	*4.90%*
Total Industries	**204.4**	**231.7**	**543.3**	**6,876.4**	***88.2%***	***37.6%***	***2.97%***

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

DRAFT

In 2025, the community services sector is the largest within Polokwane Local Municipality accounting for R 83.4 billion or 40.8% of the total GVA in the local municipality's economy. The sector that contributes the second most to the GVA of the Polokwane Local Municipality is the trade sector at 18.8%, followed by the finance sector with 14.1%. The sector that contributes the least to the economy of Polokwane Local Municipality is the electricity sector with a contribution of R 1.74 billion or 0.85% of the total GVA.

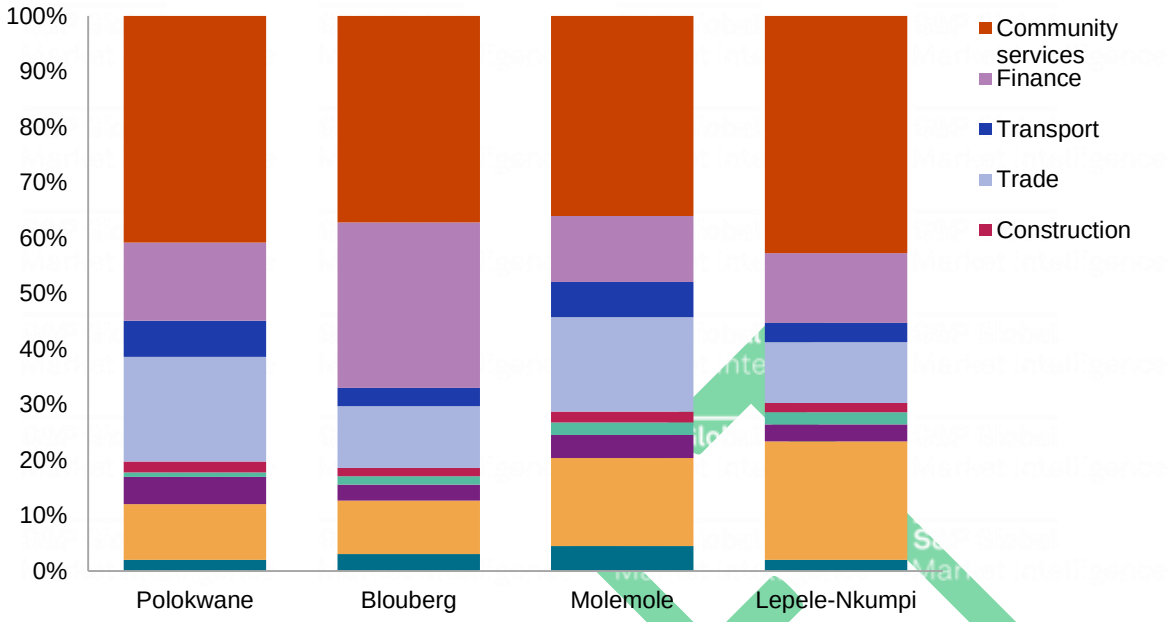
CHART 2. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The community sector, which includes the government services, is generally a large contributor towards GVA. When looking at all the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, it is clear that Polokwane contributes the most community services towards its own GVA, with 88.75%, relative to the other regions within Capricorn District Municipality. Polokwane contributed R 204 billion or 88.21% to the GVA of Capricorn District Municipality. Polokwane also contributes the most the overall GVA of Capricorn District Municipality.

CHART 3. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2025 [PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

4.4 Historical economic growth

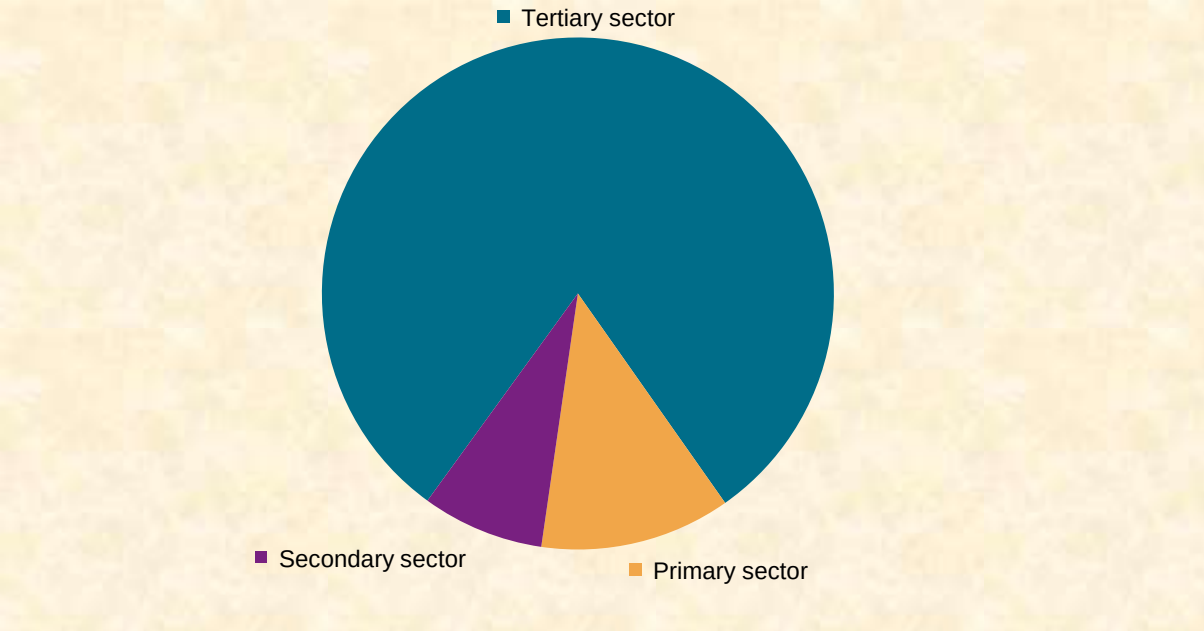
TABLE 12. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015, 2020 AND 2025 [R BILLIONS, 2010 CONSTANT PRICES]

	2015	2020	2025	Average Annual growth
Agriculture	1.9	2.6	2.8	***4.29***%
Mining	9.4	9.1	9.2	***-0.22***%
Manufacturing	5.2	5.1	5.2	***-0.01***%
Electricity	0.8	0.7	0.6	***-3.53***%
Construction	3.7	2.9	2.4	***-4.39***%
Trade	21.1	18.4	19.4	***-0.84***%
Transport	8.6	8.5	10.5	***1.95***%
Finance	15.4	17.1	19.9	***2.59***%
Community services	45.8	48.5	51.9	***1.25***%
Total Industries	**112.0**	**112.9**	**121.8**	***0.85*%**

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

For the period 2025 and 2015, the GVA in the agriculture sector had the highest average annual growth rate in Polokwane at 4.29%. The industry with the second highest average annual growth rate is the finance sector averaging at 2.59% per year. The electricity sector had an average annual growth rate of -3.53%, while the construction sector had the lowest average annual growth of -4.39%. Overall a positive growth existed for all the industries in 2025 with an annual growth rate of 0.66% since 2024.

CHART 4. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY AGGREGATE ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



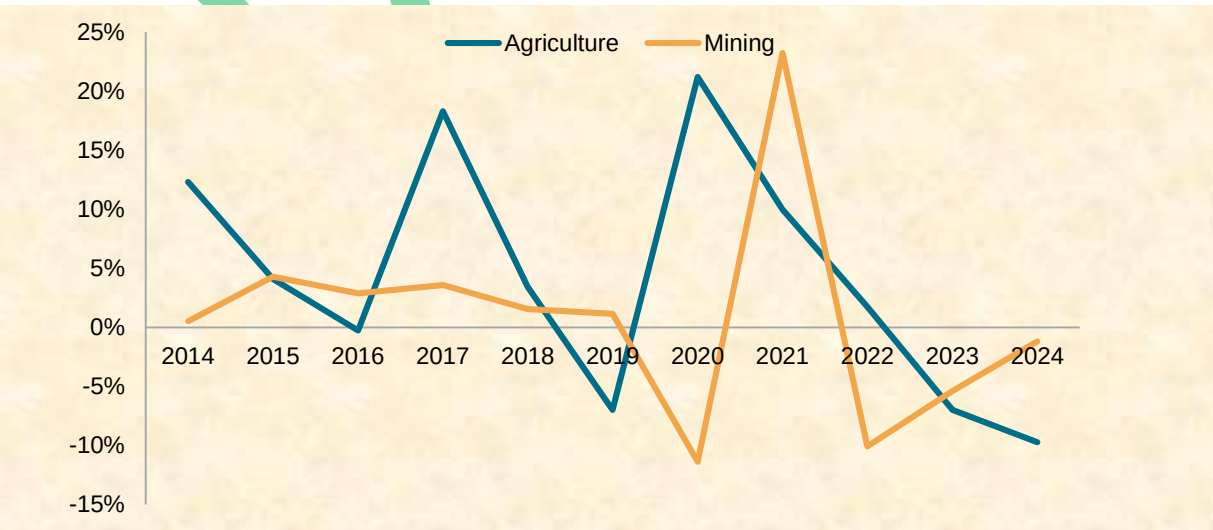
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The tertiary sector contributes the most to the Gross Value Added within the Polokwane Local Municipality at 80.2%. This is significantly higher than the national economy (70.1%). The primary sector contributed a total of 12.0% (ranking second), while the secondary sector contributed the least at 7.7%.

4.4.1Primary sector

The primary sector consists of two broad economic sectors namely the mining and the agricultural sector. The following chart represents the average growth rate in the GVA for both of these sectors in Polokwane Local Municipality from 2015 to 2025.

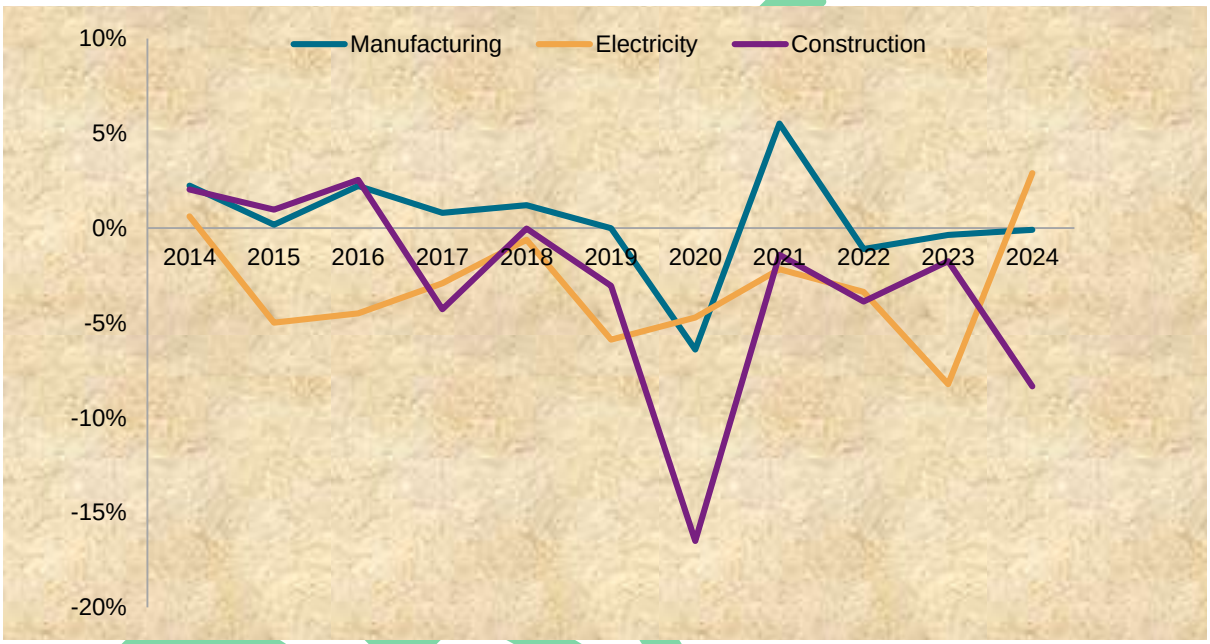
CHART 5. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY PRIMARY SECTOR - POLOKWANE, 2015-2025 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE]



Between 2015 and 2025, the agriculture sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2020 with an average growth rate of 21.2%. The mining sector reached its highest point of growth of 23.2% in 2021. The agricultural sector experienced the lowest growth for the period during 2024 at -9.7%, while the mining sector reaching its lowest point of growth in 2020 at -11.4%. Both the agriculture and mining sectors are generally characterised by volatility in growth over the period.

4.4.2 Secondary sector

The secondary sector consists of three broad economic sectors namely the manufacturing, electricity and the construction sector. The following chart represents the average growth rates in the GVA for these sectors in Polokwane Local Municipality from 2015 to 2025.



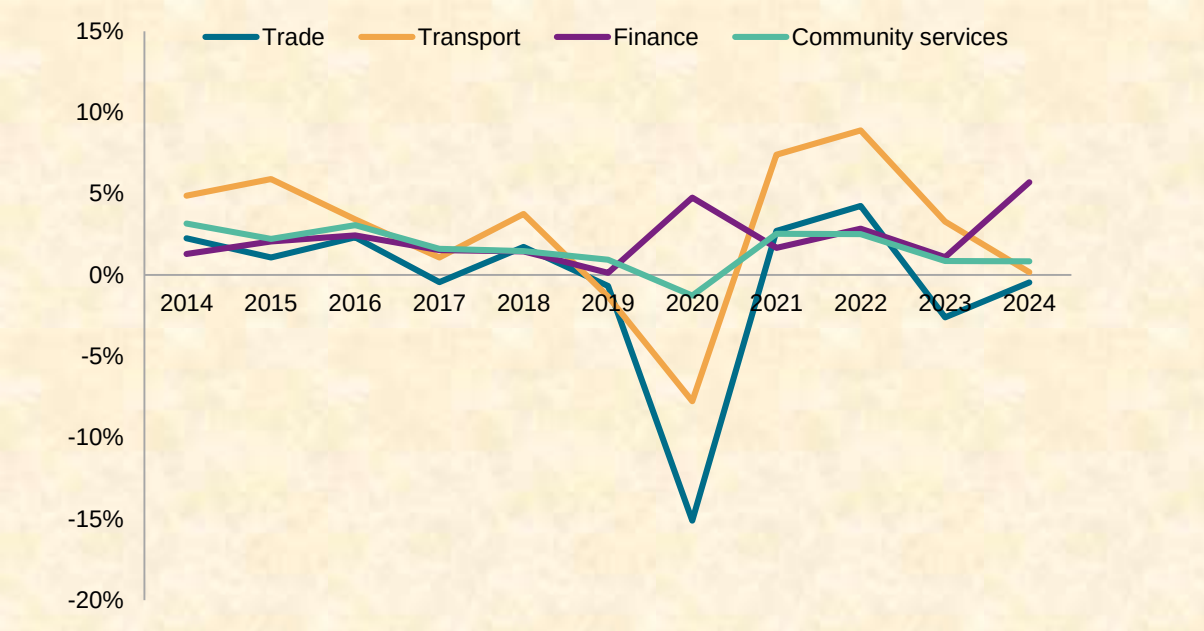
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Between 2015 and 2025, the manufacturing sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2021 with a growth rate of 5.5%. The construction sector reached its highest growth in 2016 at 2.5%. The manufacturing sector experienced its lowest growth in 2020 of -6.4%, while construction sector also had the lowest growth rate in 2020 and it experiences a negative growth rate of -16.5% which is higher growth rate than that of the manufacturing sector. The electricity sector experienced the highest growth in 2024 at 2.9%, while it recorded the lowest growth of -8.2% in 2023.

4.4.3 Tertiary sector

The tertiary sector consists of four broad economic sectors namely the trade, transport, finance and the community services sector. The following chart represents the average growth rates in the GVA for these sectors in Polokwane Local Municipality from 2015 to 2025.

CHART 6. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY TERTIARY SECTOR - POLOKWANE, 2015-2025 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

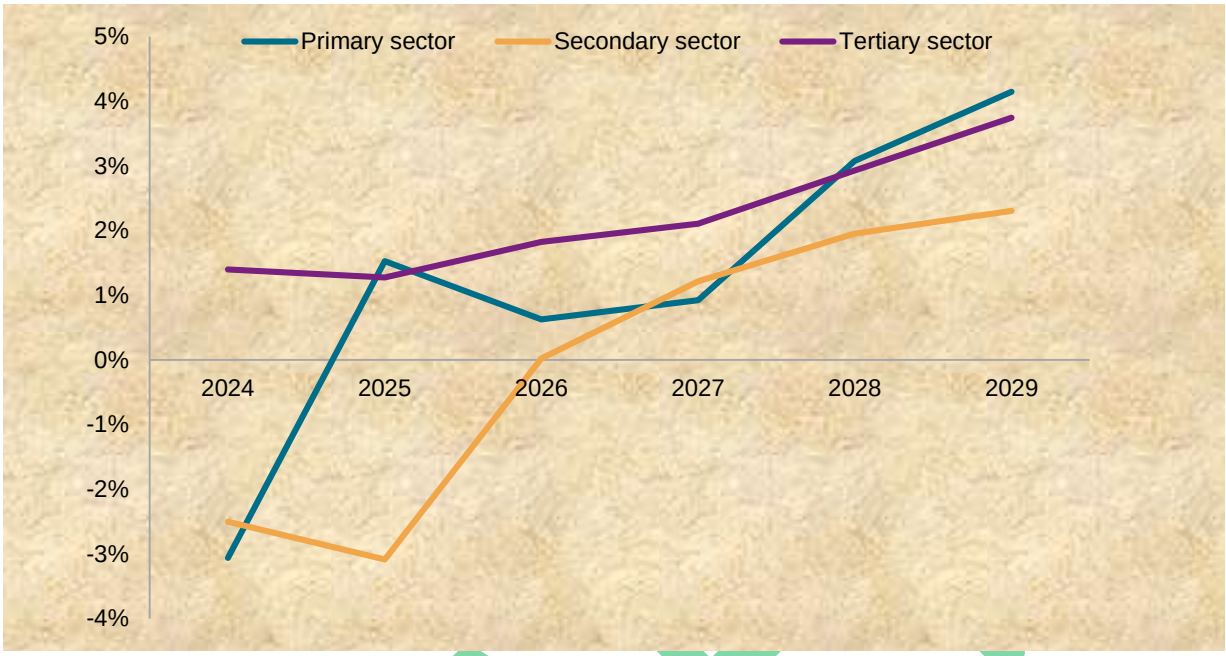
The trade sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2022 with a growth rate of 4.2%. It is evident for the transport sector that the highest positive growth rate also existed in 2022 at 8.9% which is higher than that of the manufacturing sector. The finance sector experienced the highest growth rate in 2024 when it grew by 5.7% and recorded the lowest growth rate in 2019 at 0.1%. The Trade sector had the lowest growth rate in 2020 at -15.1%. The community services sector, which largely consists of government, experienced its highest positive growth in 2014 with 3.2% and the lowest growth rate in 2020 with -1.3%.

4.5 Sector growth forecast

The GVA forecasts are based on forecasted growth rates derived from two sources: historical growth rate estimates and national level industry forecasts. The projections are therefore partly based on the notion that regions that have performed well in the recent past are likely to continue performing well (and vice versa) and partly on the notion that those regions that have prominent sectors that are forecast to grow rapidly in the national economy (e.g. finance and telecommunications) are likely to perform well (and vice versa). As the target year moves further from the base year (2010) so the emphasis moves from historical growth rates to national-level industry growth rates.

DRAFT

CHART 7. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY AGGREGATE ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025-2030 [ANNUAL GROWTH RATE, CONSTANT 2010 PRICES]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

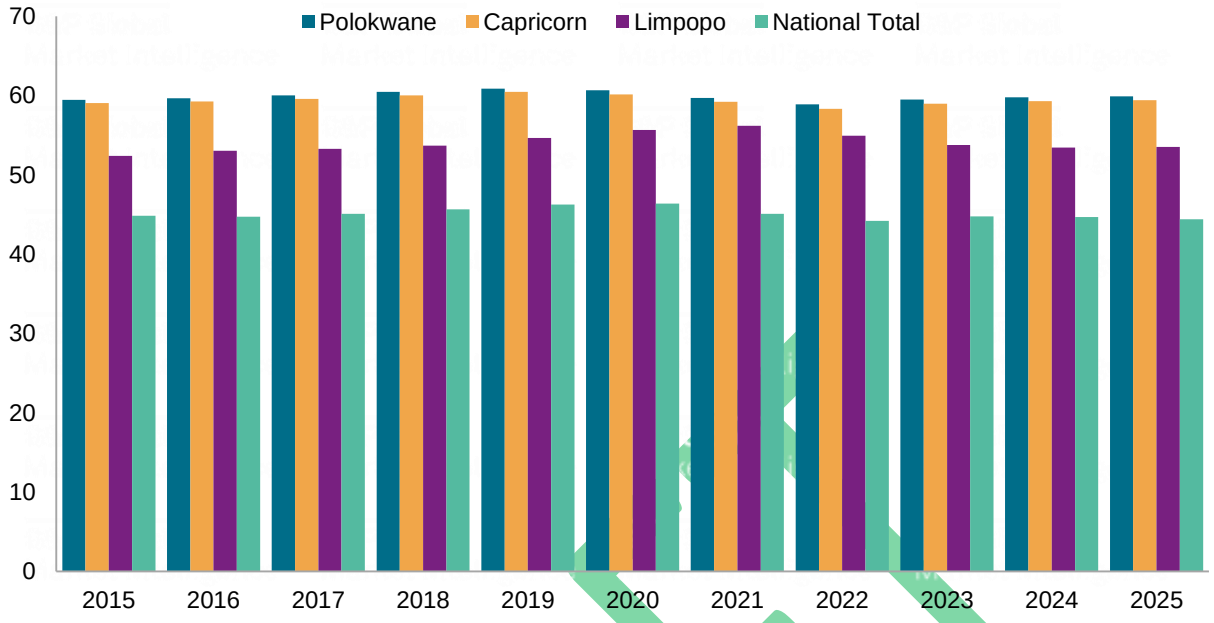
The Primary sector is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 2.70% between 2025 and 2030, with the Secondary sector growing at 1.63% on average annually. The Tertiary sector is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 2.89% for the same period.

4.6 Tress index

The Tress index measures the degree of concentration of an area's economy on a sector basis. A Tress index value of 0 means that all economic sectors in the region contribute equally to GVA, whereas a Tress index of 100 means that only one economic sector makes up the whole GVA of the region.

DRAFT

CHART 8. TRESS INDEX - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [NUMBER]



Source: Quantec 2026

In 2025, Polokwane's Tress Index was estimated at 59.9 which are higher than the 59.4 of the district municipality and higher than the 59.4 of the province. This implies that - on average - Polokwane Local Municipality is less diversified in terms of its economic activity spread than the province's economy as a whole. Polokwane Local Municipality has a concentrated community services sector.

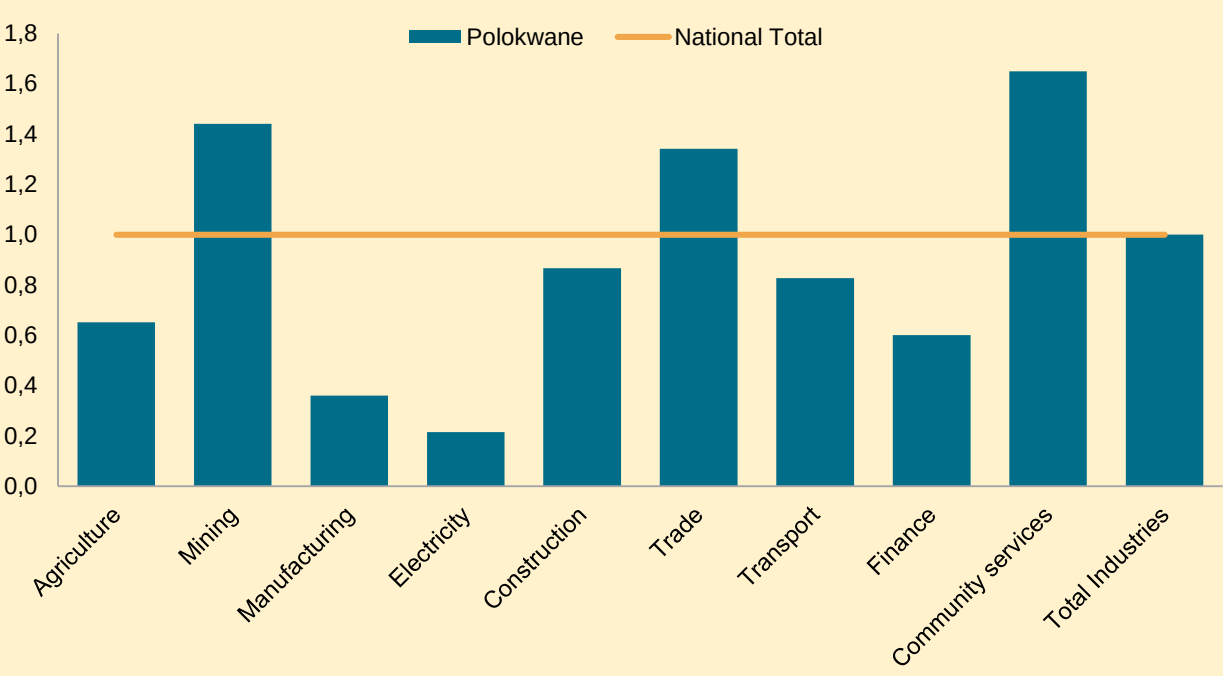
4.7 Location quotient

A specific regional economy has a comparative advantage over other regional economies if it can more efficiently produce the same good. The location quotient is one way of measuring this comparative advantage.

If the location quotient is larger than one for a specified sector within a region, then that region has a comparative advantage in that sector. This is because the share of that sector of the specified regional economy is greater than the same sector in the national economy. The location quotient is usually computed by taking the percentage share of the sector in the regional economy divided by the percentage share of that same sector in the national economy.

DRAFT

CHART 9. LOCATION QUOTIENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTORS - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND SOUTH AFRICA, 2025 [NUMBER]



Source: Quantec 2026

For 2025 Polokwane Local Municipality has a very large comparative advantage in the community services sector. The mining sector has a comparative advantage. The trade also has a comparative advantage when comparing it to the South Africa economy as a whole, although less prominent. The Polokwane Local Municipality has a comparative disadvantage when it comes to the electricity and manufacturing sector which has a very large comparative disadvantage. In general mining is a very concentrated economic sector. Mining is very important to the Polokwane Local Municipality Area, with a LQ far above the national average, but not like the predominant mining areas such as Rustenburg and Sishen areas.

4.9 Labour

The labour force of a country consists of everyone of working age (above a certain age and below retirement) that are participating as workers, i.e. people who are actively employed or seeking employment. This is also called the economically active population (EAP). People not included are students, retired people, stay-at-home parents, people in prisons or similar institutions, people employed in jobs or professions with unreported income, as well as discouraged workers who cannot find work.

DRAFT

TABLE 13. WORKING AGE POPULATION IN POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015 AND 2025 [NUMBER]

	Polokwane		Capricorn		Limpopo		National Total	
	2015	2025	2015	2025	2015	2025	2015	2025
15-19	67,700	80,300	122,000	137,000	525,000	604,000	4,710,000	5,290,000
20-24	85,100	68,900	135,000	106,000	585,000	450,000	5,460,000	4,520,000
25-29	93,800	67,200	142,000	102,000	630,000	452,000	5,780,000	4,910,000
30-34	71,500	73,100	109,000	111,000	485,000	504,000	5,090,000	5,640,000
35-39	47,300	81,200	73,200	124,000	322,000	557,000	4,060,000	5,780,000
40-44	36,600	61,700	57,500	94,900	246,000	424,000	3,480,000	4,940,000
45-49	31,100	41,400	50,500	65,200	216,000	287,000	2,870,000	3,840,000
50-54	28,700	32,600	48,400	52,700	206,000	226,000	2,550,000	3,230,000
55-59	25,000	28,200	42,700	46,900	175,000	199,000	2,150,000	2,620,000
60-64	20,900	26,100	37,700	45,200	149,000	187,000	1,750,000	2,270,000
Total	**508,000**	**561,000**	**817,000**	**886,000**	**3,540,000**	**3,890,000**	**37,900,000**	**43,000,000**

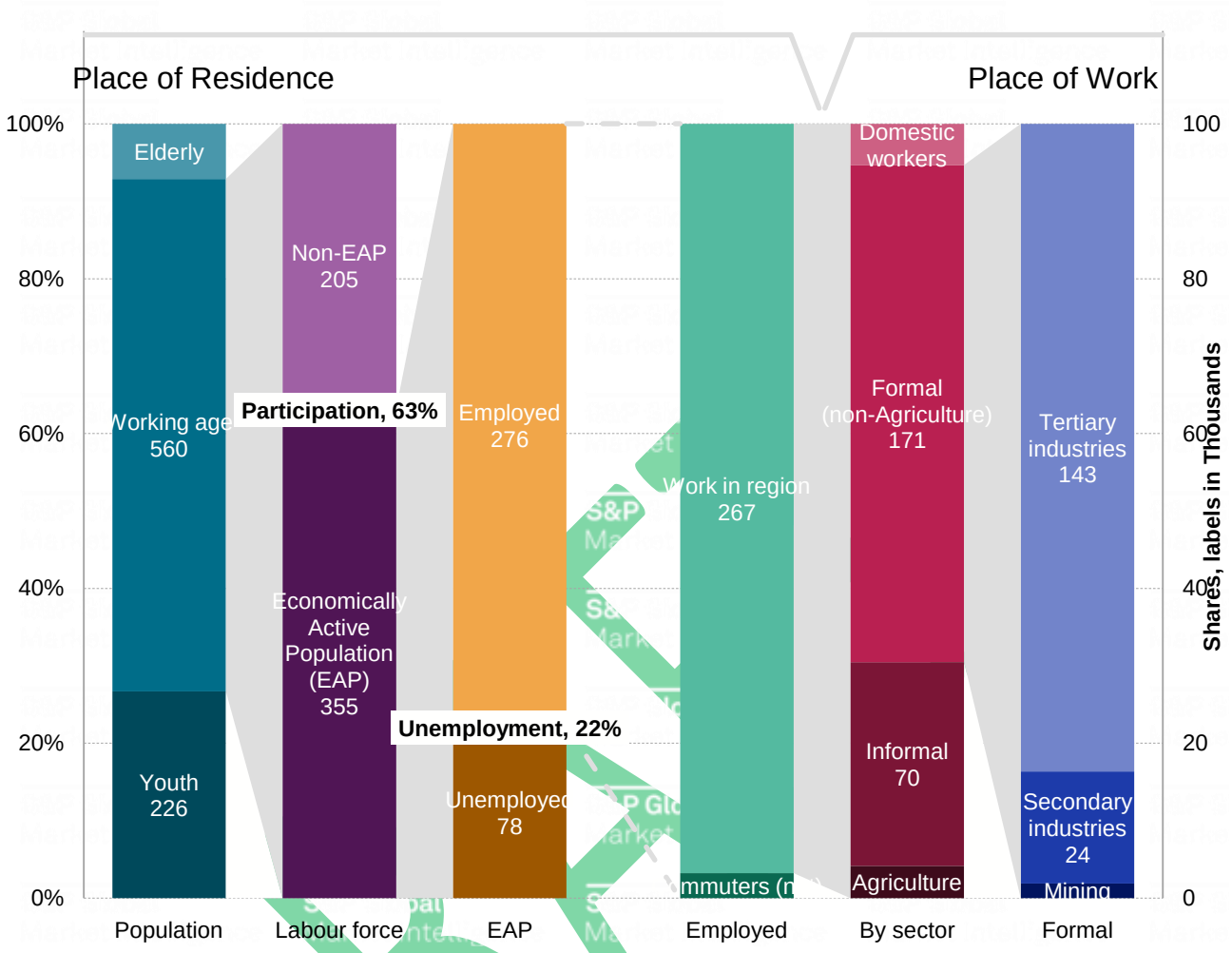
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The working age population in Polokwane in 2025 was 561 000, increasing at an average annual rate of 0.99% since 2015. For the same period the working age population for Capricorn District Municipality increased at 0.81% annually, while that of Limpopo Province increased at 0.95% annually. South Africa's working age population has increased annually by 1.28% from 37.9 million in 2015 to 43 million in 2025.

The graph below combines all the facets of the labour force in the Polokwane Local Municipality into one compact view. The chart is divided into "place of residence" on the left, which is measured from the population side, and "place of work" on the right, which is measured from the business side.

DRAFT

CHART 10. LABOUR GLIMPSE - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Reading the chart from the left-most bar, breaking down the total population of the Polokwane Local Municipality (847 000) into working age and non-working age, the number of people that are of working age is about 561 000. As per definition, those that are of age 0 - 19 (youth) or age 65 and up (pensioners) are part of the non-working age population. Out of the working age group, 63.3% are participating in the labour force, meaning 355 000 residents of the local municipality forms currently part of the economically active population (EAP). Comparing this with the non-economically active population (NEAP) of the local municipality: fulltime students at tertiary institutions, disabled people, and those choosing not to work, sum to 206 000 people. Out of the economically active population, there are 79 000 that are unemployed, or when expressed as a percentage, an unemployment rate of 22.2%. Up to here all the statistics are measured at the place of residence.

On the far right we have the formal non-Agriculture jobs in Polokwane, broken down by the primary (mining), secondary and tertiary industries. The majority of the formal employment lies in the Tertiary industry, with 144 000 jobs. When including the informal, agricultural and domestic workers, we have a total number of 267 000 jobs in the area. Formal jobs make up 64.2% of all jobs in the Polokwane Local Municipality. The difference between the employment measured at the place of work, and the people employed living in the area can be explained by the net commuters that work outside of the local municipality.

4.9.1Economically active population (EAP)

The economically active population (EAP) is a good indicator of how many of the total working age population are in reality participating in the labour market of a region. If a person is economically active, he or she forms part of the labour force.

The economically active population (EAP) is defined as the number of people (between the age of 15 and 65) who are able and willing to work, and who are actively looking for work. It includes both employed and unemployed people. People, who recently have not taken any active steps to find employment, are not included in the measure. These people may (or may not) consider themselves unemployed. Regardless, they are counted as discouraged work seekers, and thus form part of the non-economically active population.

TABLE 14. ECONOMICALLY ACTIVE POPULATION (EAP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [NUMBER, PERCENTAGE]

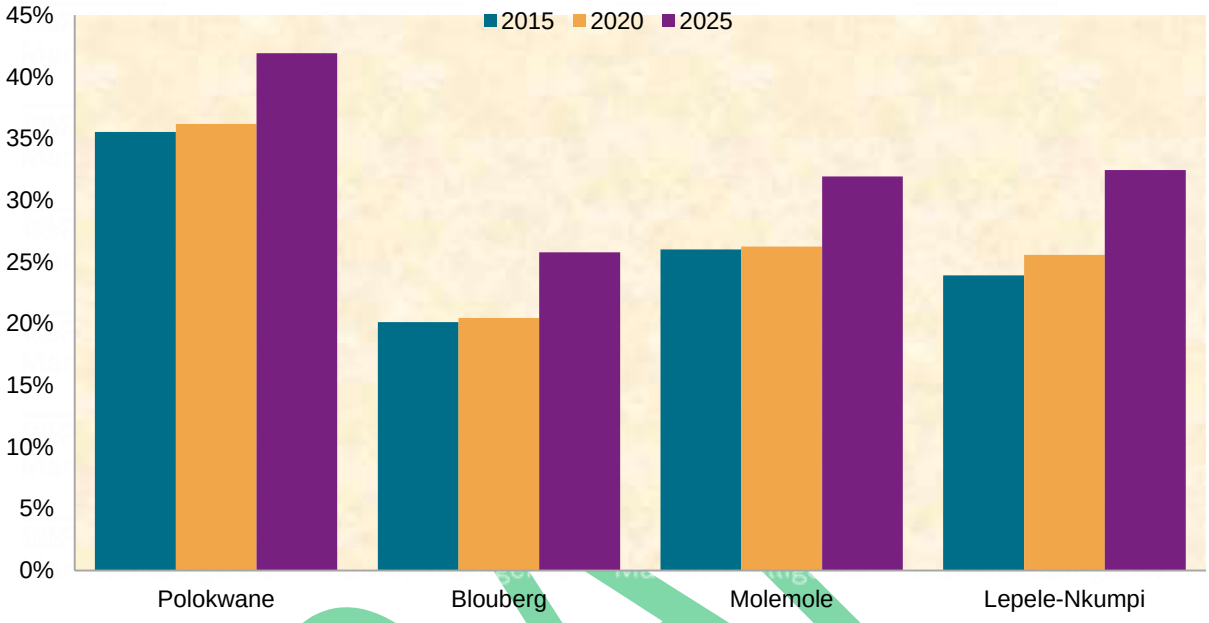
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2015	273,000	395,000	1,590,000	22,400,000	*68.9%*	*17.1%*	*1.22%*
2016	285,000	412,000	1,650,000	22,700,000	*69.1%*	*17.2%*	*1.26%*
2017	293,000	423,000	1,700,000	23,000,000	*69.2%*	*17.2%*	*1.27%*
2018	298,000	429,000	1,710,000	23,300,000	*69.4%*	*17.4%*	*1.28%*
2019	301,000	434,000	1,740,000	23,600,000	*69.4%*	*17.4%*	*1.28%*
2020	294,000	423,000	1,690,000	23,000,000	*69.5%*	*17.4%*	*1.28%*
2021	296,000	428,000	1,720,000	23,000,000	*69.2%*	*17.2%*	*1.29%*
2022	314,000	456,000	1,850,000	23,800,000	*68.8%*	*17.0%*	*1.32%*
2023	336,000	490,000	2,010,000	24,900,000	*68.5%*	*16.7%*	*1.35%*
2024	350,000	512,000	2,100,000	25,600,000	*68.4%*	*16.6%*	*1.37%*
2025	355,000	520,000	2,140,000	25,800,000	*68.3%*	*16.6%*	*1.37%*
Average Annual growth							
2015-2025	***2.68***%	***2.77***%	***2.98***%	***1.43***%			

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Polokwane Local Municipality's EAP was 355 000 in 2025, which is 41.92% of its total population of 847 000, and roughly 68.34% of the total EAP of the Capricorn District

Municipality. From 2015 to 2025, the average annual increase in the EAP in the Polokwane Local Municipality was 2.68%, which is 0.0904 percentage points lower than the growth in the EAP of Capricorn's for the same period.

CHART 11. EAP AS % OF TOTAL POPULATION - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2015, 2020, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2015, 35.5% of the total population in Polokwane Local Municipality were classified as economically active which increased to 41.9% in 2025. Compared to the other regions in Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest EAP as a percentage of the total population within its own region relative to the other regions. On the other hand, Blouberg Local Municipality had the lowest EAP with 25.8% people classified as economically active population in 2025.

4.9.2 Labour force participation rate

The labour force participation rate (LFPR) is the Economically Active Population (EAP) expressed as a percentage of the total working age population. The following is the labour participation rate of the Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total as a whole.

TABLE 15. THE LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION RATE - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [PERCENTAGE]

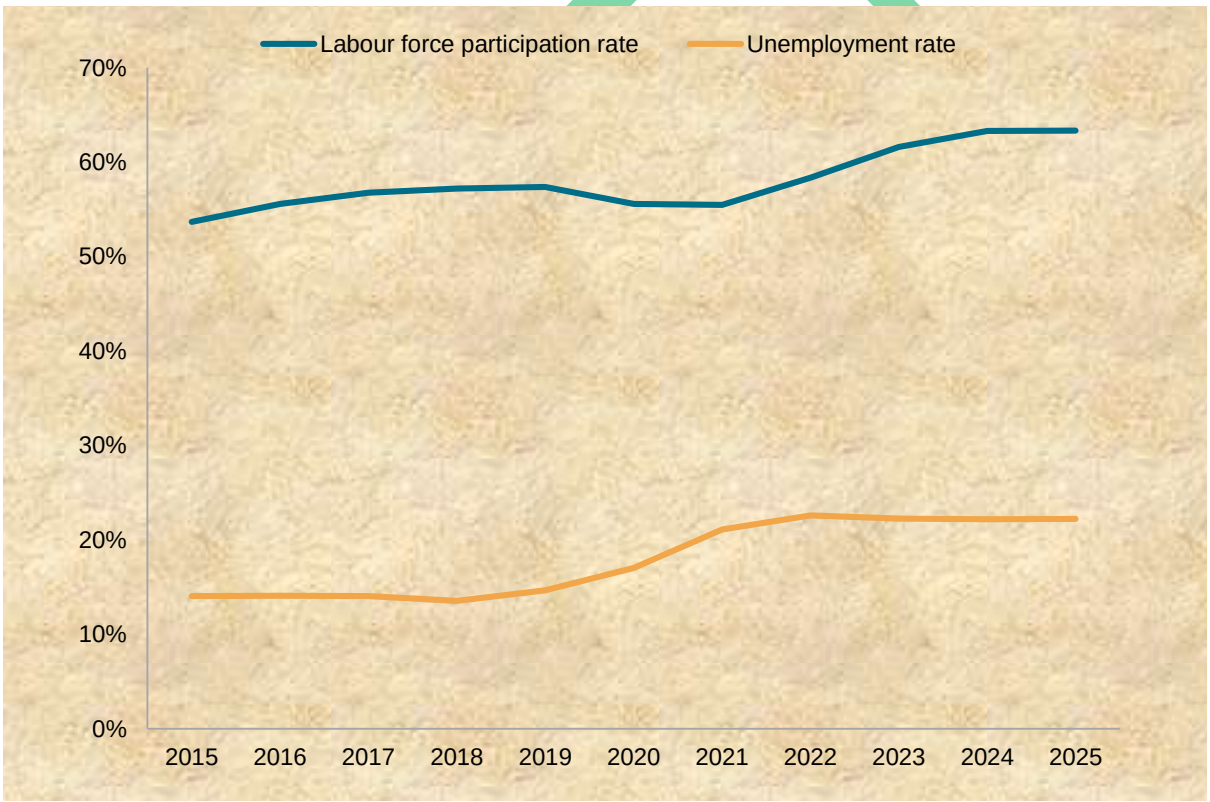
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2015	53.7%	48.4%	45.0%	59.2%
2016	55.6%	50.2%	46.5%	59.1%
2017	56.8%	51.5%	47.6%	59.5%
2018	57.2%	51.9%	47.6%	59.4%
2019	57.4%	52.2%	47.9%	59.4%
2020	55.6%	50.5%	46.2%	57.0%

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2021	55.5%	50.7%	46.6%	56.5%
2022	58.3%	53.7%	49.7%	57.8%
2023	61.6%	56.9%	53.1%	59.5%
2024	63.3%	58.6%	54.8%	60.3%
2025	63.3%	58.7%	54.9%	60.0%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The Polokwane Local Municipality's labour force participation rate increased from 53.67% to 63.34% which is an increase of 9.7 percentage points. The Capricorn District Municipality increased from 48.37% to 58.67%, Limpopo Province increased from 44.99% to 54.90% and South Africa increased from 59.15% to 60.02% from 2015 to 2025.The Polokwane Local Municipality labour force participation rate exhibited a lower percentage point change compared to the Limpopo Province from 2015 to 2025. The Polokwane Local Municipality had a higher labour force participation rate when compared to South Africa in 2025.

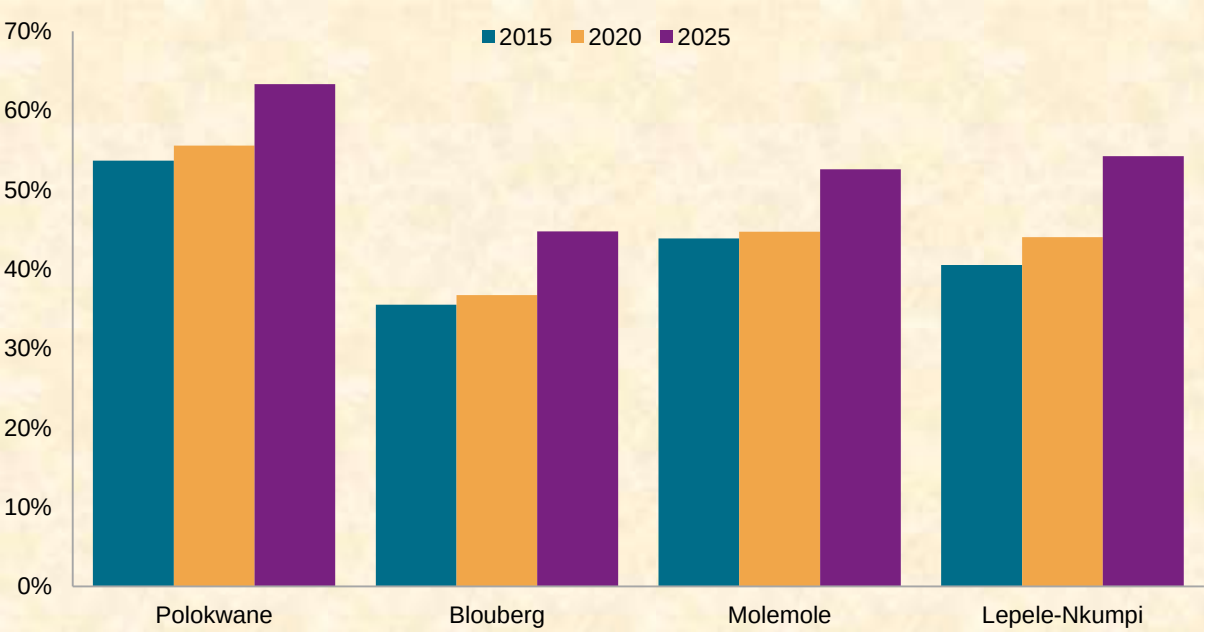
CHART 12. THE LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION AND UNEMPLOYMENT RATES - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025 the labour force participation rate for Polokwane was at 63.3% which is significantly higher when compared to the 53.7% in 2015. The unemployment rate is an efficient indicator that measures the success rate of the labour force relative to employment. In 2015, the unemployment rate for Polokwane was 14.1% and increased overtime to 22.2% in 2025. The gap between the labour force participation rate and the unemployment rate decreased which indicates a negative outlook for the employment within Polokwane Local Municipality.

CHART 13. THE LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION RATE - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2020 AND 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest labour force participation rate with 63.3% in 2025 increasing from 53.7% in 2015. Blouberg Local Municipality had the lowest labour force participation rate of 44.7% in 2025, this increased from 35.5% in 2015.

4.10 Total employment

Employment data is a key element in the estimation of unemployment. In addition, trends in employment within different sectors and industries normally indicate significant structural changes in the economy. Employment data is also used in the calculation of productivity, earnings per worker, and other economic indicators.

Total employment consists of two parts: employment in the formal sector, and employment in the informal sector

DRAFT

TABLE 16. TOTAL EMPLOYMENT - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [NUMBERS]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2015	230,000	331,000	1,250,000	16,700,000
2016	239,000	344,000	1,280,000	16,700,000
2017	246,000	352,000	1,310,000	16,800,000
2018	251,000	359,000	1,320,000	16,900,000
2019	250,000	357,000	1,310,000	16,900,000
2020	237,000	336,000	1,220,000	16,000,000
2021	226,000	319,000	1,150,000	15,300,000
2022	235,000	331,000	1,200,000	15,800,000
2023	253,000	358,000	1,310,000	16,700,000
2024	264,000	374,000	1,380,000	17,200,000
2025	267,000	380,000	1,400,000	17,500,000
Average Annual growth				
2015-2025	***1.52***%	***1.38***%	***1.16***%	***0.45***%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025, Polokwane employed 267 000 people which is 70.34% of the total employment in Capricorn District Municipality (380 000), 19.07% of total employment in Limpopo Province (1.4 million), and 1.53% of the total employment of 17.5 million in South Africa. Employment within Polokwane increased annually at an average rate of 1.52% from 2015 to 2025.

TABLE 17. TOTAL EMPLOYMENT PER BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2025 [NUMBERS]

	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi	Total Capricorn
Agriculture	11,200	3,800	7,670	3,030	25,693
Mining	3,240	394	741	1,250	5,620
Manufacturing	20,300	1,120	2,690	2,600	26,752
Electricity	1,940	218	341	353	2,855
Construction	24,500	2,770	4,220	3,280	34,747
Trade	68,600	6,220	11,300	7,710	93,785
Transport	14,400	1,160	2,320	1,940	19,860
Finance	38,500	2,230	4,480	3,380	48,555
Community services	70,300	6,720	11,400	11,600	99,997
Households	14,200	2,020	4,280	1,490	21,962
Total	**267,000**	**26,600**	**49,400**	**36,600**	**379,828**

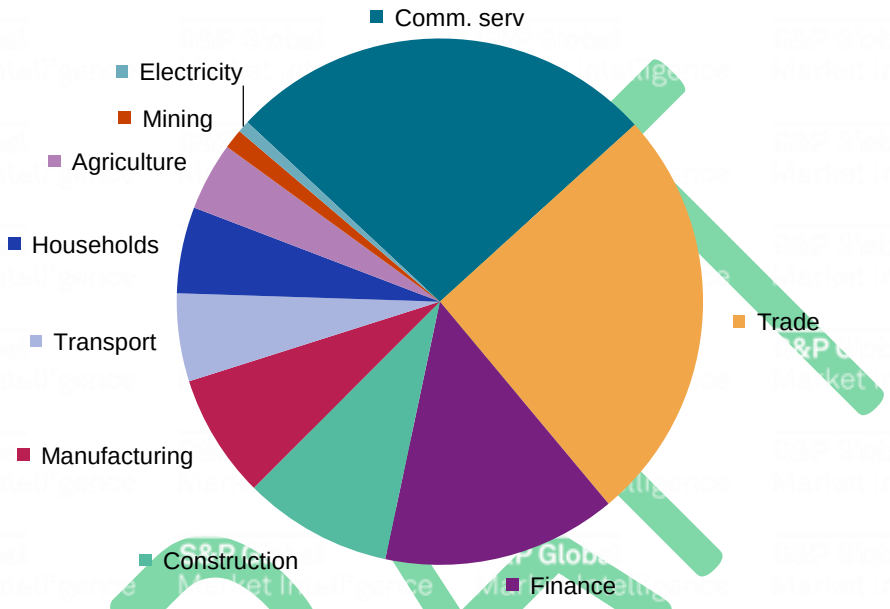
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Polokwane Local Municipality employs a total number of 267 000 people within its local municipality. Polokwane Local Municipality also employs the highest number of people within Capricorn District Municipality. The local municipality that employs the lowest number of people relative to the other regions within Capricorn District Municipality is Blouberg local municipality with a total number of 26 600 employed people.

DRAFT

In Polokwane Local Municipality the economic sectors that recorded the largest number of employment in 2025 were the community services sector with a total of 70 300 employed people or 26.3% of total employment in the local municipality. The trade sector with a total of 68 600 (25.7%) employs the second highest number of people relative to the rest of the sectors. The electricity sector with 1 940 (0.7%) is the sector that employs the least number of people in Polokwane Local Municipality, followed by the mining sector with 3 240 (1.2%) people employed.

CHART 14. TOTAL EMPLOYMENT PER BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

4.10.1Formal and Informal employment

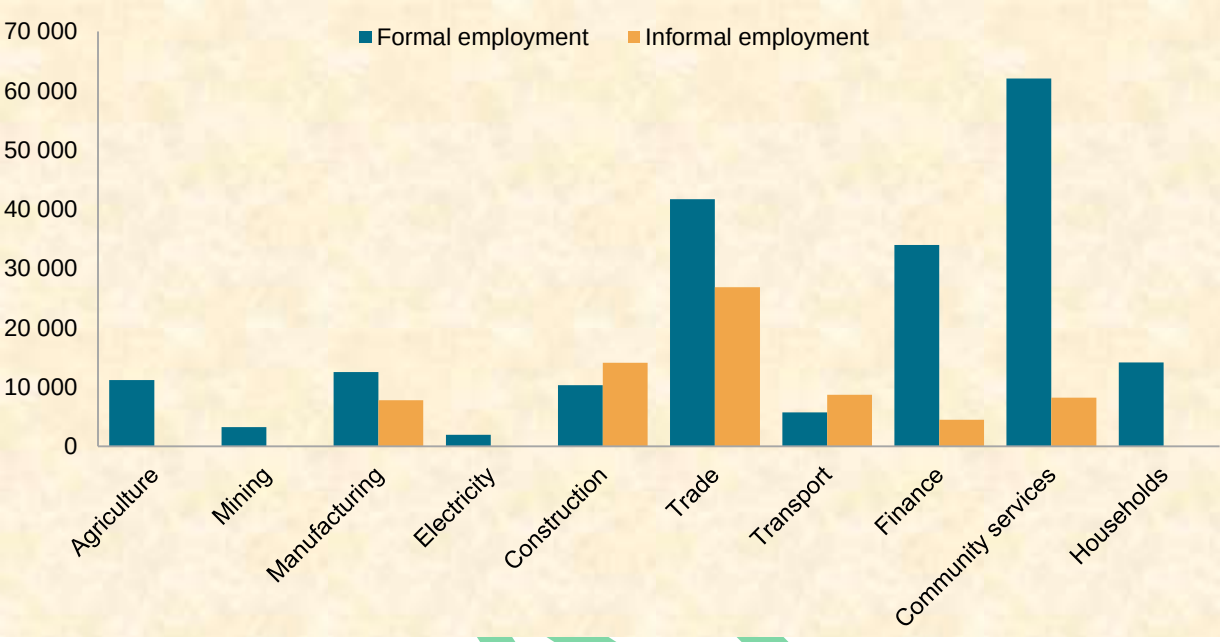
Total employment can be broken down into formal and informal sector employment. Formal sector employment is measured from the formal business side, and the informal employment is measured from the household side where formal businesses have not been established.

Formal employment is much more stable than informal employment. Informal employment is much harder to measure and manage, simply because it cannot be tracked through the formal business side of the economy. Informal employment is however a reality in South Africa and cannot be ignored.

The number of formally employed people in Polokwane Local Municipality counted 197 000 in 2025, which is about 73.72% of total employment, while the number of people employed in the informal sector counted 70 200 or 26.28% of the total employment. Informal employment in Polokwane increased from 55 400 in 2015 to an estimated 70 200 in 2025.

DRAFT

CHART 15. FORMAL AND INFORMAL EMPLOYMENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [NUMBERS]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The number of formally employed people in Polokwane Local Municipality counted 197 000 in 2025, which is about 73.72% of total employment, while the number of people employed in the informal sector counted 70 200 or 26.28% of the total employment. Informal employment in Polokwane increased from 55 400 in 2015 to an estimated 70 200 in 2025.

TABLE 18. FORMAL AND INFORMAL EMPLOYMENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [NUMBERS]

	Formal employment	Informal employment
Agriculture	11,200	N/A
Mining	3,240	N/A
Manufacturing	12,500	7,800
Electricity	1,940	N/A
Construction	10,400	14,100
Trade	41,700	26,900
Transport	5,720	8,720
Finance	34,000	4,480
Community services	62,100	8,230
Households	14,200	N/A

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025 the Trade sector recorded the highest number of informally employed, with a total of 26 900 employees or 38.25% of the total informal employment. This can be expected as the barriers to enter the Trade sector in terms of capital and skills required is less than with most of the other sectors. The Finance sector has the lowest informal employment with 4 480 and only contributes 6.39% to total informal employment.

4.10.2 Unemployment

The unemployed includes all persons between 15 and 65 who are currently not working, but who are actively looking for work. It therefore excludes people who are not actively seeking work (referred to as discouraged work seekers).

The choice of definition for what constitutes being unemployed has a large impact on the final estimates for all measured labour force variables. The following definition was adopted by the Thirteenth International Conference of Labour Statisticians (Geneva, 1982): The "unemployed" comprise all persons above a specified age who during the reference period were:

- "Without work", i.e. not in paid employment or self-employment;
- "Currently available for work", i.e. were available for paid employment or self-employment during the reference period; and
- "Seeking work", i.e. had taken specific steps in a specified reference period to seek paid employment or self-employment. The specific steps may include registration at a public or private employment exchange; application to employers; checking at worksites, farms, factory gates, market or other assembly places; placing or answering newspaper advertisements; seeking assistance of friends or relatives; looking for land.

TABLE 19. UNEMPLOYMENT (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2015	38,400	66,600	297,000	5,730,000	*57.6%*	*12.9%*	*0.67%*
2016	40,200	70,200	325,000	5,990,000	*57.2%*	*12.3%*	*0.67%*
2017	41,200	72,400	339,000	6,270,000	*56.8%*	*12.1%*	*0.66%*
2018	40,400	71,300	339,000	6,370,000	*56.6%*	*11.9%*	*0.63%*
2019	44,200	77,900	371,000	6,720,000	*56.8%*	*11.9%*	*0.66%*
2020	50,200	88,100	429,000	6,970,000	*56.9%*	*11.7%*	*0.72%*
2021	62,600	109,000	533,000	7,730,000	*57.3%*	*11.8%*	*0.81%*
2022	70,800	124,000	604,000	8,030,000	*57.1%*	*11.7%*	*0.88%*
2023	74,800	132,000	645,000	8,140,000	*56.7%*	*11.6%*	*0.92%*
2024	77,700	138,000	673,000	8,330,000	*56.5%*	*11.5%*	*0.93%*

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2025	79,000	140,000	680,000	8,380,000	*56.6%*	*11.6%*	*0.94%*
Average Annual growth							
2015-2025	***7.49%***	***7.67%***	***8.63%***	***3.88%***			

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025, there were a total number of 79 000 people unemployed in Polokwane, which is an increase of 40 600 from 38 400 in 2015. The total number of unemployed people within Polokwane constitutes 56.61% of the total number of unemployed people in Capricorn District Municipality. The Polokwane Local Municipality experienced an average annual increase of 7.49% in the number of unemployed people, which is better than that of the Capricorn District Municipality which had an average annual increase in unemployment of 7.67%.

TABLE 20. UNEMPLOYMENT RATE (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [PERCENTAGE]

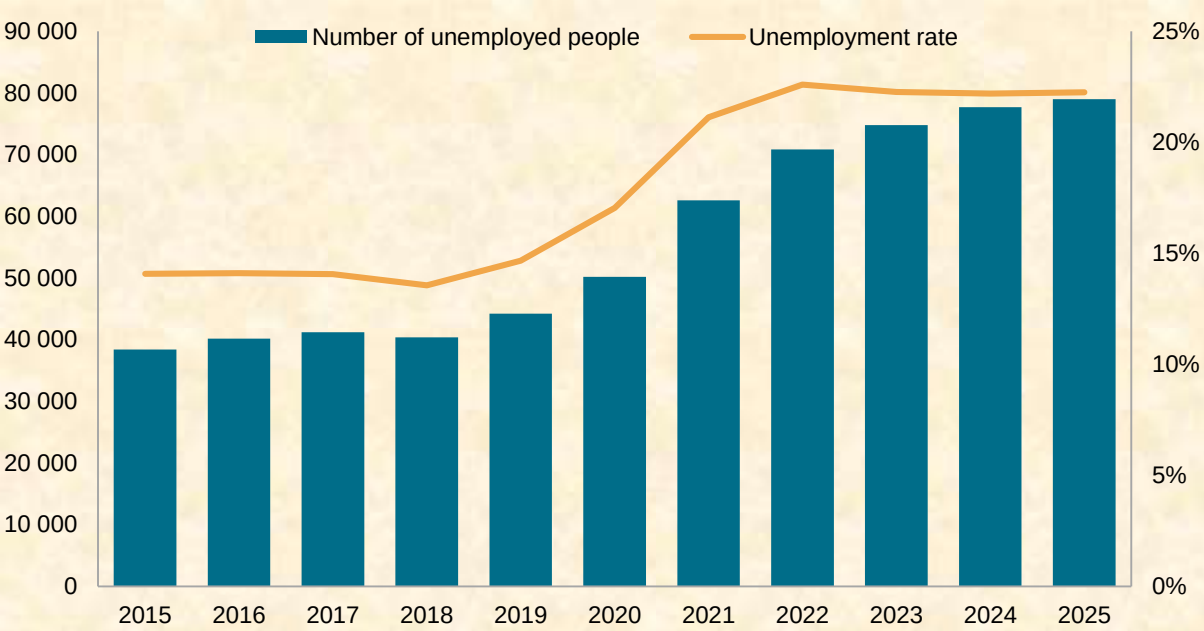
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2015	14.1%	16.9%	18.7%	25.6%
2016	14.1%	17.0%	19.7%	26.4%
2017	14.1%	17.1%	20.0%	27.2%
2018	13.6%	16.6%	19.8%	27.4%
2019	14.7%	17.9%	21.4%	28.4%
2020	17.0%	20.8%	25.3%	30.3%
2021	21.1%	25.5%	30.9%	33.6%
2022	22.6%	27.2%	32.7%	33.7%
2023	22.3%	26.9%	32.1%	32.7%
2024	22.2%	26.9%	32.0%	32.6%
2025	22.2%	26.9%	31.8%	32.4%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025, the unemployment rate in Polokwane Local Municipality (based on the official definition of unemployment) was 22.24%, which is an increase of 8.17 percentage points. The unemployment rate in Polokwane Local Municipality is lower than that of Capricorn. Comparing to the Limpopo Province it can be seen that the unemployment rate for Polokwane Local Municipality was lower than that of Limpopo which was 31.85%. The unemployment rate for South Africa was 32.43% in 2025, which is a increase of -6.88 percentage points from 25.55% in 2015.

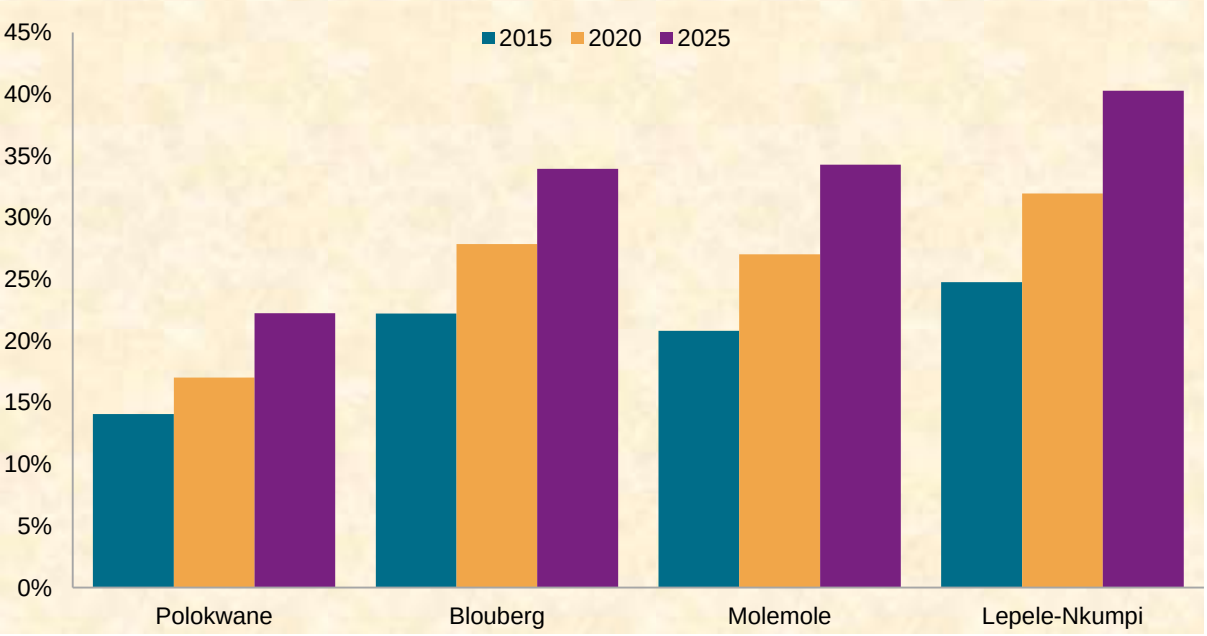
DRAFT

CHART 16. UNEMPLOYMENT AND UNEMPLOYMENT RATE (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

CHART 17. UNEMPLOYMENT RATE - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2015, 2020 AND 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

When comparing unemployment rates among regions within Capricorn District Municipality, Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality has indicated the highest unemployment rate of 40.3%,

which has increased from 24.8% in 2015. It can be seen that the Polokwane Local Municipality had the lowest unemployment rate of 22.2% in 2025, this increased from 14.1% in 2015.

4.11 Income and expenditure

In a growing economy among which production factors are increasing, most of the household incomes are spent on purchasing goods and services. Therefore, the measuring of the income and expenditure of households is a major indicator of a number of economic trends. It is also a good marker of growth as well as consumer tendencies.

4.11.1 Number of households by income category

The number of households is grouped according to predefined income categories or brackets, where income is calculated as the sum of all household gross disposable income: payments in kind, gifts, homemade goods sold, old age pensions, income from informal sector activities, subsistence income, etc.). Note that income tax is included in the income distribution.

Income categories start at R0 - R2,400 per annum and go up to R2,400,000+ per annum. A household is either a group of people who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or it is a single person living on his/her own. These income brackets do not take into account inflation creep: over time, movement of households "up" the brackets is natural, even if they are not earning any more in real terms.

TABLE 20. Households by income category - Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total, 2025 [Number Percentage]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
0-2400	0	0	0	1	*59.4%*	*12.3%*	*1.23%*
2400-6000	46	78	376	3,580	*59.0%*	*12.3%*	*1.29%*
6000-12000	376	642	3,000	30,100	*58.6%*	*12.6%*	*1.25%*
12000-18000	941	1,620	7,480	74,900	*58.2%*	*12.6%*	*1.26%*
18000-30000	5,560	9,740	45,800	406,000	*57.1%*	*12.1%*	*1.37%*
30000-42000	10,900	19,100	88,600	776,000	*57.2%*	*12.3%*	*1.41%*
42000-54000	15,000	26,300	121,000	1,070,000	*57.2%*	*12.5%*	*1.40%*
54000-72000	26,800	46,800	215,000	1,880,000	*57.3%*	*12.5%*	*1.43%*
72000-96000	34,300	58,500	262,000	2,360,000	*58.6%*	*13.1%*	*1.45%*
96000-132000	38,200	63,000	273,000	2,670,000	*60.7%*	*14.0%*	*1.43%*
132000-192000	41,300	66,200	281,000	2,930,000	*62.5%*	*14.7%*	*1.41%*
192000-360000	47,200	71,600	287,000	3,430,000	*65.9%*	*16.4%*	*1.38%*
360000-600000	24,100	34,900	134,000	1,860,000	*69.1%*	*18.0%*	*1.30%*
600000-1200000	14,500	20,100	73,100	1,300,000	*71.9%*	*19.8%*	*1.12%*
1200000-2400000	5,780	7,730	27,700	598,000	*74.8%*	*20.8%*	*0.97%*
2400000+	1,470	1,880	6,950	177,000	*77.9%*	*21.1%*	*0.83%*
Total	**267,000**	**428,000**	**1,820,000**	**19,600,000**	***62.3%***	***14.6%***	***1.36%***

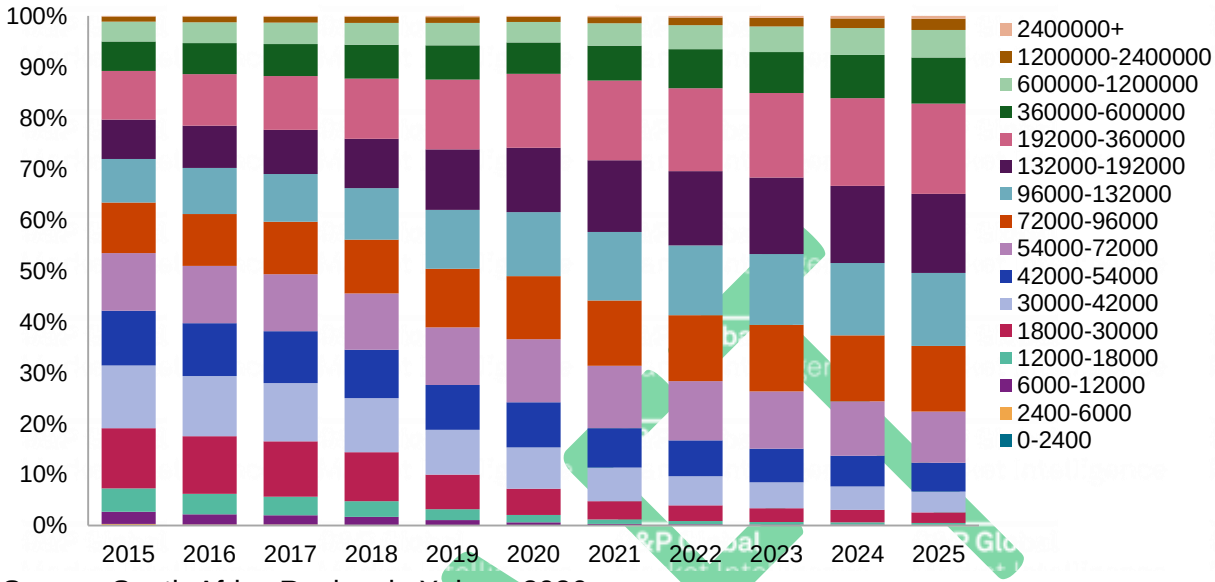
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

It was estimated that in 2025 2.60% of all the households in the Polokwane Local Municipality, were living on R30,000 or less per annum. In comparison with 2015's 19.10%, the number is significantly lower. The 192000-360000 income category has the highest number of

DRAFT

households with a total number of 47 200, followed by the 132000-192000 income category with 41 300 households. Only 0.01 households fall within the 0-2400 income category.

CHART 18. Households by income bracket - Polokwane Local Municipality, 2015-2025 [Percentage]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

For the period 2015 to 2025 the number of households earning more than R30,000 per annum has increased from 80.90% to 97.40%. It can be seen that the number of households with income equal to or lower than R6,000 per year has decreased by a significant amount.

4.11.2Annual total personal income

Personal income is an even broader concept than labour remuneration. Personal income includes profits, income from property, net current transfers and net social benefits.

Annual total personal income is the sum of the total personal income for all households in a specific region. The definition of income is the same as used in the income brackets (Number of Households by Income Category), also including the income tax. For this variable, current prices are used, meaning that inflation has not been taken into account.

TABLE 21. Annual total personal income - Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total [Current Prices, R billions]

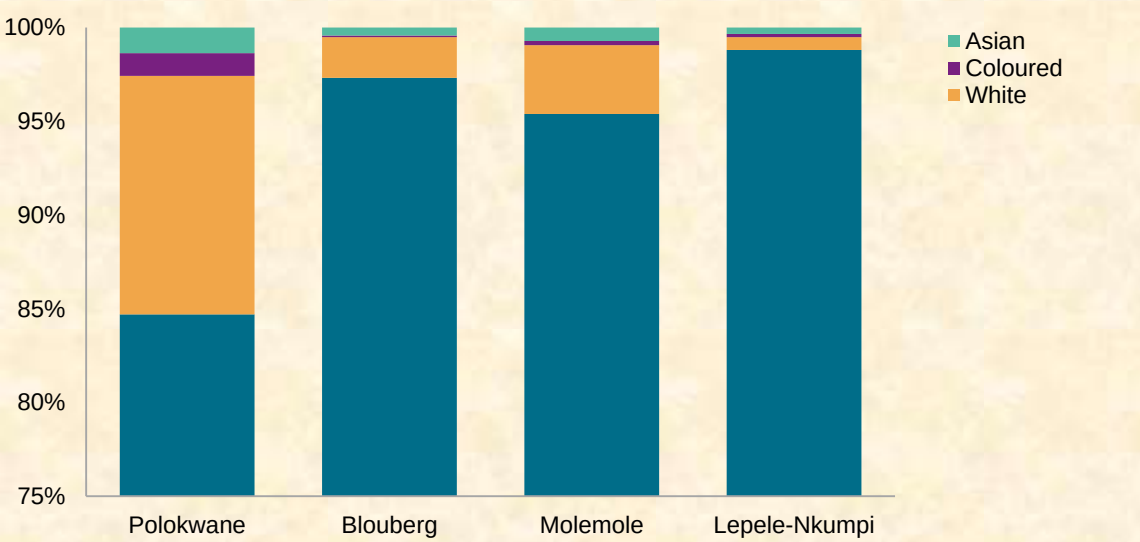
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2015	37.2	51.7	188.4	3,180.0
2016	40.6	56.6	206.6	3,413.6
2017	43.2	60.7	223.9	3,662.1
2018	46.2	65.1	243.0	3,913.0
2019	48.3	68.8	260.7	4,111.6
2020	46.9	67.4	258.3	4,015.2
2021	51.9	74.9	289.0	4,425.5
2022	57.0	82.8	321.1	4,830.7
2023	60.7	88.5	345.5	5,129.2
2024	64.3	94.2	369.1	5,423.9

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2025	68.3	100.5	395.7	5,745.9
Average Annual growth				
2015-2025	***6.27***%	***6.87***%	***7.70***%	***6.09***%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Polokwane Local Municipality recorded an average annual growth rate of 6.27% (from R 37.2 billion to R 68.3 billion) from 2015 to 2025, which is less than both Capricorn's (6.87%) as well as Limpopo Province's (7.70%) average annual growth rates. South Africa had an average annual growth rate of 6.09% (from R 3.18 trillion to R 5.75 trillion) which is less than the growth rate in Polokwane Local Municipality.

CHART 18. Annual total personal income by population group - Polokwane and the rest of Capricorn [Current Prices, R billions]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The total personal income of Polokwane Local Municipality amounted to approximately R 68.3 billion in 2025. The African population group earned R 57.9 billion, or 84.71% of total personal income, while the White population group earned R 8.68 billion, or 12.71% of the total personal income. The Asian and the Coloured population groups only had a share of 1.36% and 1.21% of total personal income respectively.

TABLE 22. Annual total personal income - [Current Prices, R billions]

	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2015	37.18	4.15	3.70	6.71
2016	40.55	4.59	4.08	7.34
2017	43.22	5.03	4.44	8.00
2018	46.15	5.57	4.89	8.47
2019	48.32	6.15	5.34	9.02
2020	46.90	6.21	5.35	8.90
2021	51.88	7.05	6.05	9.94
2022	57.02	7.92	6.73	11.09
2023	60.66	8.61	7.28	11.95
2024	64.30	9.28	7.82	12.78

	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2025	68.31	10.06	8.43	13.73
Average Annual growth				
2015-2025	***6.27***%	***9.25***%	***8.59***%	***7.42***%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

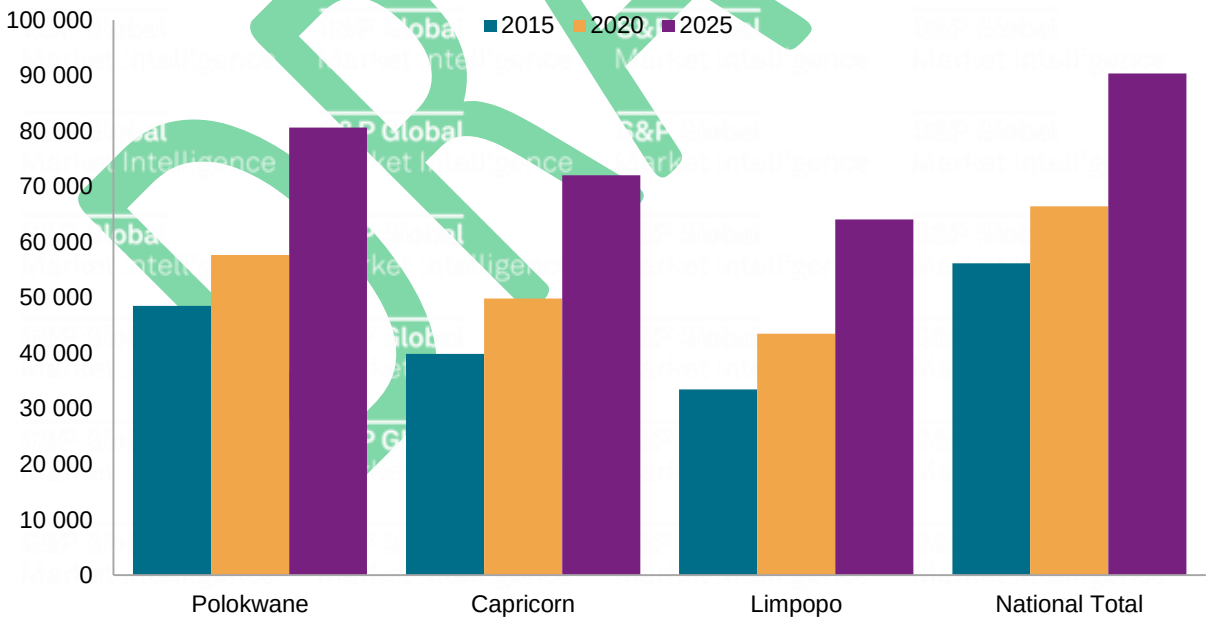
When looking at the annual total personal income for the regions within Capricorn District Municipality it can be seen that the Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest total personal income with R 68.3 billion which increased from R 37.2 billion recorded in 2015. It can be seen that the Molemole Local Municipality had the lowest total personal income of R 8.43 billion in 2025, this increased from R 3.7 billion in 2015.

4.11.3 Annual per capita income

Per capita income refers to the income per person. Thus, it takes the total personal income per annum and divides it equally among the population.

Per capita income is often used as a measure of wealth particularly when comparing economies or population groups. Rising per capita income usually indicates a likely swell in demand for consumption.

CHART 18. PER CAPITA INCOME - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2025 [RAND, CURRENT PRICES]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The per capita income in Polokwane Local Municipality in 2025 is R 80,600 which is higher than both the Limpopo (R 64,100) and of the Capricorn District Municipality (R 72,000) per capita income. The per capita income for Polokwane Local Municipality (R 80,600) is lower than that of the South Africa as a whole which is R 90,400.

DRAFT

TABLE 21. PER CAPITA INCOME BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [RAND, CURRENT PRICES]

	African	White	Coloured	Asian
Polokwane	71,700	335,000	114,000	145,000
Blouberg	51,900	N/A	N/A	N/A
Molemole	59,600	N/A	N/A	N/A
Lepele-Nkumpi	61,600	N/A	N/A	N/A

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest per capita income with a total of R 80,600. Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality had the second highest per capita income at R 62,000, whereas Blouberg Local Municipality had the lowest per capita income at R 52,900. In Polokwane Local Municipality, the White population group has the highest per capita income, with R 335,000, relative to the other population groups. The population group with the second highest per capita income within Polokwane Local Municipality is the Asian population group (R 145,000), where the Coloured and the African population groups had a per capita income of R 114,000 and R 71,700 respectively.

4.12 Index of buying power

The index of buying power (IBP) is a measure of a region's overall capacity to absorb products and/or services. The index is useful when comparing two regions in terms of their capacity to buy products. Values range from 0 to 1 (where the national index equals 1), and can be interpreted as the percentage of national buying power attributable to the specific region. Regions' buying power usually depends on three factors: the size of the population; the ability of the population to spend (measured by total income); and the willingness of the population to spend (measured by total retail sales).

TABLE 22. INDEX OF BUYING POWER - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2025 [NUMBER]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
Population	846,994	1,395,404	6,176,679	63,568,754
Population - share of national total	1.3%	2.2%	9.7%	100.0%
Income	68,305	100,527	395,729	5,745,891
Income - share of national total	1.2%	1.7%	6.9%	100.0%
Retail	6,026,722	8,903,488	35,509,987	1,531,208,000
Retail - share of national total	0.4%	0.6%	2.3%	100.0%
Index	0.01	0.01	0.06	1.00

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Polokwane Local Municipality has a 1.3% share of the national population, 1.2% share of the total national income and a 0.4% share in the total national retail, this all equates to an IBP index value of 0.0096 relative to South Africa as a whole. Capricorn has an IBP of 0.014, were Limpopo Province has and IBP index value of 0.058 and South Africa a value of 1 relative to South Africa as a whole.

DRAFT

The considerable low index of buying power of the Polokwane Local Municipality suggests that the local municipality has access to only a small percentage of the goods and services available in all of the Capricorn District Municipality. Its residents are most likely spending some of their income in neighbouring areas.

CHART 19. INDEX OF BUYING POWER POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [INDEX VALUE]

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

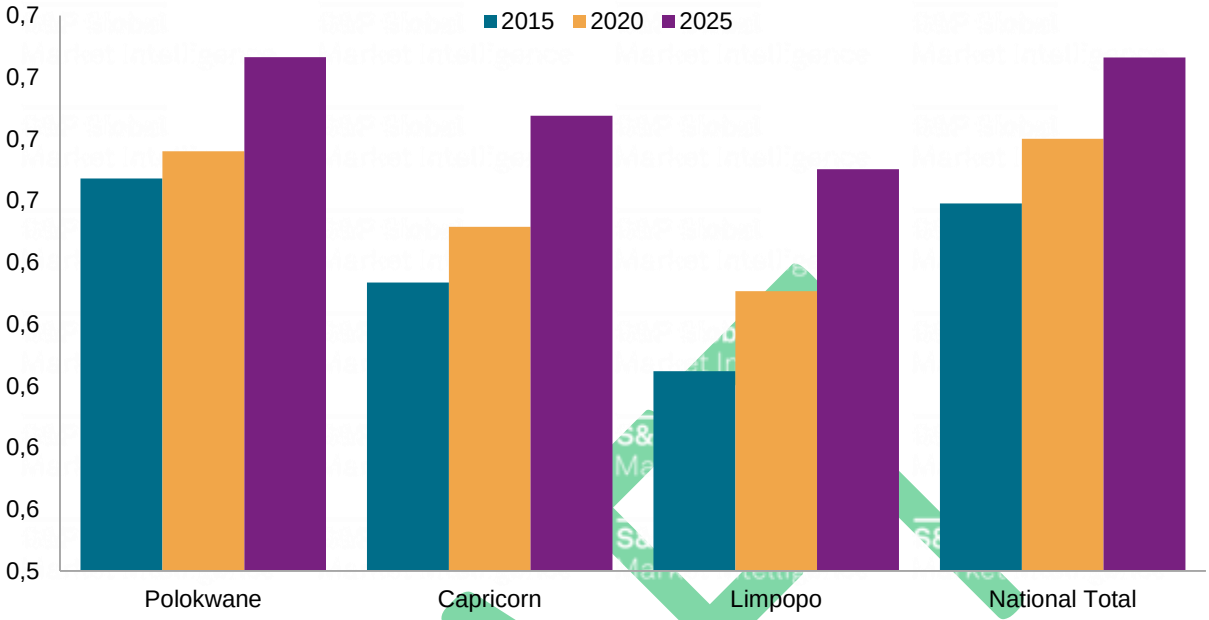
Between 2015 and 2025, the index of buying power within Polokwane Local Municipality increased to its highest level in 2015 (0.01042) from its lowest in 2022 (0.00947). The buying power within Polokwane Local Municipality is relatively small compared to other regions and it decreased at an average annual growth rate of -0.77%.

4.12.1 Human Development Index (HDI)

Indicators of development, like the Human Development Index (HDI), Gini Coefficient (income inequality), poverty and the poverty gap, and education, are used to estimate the level of development of a given region in South Africa relative to the rest of the country.

Another indicator that is widely used is the number (or percentage) of people living in poverty. Poverty is defined as the deprivation of those things that determine the quality of life, including food, clothing, shelter and safe drinking water. More than that, other "intangibles" is also included such as the opportunity to learn, and the privilege to enjoy the respect of fellow citizens. Curbing poverty and alleviating the effects thereof should be a premise in the compilation of all policies that aspire towards a better life for all.

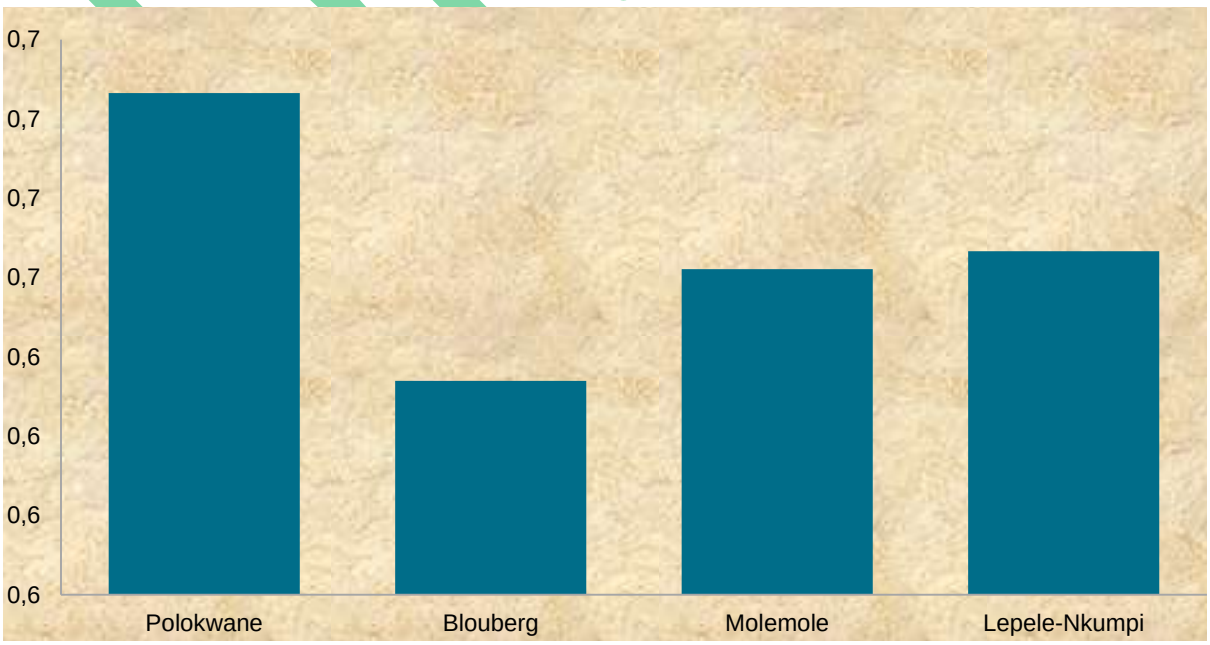
CHART 20. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015, 2020, 2025 [NUMBER]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025 Polokwane Local Municipality had an HDI of 0.707 compared to the Capricorn with a HDI of 0.688, 0.67 of Limpopo and 0.706 of National Total as a whole. Seeing that South Africa recorded a lower HDI in 2025 when compared to Polokwane Local Municipality which translates to better human development for Polokwane Local Municipality compared to South Africa. South Africa's HDI increased at an average annual growth rate of 0.70% and this increase is higher than that of Polokwane Local Municipality (0.57%).

CHART 21. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [NUMBER]



DRAFT

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

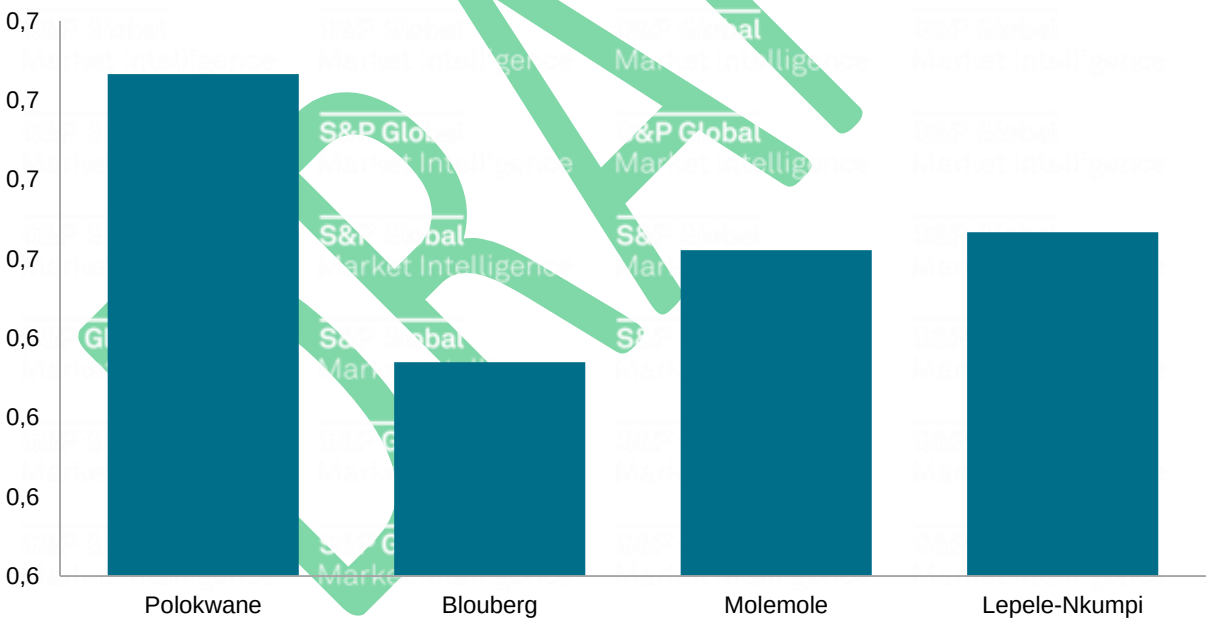
In terms of the HDI for each the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest HDI, with an index value of 0.707. The lowest can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with an index value of 0.634.

4.12.2 Gini coefficient

The Gini coefficient is a summary statistic of income inequality. It varies from 0 to 1.

If the Gini coefficient is equal to zero, income is distributed in a perfectly equal manner, in other words there is no variance between the high and low income earners within the population. In contrast, if the Gini coefficient equals 1, income is completely inequitable, i.e. one individual in the population is earning all the income and the rest has no income. Generally, this coefficient lies in the range between 0.25 and 0.70.

CHART 22. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [NUMBER]

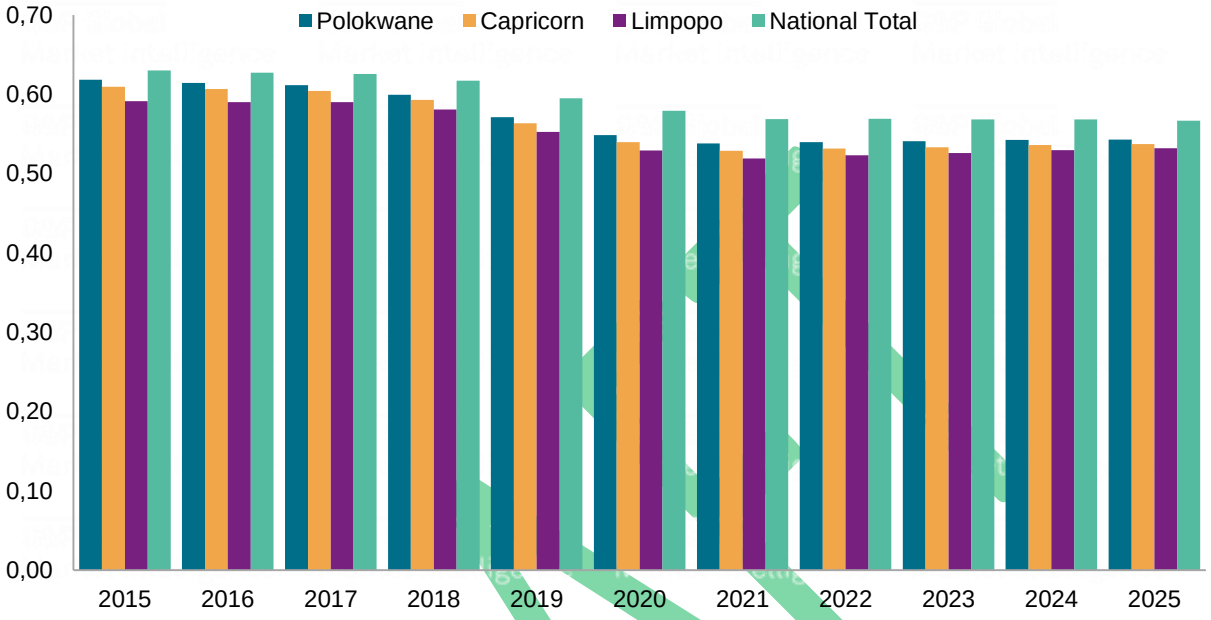


Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In terms of the HDI for each the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest HDI, with an index value of 0.707. The lowest can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with an index value of 0.634.

DRAFT

CHART 23. GINI COEFFICIENT - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [NUMBER]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025, the Gini coefficient in Polokwane Local Municipality was at 0.543, which reflects a sharp decrease in the number over the ten-year period from 2015 to 2025. The Capricorn District Municipality and the Limpopo Province had a Gini coefficient of 0.538 and 0.532 respectively. When Polokwane Local Municipality is contrasted against the entire South Africa, it can be seen that Polokwane has a more equal income distribution with a lower Gini coefficient compared to the South African coefficient of 0.567 in 2025. This has been the case for the entire 10-year history.

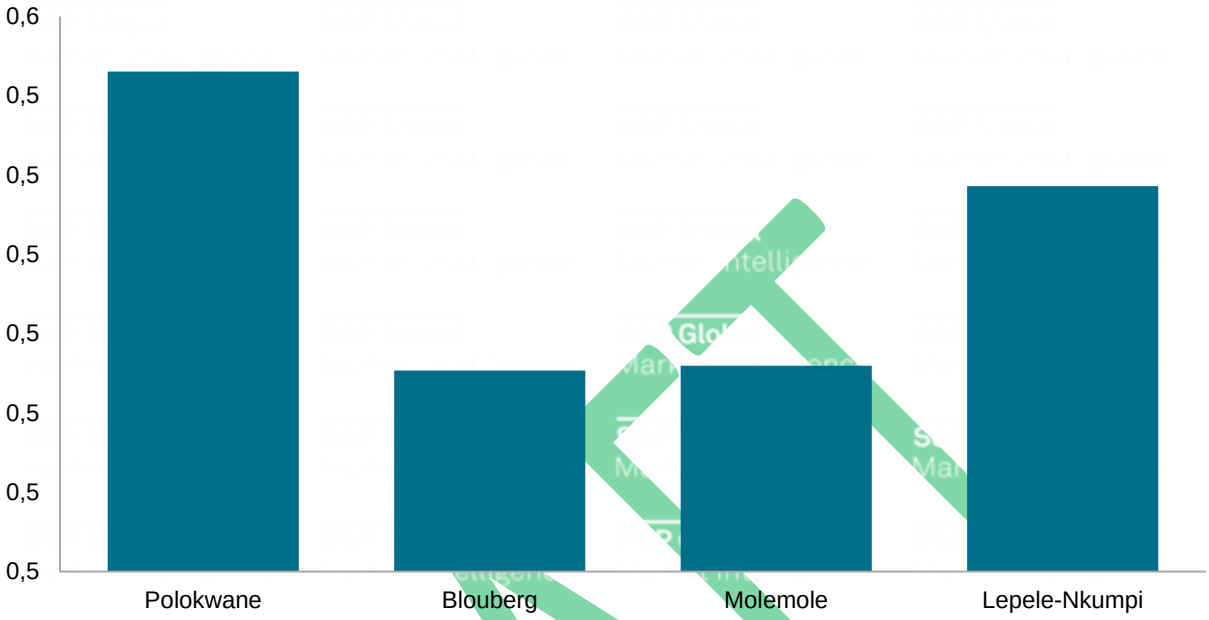
TABLE 23. GINI COEFFICIENT BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE, 2015, 2025 [NUMBER]

	African	White	Coloured	Asian
2015	0.60	0.42	0.56	0.49
2025	0.52	0.43	0.50	0.49
Average Annual growth				
2015-2025	***-1.44***%	***0.19***%	***-1.16***%	***-0.01***%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

When segmenting the Polokwane Local Municipality into population groups, it can be seen that the Gini coefficient for the White population group increased the most amongst the population groups with an average annual growth rate of 0.19%. The Gini coefficient for the African population group decreased the most with an average annual growth rate of -1.44%.

CHART 24. GINI COEFFICIENT - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [NUMBER]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

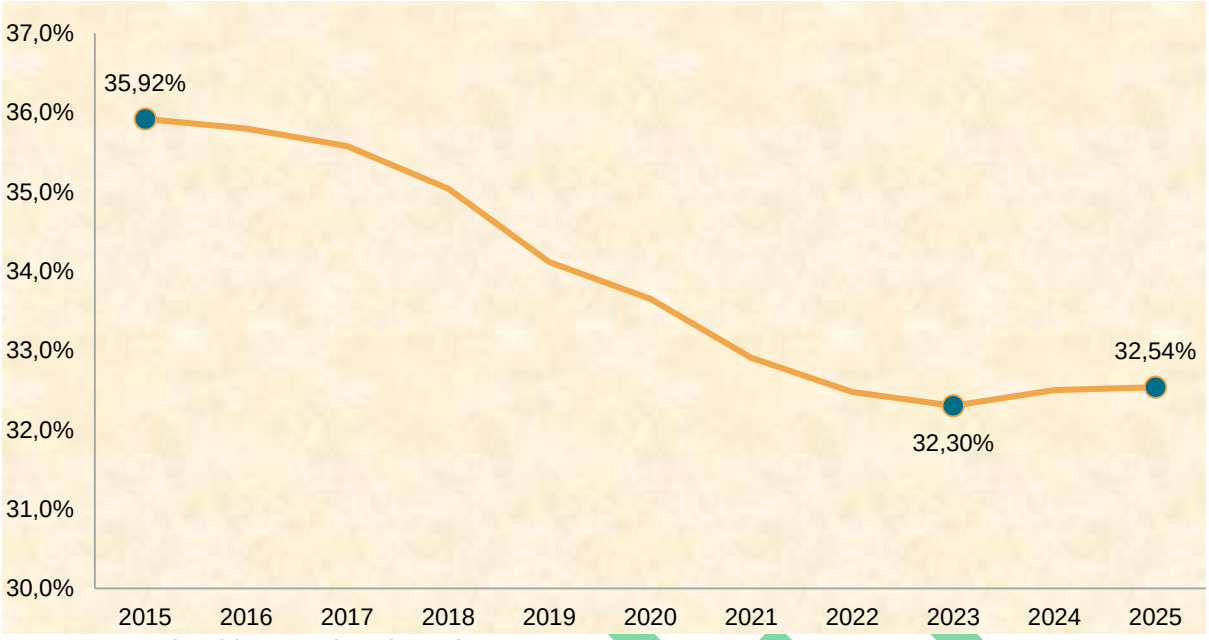
In terms of the Gini coefficient for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest Gini coefficient, with an index value of 0.543. The lowest Gini coefficient can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with an index value of 0.505.

4.13 Poverty

The upper poverty line is defined by StatsSA as the level of consumption at which individuals are able to purchase both sufficient food and non-food items without sacrificing one for the other. This variable measures the number of individuals living below that particular level of consumption for the given area, and is balanced directly to the official upper poverty rate as measured by StatsSA.

DRAFT

CHART 25. POVERTY GAP RATE BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [PERCENTAGE]

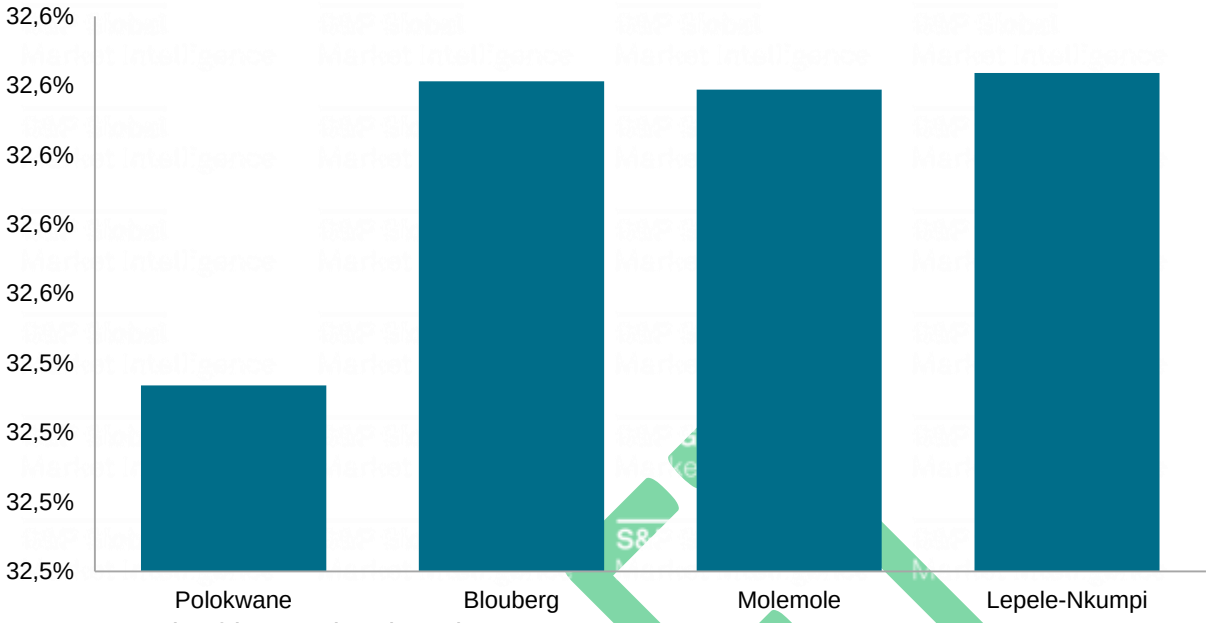


Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

It is estimated that the poverty gap rate in Polokwane Local Municipality amounted to 32.5% in 2025 - the rate needed to bring all poor households up to the poverty line and out of poverty. In 2025, the poverty gap rate was 32.5% and in 2015 the poverty gap rate was 35.9%, it can be seen that the poverty gap rate decreased from 2015 to 2025, which means that there were improvements in terms of the depth of the poverty within Polokwane Local Municipality.

DRAFT

CHART 26. POVERTY GAP RATE - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In terms of the poverty gap rate for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality had the highest poverty gap rate, with a rand value of 32.6%. The lowest poverty gap rate can be observed in the Polokwane Local Municipality with a total of 32.5%.

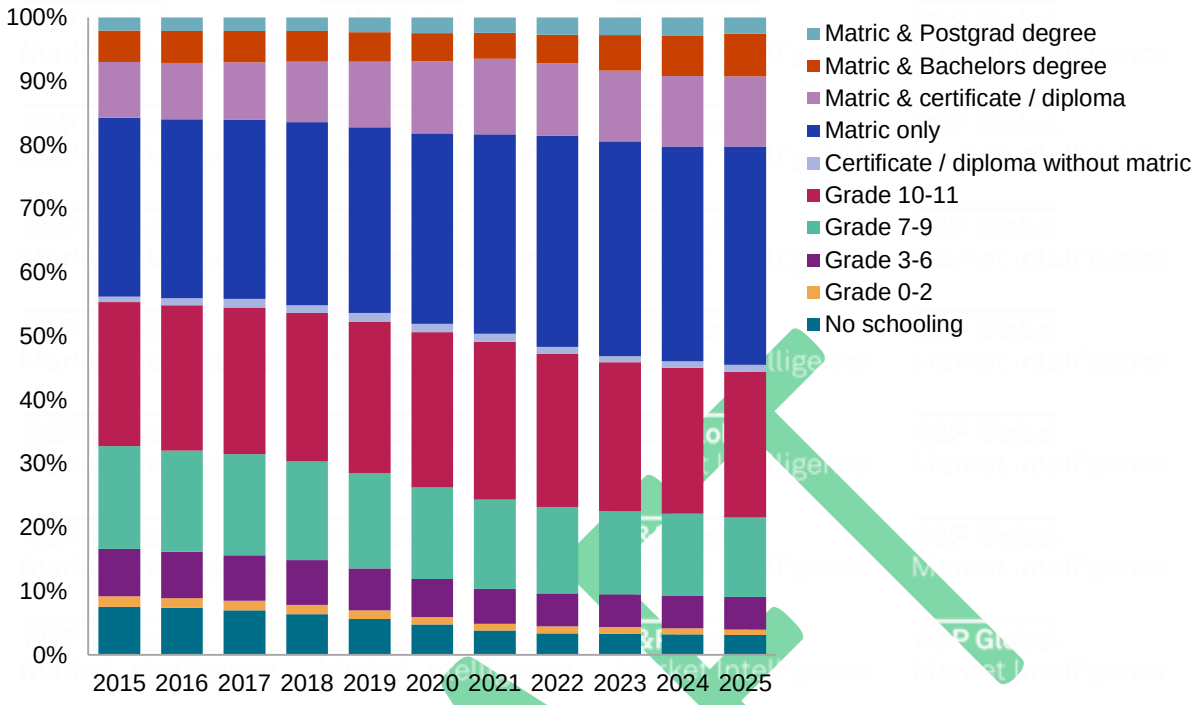
4.14 Education

Educating is important to the economic growth in a country and the development of its industries, providing a trained workforce and skilled professionals required.

The education measure represents the highest level of education of an individual, using the 15 years and older age category. (According to the United Nations definition of education, one is an adult when 15 years or older. S&P Global uses this cut-off point to allow for cross-country comparisons. Furthermore, the age of 15 is also the legal age at which children may leave school in South Africa).

DRAFT

CHART 27. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+ - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Within Polokwane Local Municipality, the number of people without any schooling decreased from 2015 to 2025 with an average annual rate of -7.45%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category, increased from 137,000 to 186,000. The number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 3.40%, with the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increasing with an average annual rate of 4.13%. Overall improvement in the level of education is visible with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education.

TABLE 24. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+ - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2025 [NUMBERS]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
No schooling	17,000	42,400	223,000	1,430,000	*40.0%*	*7.6%*	*1.19%*
Grade 0-2	4,650	8,600	46,200	446,000	*54.1%*	*10.1%*	*1.04%*
Grade 3-6	27,700	51,400	246,000	2,570,000	*53.9%*	*11.3%*	*1.08%*
Grade 7-9	67,400	119,000	570,000	5,980,000	*56.8%*	*11.8%*	*1.13%*

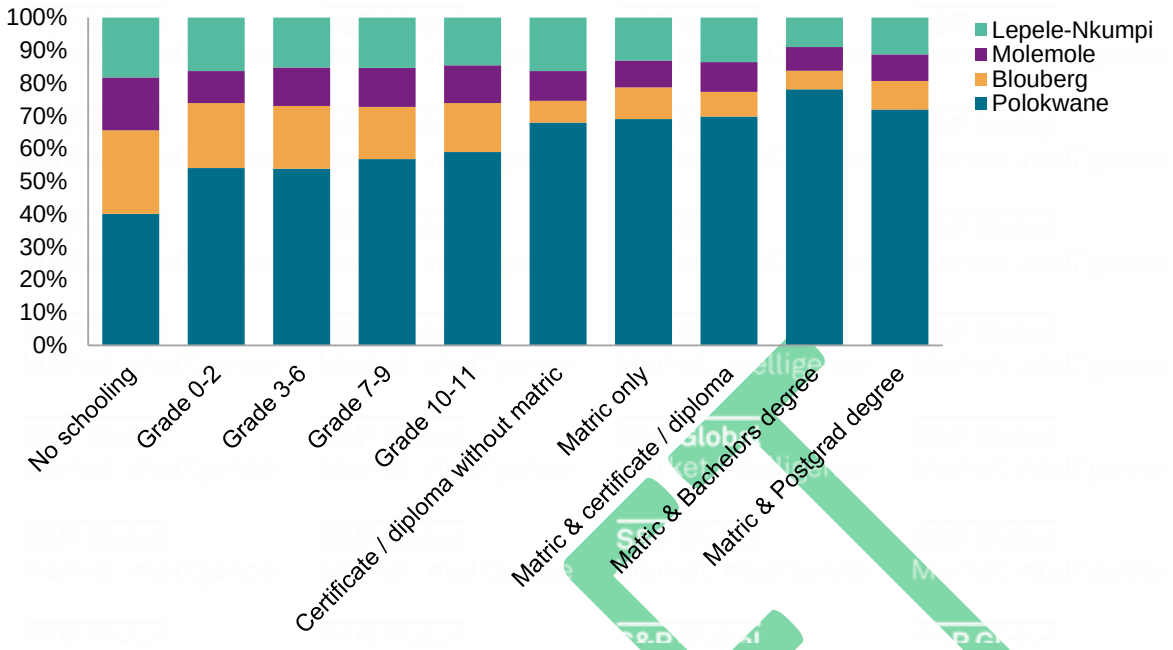
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
Grade 10-11	124,000	210,000	1,030,000	10,700,000	*58.9%*	*12.1%*	*1.16%*
Certificate / diploma without matric	6,050	8,910	30,900	140,000	*67.9%*	*19.6%*	*4.33%*
Matric only	186,000	269,000	1,080,000	15,100,000	*69.0%*	*17.2%*	*1.23%*
Matric certificate / diploma	59,500	85,300	299,000	3,110,000	*69.8%*	*19.9%*	*1.92%*
Matric Bachelor's degree	36,200	46,300	145,000	2,200,000	*78.0%*	*25.0%*	*1.65%*
Matric Postgrad degree	13,800	19,100	62,000	1,080,000	*72.0%*	*22.2%*	*1.27%*

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

The number of people without any schooling in Polokwane Local Municipality accounts for 40.05% of the number of people without schooling in the district municipality, 7.62% of the province and 1.19% of the national. In 2025, the number of people in Polokwane Local Municipality with a matric only was 186,000 which is a share of 69.03% of the district municipality's total number of people that has obtained a matric. The number of people with a matric and a Postgrad degree constitutes 78.05% of the district municipality, 25.00% of the province and 1.65% of the national.

DRAFT

CHART 28. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+, POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

4.14.1 Functional literacy

For the purpose of this report, S&P Global defines functional literacy as the number of people in a region that are 20 years and older and have completed at least their primary education (i.e. grade 7).

Functional literacy describes the reading and writing skills that are adequate for an individual to cope with the demands of everyday life - including the demands posed in the workplace. This is contrasted with illiteracy in the strictest sense, meaning the inability to read or write. Functional literacy enables individuals to enter the labour market and contribute towards economic growth thereby reducing poverty.

TABLE 25. FUNCTIONAL LITERACY: AGE 20+, COMPLETED GRADE 7 OR HIGHER - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

	Illiterate	Literate	%
2015	83,552	472,748	85.0%
2016	82,843	479,575	85.3%
2017	81,309	486,321	85.7%
2018	78,326	496,130	86.4%
2019	72,266	507,498	87.5%
2020	64,006	521,600	89.1%
2021	55,781	534,568	90.6%
2022	52,082	542,358	91.2%
2023	51,559	551,919	91.5%

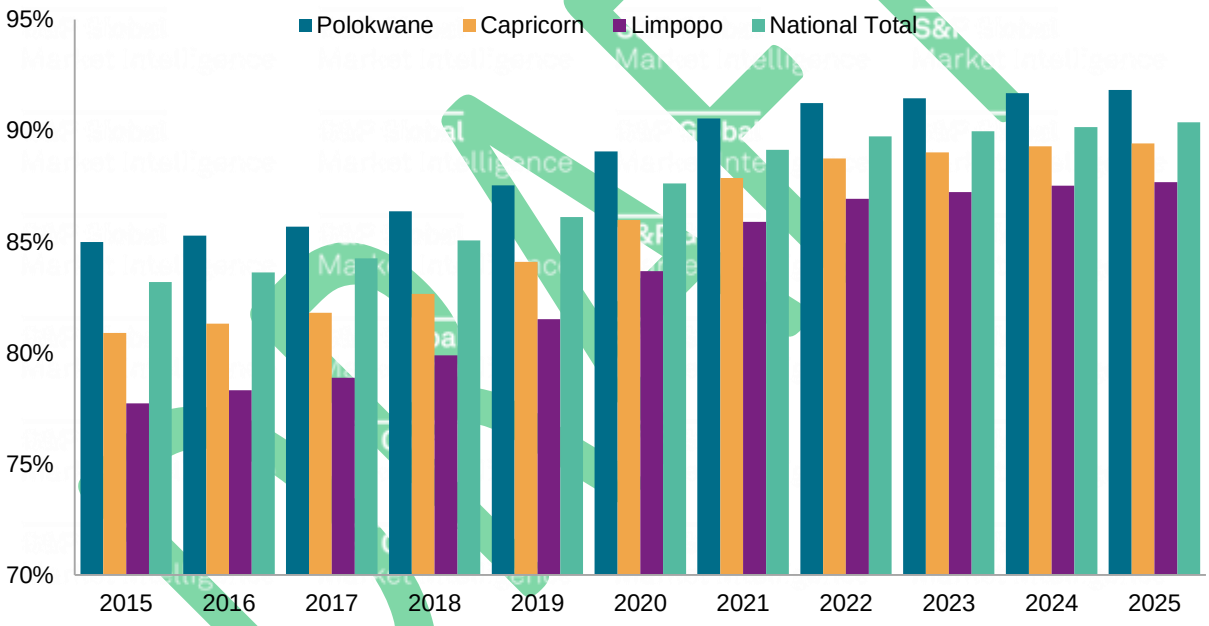
DRAFT

	Illiterate	Literate	%
2024	50,897	561,699	91.7%
2025	50,807	571,136	91.8%
Average Annual growth			
2015-2025	***-4.85***%	***1.91***%	***0.78***%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

A total of 571 000 individuals in Polokwane Local Municipality were considered functionally literate in 2025, while 50 800 people were considered to be illiterate. Expressed as a rate, this amounts to 91.83% of the population, which is an increase of 0.069 percentage points since 2015 (84.98%). The number of illiterate individuals decreased on average by -4.85% annually from 2015 to 2025, with the number of functional literate people increasing at 1.91% annually.

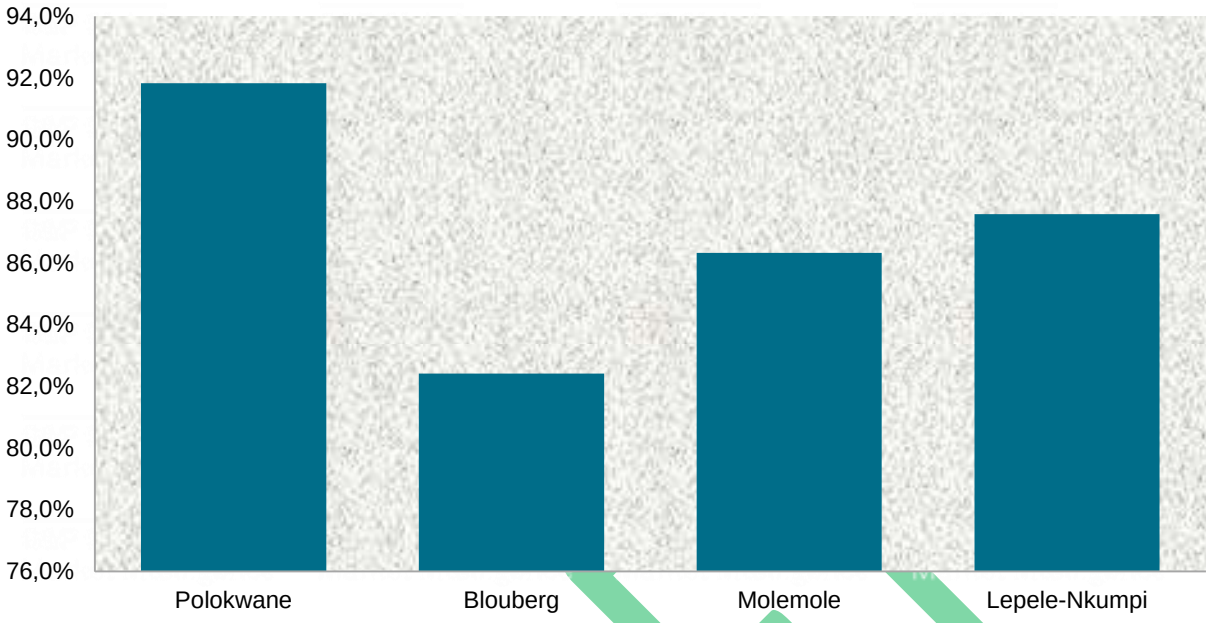
CHART 29. FUNCTIONAL LITERACY: AGE 20+, COMPLETED GRADE 7 OR HIGHER - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

Polokwane Local Municipality's functional literacy rate of 91.83% in 2025 is higher than that of Capricorn at 89.42%, and is higher than the province rate of 87.68%. When comparing to National Total as whole, which has a functional literacy rate of 90.38%, it can be seen that the functional literacy rate is lower than that of the Polokwane Local Municipality.

CHART 30. LITERACY RATE - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY,2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

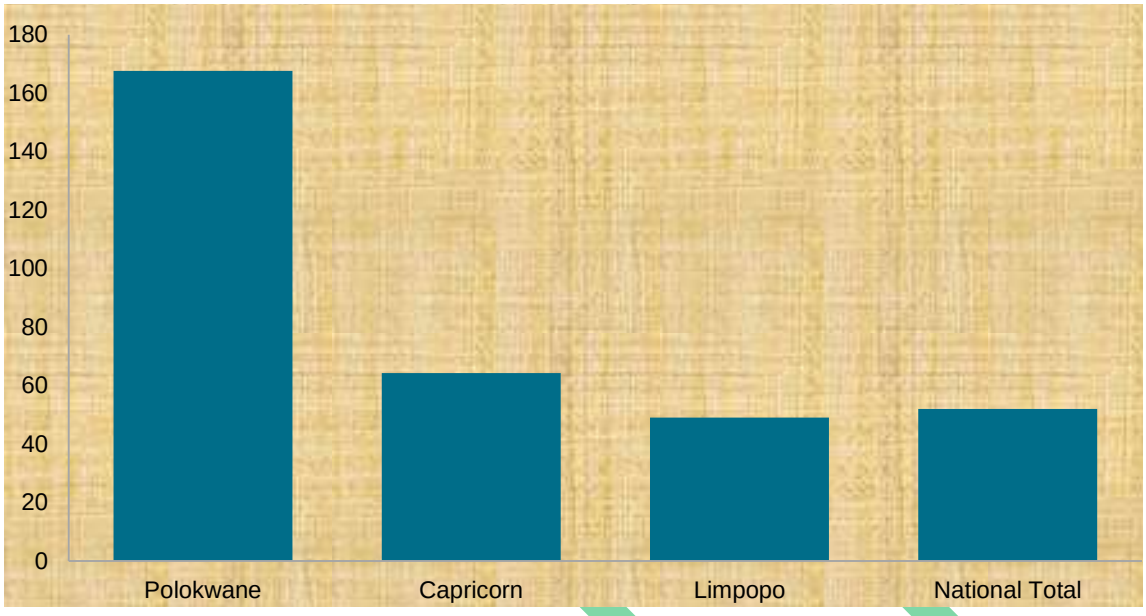
In terms of the literacy rate for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest literacy rate, with a total of 91.8%. The lowest literacy rate can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with a total of 82.4%.

4.15 Population density

Population density measures the concentration of people in a region. To calculate this, the population of a region is divided by the area size of that region. The output is presented as the number of people per square kilometre.

DRAFT

CHART 31. POPULATION DENSITY - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2025 [NUMBER OF PEOPLE PER KM²]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025, with an average of 168 people per square kilometre, Polokwane Local Municipality had a higher population density than Capricorn (64.3 people per square kilometre). Compared to Limpopo Province (49.1 per square kilometre) it can be seen that there are more people living per square kilometre in Polokwane Local Municipality than in Limpopo Province.

TABLE 26. POPULATION DENSITY - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2015-2025 [NUMBER OF PEOPLE PER KM²]

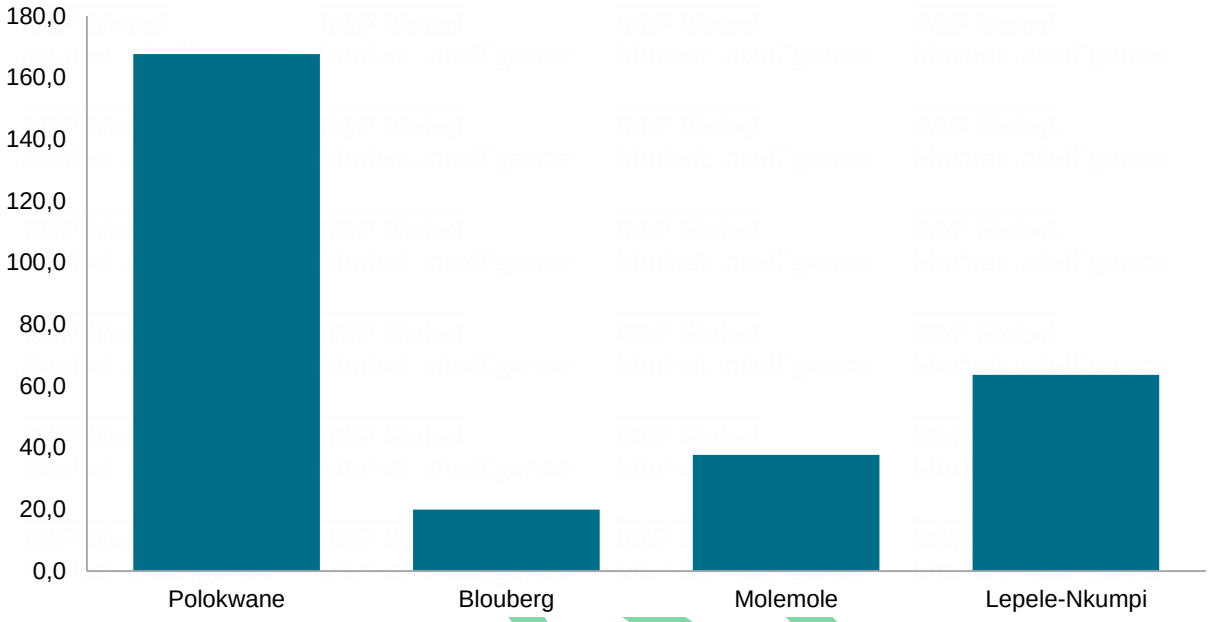
	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2015	151.70	18.48	33.08	67.31
2016	153.88	18.60	33.50	66.95
2017	155.69	18.70	33.90	66.42
2018	157.57	18.85	34.39	65.96
2019	159.33	19.01	34.90	65.43
2020	160.99	19.18	35.45	64.86
2021	162.27	19.33	35.96	64.12
2022	163.30	19.46	36.47	63.27
2023	164.85	19.62	36.87	63.22
2024	166.43	19.82	37.31	63.51
2025	167.60	19.95	37.63	63.60
Average Annual growth				
2015-2025	***1.00***%	***0.77***%	***1.30***%	***-0.57***%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2025, Polokwane Local Municipality had a population density of 168 per square kilometre and it ranked highest amongst its piers. In terms of growth, Polokwane Local Municipality had an average annual growth in its population density of 1.00% per square kilometre per annum. The region with the highest growth rate in the population density per square kilometre was Molemole with an average annual growth rate of 1.30% per square kilometre. In 2025, the

region with the lowest population density within Capricorn District Municipality was Blouberg with 19.9 people per square kilometre. The region with the lowest average annual growth rate was the Lepele-Nkumpi with an average annual growth rate of -0.57% people per square kilometre over the period under discussion.

CHART 32. POPULATION DENSITY - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [NUMBER OF PEOPLE PER KM]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In terms of the population density for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest density, with 168 people per square kilometre. The lowest population density can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with a total of 19.9 people per square kilometre.

4.16 Crime

The state of crime in South Africa has been the topic of many media articles and papers in the past years, and although many would acknowledge that the country has a crime problem, very little research has been done on the relative level of crime. The media often tend to focus on more negative or sensational information, while the progress made in combating crime is neglected.

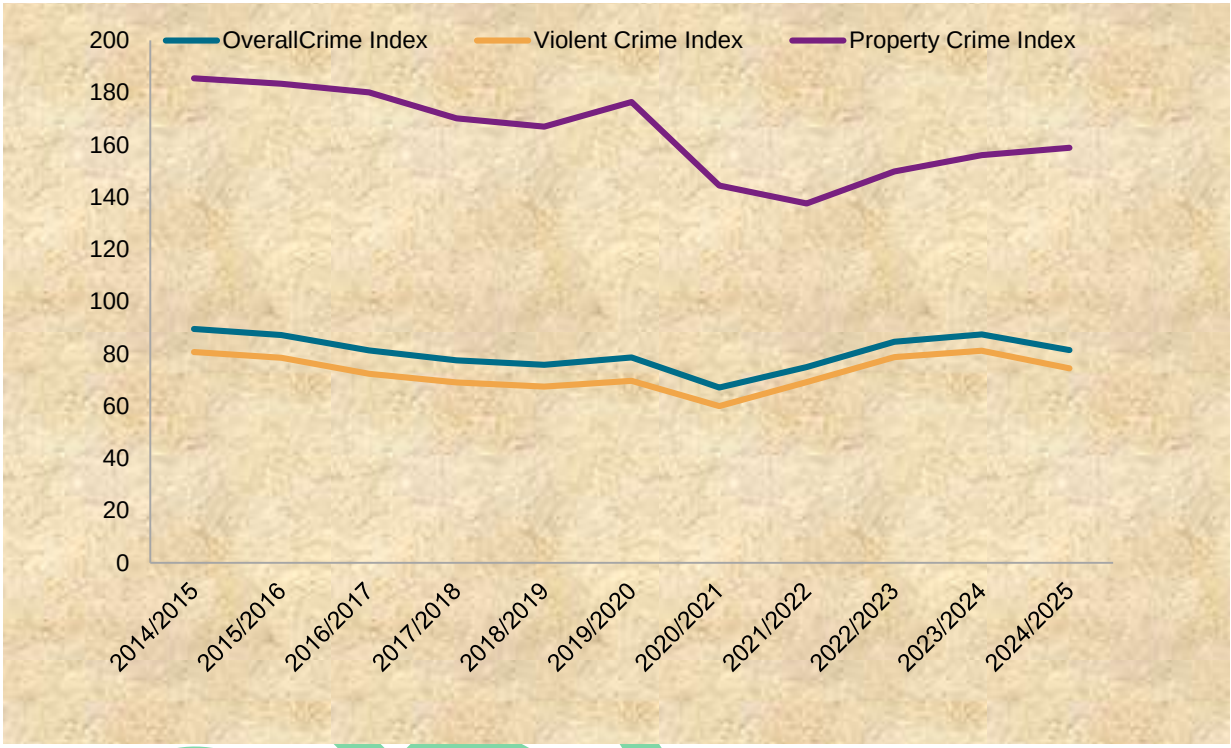
4.16.1 Composite crime index

The composite crime index makes use of the official SAPS data, which is reported in 27 crime categories (ranging from murder to crime injuries). These 27 categories are divided into two groups according to the nature of the crime: i.e. violent crimes and property crimes. S&P Global uses the (a) Length-of-sentence and the (b) Cost-of-crime in order to apply a weight to each category.

4.16.2 Overall crime index

The crime index is a composite, weighted index which measures crime. The higher the index number, the higher the level of crime for that specific year in a particular region. The index is best used by looking at the change over time, or comparing the crime levels across regions.

CHART 33. CRIME INDEX - CALENDER YEARS (WEIGHTED AVG / 100,000 PEOPLE) - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2014/2015-2024/2025 [INDEX VALUE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

For the period 2014/2015 to 2024/2025 overall crime has decrease at an average annual rate of 0.94% within the Polokwane Local Municipality. Violent crime decreased by 0.81% since 2014/2015, while property crimes decreased by 1.54% between the 2014/2015 and 2024/2025 financial years.

TABLE 27. OVERALL CRIME INDEX - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2014/2015-2024/2025 [INDEX VALUE]

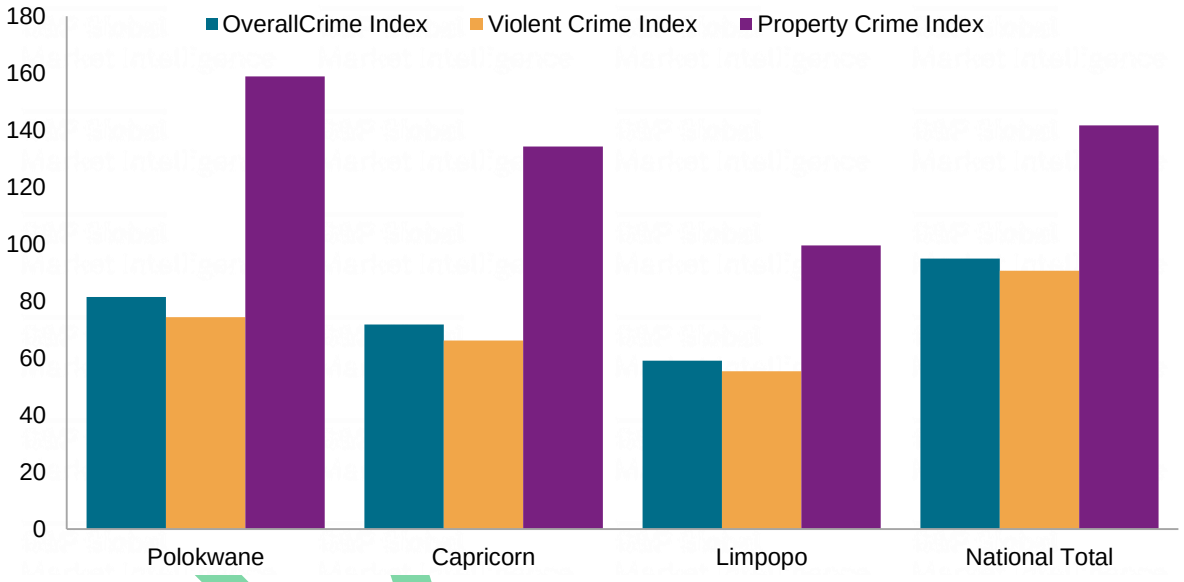
	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2014/2015	89.44	30.43	70.84	52.94
2015/2016	87.19	33.14	77.31	60.84
2016/2017	81.30	31.07	72.60	53.08
2017/2018	77.46	34.99	71.45	54.83
2018/2019	75.76	36.50	79.46	57.53
2019/2020	78.58	34.86	80.63	57.57
2020/2021	67.01	29.66	65.96	58.53
2021/2022	74.86	37.49	73.62	64.12
2022/2023	84.64	36.93	76.84	76.07
2023/2024	87.38	34.17	75.70	79.50
2024/2025	81.42	36.86	66.10	68.42

	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
Average Annual growth				
2014/2015-2024/2025	***-0.94***%	***1.94***%	***-0.69***%	***2.60***%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

In 2024/2025, the Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest overall crime rate of the sub-regions within the overall Capricorn District Municipality with an index value of 81.4. Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality has the second highest overall crime index at 68.4, with Molemole Local Municipality having the third highest overall crime index of 66.1. Molemole Local Municipality has the second lowest overall crime index of 66.1 and the Blouberg Local Municipality has the lowest overall crime rate of 36.9. The region that decreased the most in overall crime since 2014/2015 was Polokwane Local Municipality with an average annual decrease of 0.9% followed by Molemole Local Municipality with an average annual decrease of 0.7%.

CHART 34. CRIME INDEX - CALENDER YEARS (WEIGHTED AVG / 100,000 PEOPLE) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2024/2025 [INDEX VALUE]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer 2026

From the chart above it is evident that property crime is a major problem for all the regions relative to violent crime.

4.17 Tourism

Tourism can be defined as the non-commercial organisation plus operation of vacations and visits to a place of interest. Whether you visit a relative or friend, travel for business purposes, go on holiday or on medical and religious trips - these are all included in tourism.

Trips by purpose of trips

As defined by the United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UN WTO), a trip refers to travel, by a person, from the time they leave their usual residence until they return to that residence.

This is usually referred to as a round trip. S&P Global likes to narrow this definition down to overnight trips only, and only those made by adult visitors (over 18 years). Also note that the number of "person" trips are measured, not household or "party trips".

The main purpose for an overnight trip is grouped into these categories:

- Leisure / Holiday
- Business
- Visits to friends and relatives
- Other (Medical, Religious, etc.)

TABLE 28. NUMBER OF TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIPS - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

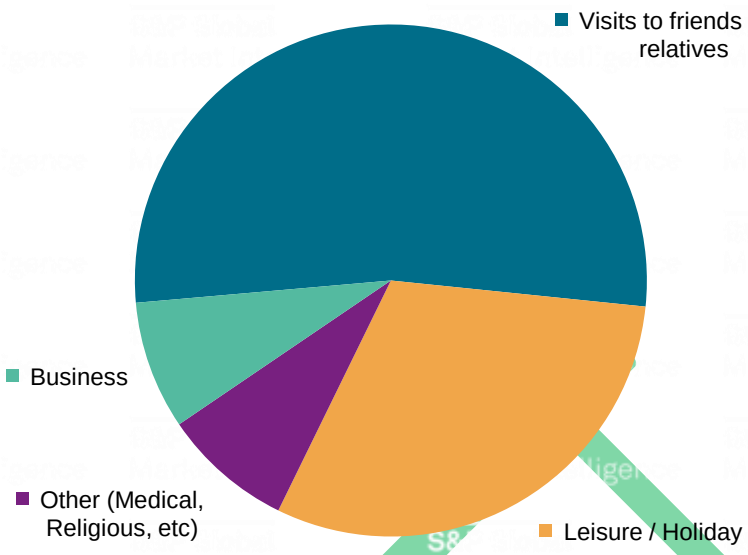
	Leisure / Holiday	Business	Visits to friends and relatives	Other (Medical, Religious, etc)	Total
2015	83,600	121,000	868,000	399,000	1,470,000
2016	85,000	127,000	871,000	399,000	1,480,000
2017	90,200	117,000	822,000	371,000	1,400,000
2018	96,400	102,000	771,000	315,000	1,280,000
2019	98,300	86,200	665,000	232,000	1,080,000
2020	65,000	44,200	494,000	146,000	749,000
2021	73,700	38,900	398,000	105,000	615,000
2022	148,000	62,600	454,000	109,000	773,000
2023	248,000	81,600	546,000	109,000	984,000
2024	323,000	89,400	614,000	103,000	1,130,000
2025	390,000	103,000	675,000	105,000	1,270,000
Average Annual growth					
2015-2025	***16.65***%	***-1.57***%	***-2.49***%	***-12.48***%	***-1.44***%

Source: South African eXplorer 2026

In Polokwane Local Municipality, the Leisure / Holiday, relative to the other tourism, recorded the highest average annual growth rate from 2015 (83 600) to 2025 (390 000) at 16.65%. Visits to friends and relatives recorded the highest number of visits in 2025 at 675 000, with an average annual growth rate of -2.49%. The tourism type that recorded the lowest growth was Other (Medical, Religious, etc) tourism with an average annual growth rate of -12.48% from 2015 (399 000) to 2025 (105 000).

DRAFT

CHART 35. TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South African eXplorer 2026

The Visits to friends and relatives at 53.01% has largest share the total tourism within Polokwane Local Municipality. Leisure / Holiday tourism had the second highest share at 30.62%, followed by Other (Medical, Religious, etc) tourism at 8.26% and the Business tourism with the smallest share of 8.11% of the total tourism within Polokwane Local Municipality.

4.17.1Origin of tourists

In the following table, the number of tourists that visited Polokwane Local Municipality from both domestic origins, as well as those coming from international places, are listed.

TABLE 29. TOTAL NUMBER OF TRIPS BY ORIGIN TOURISTS - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [NUMBER]

	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2015	1,340,000	133,000	1,470,000
2016	1,330,000	153,000	1,480,000
2017	1,240,000	159,000	1,400,000
2018	1,120,000	161,000	1,280,000
2019	927,000	154,000	1,080,000
2020	700,000	49,000	749,000
2021	583,000	32,500	615,000
2022	710,000	63,800	773,000
2023	903,000	81,000	984,000
2024	1,050,000	76,700	1,130,000
2025	1,190,000	86,300	1,270,000
Average Annual growth			

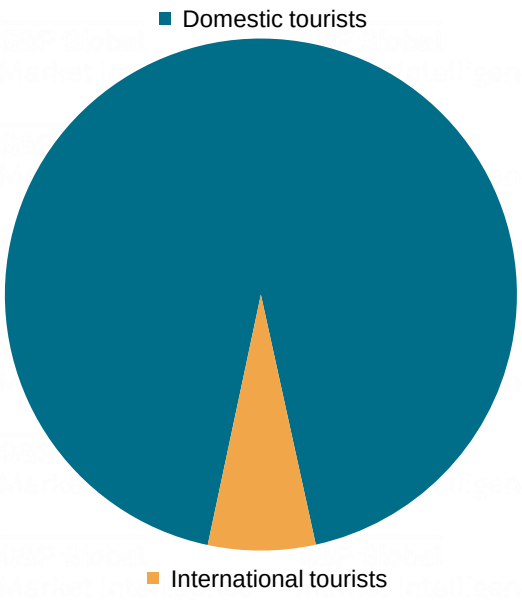
DRAFT

	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2015-2025	***-1.19***%	***-4.26***%	***-1.44***%

Source: South African eXplorer 2026

The number of trips by tourists visiting Polokwane Local Municipality from other regions in South Africa has decreased at an average annual rate of -1.19% from 2015 (1.34 million) to 2025 (1.19 million). The tourists visiting from other countries decreased at an average annual growth rate of -4.26% (from 133 000 in 2015 to 86 300). International tourists constitute 6.78% of the total number of trips, with domestic tourism representing the balance of 93.22%.

CHART 36. TOURISTS BY ORIGIN - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South African eXplorer 2026

4.17.2 Bed nights by origin of tourist

A bed night is the tourism industry measurement of one night away from home on a single person trip.

The following is a summary of the number of bed nights spent by domestic and international tourist within Polokwane Local Municipality between 2015 and 2025.

TABLE 30. BEDNIGHTS BY ORIGIN OF TOURIST - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [NUMBER]

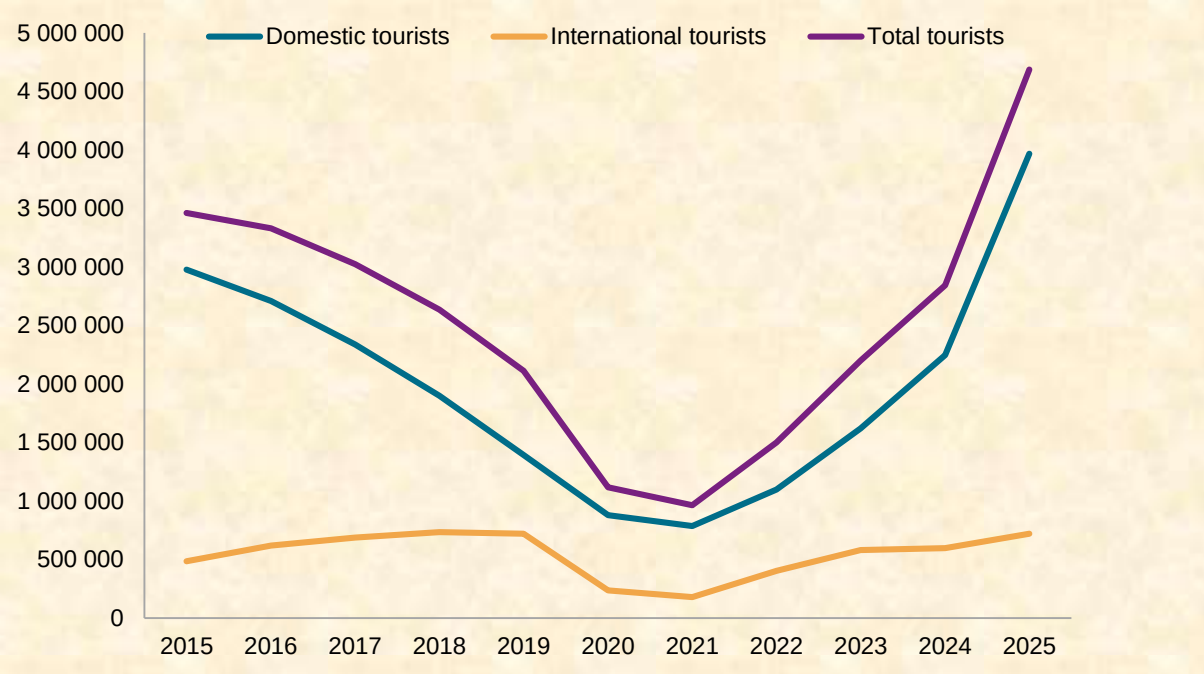
	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2015	2,980,000	484,000	3,460,000
2016	2,710,000	619,000	3,330,000
2017	2,340,000	687,000	3,020,000
2018	1,900,000	734,000	2,630,000
2019	1,390,000	720,000	2,110,000

	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2020	879,000	237,000	1,120,000
2021	785,000	178,000	963,000
2022	1,100,000	402,000	1,500,000
2023	1,620,000	581,000	2,200,000
2024	2,250,000	596,000	2,840,000
2025	3,970,000	719,000	4,690,000
Average Annual growth			
2015-2025	***2.91***%	***4.04***%	***3.08***%

Source: South African eXplorer 2026

From 2015 to 2025, the number of bed nights spent by domestic tourists has increased at an average annual rate of 2.91%, while in the same period the international tourists had an average annual increase of 4.04%. The total number of bed nights spent by tourists increased at an average annual growth rate of 3.08% from 3.46 million in 2015 to 4.69 million in 2025.

CHART 37. GROWTH IN TOURISM (USING BEDNIGHTS) BY ORIGIN - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [NUMBER]



Source: South African eXplorer 2026

4.17.3 Tourism spending

In their Tourism Satellite Account, StatsSA defines tourism spending as all expenditure by visitors for their trip to the particular region. This excludes capital expenditure as well as the shopping expenditure of traders (called shuttle trade). The amounts are presented in current prices, meaning that inflation has not been taken into account.

It is important to note that this type of spending differs from the concept of contribution to GDP. Tourism spending merely represents a nominal spend of trips made to each region.

TABLE 31. TOTAL TOURISM SPENDING - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2015	5.0	6.5	17.8	253.9
2016	5.5	7.1	19.1	277.6
2017	5.1	6.5	17.4	264.0
2018	5.6	6.6	18.7	293.2
2019	7.9	9.0	26.0	411.3
2020	4.3	4.9	14.4	241.2
2021	5.1	5.7	17.3	290.7
2022	8.5	9.6	29.3	455.8
2023	9.1	10.3	32.4	481.0
2024	9.8	11.1	34.8	504.1
2025	10.4	11.7	38.3	523.2
Average Annual growth				
2015-2025	***7.55***%	***6.04***%	***7.94***%	***7.50***%

Source: South African eXplorer 2026

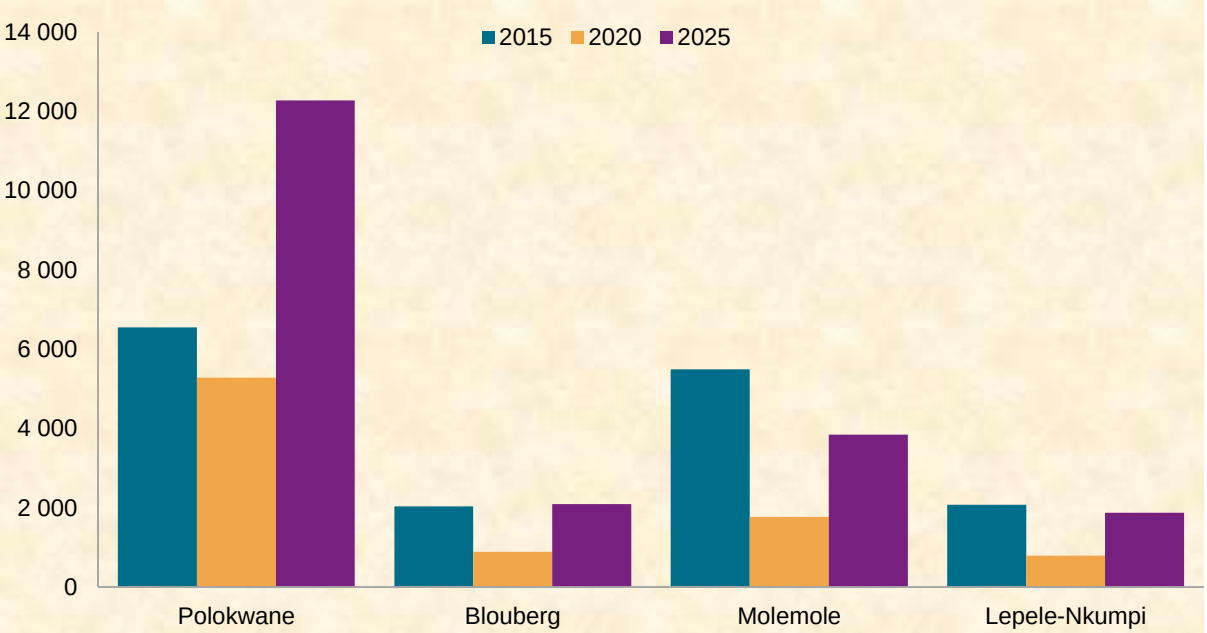
Polokwane Local Municipality had a total tourism spending of R 10.4 billion in 2025 with an average annual growth rate of 7.5% since 2015 (R 5.02 billion). Capricorn District Municipality had a total tourism spending of R 11.7 billion in 2025 and an average annual growth rate of 6.0% over the period. Total spending in Limpopo Province increased from R 17.8 billion in 2015 to R 38.3 billion in 2025 at an average annual rate of 7.9%. South Africa as whole had an average annual rate of 7.5% and increased from R 254 billion in 2015 to R 523 billion in 2025.

4.17.4 Tourism spend per resident capita

Another interesting topic to look at is tourism spending per resident capita. To calculate this, the total amount of tourism spending in the region is divided by the number of residents living within that region. This gives a relative indication of how important tourism is for a particular area.

DRAFT

CHART 38. TOURISM SPEND PER RESIDENT CAPITA - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2015,2020 AND 2025 [R THOUSANDS]



Source: South African eXplorer 2026

In 2025, Polokwane Local Municipality had a tourism spend per capita of R 12,300 and an average annual growth rate of 6.48%, Polokwane Local Municipality ranked highest amongst all the regions within Capricorn in terms of tourism spend per capita. The local municipality that ranked lowest in terms of tourism spend per capita is Lepele-Nkumpi with a total of R 1,880 which reflects a decrease at an average annual rate of -1.00% from 2015.

4.17.5Tourism spend as a share of GDP

This measure presents tourism spending as a percentage of the GDP of a region. It provides a gauge of how important tourism is to the local economy. An important note about this variable is that it does not reflect what is spent in the tourism industry of that region, but only what is spent by tourists visiting that region as their main destination.

TABLE 32. TOTAL SPENDING AS % SHARE OF GDP - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2015-2025 [PERCENTAGE]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2015	4.1%	4.7%	5.6%	5.7%
2016	4.1%	4.6%	5.4%	5.8%
2017	3.6%	4.0%	4.7%	5.2%
2018	3.7%	3.8%	4.7%	5.5%
2019	4.9%	4.9%	6.2%	7.3%
2020	2.7%	2.6%	3.4%	4.3%
2021	2.7%	2.7%	3.5%	4.7%
2022	4.3%	4.3%	5.6%	6.8%
2023	4.5%	4.4%	6.0%	6.8%

DRAFT

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2024	4.6%	4.5%	6.1%	6.9%
2025	4.6%	4.5%	6.3%	6.8%

Source: South African eXplorer 2026

In Polokwane Local Municipality the tourism spending as a percentage of GDP in 2025 was 4.58%. Tourism spending as a percentage of GDP for 2025 was 4.55% in Capricorn District Municipality, 6.34% in Limpopo Province. Looking at South Africa as a whole, it can be seen that total tourism spending had a total percentage share of GDP of 6.85%.

4.18 International trade

Trade is defined as the act of buying and selling, with international trade referring to buying and selling across international border, more generally called importing and exporting. The Trade Balance is calculated by subtracting imports from exports.

4.18.1 Relative importance of international trade

In the table below, the Polokwane Local Municipality is compared to Capricorn, Limpopo Province and South Africa, in terms of actual imports and exports, the Trade Balance, as well the contribution to GDP and the region's contribution to total national exports and imports.

TABLE 33. MERCHANDISE EXPORTS AND IMPORTS - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2025 [R 1000, CURRENT PRICES]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
Exports (R 1000)	1,756,752	1,850,048	40,686,303	2,070,280,575
Imports (R 1000)	574,865	712,357	3,972,941	1,801,048,999
Total Trade (R 1000)	2,331,617	2,562,405	44,659,244	3,871,329,575
Trade Balance (R 1000)	1,181,886	1,137,691	36,713,362	269,231,576
Exports as % of GDP	0.8%	0.7%	6.7%	27.1%
Total trade as % of GDP	1.0%	1.0%	7.4%	50.7%
Regional share - Exports	0.1%	0.1%	2.0%	100.0%
Regional share - Imports	0.0%	0.0%	0.2%	100.0%
Regional share - Total Trade	**0.1%**	**0.1%**	**1.2%**	**100.0%**

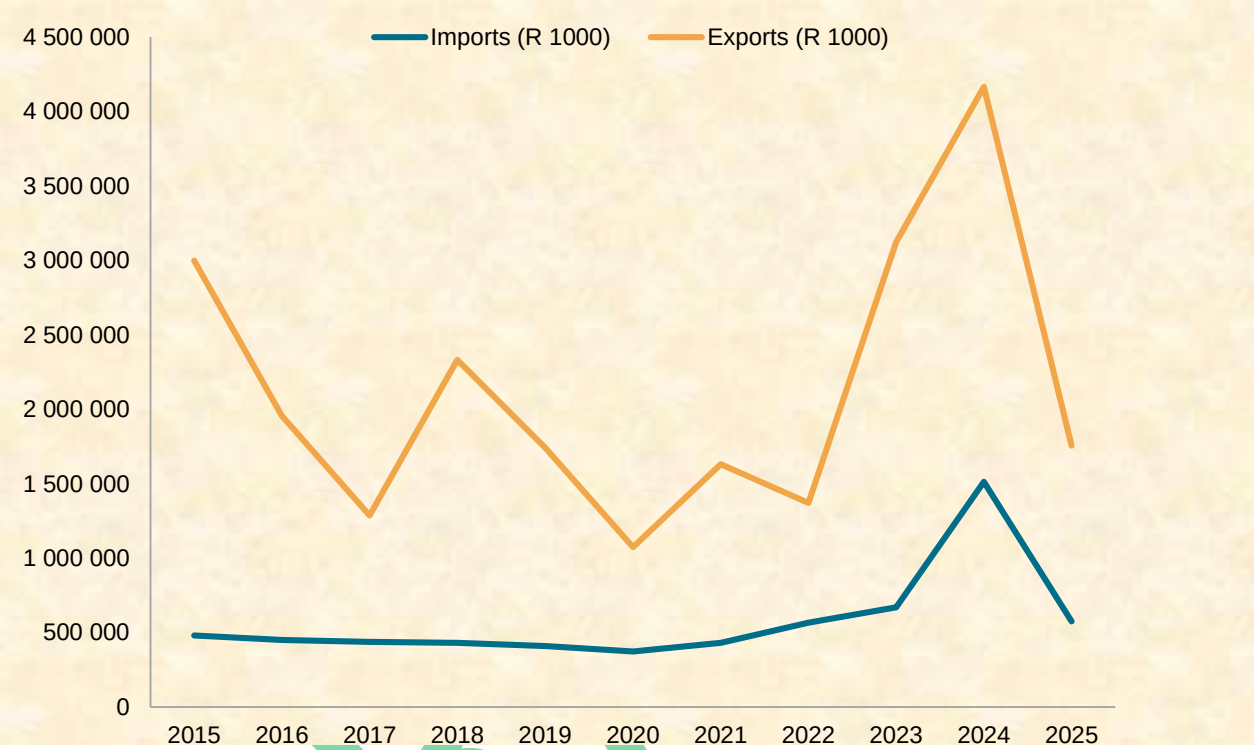
Source: South African eXplorer 2026

The merchandise export from Polokwane Local Municipality amounts to R 1.76 billion and as a percentage of total national exports constitutes about 0.08%. The exports from Polokwane Local Municipality constitute 0.77% of total Polokwane Local Municipality's GDP. Merchandise imports of R 575 million constitute about 0.03% of the national imports. Total

DRAFT

trade within Polokwane is about 0.06% of total national trade. Polokwane Local Municipality had a positive trade balance in 2025 to the value of R 1.18 billion.

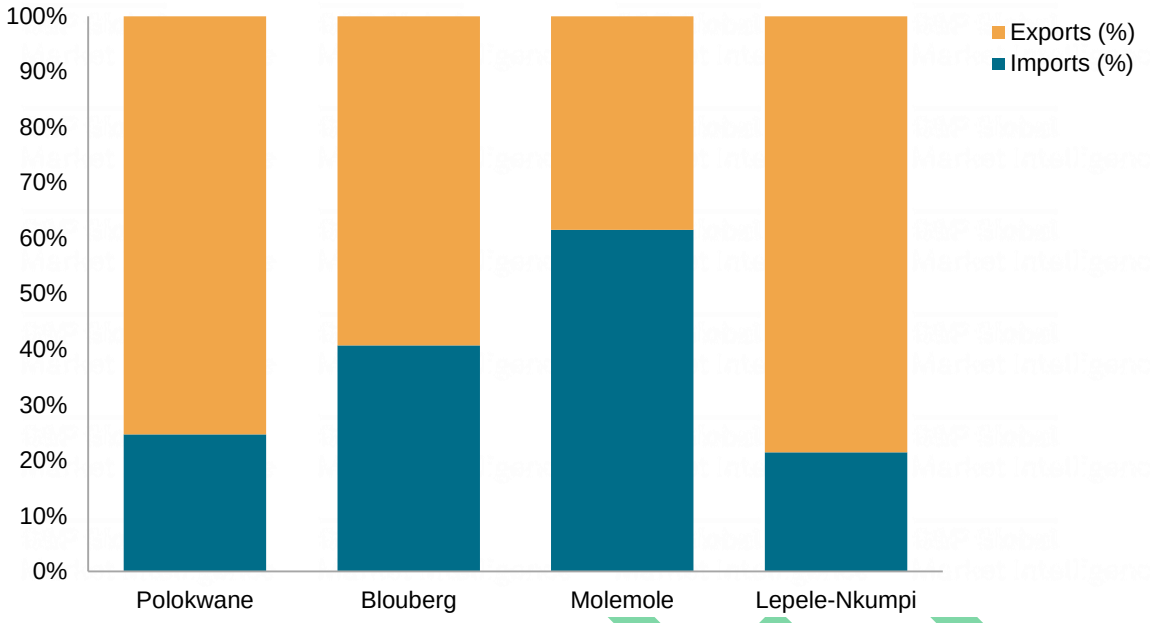
CHART 39. IMPORT AND EXPORTS IN POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2015-2025 [R 1000]



Source: South African eXplorer 2026

Analysing the trade movements over time, total trade decreased from 2015 to 2025 at an average annual growth rate of -3.93%. Merchandise exports decreased at an average annual rate of -5.21%, with the highest level of exports of R 4.17 billion experienced in 2024. Merchandise imports increased at an average annual growth rate of 1.80% between 2015 and 2025, with the lowest level of imports experienced in 2020.

CHART 40. MERCHANDISE EXPORTS AND IMPORTS - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2025 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: South African eXplorer 2026

When comparing the Polokwane Local Municipality with the other regions in the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane has the biggest amount of international trade (when aggregating imports and exports, in absolute terms) with a total of R 2.33 billion. This is also true for exports - with a total of R 1.76 billion in 2025. Lepele-Nkumpi had the lowest total trade figure at R 5.67 million. The Lepele-Nkumpi also had the lowest exports in terms of currency value with a total of R 4.45 million exports.

DRAFT

CHAPTER Five: Water and Sanitation Analysis

5.1 Water and Sanitation Directorate Overview

The Water and Sanitation Directorate consist of 3 SBU's: i.e.

1) Infrastructure Development Planning and Reticulation Design.
2) Reticulation, Distribution and Maintenance, Water Demand and Conservation.
3) Operations: Water and Wastewater, Quality Management and Laboratory Services.

Seshego Water Purification Plant

Seshego Water Purification Plant

Seshego Water Purification Plant

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.1.1 Water Provision

Provision of water in accordance with the obligations of the Municipality as Water Services Authority is a high priority.

To meet Polokwane Municipality's strategic vision, an Integrated Water Master Plan (IWMP) has been developed in phases, to ultimately address the full water distribution cycle i.e. from Source-to-Tap-to-Effluent discharge for all areas, and all water supply infrastructure within Polokwane Municipality. (**Approved by council)**

The supply areas consist of the City and urban areas as well as an extensive rural area, and both urban and rural areas are facing severe challenges in terms of water services.

Polokwane Municipality complies with the **sans 241 standards** on provision of potable water – PREP assessment is underway for the next Blue Drop Audit**.**

5.1.2 Reliability of Water Supply in Polokwane

Significant progress has been made in improving the reliability of water supply across the Municipality. Residents within the Polokwane City Cluster and Seshego Cluster have experienced notable improvements in water availability and service reliability. However, several challenges continue to affect the sustainability and reliability of water supply, particularly in rural areas:

- Theft and vandalism of Eskom transformers, borehole pumps, and associated electrical equipment continue to disrupt water supply schemes in rural communities.
- Illegal connections to Rural Water Supply (RWS) systems, which were designed to provide water at basic RDP service levels, result in excessive water consumption and leave some residents without access to water.
- Low-yielding boreholes in certain villages limit the availability of water and reduce the reliability of local supply systems.
- A deficit in potable water remains due to inadequate water sources and the substantial capital investment required to develop additional sources.
- Intermittent and unreliable water supply from the Municipality's bulk water supplier affects the stability of water distribution across service areas.
- Scattered rural settlements, characterized by long distances between households and low population densities, increase the cost and complexity of providing sustainable and reliable water services.

5.1.3 Water Provision – Short Term Interventions

The Municipality has identified the water supply shortfall in the Urban Complex as a threat to the growth of the city and a threat to the Economy and implemented measures to turn the situation around:

- Polokwane Municipality took an initiative to engage in intensive ground water development to augment the supply with 34 ML/d at peak operation.

DRAFT

- The Municipality in the year 25/26 has services all the Pressure reducing valves as pressure management to reduce bursts and improve water supply.
- During the 2025/26 financial year, the Municipality serviced and refurbished all Pressure Reducing Valves (PRVs) within the water distribution network as part of its pressure management programme. This intervention aims to reduce pipe bursts, minimize water losses, protect infrastructure, and improve the reliability of water supply to consumers.
- Ongoing maintenance of critical water infrastructure is being undertaken to improve operational efficiency and reduce unplanned service interruptions.
- The Municipality continues to implement phased projects to strengthen water supply resilience and meet the increasing demand for potable water within both urban and rural service areas.
- A new 10 ML/day Water Treatment Works has been constructed in Seshego to improve treatment capacity and enhance water security; The plant relies on fleet of 15 Boreholes and surface water from the Seshego Dam.
- Construction of the Sand River Water Treatment Plant, with a capacity of 18 ML/day, is underway to treat groundwater abstracted from the wellfield development projects. The plant is to depend on a fleet of 27 Boreholes that will be working together to provide raw water for treatment.
- The Municipality is installing new smart water meters across its supply areas to improve water demand management, reduce non-revenue water, enhance billing accuracy, and assist in the early detection of leaks and illegal connections
- A phased implementation plan has been developed to connect communities to the nearest water supply networks through the establishment and upgrading of local borehole schemes.
- The Municipality continues to invest in groundwater infrastructure, reticulation upgrades, and alternative water sources to strengthen water supply resilience and improve service delivery.

DRAFT

5.1.4 Water Provision – Long Term Interventions

- Upgrading of Dap Naude pipeline to provide an additional 4 ML/d to Polokwane Water Treatment –Polokwane Municipality has an allocation of 18 ML from Dap Naude dam, and the current pipeline capacity allows for withdrawal of 14 ML/day from the dam. The Municipality has completed the Implementation Readiness study and has submitted it for funding consideration in June 2024.

- Exploration of the Dieprivier Wellfield to deliver an additional 7 ML/d into the system. Boosting water in the Sebayeng/Dikgale Cluster. Moreover, this will relief the supply from Ebenezer and this will support the economic growth of all the corridors – The IRS is submitted and provisionally approved pending finalization of the WULA and Land acquisition issues.

- Continuation of the exploration of the Malmani Dolomites for an access to additional 21 ML/d – Pre-Feasibility conducted, the project has been submitted to Infrastructure SA for funding the development of the IRS.

- Finalize water reclamation at the new Polokwane Regional Wastewater Treatment Works (50% of the effluent discharged) – Pre-Feasibility conducted, the project has been submitted to Infrastructure SA for funding the development of the IRS

5.2 Powers and Function of Polokwane Municipality

In terms of the Constitution, Municipal Structures Act and other policy frameworks Polokwane Municipality is responsible for the following functions:

▪ Water and Sanitation (Both potable and bulk supply system and domestic wastewater and sewage disposal system) ▪ Air Pollution ▪ Building regulations ▪ Childcare facilities ▪ Electricity and Alternative energy ▪ Firefighting services ▪ Municipal planning ▪ Municipal public works ▪ Storm water management ▪ Trading regulations ▪ Billboards and the display of advertisements in public places	▪ Cemeteries ▪ Cleansing ▪ Control of public nuisances ▪ Local sport facilities ▪ Municipal parks and recreation ▪ Roads ▪ Noise pollution ▪ Pounds ▪ Public places ▪ Waste Management (refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste disposal) ▪ Street trading ▪ Street lighting ▪ Traffic and parking

DRAFT

5.3. WATER

Polokwane Municipality is a **Water Service Authority (WSA)** and also a **Water Service Provider (WSP).** Every Water Service Authority has a duty to all customers or potential customers in its area of jurisdiction to progressively ensure efficient, affordable, economical and sustainable access to Water Services [Water Services Act of 1997 Section 11]. Thus, a Water Service Authority has the duty to provide water services with the focus on: Ensure, Efficient, Affordable, Economical and Sustainable deliverables.

5.3.1 Principles of Water Service Provision

- To ensure: effectiveness, efficiency, viability, sustainability.
  Requires: proactive approach, pre-thinking, deliberation, understanding, thus coordinated planning.
- Therefore: Every Water Services Authority must prepare a Water Services Development Plan for its area of jurisdiction [Water Service Act of 1997 Section 12].

Water is life – it is the most important resource to encourage both social and economic development within communities. There has been tremendous improvement in the provision of the basic service in the municipal area.

5.3.2 16 Regional Water Schemes (RWS)

Municipal water provision is divided into Regional Water Schemes. **Polokwane Municipality** has been sub-divided into **16 RWS** and each scheme is allocated **budget** for water reticulation:

1. Mothapo RWS,
2. Moletjie East RWS
3. Moletjie North RWS,
4. Moletjie South RWS,
5. Houtriver RWS,
6. Chuene/Maja RWS,
7. Molepo RWS,
8. Laastehoop RWS,
9. Mankweng RWS,
10. Boyne RWS,
11. Segwasi RWS,
12. Badimong RWS,
13. Sebayeng/ Dikgale RWS,
14. Olifantspoort Sand RWS.
15. Aganang East RWS
16. Bakone RWS

The municipal Regional Water Schemes depends on the following **water sources:**

DRAFT

5.3.3 Water Scheme Sources

Water source	RWS supplied	Average Daily Supply	Source Capacity
Ebenezer	Mankweng RWS Rural (Mothapo RWS, Molepo RWS, Segwasi RWS, Boyne RWS, Badimong RWS, Sebayeng Dikgale RWS)	22 ML/Day	**21 ML/day**
Olifants Sand	Chuene/Maja RWS, Olifants Sand RWS (Seshego, some portion of City and Mmotong wa Perekisi)	27.3 ML/day	**27 ML/d**
Dap Naude Dam	Olifants Sand RWS (Polokwane City)	**12 ML/Day**	**18 ML/d**
Seshego Dam & Boreholes	Olifants Sand RWS (Seshego)	7.0 ML/day	**10 ML/d**
Ebenezer	Olifants Sand RWS (Polokwane City)	16 ML/Day	**11 ML/Day**
City Boreholes	Augment water from dams	5.5 ML/Day	**25.33 ML/d**
Rural dams			
Houtriver Dam	Houtriver RWS	2.0 ML/day	**3.9 ML/d**
Chuene/Maja Dam	Chuene Maja RWS	2.0 ML/day	**2.7 ML/d**
Molepo Dam	Molepo RWS	2.0 ML/day	**6.0 ML/d**
Mashashane (Utjane) Dam	Moletjie south RWS	1.0 ML/day	**1.5 ML/d**
Rural Boreholes	Rural RWS	21.7 ML/day	**30 ML/d**
Total		**118.5 ML/day**	**156.43 ML/d**
Peak flow demand		**174 ML/day**	

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

The municipality is experiencing severe water shortages and thereby unable to provide uninterrupted water supply as expected. While the municipality requires at least 174 Ml/day to provide reliable water to the community, the current water sources can only yield 118.5 Ml/day.

It is the responsibility of local government to make sure that adequate and appropriate investments are made to ensure the progressive realization of the right of all people in its area of jurisdiction to receive at least a basic level of services.

DRAFT

Polokwane Municipality is a water scares City with more than 60% of its surface water sourced outside the boundary of the Municipality. To ensure the sustainability of water sources the municipality undertakes water conservation awareness campaign.

On annual basis funds are made available to improve the water accessibility to all **16 various Regional Water Schemes.** The first priority is to develop the sustainable bulk water sources and then develop or extend the internal infrastructure. The biggest problem to keep water sources sustainable is theft and vandalism on boreholes and reliable surface water.

As a part of water provision, the municipality provides free basic water to communities. Free Basic Water is offered to all rural Regional Water Schemes, for the Urban Regional Water Scheme the free basic water is only given to the registered indigent people. According to the FBW policy, implemented by Local Government, households are entitled up to 6000 litres (6kl) of potable water every month at no cost. Households that use more than 6kl of free basic water must be responsible for the payments of further consumption.

Most of municipal Regional Water Schemes are reticulated with metered yard connections. The rural households with yard connections do not pay for the service. The municipality has intentions to recover costs in Regional Water Schemes or villages that are fully reticulated with metered yard connections and exploring the use of a flat rate system as a base and moving into installation of prepaid water smart prepaid meters preloaded with the free basic water monthly. This will improve water usage and conservation.

DRAFT

5.3.4 Water Provision Progress

Project Name	Ward	Scope of work	Project amount	Timelines	Jobs created	Villages	Number of households Served	Pictures
1. Aganang Mashamaite Water Supply Phase 1 (WSIG)	16	Equip borehole H04-1470. 75mm rising main for 695 m. 90 mm rising main for 1.25 Km. 110mm rising main for 1.46 km.90 mm distribution lines for 1.96 km, reticulation pipeline for 12.81 Km. Supply and installation of a 300 Kl elevated steel tank 486-yard connections.	R17 750 473.93	January 10, 2023/ 28 June 2023	40	Mashamaite (1 Village)	486	
2. Aganang Makgodu {Borekwa}Water Supply Phase 2 (WSIG)	16	• Equip borehole H04-2670.equipping borehole H04 154 • 90 mm Ø uPVC class 12 distribution lines for 2.34 km • reticulation pipeline for 9.34 km 36-yard connections.	R7 585 710.62	20 March 2023-July 27, 2023	36	Magodu Borekwa (1 Village)	36	
3. Badimong RWS phase 13 (WSIG)	28,30, 34	Installation of 12 Air Valves, Installation of 3 control valves, Construction of 3.3km rising main of pipe diameter ranging from 90mm to 160mm to connect to 2 x 200Kl concrete reservoirs at Ga-Mailula village, Upgrading of existing motors and pumps from Two (2) boreholes, Electrification of 7 existing boreholes.	R 4,034 833.02	24 March 2023- September 29, 2023	26	Ga- Maiulula Village, Mpeperu, Thabakgone, Manhlanhle, Thune, Kgole Mamphaka	2652	No taps installed on this phase but the water is able to reach the reservoir as intended.

DRAFT

4. Mankweng Phase 12 (IUDG)	7, 25, 27,31	•Construction of 10km ranging from 63 to 110 mm in diameter across villages in Mankweng. •Electrical connection of pump houses •Replacing of damaged existing pipes •Disinfection of the pipelines Construion of 61 standpipes	R11 033 100.27	23-Nov-2021-22-Oct-2022	27	Moremadi Park, Mantjana, Mankweng G ext, Gthoka (Makanye), Mamadimo Park and Makgwareng	623	
. Aganang East: Ramalapa (WSIG)	43	Refurbishment of existing borehole equipment, Electrifying, equipping and commissioning of borehole. Supply of 90 rising main line pipelines for 3.5km. Installation of 110kl elevated steel tank. Installation of 110 mm Distribution line for 1. 1km. Installation of 75 mm reticulation pipelines for 9 km. 360-yard connections.	R12 461 998.20	16 May 2022-November 16, 2022	39	Ramalapa	360	
6. Mohapo Phase 15 (IUDG)	31,24, 06	**Nchichane Water** 110mm diameter uPVC Bulkline 543m 200mm diameter uPVC Bulkline 1 441m 250kl Elevated steel tank **Ramathope Village** Yard connection 203 63mm diameter HDPE, 5 448m **Mafiane Village-**Yard connection 70,63mm diameter HDPE 2 933m **Morungwa Village- Y**ard connection 292, 63mm diameter HDPE, 6 080m	R17 902 165.35	17 November 2021,15 december 2022	30	Nchichane, Ramathope,Mafiane and Morongwa Park.	365	

DRAFT

7. Moletjie North RWS phase 9 (WSIG)	35	Equip, new borehole H04-3126 for Mphela village. Approximately 2,450.00m of uPVC water supply distribution pipelines with size Ø63mm is proposed for the extension and upgrading of the existing water supply distribution networks for the identified villages. 310 yard connections New rising main 2100m for Mphela village. Supply of reverse osmosis water treatment plant with a capacity of 9m3/hour for borehole H04-0599 in Manamela village. Supply reverse osmosis water treatment plant with a capacity of 4m3/hour for borehole H04-2716 in Kgoroshi village. Palisade fencing for 12 boreholes (H04-1435, H04-0599, H04-2684, H04-0846A, H04-0846B, H04-2716, H04-3012, H04-0062, H04-3011, H04-2743, H04-2744, H04-3136) and 3 reservoirs in Mphela, Manamela, Kgoroshi, Ditenteng and Thantsha.	R18 753 878.50	7 Dec -2023	45	Mphela, Manamela, Kgoroshi, Ditenteng and Thantsha villages.	310	
8. Moletjie East phase 15 (IUDG)	15, 36, 38	• 2.5ML Command reservoir at Ramongoana and Mabotsa connections. • Connections to the 400kl and 800kl sump, booster pump station and pumping main. • Construct 45m of 75mm uPVC Class 12 gravity main from existing borehole BH22 to the 800kl sump. • Consfruct 23m of 90mm uPVC Class 12 gravity main from existing boreholes in Setati (BH0650, H04- 0783 & H04-0782) to the 400kl sump. • Construct 1260m of 100mm steel pipe gravity main from existing borehole from BH1702 • Construct 2650m of 110mm uPVC Class 12 gravity main from existing borehole from BHOOI 2. • Construct 2700m of 160mm uPVC Class 12 gravity main from existing from 2.5ML	R19 771 535.43	27 March 2023-19 December 2023	59	Moletjie East scheme	9532	

DRAFT

		command reservoir to the Ramongoana service reservoir. • Construct 1 11m of 200mm uPVC Class 12 gravity main from existing pumping main from Matamanyane to the 800kl sump. • 1403m extension of 315mm diameter uPVC gravity ring main (at Makgodu village) from the existing command reservoir in • Mabotsa to the existing 2.5ML reservoir in Ramongoana. • 160 m of gabions on the river crossing along Matamanyane Road.						
9. Aganang Mars phase 1 (WSIG)	44	• Drilling, equipping, electrification and commissioning of one (1) borehole; • Switching one (1) borehole from diesel to electricity; equipping, electrification and commissioning of the borehole; • 2 precast pump house • Refurbishment of existing 108 kl elevated steel tank; • Refurbishment of existing 200 kl concrete reservoir; • Supply and installation of water lines as follows: • 75 mm Ø uPVC class 12 rising main for 4 620 m; • 90 mm Ø uPVC class 12 distribution main for 1 180 m; • Supply and installation of 82 — metered yard connection.	R 11 427 607.08	23 March 2023-08 November 2023	31	Mars	82	

DRAFT

10. Mashashane Phase 2 (IUDG)	40	• 30122m length of 75mm diameter uPVC water reticulation network • 1764m length of 90mm diameter uPVC Rising mains bulk network • 400m length of 90mm diameter uPVC Distribution mains bulk network • Installation of One (1) 160kl elevated storage steel tanks • 623 erf connections • Equipping, Testing, Housing and Electrification of newly constructed boreholes BH-01, BH-02, BH-03 & BH-04 • Refurbishing two existing boreholes	R 17 000 000	04 MAY 2023 -15 APRIL 2024	36	Kgasha Village	623	
11. Refurbishment of Mankweng Wastewater treatment plant (IUDG)		• Erection of Sludge Pump station Pump House Complete with Ventilation • MCC housing • Electrical Control Room, Electrical Panel and Entrance Doors Replacement • PST Siphons Replacement and Chemical Based Unblocking for replacement PST 1 • PST Siphons Replacement and Chemical Based Unblocking for replacement PST 2 • Honeycomb inlet retaining wall with as built drawing • Fully Installed Chlorination Room. • Complete Refurbishment of change rooms as well as offices • Installation of a new compactor, Steel grating, mechanical screen at inlet works • Replacement of PST's waste valves • Replacement of filter traps • Cleaning of humus tanks	R 13 454 689	25-Apr-23-9 Oct-2023	12	Mankweng		

DRAFT

		• Replacement of waste and scum waste valves for humus tank 1 & 2 • Rewiring of chlorine dosing pump • Cleaning of anaerobic digesters • Replace digesters draining valves • cleaning of humus tank no1, no2, no3 and no4 at module 2 and jetting • Servicing or repairing of humus tank 1, 2, 3 & 4 waste valves at module 2 • Servicing or repairing of module 2 division box valves • Refurbishment of bio-filter 1 & 2 • Replacement of pipeline from humus pump station to inlet works • Construction of fire barriers or aprons around all concrete structures						
12. Seshego WTW (RBIG)		• Construction of Civil works including equipping of electrical and mechanical components and associated works for a Water Treatment Works of capacity 10.4 ML. Civil Structures include administration building, chlorine dosing building, chemical dosing building, flocculation clarifiers, clear water contact tank, upflow filter, treated water reservoir, surface water flocculation clarifier and sludge ponds.	R114 760 579,19	18 November 2019-14 June 2023	99	All Seshego Zones		

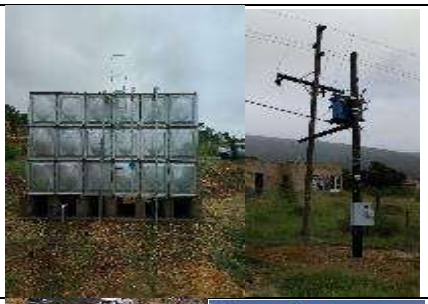
DRAFT

13. Houtriver RWS phase 14 (IUDG)	9, 16, 18, 25	• New 2km 160mm dia. Pumping main from the WTP to Madikoti reservoirs to replace the existing portion of it in Mabokelele. • 0.5 km of reticulation extensions in Mahwibitswane and Mashashi. • 3.5 km reticulation extension at Montinti Park. • 2km reticulation extension at Ga-Ramakgaphola. • Construction of pump houses and Equipping borehole Montinti Park and • H04_2965 to the Leokama borehole • Jojo tanks by Mabokelele village to house 2 of 4KW disinfection system comprising of filtration unit, Chlorinator and UV Tube. • 2 km x 160mm dia. Pumping main extensions from the 4 boreholes • The installing a new 267kl ground steel tank at Mahwibitshwane mountain. • Construct two off 8kW solar power supply grit which comprise 26 x 310W solar panels, • 2 x 1 Oki Jojo tanks to serve as pump tanks for the booster pumps for the boreholes H04_0049 and H04_3082.	R14 077 293,4	20-02 2024	45	Motiniti, Ga ramagapola, Mahwibitswane, Mashashi, Mabokelele,	60	

DRAFT

14. Molepo RWS phase 12 (IUDG)	4	Molepo Regional Water Scheme Phase 12 • Ga-Mogano – 2000m of bulk reticulation of diameter 90mm uPVC to and from Steel Tank. • 150KL (Ga-Mogano) Elevated Steel Tank • Equip borehole H16-0532 • Construct a 2500m long, diameter 75mm uPVC rising main to the Ga-Sebati Reservoir • Siting and equipping of new borehole • Construct a 2000m long, diameter 75mm uPVC rising main for the new borehole • Communal connections (25 off)	R14 679 795,68	19 June 2023-	35	Ga-Mogano, Ga-Sebati	250	
15. Thakgalang Phase1 (WSIG)	37	Construction of 1074 VIPs	R16 579 985.83	12 Feb-24	65	Thakgalang	1074	
16. Sebayeng Dikgale Rural Sanitation (IUDG)	30, 31	Construction of 744 VIPs	R 12 650 000	23 Apr 24	37	Kgokong, Ga-Kama , Mamotintane , Ga - Matholo	744	
17. Kalkspruit water supply phase 1 (IUDG)	42	Bulk Water Supply Pipelines, Water Reticulation, 54-yard connections, Equipping 4 boreholes, Re-driling of 4 x New boreholes and Installation of 1000 KVA backup generator for the Houtriver Water treatment plant.	R23 106 611.33	20/08/2024	36	Kalkspruit, Magongoa, Moshongo	54	

DRAFT

18. Boyne RWS phase 12 (IUDG)	4	Refurbishment and equipping of Boreholes (11 Off), Refurbishment of 250kl elevated steel tank, Refurbishment of 200kl reinforced concrete reservoir, 4200m of 90mm Ø Bulk uPVC between Magokobung and Mountain View,2km of 90mm Ø Bulk uPVC Pipeline from Lepelle Bulk Line to Makgeng elevated steel tank, Construction of new 200kl steel tank, Construction of new package plant	R15 531 000.00	02 APR 2023 - 20 DEC 2024	38	MountainView, Mankgaile, Nnoko,Riverside, FloraPark, Subiaco, Magokobung	4326	
19. Mars Phase 2 (WSIG)	41	One new borehole, 108 kl elevated steel tank, Supply and installation of uPVC water lines ranging from 90mmØ to 75mmØ, 356 yard connections. New Package Plant	R8 398 075,04	07 MAR 2024 – 11 DEC 2024	31	Mars Village (Ga-Mangou)	356	
20. Segwasi Phase 6 (WSIG)	24,38	Refurbishment and commissioning of BH16-0108 supplying SM15 and SM16 in Segwasi construction of 2442 m of 90mm dia uPVC class 12 supplying main in Lossmycherry. Construction of 385 m of 90mm dia uPVC class 12 from BH16-0108 to BH16-0109 supplying to SM15 in Lossmycherry. Construction of 1582 m of 90mm dia uPVC class 12 supplying main in Segwasi (Nyakelang). Construction of 1424 m of 90mm dia uPVC class 12 supplying main in Makgopheng. Construction of 2 x 50 kl circular buffer steel tank at Segwasi (Nyakelang).Construction of 50kl Elevated tank at Lossmycherry. Construction of 50kl Elevated tank at Makgopeng. Construction of Valve Chambers. Electrification of two boreholes.	R13 163 379.44	9	40	Segwasi (Nyakalang, Lossmycherry and Makgopheng)	433	

Sebayeng Dikgale Phase 10	29, 30,31, 32,33	NTSIMA VILLAGE 3 390m length reticulation, Equipping of one borehole, 10 Communal taps, 40 KL elevated PVC tanks. POTSE VILLAGE 4 393 m length reticulation, Equipping of one borehole, 10 Communal taps, 40 KL elevated PVC tanks. SYFERSKUIL VILLAGE 4 626m length reticulation, Equipping of two boreholes, 25 Communal taps, 80 KL elevated PVC tanks. MEHLAKONG Electrification of two boreholes and installation of pump house. SEBAYENG TOWNSHIP Equipping of 2 Boreholes DIKGALE VILLAGE Installation of one concrete pump house	R 19 251 013.41	29/11/2024	34	Ntsima, Potse, Syferskuil	724	

DRAFT

Project Name	Ward(s)	Scope of Work	Project amount	Timelines	Jobs created	Villages	Number of households served	Pictures

Moletjie South RWS Vaalkop (WSIG)	09	RETICULATION 110 mm diameter Class 9 * 180m 90 mm diameter Class 9 * 408m 75 mm diameter Class 9 * 3350m PUMPING MAIN (110mm dia Class 9 * 45m) CONSTRCUTION OF 200 KL STEEL TANK ON 10M STAND 90 Yard connections	R9 556 097.48	10 November 2025-22 May 2026	27	Vaalkop	90	
Bakone RWS (2) Ramokadikadi (IUDG)	44	Equipping new Boreholes x3. Construction of New Pump Houses x 5. Water Treatment Plant. 43kl water storage on 10m elevated Abeco Tank. Construction of 300m of mPVC 90mm dia. Class 9. Construction of 4000m of mPVC 75mm dia. Class 9.	R 8,589,174.56	12/11/2025 - 13/04/2026	20	Ramokadikadi	123	

DRAFT

		Installation of 21 Communal Taps. Installation of Valves.						
Aganang Regional Water Scheme – Rammobola water supply phase 1 (IUDG)	44	Electrification, testing, commissioning and equipping of existing boreholes Construction of 130kl elevated steel tank Construction of concrete Pump House 4600m of 90mm Ø Bulk Pipe line, 11 600m of 75mm Ø Bulk Pipe line, 4000m of 100mm Ø Bulk Pipe line, backfilling. 590 Yard Connections	R22 642 936.76	20 March 2025-25 February 2026	47	Rammobola	528	

DRAFT

Houtriver RWS Phase 15 (IUDG)	9,16,18,35	Construction of 2500m pipeline (110mm & 75mm Dia). Construction of 54 Household Connections. Construction of 100kl elevated tank (In Mamadila). Construction of the guard House.	R 6,977,571.91	20/10/2025 - 18/05/2026	18	Makgwakgwane and Mamadila	54	

DRAFT

Aganang RWS Kalkspruit Water Supply (IUDG)	42	5.82 km of Excavation. 75 mm water reticulation pipeline for 3.5 km. 200 mm bulk pipeline 2.32 km. Road Crossing - HDD (RAL Road). Installation of 120 Yard connections and standpipe. Installation of 15 Valve Chambers. Installation of 25 Concrete Pipeline Markers.	R 7,848,066.60	26/09/2025 - 20/05/2026	16	Ehmarudeni Village	120	

DRAFT

Mashashane Water Works and Water Supply Phase 3 (IUDG)	40	Installation of Two Elevated Steel Tanks (160kl and 100kl). Lifting of existing ground Steel Tank. Construction of 7892m of the rising Mains. Construction of 10455m reticulation. Galvanized Steel Pipes. Installation of 205 Household Connections. Equipping of Four boreholes. Fencing of the Steel Tanks. Refurbishment of Treatment Plant and Utjane Dam Pump Station.	R 30,353,303.11	14/07/2025 - 14/03/2026	40	Kgasha, Sebora, Boetse	205	

DRAFT

Aganang RWS – Rapitsi Village Water Supply Phase 1 (WSIG)	45	Re-equipping two boreholes; BH01 & H04-2633. Installation of new security fencing around pump houses (including transformers) and remote security systems on existing boreholes. Installation of 5200m of 160mm dia. uPVC Class 12 reticulation. Installation of 12000m of 75mm dia. uPVC Class 12 reticulation. Installation of 252-yard connections. Supply and install concrete pipeline markers. Construction of Hypochlorite storage and mixing room and Install chlorine dosing system. Eskom power supply to new	R 22 611 941.88	18/03/2025 - 23/09/2025	45	Rapitsi Village	252	 16

DRAFT

		Disinfection System.						
Aganang regional water scheme- Kgabo Park Water Supply Scheme (WSIG)	45	Re-equipping of borehole, Installation of Concrete Pump House, Installation of new security fencing around pump house, Water Pumping Mains and Reticulation,160mm uPVC class 12 of 6150m 90mm uPVC class 12 of 1350m, 75mm uPVC class 12 of 9980m Provision for yard connections, 25mm equal tee, valve box, Supply and install concrete 25 pipeline markers, Construction of Hypochlorite storage and mixing room and Install chlorine dosing system, Security fencing of Chemical Dosing System	R17 235 173.44	18 March 25 – 23 September 25	41	Kgabo Park	285	

DRAFT

Bakone RWS 2 Ntlolane Water Supply Phase 2 (WSIG)	43	Supply and installation of 2 x 116kl (Ground Steel Tank). Refurbishment of the existing concrete reservoir. Installation of 6200m of 110mm diameter uPVC Class 9 rising main. Installation of 6200m of 75mm diameter uPVC Class 9 reticulation.	R 27 551 817.50	30 March 2025 – 25 September 2025	49	Ntlolane Village	467	

DRAFT

		Electrification of the treatment plant. Installation of 467-yard connections.						
Segwasi RWS Phase 7 (IUDG)	28,34,38	Equipping 1 Borehole in Mashalane (Mariba Thema). Supply and installation of Concrete Palisade fencing around 3. Supply and installation of Clear View fencing around 2 Tanks. Supply and installation of 3221m of 63mm uPVC water lines. Supply and installation of 80 Metered house connections. Supply and installation of 30m3/hr package Plant in segwasi. Supply and installation of a 50kl circular raw water tank.	R 15,751,485.65	14 March 2025 – 14 September 2025	36	Lossmycherry, Nyakalang, Mashalane, Segwasi	1239	

DRAFT

		Supply and installation of a 50kl circular clean water tank. Supply and installation of Booster pumps to SM15 and SM16. Construction of Guard house and VIP toilets.						
Bakone RWS 2: Ga-Phofu Water Supply Phase 02 (WSIG)	43	Supply, install and commission all-inclusive water treatment plant 18Kl/h. Supply and installation of 2 x 116Kl Ground steel tanks complete with foundations and fittings. Installation of 1164m of 110mm diameter uPVC class 9 distribution line. Installation of 313m of 90mm diameter uPVC class 9 reticulation line. Installation of 4000m of 75mm diameter uPVC class 9. Supply and install 707 standpipes. Supply and install valves.	R 16 487 825.75	24 March 2025 – 29 November 2025	36	Ga-Phoffu Village	707	

DRAFT

		Treatment plant electrification.						

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

DRAFT

5.3.5 Lepelle Northern Water supplied Schemes.

		Total per Source (Kl)	Total 25/26 (Kl)	
Polokwane City	**LNW**	10 730 530	15 663 174	Ebenezer + Olifantspoort
	Own Source	4 932 644		Mashal & Sand River North Boreholes + Dap Naude Dam
Seshego	**LNW**	1 114 060	1 923 215	Olifantspoort
	Own Source	809 155		Seshego Dam & Sand River South Boreholes
Mankweng	**LNW**	2 527 387	6 932 923	Ebenezer
	Own Source	4 405 536		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area
Houtriver (Moletjie)	**LNW + Pelgrimshoop**	769 636	8 012 826	Olifantspoort + Pelgrimshoop
	Own Source	805 670		Houtriver Dam + Mashashane
	Own Source	6 437 520		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area
Chuene Maja	**LNW**	288 993	660 692	Olifantspoort
	Own Source	255 059		Chuenespoort Dam
	Own Source	116 640		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area
Molepo	**LNW**	24 116	894 034	Ebenezer
	Own Source	605 786		Molepo Dam
	Own Source	264 132		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.3.6 Polokwane Water Supply

Polokwane Groundwater Development - **PM01/2019**: Bloodriver Wellfield and Seshego Groundwater Development and Pumping Mains - Equip 15 boreholes in Bloodriver and Seshego Wellfields; pump to new Seshego WTW (6.5ML/d average supply; 7, ML/d peak supply); pump to new Seshego Water Treatment Works and distribute to Perskebult and Seshego reservoirs.

5.3.7 Technical report approval

The following Regional Water Schemes (RWS) are in planning and awaiting approval of technical reports for further implementation

- **Moletjie North RWS** –This scheme previously had challenges with approval of technical report due to unacceptable water balance. A business plan and technical report was approved and a project implemented under Water Services Infrastructure Grant. The new technical report has been developed and is awaiting approval from the Department of Water and Sanitation.

- **Moletjie South RWS** – This area is serviced by a network of 11 boreholes which present very low yields during dry seasons. Constant vandalism of borehole infrastructure. No reticulation in extensions and no access to any surface water sources, the technical report is currently approved, and the project is planned to be implemented in first phase has been implemented in Vaalkop, Bellingsgate and Sepanepudi, planning for phase 2 is currently underway.

- **Badimong RWS** – This area has inadequate reticulation network, water supply security and connection to bulk surface water supply. Due to inability to obtain acceptable water balance, the project was catered under Water Service Infrastructure Grant which able to address Interim and medium-term water interventions and the new technical report is approved by the department of water and sanitation planning for implantation is currently underway.

- **Laastehoop RWS** – The technical report for the scheme is complete and awaiting approval by Department of Water and Sanitation, the area has in the past installed systems which are currently not functional due to vandalism and challenges faced with inadequate electrical supply, the new phase aims to functionalise the existing infrastructure and add the necessary infrastructure to cover the population expansions.

- **Mankweng RWS** – The technical report was approved, phase 13 of the approval is under implementation and phase 14 is under planning stages.

- **Moletjie East-** The new technical report was approved and the implementation has already commenced with the new contractor is on site.

- **Molepo RWS-** The new technical report is approved by the department of water and sanitation.

- **Olifantspoort RWS** - The new technical report is approved by the department of water and sanitation.

5.3.8. Impact of limited funding (Water Projects)

1. **Refurbishment of the Dap Naude water pipeline.**

  - The Municipality awaits approval of the IRS to secure funding for this critical project.

  - This project is of strategic importance in order to secure additional potable water for Polokwane CBD.

DRAFT

- Supply to be increased from 14Ml/day to 18Ml/day. Water is available but needs to be conveyed to Polokwane. Increase of approximately 4Ml/day.

2. **Polokwane Distribution Pressure and Flow Management:**

Progress has been made in reducing water losses resulting from pipe bursts through the replacement of ageing asbestos cement (AC) pipelines within the Polokwane CBD. While these interventions have yielded positive results, additional work is still required to further reduce water losses, improve the accuracy of the municipal water balance, and strengthen performance under the No Drop Assessment.

IRS relating to the replacement of asbestos cement pipelines has been submitted to the Department of Water and Sanitation and is currently awaiting approval.

In the interim, eleven (11) pressure reducing valves (PRVs) have been serviced as part of the Municipality's broader pressure management programme. These interventions have resulted in notable improvements within the Polokwane water distribution network, including reduced system pressures in critical areas, fewer pipe bursts, and improved network stability.

Furthermore, the Municipality is currently in the process of formulating a new five-year Water Conservation and Demand Management (WC/WDM) Strategy, which will be submitted to Council for approval in the year 26/27. The strategy will address the current challenges associated with water losses and provide a structured framework for improving water-use efficiency and reducing non-revenue water over the planning period. Key interventions will include the removal of illegal connections, protection of bulk water pipelines, reservoir condition assessments, infrastructure renewal based on remaining useful life, leak detection and repair programmes, pressure management initiatives, replacement of meters for large water users, and the retrofitting of water-saving devices in villages, schools, and other public facilities. These measures will contribute towards enhancing water security, improving operational efficiency, and ensuring the sustainable management of the Municipality's water resources.

5.3.9 Free Basic Water

The provision of free basic water in Polokwane Municipality is determined by the indigent policy and register updated annually for those who stays in areas where cost recovery is ongoing, and all the rural villages are receiving free basic water.

Basic service	The limited amount	Free basic services provided	Rural/Urban	Number Customers
Water				
Free basic water.	6kl per month	50 villages received free Water monthly. 68 villages receive free Water supplied by Lepelle Water Board.	Rural	All households in rural areas

Basic service	The limited amount	Free basic services provided	Rural/Urban	Number Customers
Water				
		153 villages receive free water supplied by boreholes.		

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

A statistical summary of the status quo assessment for water and sanitation services is provided per cluster in **Table** below:

Table: Water Service Levels

Service	Cluster	Service Level
Water	Mankweng/Sebayeng	67.9 % above RDP
	Moletjie	60.7 % above RDP
	Maja/Chuene/Molepo	44,3 % above RDP
	Aganang	59.0 % above RDP
	Municipal wide	82.04% access to water
	Municipal wide backlog	17.96%

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

The status quo assessment indicates that significant water service backlogs still exist across the municipal area, particularly within the Maja, Chuene and Molepo cluster, followed by the Moletjie and Mankweng/Sebayeng clusters. These areas remain a priority for future infrastructure investment and service delivery interventions.

The elimination of the existing backlog is constrained by several factors, including the limited availability and sustainability of water sources in rural areas, the continued growth of new settlements, and funding limitations that affect the pace at which infrastructure projects can be implemented. These challenges place additional pressure on the Municipality's ability to provide sustainable and reliable water services to all households.

As an interim measure, the Municipality continues to drill and equip boreholes as part of isolated local distribution networks to improve water supply and increase access to basic water services in underserved communities. While borehole development provides short-term relief, the long-term sustainability of water supply in the municipal area depends on the development of strategic bulk water resource projects.

In this regard, the development of the Sebayeng-Dikgale Deep River and Malamani Dolomite water resource schemes remains a key municipal priority. Once implemented, these schemes will significantly contribute towards reducing the current backlog and supporting future growth and development within the municipality

DRAFT

5.3.10 Water Quality

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa everyone has the right to an environment that is not detrimental to their health or wellbeing.

To ensure that water quality does not pose any health hazards to our people, Department of Water and Sanitation as the regulator has introduced the monitoring tool for water quality. According to DWS there is certain standard which both potable and wastewater must meet.

Polokwane municipality obtained Blue Drop in 2011 for the Mankweng and City water systems. The outlined ratings are from the 2023 assessment.

DRAFT

5.3.11 Blue Drop Score 2023

Key Performance Area	Weight	Chuenemaja	City Polokwane	Mankweng Area	Mashashane	Molepo
Bulk/WSP		Lepelle Northern Water	Lepelle Northern Water	Lepelle Northern Water	-	-
Blue Drop Score 2023	%	56.83%	55.45%	57.72%	38.28%	51.66 %
Blue Drop Score 2014	%	88.09%	95.00%	86.07%	55.03%	85.38%
Blue Drop Score 2012	%	87.29%	92.03%	80.89%	91.60%	82.02%
Blue Drop Score 2011	%	81.44%	95.05%	95.15%	72.55%	79.89%
System Design Capacity	kL/d	60 000	130 000	52 000	1 460	6 000
System Available Capacity	kL/d	60 000	130 000	52 000	1 460	6 000
System Input Value	kL/d	1 001	53 618	8 119	1 460	6 000
Capacity Utilisation	%	101.39%	93.07%	96.32%	NI	NI
Resource Abstracted From		Tudumo	Olifantsriver; Ebenezer dam	Ebenezer dam	Hout	Molepo Dam
BDRR 2023	%	41.83%	40.18%	37.05%	45.63%	37.03%
BDRR 2022	%	44.30%	36.20%	38.00%	86.70%	19.90%

Blue Drop Score 2023(B)

Key Performance Area	Weight	Moletjie Area	Seshego
Bulk/WSP		-	Lepelle Northern Water
Blue Drop Score 2023	%	53.61%	59.13%
Blue Drop Score 2014	%	85.26%	86.81%
Blue Drop Score 2012	%	73.79%	87.12%
Blue Drop Score 2011	%	76.57%	89.65%
System Design Capacity	kL/d	3 400	63 900
System Available Capacity	kL/d	3 400	63 900
System Input Value	kL/d	1 393	27 904
Capacity Utilisation	%	40.97%	99.04%
Resource Abstracted From		Hout	Seshego
BDRR 2023	%	21.78%	38.39%
BDRR 2022	%	18.80%	44.10%

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.3.12 Surface water quality test results

Surface water quality test results are as follows:

Determinant	Unit	Dap Naude	Ebenezer	Olifantspoort	Seshego Dam
pH	pH Unit	8.34	6.82	6.73	7.42
Turbidity	NTU	0.61	0.72	0.69	0.74
Conductivity	mS/m	2.46	4.83	77.63	77.70
Total Dissolved Solids (TDS)	mg/l	15.99	31.40	504.56	505.05
NO3	mg/l	0.40	0.13	0.28	0.35
SO4	mg/l	1.81	2.79	170.00	165.16
Alkalinity (m)	mg/l	8.80	15.83	115.90	115.09
Chloride	mg/l	4.25	6.91	85.95	62.40
Tot Hardness	mg/l	21.2	58.05	319.00	354.00
Ca Hardness	mg/l	20.00	23.25	123.25	135.00
Mg Hardness	mg/l	1.20	34.80	195.75	219.00

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

Polokwane Municipality Groundwater sources generally indicate elevated hardness levels, in excess of 300mg/l, which is defined as very hard water. Hard water is generally considered to be those waters that require considerable amounts of soap to produce foam, and hard water also produces scale in water pipes, heaters, geyser and other units in which the temperature of the water is increased.

Although the South African National Standards 241:2015 do not specify a maximum limit for hardness levels the elevated hardness levels, when compared to the surface water sources, will lead to end-user complaints when the groundwater is introduced untreated into the reticulation system. It is therefore advisable to soften the groundwater sources to levels comparable to the Olifantspoort source to mitigate end-user complaints. Hard water is appropriate for human consumption similar to that of soft water. However, as hard water produces adverse actions with soap its use for cleaning purposes is unsatisfactory.

Table: City of Polokwane: Access to Safe Drinking water

Provision of Water	Yes	No	Unknown	Total
Households	202 107	75 714	2404	280 225
Percentage	72.1%	27.01%	1.01	100%

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

DRAFT

Table: Main Water Provision

Water provision (level of service)	2025/2026
Piped (tap) water inside the dwelling/house	67 119
Piped water inside yard	129 278
Piped water on community stand	17 344
Borehole in the yard	14 361
Rainwater Tank in Yard	2 114
Neighbour's tap	12 159
Public / Communal tap	11 027
Water Carrier / tanker	16 747
Boreholes outside the yard	6 769
Flowing water or River / Stream	836
Well	224
Spring	142
Other	4 248
TOTAL	**282 372**

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

From the analysis, it is evident that population has increased from 280 225 to 282 372 households and the number of households with piped water inside their house have increased this figure includes 67 119 HH with water in the dwelling and 129 278 HH with water in the yard while 17 344 HH are receiving piped water on communal tap.

The municipality has **45 441** households with no access to piped water. The elimination of backlog is challenged by limited and /or unsustainable source of water found in the rural areas and continuous increase of new settlements in some clusters in the municipal area. Funding limitations also affect the eradication of backlog on the expected rate.

5.3.13. Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing water.

1. The municipality is experiencing severe water shortages and thereby unable to provide uninterrupted water supply as expected. While the municipality requires at least 174 Ml/day to provide reliable water to the community, the current water sources can only yield 118.5 Ml/day

2. Shortage of water will have a serious impact on projects that the municipality and other sector department are planning. E.g., Polokwane extension 78 Police station, Polokwane extension 71, 108, 72, 79,106 and 107, Bendor extension 100, Ivy Park

extension 35. Upon completion, all these developments will have a major impact on our currently insufficient water sources.

3. Lack of cost recovery in rural areas.
4. Aging water infrastructure in the CBD, Council in partnership with Department of Water and Sanitation has started with a programme to eradicate this challenge by investing more than R420Million to remove all Asbestos pipes in the CBD and surrounding townships).
5. More than R380 million is also required to increase the capacity of water infrastructure to be able to cater for current and new developments.
6. Uncoordinated allocation of new settlement in rural areas by traditional authorities has a major impact on municipal planning and budgeting.
7. Limited operation and maintenance of infrastructure due to shortage of funds.
8. Theft and vandalism of the existing insufficient infrastructure remain a challenge. Theft of iron manhole and valves covers is increasing and there is a need to change them to plastic and it a huge safety risk within the city.
9. Illegal extension of houses (back yard rooms) has an impact on water demand.
10. Lack of smart metering systems that can control water demand and supply, monitor losses (+R180Million required).
11. Drought effects on surface water resources such as Molepo dam.
12. Vast distances and scattered settlements in rural water schemes make it expensive and difficult for water resources to reach all households.

5.3.14. Water Supply to schools

Description	Polokwane Municipality
Total number of schools	310
Number of schools supplied with water	254
Number of schools remain to be serviced. **Currently they have boreholes in the schools**	56

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.4. SANITATION

Sanitation is about dignity. The availability of sanitation facilities not only improves the dignity of people but also promotes their health. Areas without proper sanitation systems give rise to water borne diseases like cholera, diarrhoea, typhoid, etc. It is therefore important that the Municipality prioritise the service, particularly considering the backlog (rural sanitation) and the national target.

5.4.1 Sanitation Provision

Polokwane Municipality sewer systems are **overloaded** due to the increase in population and economical activities in areas of **Seshego, Mankweng and Polokwane City**.

WWTW System	Design Capacity	Average Inflow
Polokwane WWTW	36 ML/Day	65 – 70 ML/day
Seshego WWTW	7.6 ML/Day	6 – 10 ML/day
Mankweng WWTW	8 ML/Day	10– 15 ML/day

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.4.2 VIP Sanitation Programs in Rural Areas

- The municipality continues to implement **VIP sanitation programs** in rural areas to ensure that proper sanitation is provided, and ground water is protected.
- Sludge management is still a challenge
- Capacity of the Waste Water Treatment Works is also overloaded and requires upgrades (Requires Sanitation Master Plan for the entire area with waterborne system).

DRAFT

5.4.3 Moletjie Cluster Rural VIP Sanitation Project

Moletjie Cluster Rural VIP Sanitation Project

Moletjie Cluster Rural VIP Sanitation Project

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.4.4 Aganang Cluster Rural VIP Sanitation Project

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.4.5 Refurbishment of Mankweng Wastewater Treatment Works (WWTW)

Refurbishment of Mankweng Wastewater Treatment Works (WWTW)

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.4.6 Green Drop Audit.

Green Drop – Polokwane Local Municipality did not meet the expectations of the Regulator. The 2025 Green Drop score of 22.8% shows a steep decline from the 2022 audit performance of 31.0%.

Key Performance Area	Weight	Mankweng	Polokwane	Seshego
Water Service Provider	Polokwane LM			
Wastewater Treatment Works		Mankweng	Polokwane	Seshego
A) Capacity Management	**15%**	64.0%	70.0%	70.0%
B) Environmental Management	**15%**	0.0%	8.0%	20.0%
C) Financial Management	**20%**	29.0%	29.0%	29.0%
D) Technical Management	**20%**	56.3%	32.5%	32.5%
E) Effluent And Sludge Compliance	**30%**	3.0%	9.5%	4.5%
F) Bonus		7.5%	7.5%	15.0%
G) Penalties		25.0%	37.5%	0.0%
H) Disqualifiers		NONE	NONE	NONE
2024 Green Drop Score	**%**	**23.9%**	**21.4%**	**28.4%**
2021 Green Drop Score	**%**	30%	32%	27%
2013 Green Drop Score	**%**	79%	65%	54%
2011 Green Drop Score	**%**	62%	70%	65%
System Design Capacity	**kL/d**	8,000	36,000	7,600
System Available Capacity	**kL/d**	6,000	36,000	7,600
Capacity Utilisation	**%**	100%	103%	74%

DRAFT

Key Performance Area	Weight	Mankweng	Polokwane	Seshego
Resource Discharge Into		Pou River which feeds Sand River	Sand River	Blood River
Microbiological Compliance	**%**	4%	6%	0%
Chemical Compliance	**%**	42%	36%	33%
Physical Compliance	**%**	70%	46%	39%
TSA Score	**%**	**42%**	**N/A**	**N/A**
VROOM Estimate	**R**	R6 492 000	N/A	N/A
Wastewater Risk Rating (CRR% of CRRmax)		Mankweng	Polokwane	Seshego
2024 CRR	**%**	63.6%	81.5%	72.7%
2023 CRR	**%**	72.7%	85.2%	68.2%
2022 CRR	**%**	68.2%	70.4%	72.7%

DRAFT

5.4.7 Sanitation Provision - (Medium- & Long-Term Solutions)

- Polokwane municipality has bulk Sanitation IRS that was approved in 2021.
- The municipality has completed 2 of the 3 Outfall Sewers and the remaining project is 93% completed.
- **Phase 2A** – (Construction of Earth Works) has been completed and Phase 2B – Construction of Civil works and Mechanical/Electrical works is currently on advert for procurement of contractor to complete the outstanding works.
- Ensure that groundwater water protocol is budgeted for to ensure that the groundwater resources are monitored for possible contamination.
- Ensure that funds are budgeted/ring-fenced for implementation of the faecal sludge handling particularly in rural areas. **(Emptying of VIP Toilets).**

Table: Toilet Facilities (Households)

Type of toilet facility	2020
Flush toilet connected to a public sewerage system	103 180
Flush toilet connected to a septic tank or Conservancy tank	6 044
Chemical toilet	1 686
Pit latrine / toilet with ventilation	40 575
Pit latrine / toilet without ventilation	102 965
Ecological toilet (Urine diversion, enviroloo etc.)	282
Other	25 756
None	4248

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

Major progress has been made in the provision of sanitation services in Polokwane since 2001, there major improvement in the provision of this service. However, with the improvement the municipality will not meet the Millennium Development Goal that every household must have access to healthy and dignified sanitation facility.

The municipality is currently having a huge backlog of sanitation facilities (VIP) and an amount of more than R500 million is required to eradicate it. The backlog figure includes 86 132 pit latrines that are not constructed according to the approved standards and as such it poses a risk of water borne diseases.

5.4.8. Free Basic Sanitation

For Improved provision of basic and environmental services in a sustainable way to our communities, each financial year Polokwane Municipality construct the Ventilated Improved Pit latrine **(VIP)** in rural Villages according to the priority list of the ward.

5.4.9. Wastewater Treatment Plants

For the purposes of increasing the capacity of the Wastewater Treatment Plants to support current and future development, the municipality is currently in a process of building:

1) **New Regional Wastewater treatment.**
2) **Seshego Wastewater Treatment Plant.**
3) **Mankweng Wastewater Treatment Plant.**

As well as Refurbishment of the Wastewater plants.

Two of major projects on the construction of outfall sewer lines are complete while one is still under construction.

5.4.10. Impact of reduction in RBIG funding (Sanitation Projects)

The following projects are greatly affected by the Reduction of RBIG funding:

1. **Polokwane Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant**

Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Plant is the biggest with 36 ML/day capacity and the current load standing at 70 ML/day.

Plans are in place to construct the 100 ML/day Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant for the whole Polokwane Municipal sewage load and to cater for new developments (however there is limited budget). A contractor is also appointed on site for the refurbishment of the over loaded Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Plant a second phase of refurbishing and upgrades to the existing plant.

The construction of the New regional wastewater treatment plant will increase the capacity of the treatment facilities.

2. **Upgrading and refurbishment of Mankweng treatment plant (intended to cater for the University of Limpopo growth).**

The Reduction in RBIG Funding has also affected the plans for the Mankweng Sewer Plant, and Mankweng is a nodal point, the University of Limpopo has applied for funding with regard to student accommodation, there is a serious need of New Sewer Plant in Mankweng.

The treatment facility is in dire need of refurbishment and upgrading in light of the growth of Mankweng area and further plans by the University to develop student accommodation.

DRAFT

This project cannot be delayed. The current treatment capacity is under strain, and the effluent quality is compromised.
The project for refurbishment of Mankweng wastewater treatment has been completed. The impact of the projects is notable because there has been a reduction on downtime of equipment in the plant thus increasing its functional reliability. The upgrade project is under planning and development of the IRS is underway.

3. **Upgrading and refurbishment of the Seshego wastewater treatment plant**.
The planning is at an advanced stage; the treatment facility is in dire need of refurbishment and upgrading in light of the growth of Seshego. The current treatment capacity is under strain, and the effluent quality is compromised.

5.4.11 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Sanitation.

1. The risk of contaminating ground water in rural areas due to huge backlog of pit latrine that is not according to the approved standards.
2. Lack of funding to eradicate rural backlog (more than R500 million is required).
3. Lack of funding for construction of regional wastewater treatment plant. According to master plan 1st phase was supposed to be at implementation by now, more than R1,2 billion required). DWS has completed the feasibility study for new regional wastewater works and is co funding the project through RBIG.
4. Aging sanitation infrastructure (some of old sewer lines in Seshego are running under houses or very close to the houses and should be moved).
5. Uncoordinated allocation of new settlement in rural areas by traditional authorities has a major impact on municipal planning and budgeting (VIP).
6. Lack of maintenance plans for sewer infrastructure.
7. Limited operation and maintenance of infrastructure due to shortage of funds.
8. Theft and vandalism of the existing insufficient infrastructure remain a challenge.
9. Illegal extension of houses (back yard rooms) has an impact on sewer treatment plant. Boyne is the home of two biggest churches and proper sanitation structure is needed to avoid future water contamination.

5.4.12 Sanitation in Schools

Description	Polokwane Municipality
Total number of schools	310
Number of schools supplied with sanitation	296
Number of schools remaining to be serviced with Sanitation	14

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

DRAFT

5.4.13 Rural Household Sanitation

Polokwane municipality is constituted by a composition of households that are 65% rural and the balance being urban. There is currently no formalised sewerage collection and network in the rural areas. Sanitation in rural areas is managed through constriction of VIP toilets to eradicate the backlog in access to sanitation.

Polokwane Municipality is made up of **7 Clusters and 45 wards** that should be equally provided with services guided by the community needs i.e.

Clusters	Wards No.
Mankweng Cluster	06,07,25,26,27,28, 34
Moletjie Cluster	09,10,15,16,18,35, 36,38
Molepo / Chuene / Maja Cluster	1,2,3,4,5
Sebayeng / Dikgale Cluster	24,29,32,33,30,31
Aganang Cluster	40,41,42,43,44,45
City Cluster (exempted from the VIP Allocation)	08;19,20,21,22,23,39
Seshego Cluster (exempted from the VIP Allocation)	11,12,13, 14,17,37

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

The two urban clusters i.e., **City and Seshego** Cluster are exempted from the allocation of VIP toilets as they have sewage system in place. Council focuses on allocating VIP toilets is the rural Clusters.

DRAFT

5.5. BACKLOG OF BASIC SERVICES

Below is the current status of existing backlog, which without annual maintenance will escalate.

Service	H/H	Access	Backlog	Order in terms of Highest Backlog
Water	**254 907**	202 107 **(72.1%)**	52 800	**5th**
Sanitation		134 695 **(48.1%)**	120 212	**3rd**
Electricity		242 015 **(87.2%)**	12 892	**6th**
Housing		160 980 **(90.4%)**	93 927	**4th**
Waste		104 402 **(48.1%)**	150 505	**2nd**
Roads (7 495km)		1 419km **(19.6%)**	**6100 KM** translate to **80.4%**	**1st**

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.5.1 Regional Water Scheme (RWS) –Demand and Shortfall

RWS Analysis

Regional Water Supply Scheme (RWS)	Current ground water abstraction	Current surface water source	Demand	Surplus/Shortfall
Mothapo RWS	3 618 Kl/day	1 514 Kl/day	3 292.3 Kl/day	1 839.7 Kl/day
Laaste Hoop RWS	725.8 Kl/day	445 Kl/day	798.7 Kl/day	372.1 Kl/day
Mankweng RWS	320.8 Kl/day	10357 Kl/day	12 017.7 Kl/day	-1 339.9 Kl/day
Sebayeng-Dikgale RWS	6 391.4 Kl/day	224 Kl/day	5 503.3 Kl/day	1 112.1 Kl/day
Badimong RWS	827.3 Kl/day	1691 Kl/day	2 473 Kl/day	45 Kl/day
Segwasi RWS	250.6 Kl/day	394 Kl/day	265 Kl/ day	379.6 Kl/day
Boyne RWS	103.7 Kl/day	867 Kl/day	701.3 Kl/ day	269.4 Kl/day
Molepo RWS	733.7 Kl/day	1 100 Kl/day	1 537.7 Kl/day	296 Kl/day

Regional Water Supply Scheme (RWS)	Current ground water abstraction	Current surface water source	Demand	Surplus/Shortfall
Chuene Maja RWS	324 Kl/ day	2 700 Kl/day	2 179 Kl/day	845 Kl/day
Moletjie South RWS	3 727 Kl/day	1 000 Kl/day	2 977 Kl/day	1 750 Kl/day
Moletjie North RWS	810 Kl/day	0	611.3 Kl/	198.7 Kl/day
The Hout River RWS	1 657 Kl/day	2 000 Kl/day	2 096 Kl/day	1561 Kl/day
Moletjie East RWS	4 055 Kl/day	0	2 627 Kl/day	1 428 Kl/day
Aganang East	3 108 Kl/day	0	1 545 Kl/day	1 563 Kl/day
Bakone RWS	4 394 Kl/day	0	2 229 Kl/day	2 165 Kl/day

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

Backlogs to the access of water services are mainly attributed to:

- Availability
- Sustainability
- Proximity
- Storage Requirements
- Treatment requirements
- And affordability

5.6. SMART METERING

The City of Polokwane Smart City Vision articulates the future development path. Consistent with the 2030 Smart City Vision, the City launched six pillars that will assist the municipality to work towards the realization of becoming a Smart City that embraces Smart Living and Smart People as some of its building pillars. This Smart City concept is carried within the City's vision to be the "The ultimate in innovation and sustainable development".

During the 2017 State of the City address, the Executive Mayor has articulated a number of initiatives that are out of the ordinary that the City will be embarking on towards attaining the goal of becoming a sustainable City that is geared towards improving service delivery.

For a couple of years, City of Polokwane has been announcing that the municipality is experiencing serious challenges with regards to water and electricity losses as a result of burst pipes and illegal connections, among others. These losses accounted to loss of Millions of rand's annually in revenue to the municipality and distribution losses to the community.

Most importantly, Smart Metering project aims to give power to the consumers because of its multiple benefits. Some of the benefits are as follows:

- Consumers having control over their usage or consumption, ease of access to purchases,
- Avoidance of unanticipated black-outs and disruptions.

DRAFT

- Customer service will be greatly improved through elimination of queries related to electricity billing, which account for the majority of customer queries.
- Earlier recognition of faults will become easier through increased data access.
- Illegal connections can also be identified quickly, thereby reducing technical losses.
- There are also job creation and small business opportunities arising from system installation and operation of vending systems.

The new Smart Metering system also allows for remote and local reading of the meter as well as detection of any tampering with the system. The official installation of the smart meters to households has begun as a pilot project. The meters are replaced at **no cost** to the consumers.

5.7 New Pre-Paid Water Meters

The City of Polokwane is now Rolling out the Installation of New Prepared Water Meters in all its Residence and Business. This programme involves the Removal of old Prepared Meters that are Experiencing Various Challenges.

New Prepared Water Meters

New Prepared Water Meters

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.9. AC Pipes Replacement

Objectives of AC pipe replacement:

- Renewing infrastructure assets that has reached the end of its useful life.
- Reducing water losses through burst pipes.
- Saving scarce resources - water and money.
- Improving reliability of the network and standard of service.
- Reducing maintenance costs.
- To improve revenue collection.

Phase 1 of the AC pipes replacement project including (Seshego, CBD and Annadale) is complete, a project to install the Scada Monitoring system will commence.

DRAFT

5.9.1 Challenges -AC Pipes Replacement

Some challenges experienced:

- The replacement of pipes in a 'live' network in built up areas with many hidden services is in many ways a very difficult task.
- Increasing the size of pipes in areas constrained by existing storm water pipes, electricity, fibre etc. is extremely difficult.
- Higher extent of rock/ hard material encountered than expected.
- Scarce water sources added to challenges, impacting negatively on the execution of work, testing pipes and connecting users.

5.9.2 Phase 2 – AC Pipes Replacement

Further replacement of AC Pipes:

- Planning for the next phase of pipe replacement has started.
- Council must consider all service and infrastructure needs and priorities because funding is limited.
- There is an urgent need for augmenting the currently inadequate water sources – this is the most critical current need.
- The remaining extent of AC Pipes amounts to approximately 370 km.
- Limited funds prevent replacement of all pipes, focus will be on pipes that are in very poor condition, and pipes critical for the network.

5.9.3 Remaining extent of AC Pipes Replacement per cluster

The estimated remaining extent per cluster is as Reflected on the table Below:

Cluster	Total Scope (km)
City Cluster	131.0
Mankweng Cluster	103.0
Molepo/Chuene/Maja Cluster	49.0
Moletjie Cluster	1.1
Sebayeng/Dikgale Cluster	10.0
Seshego Cluster	76.0
Total	**370.1 km**

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

DRAFT

5.10 Construction of Borehole Infrastructure for Sandriver North Wellfield

Project descriptions include:

I. Equip 32 boreholes in Sandriver North Wellfields and Polokwane (6.4Mℓ/d average supply; 12Mℓ/d peak supply).
II. Pump to new Sandriver North Water treatment works and.
III. Distribute to existing Krugersburg and Potgieter reservoirs.

- **Project is progressing well at 96%.**

5.11 Water Losses

Water loss	June - 2026		June - 2025		June - 2024	
	Units	Units	Value	Units	Units	Value
Loss	**109 732 981,73 (@R11,71/kl)**	**10 226 745 KL**	**799 551,45 (@10.84/kl)**	**73780.81 KL**	**R 120 431 545**(@R10.50/kl)	**11 469 671 KL**
Percentage	29 % (difference between purchased & sold water)		33% (difference between purchased & sold water)		28 % (difference between purchased & sold water)	

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.11.1 Causes of Water losses

Technical loses

- Revenue losses due to bulk supply breakdowns
- Pipe bursts (Mainly AC Pipes)
- Leaking Valves & Fire Hydrants

Non-Technical Losses

- Bridged meters
- Unread meters
- Wrong meter readings
- Water Quality and meter age

5.11.2 Water losses Mitigation Strategy

(1) **Work stream – Bulk Water Supply & Bulk Meters _**

Objective:

- Ensure adequate working bulk meters at all required supply points - Municipality has just completed a project for installation of Bulk meters, installation of top consumer meters (SAB, Coca Cola, Enterprise, etc) and monitoring systems. *(Project was completed in June 2022)*

  The Municipality has made a budget provision for the installation of check meters in the 26/27 FY

(2) Assistance to the Poor and School Leak Repairs

Objective:
Ensure that internal water losses are identified and repaired - All leaks identified on the network are continuously repaired by our internal maintenance team and appointed term contractors depending on the complexity.

3. Leak Repair Contractor

Objective:
To reduce water losses identified by the leak detection team by the appointment of repairs and maintenance contractor – All leaks identified on the network are continuously repaired by our internal maintenance team and appointed term contractors depending on the complexity.

4. Valve & Fire Hydrant Audits

Objective:

- ✓ To ensure all valves and fire hydrants are located, working and are on the record system – All valves and fire hydrants are continuously monitored to ensure that they are on a good working condition, and fire hydrants are monitored for theft of water

5.11.3 Longer term plan to address Water losses.

Longer term plan to address Water losses - distribution and revenue.

1) **Pipe bursts** – Phase 1 of the AC pipes replacement is completed and planning for phase 2 is underway.
2) **Bridged meters** – continuous meter audits are conducted.
3) **Incorrect meter readings** – program to change all meters to prepaid to avoid wrong readings is being rolled out in phases.
4) **Faulty meters** – all meters are being changed to prepaid.
5) **Installation of bulk meters** – appointed service providers are given job cards to install Bulk Meters at reservoir outlets.

DRAFT

5.11.4 Progress in addressing water Provision Backlogs

- Progress **to-date** in the provision of basic services is at **87%.**
- Addressing source developments for Regional Water Schemes (with or without approved Technical Reports).
- Continuing with the implementation of Capital Works Programs under **IUDG, WSIG and CRR.**

5.11.5 Planned water expenditure towards new infrastructure

Planned new expenditure by source

Funding Source	IDP Budget	Program
IUDG	R129 312 762.00	Capital
WSIG	R100 022 000.00	Capital
CRR	R45 850 900.00	Capital
RBIG	R688 100 100.00	Capital
NDPG	R12 205 299.60	Capital
Total	R975 491 061.60	

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

DRAFT

5.12 Strategic issues facing municipal water business (Water resilience)

5.12.1 Water Resource Security

The calculated daily water demand (including water losses) for Polokwane City, Seshego and Perskebult has been calculated as follows: (WMP).

Year	Supply Reservoir Demand (Ml/day GAAD)					Total (Ml/day)
	Krugersburg	Potgieter	Doornkraal	Seshego	Perskebult	
2017	28.3	34.8	8.4	23.2	5.0	99.6
2020	29.3	36.9	10.2	23.8	5.5	105.7
2025	33.3	40.9	15.4	27.7	6.0	123.4
2030	36.5	44.0	17.1	30.8	6.5	134.9
2035	38.9	47.3	18.7	35.8	7.0	147.7
2040	43.5	51.6	27.8	48.0	8.0	178.8
2045	56.9	54.6	31.4	54.6	9.0	206.4

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.12.2 Polokwane City Water Supply

Currently Ebenezer WS = 32 ML/day and Olifantspoort WS = 27 ML/day. A water supply

Resource Name	Average Supply to Polokwane City (Current)
Polokwane Boreholes	6.9 ML/day
Pelgrimshoop Boreholes	1.7 ML/day
Dap Naude Dam	12 ML/day
Seshego Dam + Borehole	7 ML/day
Ebenezer Dam (LNW)*	32 ML/day
Olifantspoort RWS (LNW)*	26 ML/day
TOTAL	**86.6 ML/day**

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.12.3 Quality of Polokwane Drinking water: (Compliance with SANS 241)

Polokwane Municipality runs its own water quality laboratory. Samples from different points are collected on a weekly basis. Compliance with SANS 241(South African National Standard drinking water) is monitored daily. Weekly reporting on the Blue Drop portal is maintained.

5.12.4 Network Management

- **Pipe bursts and Billing inaccuracies** are the biggest contributor to **NRW.**
- **Response** is maintained on a **24/7** basis.
- Less than 1**%** of the network gets replaced per year in response to bursts.
- **Sewer spillages** are reported as a daily feature due to blockages of the pipes by **tree roots, objects flushed through the toilet, fats from food outlets and storm water deposited into the system** through gullies.
- **No replacements** of sewer reticulation network have been done.

5.12.5 Wastewater Treatment

- (Compliance with licence conditions; capacity, condition and operational performance of wastewater treatment plants)
Due to the **age of the Municipal plants**, there are challenges with **license compliance issues**. For the current water balance, the Municipality has **run out of capacity**.

The construction of the **New Regional Wastewater Treatment Works** will address the capacity backlog. **The refurbishment projects for all the three (3) WWTW have been concluded, although they have not addressed the issue of capacity, effluent compliance has improved.**

5.12.6 Water Resilience Summary Risk Assessment

In line with the provided Table **below,** the responded questions help the City of Polokwane to understand the issues pertaining to water business. The essence of this question helps the City comprehend perceived risk over the next 5 years in terms of the following categories- (very low, low, moderate, high, very high).

Table: Summary Risk Assessment

Perceived risk (over next 5 years) of …	v low	low	mod	high	v high
Significant **water restrictions** being imposed			x		
Episodes of **drinking water unsafe** to drink	x				
Regular **water supply interruptions** (or less frequent but lengthy interruptions)				x	
Significant **pollution** of rivers / inland water bodies as a result of a failing sewer network or poor performance of wastewater treatment works		x			
Unsound technical decisions compromise service as a result of critical technical skills gaps		x			
Unsound technical decisions compromise service as a result of undue political interference		x			
Deterioration in assets and service quality as a result of inadequate spending on maintenance and rehabilitation/replacement of assets				x	

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.12.7 HR for Water and Sanitation Directorate (Professional Engineers)

Number of registered professional engineers in the Water & Sanitation directorate.

- **4 registered** professional engineers in Water & Sanitation directorate.

Critical skills vacancies (Number of posts at Professional level or above vacant or with acting position, out of year-on-year posts

- Professionals Level = **Level 6-4**

No.	Description		Job Level	Positions	Filled	Vacancies	Budgeted
1.	Director		0	1	0	1	1
2.	Manager (O&M)		1	1	1	0	1
3.	Manager (Purification)		1	1	1	0	1
4.	Manager (Infrastructure)		1	1	1	0	1
5.	Assistant Manager (O&M)		3	1	1	0	1
6.	Assistant Manager (Infrastructure)		3	2	2	0	2
7.	Assistant Manager (Laboratories)		3	1	1	0	1
8.	Assistant Manager (Purification)		3	1	1	0	1
9.	Snr Engineering Technician (Infrastructure)		4	1	0	1	1
10	Quality Scientist (Laboratories)		4	1	0	1	1
11	Water Quality Officer (Laboratories)		9	6	1	5	6
12	Laboratory Technician (Laboratories)		07	4	2	2	4
13	Laboratory Analyst (Laboratories)		11	4	3	1	4
14	Laboratory Assistant (Laboratories)		12	4	1	3	2
15	General Worker(Laboratories)		17	2	0	2	0
12.	Chief Chemist (Purifications)		4	1	1	0	1
13.	GIS Officer		4	1	1	0	1
14.	Engineering Technician (Infrastructure)		5	2	2	0	2
1.	Engineering Technician (O&M)		5	1	0	1	1
15.	Snr Technical Assistant (Infrastructure)		6	4	3	1	4
16.	Superintendent (O&M)		6	3	1	2	3
	TOTAL			43	23	20	39

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

Acting positions

No.	Description	Job Level	Acting
1.	Director	0	1
2.	Manager (O&M)	1	0
3.	Manager (Purification)	1	0
4.	Assistant Manager (O&M)	3	0
5.	Assistant Manager (Infrastructure)	3	0
6.	Assistant Manager (Purification)	3	0
7.	Plant Supervisor (Purification)	8	0
8.	Plumber (O&M)	9	0
9.	Fitter & Turner (Roaming Team)	9	0
	TOTAL		1

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.13 Smart Meters

5.13.1 Smart Meters Support and Enquiries

In order to deal with the Smart Meters challenges, the City of Polokwane has come up with measures to Support and Resolve the Community enquiries regarding the new Smart Meters. i.e.

- Now there is a Dedicated Office to handle Smart meter was established i.e., **Office No. 110 Civic Centre (Head Office)**. For:
- New connections: **Applied through building section at Civic Centre.**
- Shifting of a water meter: **Office No. 110 Civic Centre**.
- Damaged water meter and CIU replacement: **Office 110 Civic Centre.**
- Stolen water meter: **Office 110 Civic Centre.**
- Smart meter request: **WhatsApp Number: 068 290 8736. Landline: 015 290 2376**
- Leakages, Low batteries and Conversions: **WhatsApp Number: 068 290 8736. Landline: 015 290 2376**

5.13.2 Turnaround Time when attending Complains.

- New connections: **0-14 days.**
- Shifting of a water meter: **7 days.**

- Damaged water meter and CIU replacement: 24 **hours.**
- Stolen water meter: 24 **hours.**
- Smart meter request: **1 month.**
- Leakages and Low batteries: **24 hours.**
- Prepaid conversions: **7 days**

5.14 WATER TANKERS

In Clusters that have shortage of water, the City of Polokwane is Relying on **water tankers** to provide water to the community on daily and weekly basis. The table below indicates the schedule per cluster:

Cluster	Total Number of Areas Supplied by Tankers	Dates of Supply	Comments
City	0	Daily	No water supply challenges
Seshego	0	Daily	No water supply challenges
Moletjie	42	Weekly	Areas tankered in Moletjie are due to insufficient water supply from the boreholes and lack of a water distribution networks.
Mankweng	20	Weekly	Areas tankered in Mankweng are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes, Lepelle Northern Water and lack of a water distribution networks.
Molepo/Chuene/ Maja	16	Weekly	Areas tankered in Molepo/Chuene/Maja are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes, Lepelle Northern Water and lack of a water distribution networks.
Sebayeng Dikgale	17	Weekly	Areas tankered in Sebayeng / Dikgale are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes and lack of a water distribution networks.
Aganang	24	Weekly	Areas tankered in Aganang are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes and lack of a water distribution networks.
Total	**119**		

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

DRAFT

5.14.1 Municipal Water Tankers Fleet

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.15 Municipal Boreholes Status Quo

5.15.1 City of Polokwane Boreholes Status Quo Report

Boreholes Status Quo			
Cluster	**Total No of Boreholes**	**Total Number of Boreholes Operating**	**Total Number of Boreholes Not Operating**
City	41	41	0
Seshego	15	15	0
Moletjie	138	81	57
Mankweng	56	44	12
Molepo-Chuene Maja	40	38	2
Sebayeng Dikgale	52	48	4
Aganang	143	118	25
Total	**485**	**375**	**108**

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.16 Pump Station Status Quo

5.16.1 SUMMARY OF MUNICIPAL PUMP STATION STATUS QUO IN ALL CLUSTERS

Municipal Pump Stations			
Cluster	**Total No of Pump stations**	**Total Number of Pump stations Operating**	**Total Number of Pump stations Not Operating**
City	7	7	0
Seshego	1	1	0
Moletjie	1	1	0
Mankweng	2	2	0
Molepo-Chuene Maja	7	7	0
Sebayeng Dikgale	1	1	0
Aganang	1	1	0
Total	**20**	**20**	**0**

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.16.2 Names of the Pump Stations and Status Quo

	Cluster	Pump Station Name	Status
1	Chuene-Maja	Chuene Maja low lift	Operating
2	Chuene-Maja	Chuene Maja high lift	Operating
3	Chuene-Maja	Matabole	Operating
4	Chuene-Maja	Nare Letsoalo	**Not Operating** – Theft and Vandalism
5	Chuene-Maja	Molepo Pump station 2	Operating
6	Chuene-Maja	Molepo Pump station 3	Operating
7	Chuene-Maja	Molepo Pump station 1	Operating
8	Mankweng	Monakadu	Operating
9	Mankweng	Mothiba Pump Station	Operating
10	Sebayeng-Dikgale	Solomondale Pump station	Operating
11	Moletjie	Bloodriver Pump station	Operating
12	Seshego	Seshego Pump station	Operating
13	City	Sand River North	Operating
14	City	Sand River	Operating
15	City	Ivy Dale Pump station	Operating
16	City	Ext 34	Operating
17	City	Marshall Street	Operating
18	City	Dalmada Treatment	Operating
19	City	Serala View	Operating

	Cluster	Pump Station Name	Status
20	Aganang	Utjane Pump station	Operating
21	Dap Naude	Dap Naude	Operating

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.17 CHALLENGES WATER SERVICES

- Lack of sustainable water sources for current and future demand, the municipality is currently receiving 118.5 **ML/d** and unable to meet the peak flow demand of **174 ML/day.**
- Lack of As-Built drawings for the City and Mankweng
- Eradication of water supply backlog in RWS.
- Eradication of Sanitation backlog **(+68 000 HH).**
- Refurbish components of existing sewer plant to reduce the smell.
- Electrification of boreholes in RWS by ESKOM.
- Lack of capacity at the Mankweng wastewater treatment works, which creates challenge on future developments.
- Illegal yard connections in rural areas.
- Illegal disposal of sewage in storm water drains at Mankweng (Private University Residence).
- Shortage of staff that results in excessive overtime.
- Lack of rural sanitation maintenance plan.

5.18 Interventions to solve the Challenges.

- A new Water Treatment Plant is under construction to 18Ml/day
- Refurbishment of Dap Naude Pipeline and Constriction of a new booster pump station.
- Upgrading and refurbishment of Seshego and Mashashane Water Treatment Works.
- Water supply system

1. Water Shortage

- Refurbishment of City boreholes and intensify security.
- Implementation of Groundwater Project – Equipping of drilled boreholes, Bulk pumping lines and modelling (to produce supply zones, pressure zones, as built drawings).

2. Wastewater Treatment Works (WWTW) overloaded.

DRAFT

- Refurbishment of Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Works (current capacity 36 ML/day). Phase 1A & B completed;
- Complete Construction of first 20ML/day module of the Regional Wastewater Treatment Works (RWWTW) in progress.
- Enhance the current operations (Capacity building to current personnel and filling the vacant positions).

3. Aging Infrastructure

Water

- Replacement of Asbestos Cement pipes (AC).

Sanitation

- Modelling the sewer system / Sewer Master Plan (for upgrading and refurbishment purpose)

4. Uncoordinated New Settlements

- All land developments to be coordinated through Planning Directorate.

5. Transformers, cable theft and vandalism/ Delay from Eskom to energise the boreholes.

- 2 securing strategies are used by the municipality: stationary Security at Critical boreholes are deployed are deployed. Roaming teams at non critical boreholes are deployed

- Stakeholder engagement has been improved with Eskom on their turnaround time for energizing of new boreholes and replacing the stolen transformers.

8. Over reliance on contractors.

- Build capacity to the internal personnel for the specialize functions e.g., boreholes and pump stations.

5.18.1 WHY REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT PLANT

The City has **three (3)** Wastewater Treatment Plants i.e.

1) **Polokwane WWTW,**
2) **Seshego WWTW and**
3) **Mankweng WWTW**

Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Plant is the **biggest** with **36 ML/day** capacity and the current load standing at **60 ML/day.** Plans are in place to construct the **100 ML/day Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant** for the whole Polokwane Municipal **sewage load** and to cater for new developments **(**however there is limited budget**).**

For the purposes of increasing the capacity of the Wastewater Treatment Plants to support **current** and **future development, the** municipality is currently in a process of building:

1) **New** Regional Wastewater treatment 20Ml/day.

DRAFT

5.18.2 New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant

New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant

New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant

New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant

New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant

New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

DRAFT

5.18.3 Regional wastewater treatment plant phase 2B

Regional waste water treatment plant phase 2B

Regional waste water treatment plant phase 2B

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.18.4 Outfall Sewers Phase 1A

Outfall Sewers Phase 1A

Outfall Sewers Phase 1A

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.18.5Construction of the Sand River North Water Treatment Works.

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.19 Polokwane Water Utility - Metro Vision

Polokwane Municipality is earmarked to be the first future Metropolitan Municipality for Limpopo Province.

For the municipality to reach that status it will have to satisfy number of requirements in terms of criteria and amongst those will be the City`s development growth and the crux of that development is **water.**

Sustainable bulk water supply to the city will ensure that all lined up **catalytic projects** which are also meant to boost the City`s opportunity to become a metro become successful.

Other Metropolitan Municipalities have successfully established their **own water entities** which successfully supply their own water and carry out maintenance.

Johannesburg Metro has established its own Municipal Water Entity called Johannesburg Water (CoJ) as its sole shareholder.

On the side of Ekurhuleni Metro, they have established East Rand Water Company (ERWAT) established in 1992 as Section 21 Company**.**

Polokwane Municipality sources **60%** of its water from **outside** the boundary of the Municipality the majority of which is supplied by **Lepelle Northern Water (LNW).**
Water is bought from LNW for **R9/kl.** For the **2020/21** financial year, bulk purchases for water totalled **R 191 088 675.00** according to the audited financial statements

An external mechanism of water & wastewater service provision would imply that the full responsibility for the provision of all or a ring-fenced part of water & sanitation services, which may include **repairs, maintenance, upgrading, renewal and expansion** of the works

DRAFT

(possibly even including the development of new works) is transferred to the **proposed utility,** which is then by implication a new WSP under the WSA.

The WSP is solely and autonomously responsible for the execution of the particular ring-fenced service, held accountable by the WSA based on an output specification, and carries substantial technical, operational and financial risk.

In such instance, output specification driven, performance-based agreement will be required between the city and its Water Utility.

5.19.1 KEY WATER INFRASTRUCTURE

Bulk Surface water abstraction system:

- Dap Naude Dam (18 ML/day)
- Seshego Dam (2 ML/day)
- Molepo Dam (6 ML/day)
- Houtriver Dam (3.4 ML/day)
- Mashashane/Utjane Dam (1.5 ML/day)
- Chuene Maja Dam (2.7 ML/day)

Bulk Ground Water System:

Ground water is classified according to two main supply schemes or systems, namely the **Polokwane groundwater system** and the **Seshego System** (also incorporating the surface water abstraction from Seshego Dam) to bring additional **10 ML/day.**

Water Treatment Works

- Dap Naude/Dalmada Water Treatment Works **(18 ML/day)**
- New Seshego Water Treatment Works (**10 ML/day)**
- New Sand River North Water Treatment Works (**18 ML/day) *****
- Molepo Water Treatment Works **(6 ML/day)**
- Houtriver Water Treatment Works **(3.4 ML/day)**
- Mashashane/Utjane Water Treatment Works **(1.5 ML/day)**
- Chuene Maja Water Treatment Works **(2.7 ML/day)**
- MN Removal Plant **(8ML/day)**

Wastewater Treatment Works:

- Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Works **(36 ML/day)**
- Seshego Wastewater Treatment Works **(7.6 ML/day)**
- Mankweng Wastewater Treatment Works **(8 ML/day)**
- New Regional Wastewater Treatment Works **(20 ML/day) *****

(indicates Projects that are under implementation.)***

Other Infrastructure Includes but not limited:

- Sewer Pumps Stations.
- Raw Water & Potable Water Pump Stations.
- Bulk water and Bulk Wastewater pipelines.
- Bulk & Service Reservoirs.

DRAFT

- Reticulation Pipelines.
- Bulk and Domestic Meters.

5.19.2 Recommendations for Polokwane Water Utility

It is recommended that the Municipality:

- Engage in a **pre-feasibility** fact finding exercise to determine the potential of establishment of a water utility, it may be beneficial to engage with **Metros** regarding their successful transition to an establishment of water utility, specifically regarding any lessons learnt during their process.
- Conduct a study as per Section 76 of MSA to determine the service delivery mechanism, implications and overall feasibility, this study needs to be comprehensive and include as a minimum the MSA and WSA requirements.
- The current human capital may be affected. Engagement with labour **Unions** should be undertaken, and a resolution will be required concerning the existing staff.
- The recommended procedure is that the current staff employed by the city will be required to be transferred to the Utility for training and skills development.

5.19.3 SAVE Water Campaign

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.19.4 Sebayeng/Dikgale Regional Water Supply (RWS) Phase 10

Sebayeng/Dikgale Regional Water Supply (RWS) Phase 10 project is complete. The project aims to enhance water access for the villages of Sebayeng, Dikgale, Potse Ntsima and Syferkuil, benefiting 118 households.

In addition to advancing infrastructure, the project has created **34 jobs,** supported the local economy and offered valuable opportunities for community members.

Sebayeng/Dikgale Regional Water Supply (RWS) Phase 10

Sebayeng/Dikgale Regional Water Supply (RWS) Phase 10

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.19.5 Kalkspruit/Mangongoa Water Supply Project

The Kalkspruit/Mangongoa Water Supply Project phase 1 is complete. This initiative aims to improve access to clean water for the residents of **Kalkspruit and Mangongoa** villages, phase 2 of the project will be constructed within the 2025/2026 financial year.

The project, initiated to address the critical need for reliable water infrastructure, has made significant progress in recent months. Importantly, it has created **29 jobs**, thereby contributing to the local economy and providing valuable employment opportunities for community members.

The construction and installation phases have been carefully managed to ensure timely completion and adherence to high-quality standards. As the project nears its final phase, efforts are focused on the final testing and commissioning of the water supply systems.

Kalkspruit/Mangongoa Water Supply Project

Kalkspruit/Mangongoa Water Supply Project

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.20 Water Supply Challenges at Seshego and City Cluster

5.20.1 Background on water scarcity in Polokwane

Polokwane Municipality is a water scarcity area which depends mainly on water supplied from Olifantspoort and Ebenezer Water Schemes which are operated by Lepelle Northern Water Board. The Municipality is also receiving water from its own boreholes, Seshego Dam, Dap Naude Dam. The main water supply sources currently supplying water to Polokwane Urban Complex (City/Seshego and Mankweng) are:

Resource Name	Capacity	Current 2026	Shot-fall 2026
	ML/D	ML/D	ML/D
Sand River North Boreholes	4.3	1.6	2.7
Sand River South Boreholes	1.0	1.0	0
Sterkloop Boreholes	2.9	2.9	0
New Seshego WTP **(Seshego Dam, Seshego Boreholes, Lithuli Boreholes and Bloodriver Boreholes)**	10	6	4
Dap Naude Dam	14.0	12	2
Ebenezer Water Scheme (LNW)*	32.0	44.0	0
Olifantspoort Water Scheme (LNW)*	27.0	27.0	0
TOTAL	**91.2**	**92.5**	**10.9**

***Ebenezer supplies more than the licence of 32 ML/D**

***SRN is pumping less due to pumps that went for refurbishment.**

*** A total of 41 boreholes are currently supplying water to City and Seshego Clusters.**

5.20.2 Olifantspoort Water Scheme (LNW)

Olifants Water Scheme supply water to Chuene Maja, Thokgoaneng, Krugersburg reservoirs, Penina Park off take, extension 34, Ivy Park, Nirvana, Seshego Reservoir, Polokwane Extensions, Madiba Park, Legae La Batho, Southern Gateway and Ivydale.

5.20.3 Ebenezer Water Scheme (LNW)

Ebenezer Water Scheme supply water to areas around Mankweng, Dalmada and Krugersburg Reservoirs.

5.20.4 Dap Naude Dam

Dap Naude raw water is treated at the Polokwane Water Treatment Plant and supply water to Krugersburg reservoirs.

DRAFT

5.21 Polokwane boreholes

5.21.1 Sand River North Boreholes

Sand River North boreholes raw water is treated at the SRN Manganese Plant. The Manganese Plant then pumps water to Potgieter reservoir through Ladanna and Polokwane extensions reticulation network.

- All **twenty (20)** boreholes are operational

5.21.2 Sand River South Boreholes

Sand River South boreholes supply to Polokwane extensions.

- All of the **three (3**) boreholes are currently operational

5.21.3 Sterkloop Boreholes supply

Sterkloop boreholes supply water directly into the Polokwane CBD reticulation network. All of the **six (6)** boreholes are currently operational.

5.21.4 New Seshego WTP

Seshego Dam combined with Seshego boreholes, Luthuli boreholes and Bloodriver boreholes raw water is treated at the New Seshego Water Treatment Plant. The Plant then supplies water to Seshego reservoir.

5.21.5 Luthuli Boreholes

Luthuli boreholes – F**our (4)** boreholes are all operational.

5.21.6 Bloodriver Boreholes

Bloodriver Boreholes – **Three (3)** boreholes are all operational.

5.21.7 Seshego Boreholes

Seshego Boreholes – **Eight (8)** boreholes are all operational.

DRAFT

5.22 Polokwane High Lying Area Water Shortage Challenges

All High lying areas within the City and Seshego Cluster are receiving water now.

The following **high lying areas** were previously affected by the water shortage:

Main Source	Storage	Area
• Dap Naude • Ebenezer Dam (LNW)* • Olifants Sand WS (LNW)	• Krugersburg Reservoir	• Sterk Park • Flora Park • Fauna Park • Bendor • Serala View
• Dap Naude • Ebenezer Dam (LNW)* • Olifants Sand WS (LNW)Polokwane • Boreholes	• Krugersburg Reservoir • Potgieter Reservoir	• Moeregloed (Nartop Str - Magazyn Str & Ireland Str – Thabo Mbeki Str)
• Olifants Sand WS (LNW) • Seshego Dam	• Seshego Reservoir	• Seshego Zone 1 & Zone 1 Extensions, Zone 5H & 5E, Zone 7 and Zone 8
• Olifants Sand WS (LNW) • Polokwane Boreholes	• Olifants Off-take • Potgieter Reservoir	• Polokwane Extension 71 A&B, 73, 74, 75 & 76 • Madiba Park • Legae La Batho • Nirvana • Ivypark • Southern Gateway • Ivydale

DRAFT

5.22.1 The Main Causes of Water shortages

Polokwane Municipality has been experiencing shortage of water for past couple of years. The challenge of water has recently deteriorated. The main causes of water shortages were identified as follows:

- **Population growth** – The population has been growing annually at an average of 4.9%. The recently completed Water Masterplan indicated a current bulk water supply shortfall to the Polokwane Urban Complex (City-Seshego). The existing shortfall is estimated at approximately 30Ml/day. The water supply is inadequate to keep the reservoirs filled to the levels where the whole reticulation system is filled.
- **Lack of consistence supply from the Water Service Provider** – Lepelle Northern Water has been experiencing frequent breakdowns on both Ebenezer & Olifantspoort schemes.
- Lack of sufficient raw water supply

5.22.2 Other Challenges affecting supply includes:

- Demand exceeding supply and therefore city reservoirs stay empty throughout the course of year.
- Ageing infrastructure resulting in frequent burst pipes and breakdowns.
- Theft, vandalism of water infrastructure and illegal connections.
- Inadequate funding for operations and maintenance of water infrastructure.
- Delay in completion of ground water development project to unlock additional supply of water through boreholes.

DRAFT

5.23 Interventions in place to address Water Shortage Challenges

5.23.1 Medium Term interventions

- **Ground Water Development:** Ongoing projects in the City, Seshego, and Mankweng areas aim to increase groundwater utilization to alleviate surface water dependency. Seshego ground water project has been completed with the Sand River North ground water project anticipated to complete by the third quarter of 2026/2027
- **Ebenezer and Olifantspoort Bulk Water Supply Schemes:** Lepelle Northern Water is embarking on a pivotal project to enhance the Olifantspoort and Ebenezer Bulk Water Supply Schemes. The first phase of this initiative is set for completion in 2026. This upgrade is expected to significantly boost the potable water supply to the City of Polokwane

5.23.2 Long Term interventions

- Polokwane Municipality has an allocation of 18 ML from Dap Naude dam, and the current pipeline capacity allows for withdrawal of 14 ML/day from the dam. Feasibility study is completed and submission is made for funding. This is to upgrade the dam and pipeline infrastructure to facilitate increased water withdrawal, enhancing our supply capacity. The impact of this project will supply water to Krugersburg and Potgieter Reservoir thus removing a stain on the over strained LNW pipelines

DRAFT

5.24 Sebayeng /Dikgale RWS Water Project at Ward 31

The project is part of the City of Polokwane in ensuring that the Community of Sebayeng/Dikgale Cluster **ward 31** Receive Water. Providing water Remains the top Priority of this Council

Sebayeng /Dikgale RWS water Project at Ward 31

Sebayeng /Dikgale RWS water Project at Ward 31

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.25. Fine for using Municipal Water for Garden irrigation and washing Paving

Council has approved a Fine for using Municipal Water for Garden irrigation and washing Paving. This fine is applicable to Residential /Businesses/industries.

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.26 Save Water Campaign - Use a Bucket for Car wash

Use a Bucket for Car wash is a Save Water Campaign within the City of Polokwane

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27 Provision of Water Through Regional Water Schemes Across the City of Polokwane Municipality

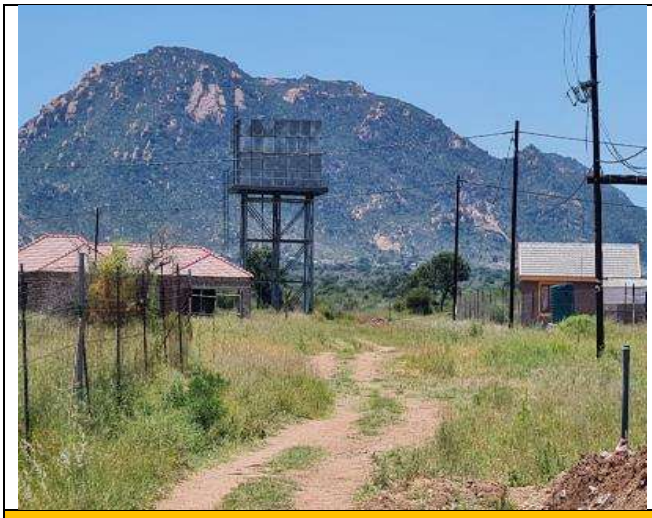
5.27.1 Aganang RWS (3) (Mars)

Aganang RWS (3)(Mars)

Aganang RWS (3)(Mars)

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.2 Bakone RWS (2) (GA-Phoffu)



Bakone RWS (2) (GA-Phoffu)

Bakone RWS (2) (GA-Phoffu)

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.3 Bakone RWS (2) (Ga Ntlolane)

Bakone RWS (2) (Ga Ntlolane)

Bakone RWS (2) (Ga Ntlolane)

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.4 Sandriver North WTW, Sandriver north Well fields and Sandriver south well fields, Bloodriver wellfields

Sandriver North WTW, Sandriver north Well fields and Sandriver south well fields, Bloodriver wellfields

Sandriver North WTW, Sandriver north Well fields and Sandriver south well fields, Bloodriver wellfields

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.5 Mothapo RWS Phase 16

Mothapo RWS Phase 16

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.6 Segwasi RWS Phase 6

Segwasi RWS Phase 6

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.7 Molepo RWS (Molelemane phase 12B)

Molepo RWS (Molelemane phase 12B)

Molepo RWS (Molelemane phase 12B)

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.8 Boyne RWS Phase 13

Boyne RWS Phase 13

Boyne RWS Phase 13

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.9 Olifantspoort RWS (Mmotong wa Perekisi) Phase 13

Olifantspoort RWS (Mmotong wa Perekisi) Phase 13

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

DRAFT

5.27.10 Badimong RWS - Drilling of boreholes

Badimong RWS - Drilling of boreholes

Badimong RWS - Drilling of boreholes

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.11 Aganang RWS (3) (Rapitsi and Kgabo Park Water Pump) (Ward 45)

Aganang RWS (3) **(Rapitsi and Kgabo park Water Pump…. ward 45 Aganang Cluster**

Aganang RWS (3) (Rapitsi and Kgabo Park Water Pump…. ward 45

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.12 Aganang RWS (3) (Kgabo Park Water Pipeline

Aganang RWS (3) (Kgabo Park Water Pipeline

Aganang RWS (3) (Kgabo Park Water Pipeline

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.13 Seshego Water Purification Plant

Seshego Water Purification Plant

Seshego Water Purification Plant

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

5.27.14 Lonsdale Water Project under ward 45

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation Services Directorate

CHAPTER Six: Energy Services Analysis

6.1. ENERGY SERVICES

Electricity is a vital part of our modern lives. It powers our homes, factories, academic institutions, hospitals, etc. It is generated at power stations, transported across country through high voltage transmission lines, and lastly, distributed to end-users (consumers) through either overhead lines or underground cables or a combination of both.

The City of Polokwane (CoP) is an Electricity Distribution License Holder with the National Electricity Regulator of South Africa (NERSA) and responsible for the distribution of electricity within the City and Seshego Clusters. Eskom is licensed to distribute electricity within the remaining Clusters. However, in terms of public lights (i.e., high mast, traffic and streetlights), the CoP is responsible for their provision and maintenance throughout the municipal jurisdiction irrespective of the License Holder. For ease of reference, the respective Electricity Distribution License Holder per Cluster is set out hereunder:

6.1.1 Electricity License Area (License Owner)

#	Cluster	Wards	License Owner
1	City	8, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, & 39	**City of Polokwane**
2	Seshego	11, 12, 13, 14, 17, & 37	**City of Polokwane**
3	Mankweng	6, 7, 25, 26, 27, 28, & 34	Eskom
4	Moletjie	9, 10, 15, 16, 18, 35, 36, & 38	Eskom
5	Molepo/Chuene/Maja	1, 2, 3, 4, & 5	Eskom
6	Sebayeng/Dikgale	24, 29, 32, 33, 30, & 31	Eskom
7	Aganang	40, 41, 42, 43, 44, & 45	Eskom

Electricity License Area (License Owner)

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.1.2 Public lights

High Mast Lights

From 2024/25, municipality took a resolution to install solar high mast lights and a total of 29 solar high mast lights were installed. The challenge on high mast was theft and capacity by Eskom where ten (10) installed high mast lights were unable to be energised due to capacity challenges. They were later energised after five (5) years of being installed.

Commissioning high mast

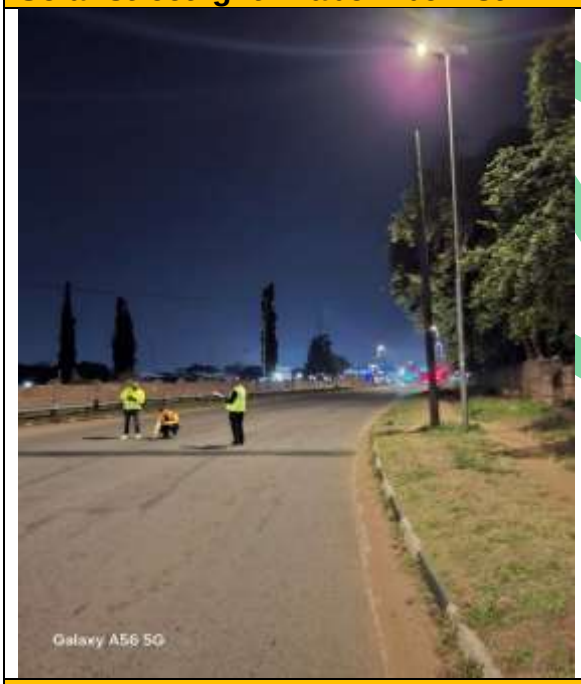
Civic centre solar high mast

Streetlights

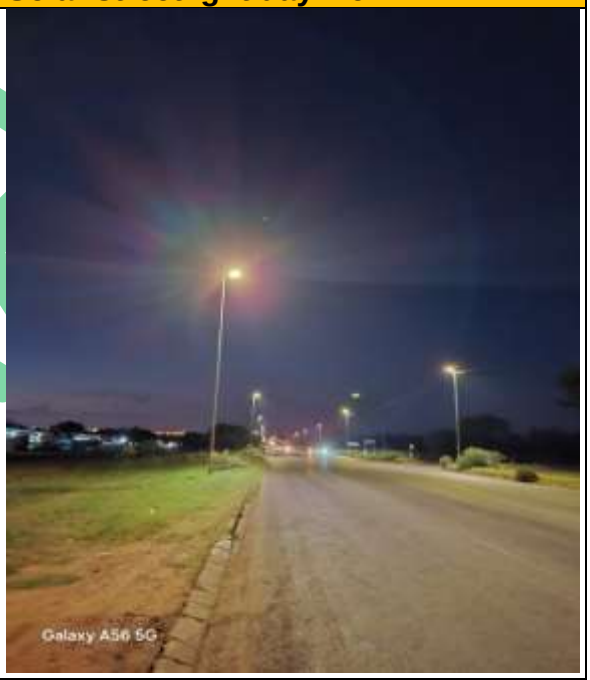
From 2025/26 solar streetlights was also considered. By end of June 2026, 643 solar streetlights were installed. The challenge here was cable theft vandalism and malfunctioning of control systems within the light fitting. That is why the municipality decided to install solar powered streetlights.

Solar streetlight Thabo Mbeki st

Solar streetlight day view

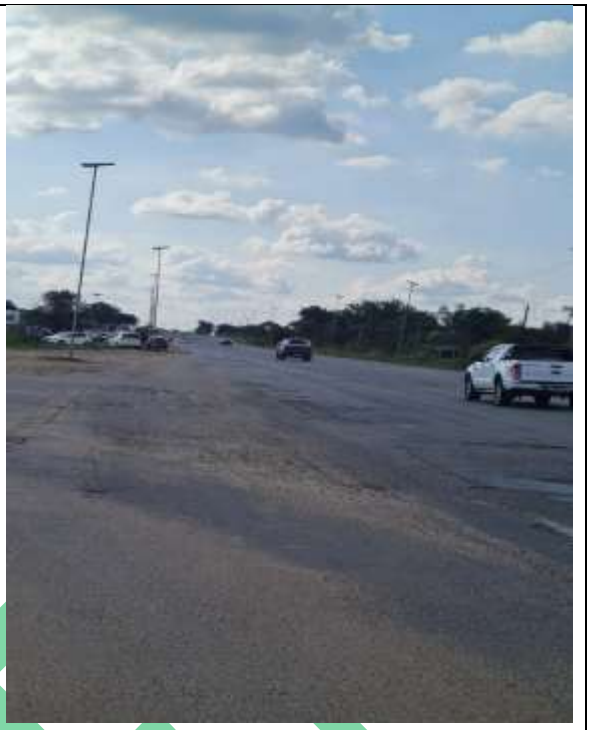


Testing solar Streetlights Grobler



Solar streetlights Dendron

Streetlight maintenance



Solar Streetlights Along Dendron Road

Traffic lights

Theft and vandalism of traffic lights are affecting the service delivery. Pictures below are for a car that drove around damaging traffic lights and traffic signals.

6.1.2 Access to electricity

The number of households with access to electricity increased from 231 317 in **2020**/21 to 235396 in 2024/2025 as set our hereunder.

Year	Households	Increase	% Increase
2021/22	232172	855	0.37%
2022/23	233372	1200	0.52%
2023/24	234516	1144	0.49%
2024/25	235396	880	0.28%
2025/26	236158	762	0,3%

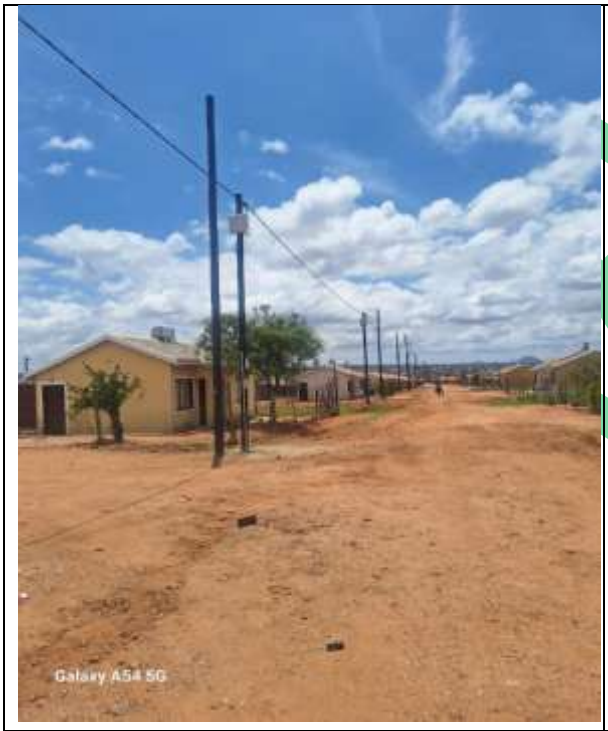
Access to Electricity

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

Households for Polokwane Municipality increased to 239 116 in 2016 (Stats SA 2016), making the current municipality-wide access to electricity supply to 98.07%. Guided by the Information from the **Global Market Intelligence**, the total number of households in the municipality has increased to **254 907.** This reduced the access to electricity from 98,07% to 92,65%. The new backlog is 19511.

Although the backlog percentage seems less, the growth rate of the City, and the capacity challenge by Eskom makes the municipality to fail in making sure access to electricity by all in 20230 to be achieved. The municipal area increased in 2016, incorporating major parts of former Aganang municipality (76.93%) into Polokwane and thus adding backlog numbers.

6.1.3 Completed Project - Supply and installation of electrical network in Seshego Zone 8 Extension 133, phase 4



Supply and installation of electrical network in Seshego Zone 8 Extension 133, phase 4

Solar Geysers Installed at in Seshego Zone 8 Extension 133, phase 4

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.1.4 Energy Master Plan

The **Energy Master Plan** has been reviewed in 2018/19 and has been approved by Council 2020. The draft master plan is prepared on the basis of 5 years' growth Projection. The analysis of the energy master plan forms the basis of a recommendation regarding the anticipated demographic and economic growth factor that should be provided for in terms of additional electricity demand during the next five years. The current challenge is capacity challenge in Eskom licence area and the high rate in which low-cost houses are constructed in the urban area, Polokwane Ext 78 and Ext 133, 134, 127 and 40 to name a few, thus creating urban backlog of 10067.

Table: Distribution of households with its main source of energy for lighting

Main source of energy	No of Households
Electricity from mains	236 158
Other sources of electricity (e.g., generator, etc.)	302
Gas	419
Paraffin	2038

DRAFT

Main source of energy	No of Households
Candles	8383
Solar Home systems (1580 +900 Solar/gel)	2 480
Other	394
None	554
Unspecified	435
Total	**251 163**

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

In comparison with the 2011 Census there is tremendous improvement of the number of households with access to electricity in 2026. The Global Market Intelligence indicates total households as 254 907, making a new backlog target of 18 748 households without access to electricity.

6.1.5 Free Basic Electricity

Free basic electricity is the amount of electricity which is deemed sufficient to provide basic electricity services to a poor household.

Polokwane Municipality provides **50kWh** of free electricity to registered consumers in the Eskom supply area reduced from 15240 to 14771 configured consumers and 13720 collecting. In Polokwane and Seshego (Polokwane license area) 100kWh is allocated monthly to 8663 households from 13134 registered beneficiaries. In Aganang cluster, 3995 households are benefitting from FBE whilst 900 households are benefiting from Free Basic Alternative Energy (FBAE).

Challenges

1. Non collection by some beneficiaries
2. Insufficient staff to verify and approve indigence in Eskom and municipal license areas.
3. Budget constrains to provide **100kWh** in Polokwane Municipality' license area, the national allocation is 50kWh for FBE.

Table: Free Basic Electricity Provision

Basic service	The limited amount	Free basic services provided	Number of Customers	The level and standard
Electricity				
Eskom Area	R2,39C per month	13 720collected	14 771	50kWh

Municipal License Area	R2,14 per month	8 663 collected	7941	100 kWh

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.1.6 Free Basic Alternative Energy (solar home system)

In Polokwane Municipality 1300 households have benefited during 2024/25 and 1580 in 2025/26 financial year, in conjunction with Department of Electricity and Energy (DEE).

Polokwane Municipality is providing this service to 900 households with solar light, cooking gel and gel stoves to Aganang Cluster, a cluster service provisioning that formed part of basic conditions for incorporating former Aganang municipality with Po

Challenges

1. Financial constraints to provide the FBAE (free basic alternative) service.
2. Non collection by beneficiaries

6.2 Solar Water Geysers

Polokwane Municipality received 16 000 units to be allocated to low-cost housing and indigent residences of wards **8, 11,12,13,14,17,19 and 37** within City and Seshego Clusters. A total of 15213 out of 16000 units installed to date. Project is at commissioning stage as some of the units got damaged during the process and correct numbers of damages are being counted.

6.2.3 Solar water geysers Challenges

1. No team available for maintenance after five-year warrantee period.
2. Some geysers are not warming water due to technical problems after an installation period of a year, which are not covered by the five-year warrantee like airlock.
3. Outstanding case for tubular geysers by the department with manufacturers

6.3 Major Projects, Challenges/Achievements by the Municipality to provide Energy.

- Projects were identified to strengthen the supply which, amongst others, include:
  - ✓ construction of Bakone 66kV Substation (completed),
  - ✓ construction of Matlala 66/11kV Substation – project to be implemented beyond three years due to financial constraints.
  - ✓ construction of Alpha to Matlala Substation 66kV line – negotiations taking more than expected period for servitude negotiations
  - ✓ construction of Bakone to IOTA Substation 66kV line,
  - ✓ construction of a 90MW solar farm through PPP which are currently at planning stage.

DRAFT

- Major projects to be prioritised, start and complete one project and then move to the other due to financial constrains
- Illegal connections and bridging of electricity meters are contributing to electricity losses. Planned project to install check meters to be implemented during 2026/27 to investigate technical losses.
- Ageing infrastructure
- Theft and vandalism of infrastructure have been reduced in substations, but thieves are now targeting other areas such as household connections, public lights, miniature substations and low voltage cables in the industrial areas, streetlight and meter box covers. Security companies appointed to protect infrastructure implemented in the city and hot sports.
- Theft of transformers which supplies residents and borehole pumps is very high in rural areas and is causing disruption of service delivery.
- ESKOM has upgraded Boyne and Nobel substations and now busy upgrading University substation and new Rampheri substation is 100% completed.
- Network strengthening is also taking place in strategic areas within the municipality.
- Installation of check meters to verify the bill from Eskom, has been completed.

6.4 BACKLOG OF ENERGY SERVICES

Below is the current status of existing backlog in Energy services, as per global market intelligence including alternative sources.

Service	H/H	Access	Backlog	Order in terms of Highest Backlog
Electricity	**254 907**	250 564	4 343	**6th**

Source: Global Market Intelligence

6.4.1 Rural Areas Electrification

Each year, either the Polokwane Municipality or Eskom receive the Integrated National Electrification Programme (INEP) grant funding to electrify rural areas that still do not have electricity supply. To guide this process, Council approved electricity priority list that is followed at implementation. Whilst there is meaning progress in this regard, some areas are delayed due to capacity constraints on Eskom networks. The current allocation for INEP is less than expected and DEE is being engaged.

6.4.2 Polokwane/Seshego Urban Complex Technical Assessment

Electricity Services

Level of Service	Grid Electricity Service - connected and metered (conventional and or pre-paid).
Overview	The Municipality distributes electricity in the Polokwane City/Seshego Functional Area while Eskom is the service provider in the rest of the Municipal area.
Capacity and Backlog	The electricity backlog in the Polokwane Electricity Supply Area is 10067. New township development in process in the Seshego (Extension 133, 134, 127,126) are to increase backlog. The backlog in Eskom supply area is 18 748 as per priority list and 4 343 as per Global Market Intelligence. ESKOM currently supplies Polokwane Municipality from two substations namely the Pietersburg Substation and the Silica Substation. **Pietersburg Substation:** Currently Pietersburg supply line is at its full capacity and a project to install the second f132kV line is at design stage with implementation expected to be completed during 2028. **Silica Substation:** No upgrading for the substation is planned. **Seshego Metering Point - Sigma Substation:** No upgrading for this metering point is planned. **Pietersburg Substation Area:** Bakone Substation next to Silica Substation is completed while Bakone - IOTA 66kV line and the Bakone Intake Substation is scheduled for construction after the completion of Matlala substation. **Seshego area: Sigma substation is supplied by sigle feeder which is a risk at this stage but there is a plan to have a ring through the construction of Matlala substation and a line from Matlala to Sigma.** **Bakone Intake Substation:** The Bakone substation is completed.

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

The largest contributor to service charges is **electricity services** with a contribution of 68% followed by water services accounting for approximately 18% of the total service charges levied.

6.5 Electricity Losses

Electricity losses increased from **12,33% to 15,04%**. The losses are caused by technical losses and non-technical losses. Technical losses are losses due to transmission of electrons from generation point to consumer point. They do increase based on the age, length, and size of the infrastructure. The aged infrastructure (Polokwane being affected) tends to have more technical loses. Transformer and conductor heat losses are the example of losses one could witness. For Polokwane during 2026/7 financial year, check meters to be installed at various points of distribution substations to investigate the true source of the losses.

The second contributor is non-technical losses. Non-technical losses include bridge meters, unread meters, estimated meters, unfound meters, unaccounted own use in public lights, own

buildings and non-functional meters. Polokwane is currently installing smart meters to resolve this. During the installation, audit is also conducted. Buying partons of customers are investigated through revenue and after identification of the affected meters, audit is conducted.

6.5.1 Causes of electricity losses

(a) Technical losses

- Transmission/distribution losses (**Inherent resistance of conductors to conduct electricity**).
- Transformer losses (**Copper and iron losses**).
- Conductor losses (heat generated when conducting current)

(b) Non-Technical Losses

- Bridged meters.
- Illegal connections.
- Unread meters.
- Wrong readings.
- Meters not on the system.
- Open Meter Boxes.
- Non-metered apparatus like public lights
- Un-accounted own use

6.5.2 Longer Term plan to address Electricity losses (distribution and revenue)

(a) Non-Technical Losses:

- Continuous meter auditing.
- Implement a check and area metering solution to identify where the main losses occur – area metering, substation and feeder levels.
- Install **"smart ready" pre-payment meters** to replace tampered and faulty meters.
- Back to basics approach and improve and enhance the customer service programmes and education programmes in the field.
- Ensure that all consumers are metered and are paying for the energy consumed.
- Install Smart Meters in secured Meter Boxes with limited access.

(b)Technical Losses:

- Installation of Area meters to identify energy loss area
- Contribute to approximately **6-8%** of total losses depending on the loading and the age of the networks.
- **Re-prioritise** spending to increase the funding for upgrading and refurbishing of electrical networks.

DRAFT

- **Develop Maintenance Plans** to improve the performance of networks to reduce the technical losses.
- Consider network operations **under optimum "open point"** conditions to avoid long feeders and high resistances.
- Maintain networks to the standard as prescribed by **NRS standards and NERSA licence conditions**
- Electrical meters to be installed on all municipal buildings, street and traffic lights to account for own use which is now shown as losses.

6.5.3 Electricity Losses (Key Findings)

Electricity loss	June 25		June 24		June 23		Jun-22	
	Units	Value	Units	Value	Units	Value	Units	Value
Loss	93 642 758 ,38	224 685 129, 69	76 711 021,79kWh	R 168 265 959,21	73 244 186.07kW h	R 143 061 602.88	61 524 449 kWh	R 89 291 536.16
Percentage losses	15,04		12,33%		12,22%		10,42%	

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.5.4 Progress in addressing backlogs in basic services (Electrification)

The municipality is electrifying houses on a **priority list** that was approved by council in **2017** and approximately **500** houses to be electrified in the financial year 2026/27.

Challenges Experienced

- ✓ Funding deductions – A certain number of houses are planned and included in the IDP and then needs **to be reduced** when the DORA is published.
- ✓ Capacity shortages on Eskom networks.
- ✓ Site allocation by Indunas/Kgoshi's are generally **not planned properly** and are sometimes in **wetlands.**
- ✓ Additional houses **built after** the electrification planning was finalised is a challenge.
- ✓ DEE allocation per house **too little** to cover the actual cost.
- ✓ Number of additional houses is **increasing faster** than what is electrified.

Progress in addressing backlogs in basic services (Public lighting)

Public lighting

Only **ten high mast lights** are installed per year due to funding shortages on CRR and as and when CRR funds are available.
Solar lighting technology, even though it does not cover the same area as Grid connected lighting, is currently used by Polokwane municipality due to Eskom capacity challenge and high cable thaft.

The municipality has huge numbers of outdated, high consumption streetlights on the networks. These streetlights are being replaced with LED and lately solar lights to decrease the consumption and maintenance costs.

Challenges Experienced

- The demand for high mast lights is **much higher** than what is installed.
- Eskom connections are **very costly** and takes for ages to be completed.
- Capacity constraints on Eskom networks hampers the completion of most of the high mast light projects.
- Energy services is implementing solar High Mast lights as a resolution to this.
- Recommending that all new public lights be powered from solar.

6.6 New infrastructure Planned

- New infrastructure is planned and implemented by means of the **Energy Master Plan** which was approved by Council in **2020 financial year.** Project for New Pietersburg switching station delayed and only supply cables are installed to date. The switching station building to be done once funds are secured.
- The City is, however, **growing faster** than what can be funded from the CRR.
- The municipality is currently in **negotiations with Eskom and NERSA** for **taking over** some of the **Eskom networks** that are in close proximity of municipal networks and that are falling in the **SDF** and or is creating unsafe islands within the Polokwane supply area**.**

New infrastructure

6.6.1 Power Bank and Solar Farm Projects

- The municipality is busy advertising for the installation of **Power Banks** to reduce the **Eskom Maximum Demand.**
- The project will be implemented on a Risk Based Approach with minimal to **zero expenditure for the municipality**.
- Service providers will recoup their capital layout from a share of the savings on the Eskom Bill.
- Further to the **Power Banks project**, the municipality embarked on a feasibility study for the installation of a **Solar Farm project,** in which the **DBSA got** involved and found it to be a viable project with the potential of becoming **a regional supplier** that can include supply to smaller neighbouring municipalities.
- The 100MW approval by government suits this project ideally.

DRAFT

6.6.2 Planned expenditure towards (new infrastructure, operations; maintenance and planning)

(Projects Planned for the next three years)

Projects planned for the next three years	Required Budget
Completion of Bakone Substation	Completed
Bakone to Iota 66kV connector line	R110m
Securing of servitudes for 66kV Ring Feeders	R6,7m
Matlala Substation	R260M
New Pietersburg Substation	R 37M
Sigma to Matlala 66kV connector line	R110m
Tweefontein substation	R60m
Electrification of houses	R208m
Replace street lights with LED luminaires	R240m

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.6.3 Maintenance Plan for Electrical infrastructure

Maintenance Plan

- A **Maintenance Plan** is currently being developed with the assistance of the Asset team to plan and implement maintenance of infrastructure in an **organised and auditable fashion**.
- Funding allocation towards maintenance of infrastructure will in future be much easier.
- The City is currently **not honouring** its licence agreement with **NERSA** as far as maintenance of infrastructure is concerned.
- The funding allocation towards the maintenance of infrastructure currently stands at
  - Maintenance budget = R14m
  - Replace meter boxes and 11kV Oil switchgear = R16m

6.7 Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

Introduction

Polokwane municipality has been issued with the licence to distribute Electricity in the City and Seshego areas. The other areas and townships are supplied by Eskom who has capacity challenges already and busy improving that through construction of substations. Electricity is one of the basic service deliveries KPI for any licenced Municipality. The process of capacity provisioning includes construction and/or upgrading of substations and switching stations to be able to provide electricity as and when required. The delays in construction of substations means that some new developed areas will not be able to be provided with electricity.

Discussions

Annually the municipality do budget for the provisioning of bulk electrical infrastructure. CRR and INEP are used to provide infrastructure and electrification projects. Budget constrains causes some projects to be done way after their proposed construction period, which means some developmental areas will lack capacity to be connected. Township developments continues as some are done through private developers and some by COGHTA. Those by COGHTA are provided with gravel roads, water and sanitation. Electrical capacity provisioning is done by developers for private developments and by Polokwane Municipality for COGHTA and municipal developments.

6.7.1 Approved Townships List that Require Electrification

The following table is a report from Planning and Land Use management unit indicating the approved townships and those on planning to be implemented. Most of them shows water and sanitation completed, while electrical and taring of roads requires municipal budgets to be done.

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
1	**Polokwane X 72**	Farm Doornkraal	Approved Proclaimed	Middle income Low income	500 Government employee housing 300 RDP Units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections.	**R 64 000 000.00** **R33 000 000.00** RDP subsidies required

DRAFT

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)							
	TOWNSHIP NAME	**PROPERTY DESCRIPTION**	**STATUS**	**INCOME CATEGORY**	**ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS**	**ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED**	**ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION**
						Water and Sanitation Installed	
2	**Polokwane X 76**	Erf 15953 and Erf 15934 Polokwane X 76	Approved Proclaimed	Social Housing	240 housing units Residential 4	High density Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	**R96 000 000.00** CCG & top up subsidies secured. **R 9 600 000.00**
3	**Polokwane X 78**	Farm Doornkraal	Approved Proclaimed	Mixed income Groups	3000 units Residential 1 Mixed 2100 RDP units 500 high densities 400 GAP	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections . Res 1 Res 4 Res 1 Water and Sanitation Installed	**R 240 000 000.00** **R168 000 000.00** funding required. **R128 000.00** CCG & top up subsidies required. **R4 000 000.00** FLISP subsidies required
4	**Polokwane X 79**	Farm Doornkraal	Approved Proclaimed	Middle income	500 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections . Water and Sanitation Installed	**R 40 000 000.00**

DRAFT

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
5	**Polokwane X 106**	Portion 171 of the farm Doornkraal680 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category, Student Accommodation and Social Housing.	208 units Residential 1-190 Residential 2-18	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections. Water and Sanitation Installed	**R 6 640 000.00** RDP subsidies and R 9 500 000 for residential 2
6	**Polokwane X 107**	Portion 191 of the farm Doornkraal680 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category, Student Accommodation and Social Housing.	638 units 238 RDP 200 social housing Student 200 accommodation Residential 1-142 Residential 2-854	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Res 1 High densities Student beds Res 1 GAP Market Electrical Connections. Water and Sanitation Installed	R 51 040 000.00 R26 180 000.00 required. R51 200 000.00 R29 319 781.00 Funding required. R1 420 000.00 FLISP subsidies required. R8 540 000.00 FLISP subsidies required
7	**Polokwane X 86**	Remaining Extent of Portion 45 of the farm	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category	564 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections.	**R 45 120 000.00**

DRAFT

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)							
	TOWNSHIP NAME	**PROPERTY DESCRIPTION**	**STATUS**	**INCOME CATEGORY**	**ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS**	**ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED**	**ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION**
		Doornkraal680 LS				Water and Sanitation Installed	
8	**Polokwane X 121**	To be verified	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category	300 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections. Water and Sanitation Installed	**R 24 000 000.00**
9	**Polokwane X 126**	Engelschedoornboom 668 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category	500 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, electrical Connections. Installation in progress for Water and Sanitation	**R 40 000 000.00**
10	**Polokwane X 127**	Farm Engelschedoornboom 668 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category	500 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	**R 40 000 000.00**

DRAFT

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
11	**Polokwane X 133**	Farm Klipfontein 670 LS Farm Stoefontein 678 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Mixed income Groups	3000 units 2 000 RDP 1 000 GAP market Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation. RDP GAP market	R 240 000 000.00 **R220 000 000.00** subsidies required. R10 000 000.00 FLISP subsidies required
12	**Polokwane X 134**	Farm Vogelstruisfontein 667 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Mixed income Groups	2290 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	**R 366 400 000.00**
13	**Nirvana X 5**	Holding 74 and 75 Ivydale AH	Approved Proclaimed	Middle income category	100 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	**R 16 000 000.00**
14	**Seshego C**	Seshego	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income Category	To be verified 100 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation Installed	**R 16 000 000.00**
15	**Mankweng Unit C X 1**	Mankweng	Approved Proclaimed	Middle income category	402 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network,	**R 16 080 000.00**
16	**Mankweng Unit F**	Mankweng	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income Category	To be verified 500 UNITS Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	**R 80 000 000.00**

DRAFT

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)							
	TOWNSHIP NAME	**PROPERTY DESCRIPTION**	**STATUS**	**INCOME CATEGORY**	**ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS**	**ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED**	**ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION**
17	**Mankweng Unit G**	Mankweng	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income Category	To be verified 500 UNITS Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	**R 80 000 000.00**
18	**Mamadimo Park**	Portion 54 of the Farm Syferkuil 921 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income Category	1007 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	**R 161 120 000.00**
19	**Erf 514 and Erf 515 Annadale Ext 1**	Annadale	Approved Proclaimed	Social Housing	494 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity High density	**R 19 680 000.00** **R135 000 000.00** CCG & top up subsidies acquired
20	**Erf 6403 Portion 1 Pietersburg**	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	51 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	**R 2 040 000.00**
21	**Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg**	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	55 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	**R 2 200 000.00**
22	**Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg**	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	50 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	**R 2 200 000.00**
23	**Erf 8634 Pietersburg**	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	50 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	**R 2 200 000.00**
TOTAL						**R 1 659 320 000.00**	

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

DRAFT

6.7.2 Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)

The above developments require electricity and in some areas the construction of a substation or switching station to make sure there is capacity available for electrical connections. The following summary shows the cost implementation to provide electricity as some shown above are costs for reticulation without capacity provisioning.

Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)				
Total townships	**Total Low cost**	**Total Middle/High Income**	**Total Estimated Costs**	**Comments**
Polokwane Ext 72	300 @ R 30 000 000	500 @ R 80 000 000	**R 49 000 000**	Bulk capacity available from Alpha substation, however, increase of feeder cables are required.
Polokwane Ext 76		240 @ R 30 000 000	**R 7 400 000**	Bulk capacity available from Alpha substation, however, increase of feeder cables are required.
Polokwane Ext 78	3000 @ R 60 000 000	3000 @ R 75 000 000	**R 75 000 000**	Busy with 2000 sites. 1000 households completed It requires the completion of new Pietersburg to connect all sites. Portion 2 is already connected from Emdo temporary.
Polokwane Ext 79	500 @ R 30 000 000		**R 15 000 000**	Bulk capacity available from Alpha substation, however, increase of feeder cables are required.
Polokwane Ext. 86	564 @ R 30 000		**R 16 920 000**	No capacity. It depends on completion of New Pietersburg substation.

DRAFT

Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)				
Total townships	**Total Low cost**	**Total Middle/High Income**	**Total Estimated Costs**	**Comments**
Polokwane Ext 106	208 @ R 30 000 000		**R 6 000 000**	Capacity not available, can be connected temporarily from Luthuli 9L feeder. New 11KV switching station to be built through developers at Polokwane Ext. 109
Polokwane Ext. 107	438@ R30 000	200@ R75 000	**R 15 013 000**	Capacity not available, can be connected temporarily from Emdo ring. New 11KV switching station to be built through developers at Polokwane Ext.109
Polokwane Ext. 121	300@R 30 000		**R 9 000 000**	No capacity. It depends on completion of New Pietersburg substation.
Polokwane Ext.126	500 @ R 30 000 000		**R 15 000 000**	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line
Polokwane Ext. 127	500 @ R 30 000 000		**R 15 000 000**	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line
Polokwane Ext.133	2000 @ R40 000 000	1000 @ R 20 000 000	**R 60 000 000**	No Capacity to supply all households. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but Project to capacitate the area is due in 2025/26 financial year to supply

DRAFT

Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)				
Total townships	**Total Low cost**	**Total Middle/High Income**	**Total Estimated Costs**	**Comments**
				the area temporarily from Zone 8 substation
Polokwane Ext.134	2290 @ R 46 000 000		**R 46 000 000**	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line
Nirvana X 5	100 @ 3 000 000		**R 3 000 000**	Capacity available and could be connected from Epsilon substation through Southern Gate way substation.
Seshego C	100 @ R 2 500 000		**R 2 500 000**	Capacity available and can be connected from Zone 3 0r zone 6 ring
Mankweng Unit C X 1	402 @ 35 000		**R 14 070 000**	No capacity but Eskom to confirm
Erf 514 and Erf 515 Annadale Ext 1 (Garena)	494 @ R 30 000 000		**R 15 000 000**	Completed
Erf 6403 Portion 1 Pietersburg	51 @ R 1 600 000		**R 1 600 000**	Capacity available through Le-Rouxville
Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg	55 @ R 1 700 000		**R 1 700 000**	Capacity available through Le-Rouxville
Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg	50 @ R 1 500 000		**R 1 500 000**	Capacity available through Le-Rouxville
Erf 8634 Pietersburg	50 @ R 1 500 000		**R 1 500 000**	Capacity available from Epsilon substation
Design and Construct New Matlala Substation including feeder line from Alfa substation			**R 197 000 000**	The designs should be completed

DRAFT

Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)				
Total townships	**Total Low cost**	**Total Middle/High Income**	**Total Estimated Costs**	**Comments**
Design and Construct New Pietersburg substation			**R 36 000 000**	Installation of 3X11KV cables from Gamma to New Pietersburg substation completed, Switching station building and switch gear installations outstanding, however, there are some upgrading of Gamma Substation required.
Upgrading of Gamma substation			**R 70 000 000**	To add 1X20MVA transformer, the feeder bay, the substation building extension and switchgear.
Completion of Bakone Substation			**R 20 000 000**	Completed
Build 66kV Feeder between Bakone and IOTA Substations			**R 60 000 000**	To build a 66kV feeder that will connect Bakone and IOTA Substations to enable firm supply to all the municipality's substations. Design completed, busy with servitude negotiations
Total Budget Required			**R 710 840 000**	

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

DRAFT

6.8 Electricity Master Plan

The Electrical master plan shows the developments and projects to be implemented, when to implement those projects and the cost estimates. If network infrastructure development could

be done as indicated in the Master Plan, the above challenges could be avoided. The Master plan indicates that the designs for New Matlala, 66KV substation had to be started in 2020/21 financial year. It only started and how far behind schedule the developments are behind schedule.

6.9 Future Township Developments

The table below indicate the future municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of **engineering services.** These will be considered at five to ten-year plan and estimates shown will be revised in five years to come.

Future Municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of Engineering Services.

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
1	Not yet allocated	Portion 158 Sterkloop 688 LS	Planning Process	Middle income	700 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R **112 000 000.00** **R21 000 000** for Electrical connection from Epsilon
2	Not yet allocated	Portion 159 Sterkloop 688 LS	Planning Process	Middle income	700 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 112 000 000.00** **R21 000 000** for Electrical connections from Epsilon
3	Not yet allocated	Portion 160 Sterkloop 688 LS	Planning Process	Middle income	700 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 112 000 000.00** **R21 000 000** for Electrical connections from Epsilon
4	Ivydale Ext 35	Ivydale AH	Planning Process	Middle income	To be verified 400 UNITS Residential 1 Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation	**R 102 400 000.00** CCG & top up subsidies required.

DRAFT

Future Municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of Engineering Services.							
	TOWNSHIP NAME	**PROPERTY DESCRIPTION**	**STATUS**	**INCOME CATEGORY**	**ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS**	**ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED**	**ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION**
						including roads	**R 12 000 000 (electr)**
5	Polokwane X 40	To be verified	Planning Process	Middle income	To be verified 400 UNITS Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 64 000 000.00** **R76 057 141** (electr) Has court order and will be done once the place starts to be occupied
6	Ga Mothapo Integrated Human Settlement	Ga Mothapo Traditional Council	Planning Process	Mixed Income	5000 To be verified Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 800 000 000.00** Electricity provision by Eskom
7	Farm Hardetyd and Vrederust	Mamabolo Traditional Council	Planning Process	Low income	500 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 80 000 000.00** Electricity provision by Eskom
8	Solomdale /Sebayeng	Dikgale Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	500 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 80 000 000.00** Electricity provision by Eskom
9	Makgoba Village	Makgoba Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	300 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 24 000 000.00** Electricity provision by Eskom

DRAFT

Future Municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of Engineering Services.							
	TOWNSHIP NAME	**PROPERTY DESCRIPTION**	**STATUS**	**INCOME CATEGORY**	**ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS**	**ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED**	**ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION**
10	Mothibaskraal Village	Mothiba Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	500 units To be verified Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 80 000 000.00** Electricity provision by Eskom
11	Vlakfontein Juno Village	Matla Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	415 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 66 400 000.00** Electricity provision by Eskom
12	Boanatlou Village	Maraba Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	58 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 9 280 000.00** Electricity provision by Eskom
13	Mankgaile Village	Molepo Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	600 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	**R 96 000 000.00** Electricity provision by Eskom
						TOTAL **Total Electrical**	**R 1 699 680 000.00** **R 151 057 141**

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.9.1 Energy Services Challenges

The Polokwane City being the Capital of Limpopo Province, and the business hub, coupled with urbanisation contributes to high backlog into service delivery. The ageing infrastructure

DRAFT

also needs to be considered, thus sharing the budget of electricity provisioning projects. Commitment of multi-year projects may allow annual budget provisioning to some of the projects.

Discussions with Cigicell revealed that their current funding models does not make provision for the implementation of projects of this nature. They, however, agreed to investigate the possibility of funding such projects and will revert to the municipality in due course.

IUDG was identified as another source of funding. The fund was used to co-fund R12,000,000.00 for the installation of the Bakone to Iota 66kV feeder

6.9.2 Financial Impact

The municipality should provide at least an annual budget of **R150 000 000** per year for the next five years for electrical capacity building and township developmental projects. A total of **R740 840 000 million rand** is required to implement the medium term **(next 5 years**) projects.

6.9.3 Capacity availability in identified Townships

That Energy services be provided with a column to indicate the capacity availability in the identified townships to be developed and the substation to tap on the approved township developments and future projects, That Budget allocation to an amount of **R150 000 000** per annum be provided for urban electrification, That COGHTA be requested to provide budget for electricity to its developmental projects.

That the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy be requested to fund urban capacity provisioning for urban electrification projects, a funding model be negotiated with CIGICELL to assist the municipality with the implementation of electrical projects.

City Planning and Property Management is aware of the projects and support that Energy services plan accordingly.

That municipality plan an all-inclusive budget when they build new low-cost housing

6.10 The Electrification Acceleration Process

The acceleration process helped the municipality to complete all its villages in 2017/18 financial year and started electrifying extensions and newly established villages. In 2018/19 financial year, Polokwane municipality absorbed major portion of the former Aganang municipality, and created a cluster called Aganang with five wards (40,41,42,43,44 and 45).

Electrification in Aganang was also completed except extensions and new villages. In 2018/19 the new priority list was included that included Aganang cluster. It was discovered later that one of the conditions to incorporated Aganang was to make sure that each financial year, there should be an electrification project in Aganang cluster as well. This was a Resolution of Council when Aganang was Merged to Polokwane Municipality.

DRAFT

The National Treasury instructed the municipality to pay back the loan from 2017/18 financial year and the annual electrification processes reduced as the municipality was supposed to be pay back the loan in two financial years. The INEP allocation had then to be divided into two, a portion to continue with the work and a portion paying back the loan. CRR money could not be used because there is no revenue generation from rural electrification and was found to be an unfunded mandate to use CRR in rural Polokwane.

6.10.1 Rural Electrification Backlog

The current rural electrification backlog is **18 748** as per priority list and **8629** as per statistics 2016.The urban electrification backlog is **9 445** which covers the newly established townships in Seshego and Polokwane.

6.10.2 Challenges of Rural Electrification

1. Insufficient budget.
2. Housing development projects by COGHSTA which provides housing, water and roads but no electricity.
3. The way in which traditional leaders allocates sites need improvement.
4. Capacity challenge by Eskom.
5. Fast growing villages around the city.

6.11 Installation of High Mast Lights in rural areas

Polokwane municipality Council adopted the priority list for installation of to supply wards High Mast lights in Rural Villages. Each Financial year a budget for High must is approved.

The Provincial Government Through the Office of the premier have Requested to Municipal Council to Prioritize Traditional Council Offices First in process of installation of High mast Lights. As part of intergovernmental Relation Polokwane Municipality has started to install Apollo lights at Tribal Offices.

6.11.1 Challenges of High Mast lights

1. Insufficient budget
2. Eskom capacity and delays in energizing
3. Monthly maintenance costs and unstable consumption payments costs

6.11.2 High Mast Lights Recommendations

That High Mast Lights be included in UIDG funding, That CCR budget be allocated for urban electrification. That COGHTA be requested to fund electrification as well as public lighting within their housing provisioning. That solar technology be used for high mast lighting. That communication be sent out to affected communities on the status of their uncompleted High Mast lights

DRAFT

6.12 Streetlights

The City of Polokwane is working on a comprehensive plan to restore the functionality of these lights promptly to address the concern of cable theft.

The City acknowledges the urgent need to address faulty street lights across the city and beyond. Communities have indicated to the Municipality significant safety concerns. Many residents have reported that their streets are completely dark at night, creating an environment conducive to criminal activity.

The plan includes both short-term measures to address immediate safety concerns and long-term strategies to ensure ongoing maintenance and reliability. Part of the plan involves installing a new type of street light. Unlike traditional lights, which rely solely on grid power, these new installations harness solar energy, making them more resilient to power outages and reducing their environmental footprint.

The City of Polokwane has already installed these solar-powered lights across various parts of the city, including the main entry and exit in Ben Harris Street in Westenburg. Residents expect similar installations on other streets to help alleviate crime.

The City of Polokwane is committed to creating safer and well-lit public spaces for all residents, adding that repairing street lights in areas prone to criminal activity is a top priority of the Energy Directorate.

6.13 Fine for illegal Connections of Electricity

Council of the City of Polokwane council has approved fines to be imposed to those that are found to have bridged the meters. The report is undergoing gazetting process before implementation.

6.14 Streetlights Repairs in the City CBD

The City of Polokwane has resolved to install only solar powered lights in the city and Seshego. To date 645 solar powered streetlights has already been installed. 1700 ordered and a further 2000 solar streetlights will be installed by end of 2027 June.

DRAFT

CHAPTER Seven: Environmental and Social Analysis

7.1. ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS

Every citizen has the right to an environment which is not harmful to their health or well-being and to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations through reasonable legislative and other measures that prevent pollution and ecological degradation, promote conservation and secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.

People depend on healthy ecosystems and sufficient natural resources to support their livelihoods. Ecosystem services provide physical resources such as clean air, water, food, medicinal plants, wood as well as the aesthetic value. The viability of these ecosystem services is a key factor in the economy, essential to poverty eradication and our national goals of shared and accelerated growth. Polokwane Municipality has a role to play in the management of biodiversity assets and ecological infrastructure. The municipality of Polokwane carries key responsibilities of implementing the important environmental legislations as well as several national strategies and policies relating to biodiversity and sustainable development.

7.1.1 Climate Description

Polokwane Municipality lies in the summer rainfall region and has a warm climate. Frost is rare. The highest temperatures occur during December and January. The daily average high temperature is 28.1 degrees Celsius in January, and the highest recorded temperature is 36.8 degrees Celsius. The average minimum winter temperature is 4.4 degrees Celsius in July with a record low of -3.5 degrees Celsius in 1964. The mean annual daily variation is 15 degrees Celsius.

The mean annual precipitation for the region is 478mm. Most precipitation falls between October and March with the peak period being December/January. Rainfall between the months of May and September is generally low with the average precipitation rate for the period June to August being 4,6mm.

Large-scale surface airflow over the region is dominated throughout the year by easterly and north-easterly winds. October and November are typically windy with wind speeds up to 13.8m/s. The frequency of southerly winds increases during June and July.

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.1.2 Pollution Levels - Air Quality

The purchase of an air pollution monitor was approved during the 2015/2016 budget. The monitor will be used in different areas every quarter.

- Polokwane Smelter (SOx, solid particulates, NOx).
- Municipal Landfill (odours, carbon monoxide, methane, particulates).
- Industrial Activities (coal burning and related processes).
- Ready-mix Materials quarry (dust).
- Motocross track (dust, noise, carbon monoxide).

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

DRAFT

7.1.3 Topography

The Municipal area is divided into two rough topographical units, namely 'Moderately Undulating Plains' (mainly the eastern half of the municipal area) and 'Strongly Undulating Plains' in the west. The Polokwane Municipal area is situated on the so-called 'Pietersburg Plateau', which is bordered in the south by the Strydpoort Mountains, in the west and north by the Waterberg Mountains and in the east by the Great Escarpment. The highest part of the Plateau lies in the south near the Strydpoort Mountains which forms the watershed between the Oliphant's and Sand River systems.

There are a number of ridges which form constraints on development due to their visual exposure, potential as recreation or educational sites, former importance as sacred sites (likelihood of heritage sites) and likelihood of supporting sensitive plant communities.

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.1.4 Geology

The underlying geology consists of medium-grained, yellowish, laminated sandstone of the Makgabeng Formation of the Waterberg Group. It is also characterized by granite, biotite granite-gneiss, pegmatite, lava and pyroclasts.

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.1.5 Hydrology

There are 19 Catchment Areas represented in the municipal area. This includes 9 small portions of larger catchments outside the Municipal boundaries and the remaining 10 catchment areas are within the municipal boundary.

The Sand River catchment is drained by the Sand and Blood river. These are indicated as perennial streams but are often dry in the winter. The Blood river has its origin in the west of the Municipal Area and flows eastward between Blood river and Seshego. It is impounded in the Seshego Dam, and also joins the Sand River to the north of Polokwane City. The City of Polokwane has a number of storm water retention dams and storm water channels that eventually discharge into the Sand River via the Sterkloop Spruit and open storm water channels. There are a number of important wetland areas in the catchment. These areas support rare or endangered frog species and plant and red data bird species.

The utilisation of water in the catchment is mainly underground water abstraction via boreholes. There are a multitude of boreholes pumping into a number of reservoirs and tanks of various sizes in the municipal area. This aquifer is under threat from two major pollution sources, namely, the Polokwane Cemetery and the Seshego Sewerage Works.

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

DRAFT

7.1.6 Vegetation

There are 6 Vegetation Types that occur in the Polokwane Municipal Area. The largest Veld-Types are as follows: Pietersburg Plateau False Grassveld, Sourish Mixed Bushveld, Sour Bushveld, Mixed Bushveld, North-Eastern Mountain Sourveld and a relatively small area of Low Veld Sour Bushveld.

The veld is currently badly degraded and overgrazed and requires intervention from the municipality. North Eastern Mountain Grassveld occurs in the southern parts of Molepo-Maja-Chuene cluster and in the eastern part of the Mankweng cluster, along the Strydpoort Mountains, including 280 bird species, 22 butterfly species, 4 frog species, 12 mammal species, 6 reptile species and 5 scarab species.

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.1.7 Soils

The Pietersburg Plateau contains mainly grey iron-containing lateritic soil types that have been formed over the granite. These are sandy or gravel in texture and usually contain a hard iron containing bottom layer of hard pan. The area also contains, in certain areas, non-leached, black clay soil while to the West, light brown sandy soil of the Waterberg Sandstone and Lime deposits occur. The escarpments are also characterized by the round granite mounds that were formed by the intrusion of younger granites.

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.1.8 Heritage Resources

The fact that the municipality has not yet undertaken a comprehensive heritage survey of the entire municipal area, the heritage information on record is very limited. There are heritage sites that are currently recorded, namely, the **Bakone Malapa site** on the Chuenespoort Road which has been developed as a Museum and Mankweng **Rock Art Site** located in Mankweng which is linked to the Turf Loop Dam and provides other recreation activities such as hiking, picnicking and water sports. Other sites that provide good research material are the **Irish House Museum, Hugh Exton Museum and the Art Museum**.

The Zion Christian Church (ZCC)

The Zion Christian Church (ZCC) forms a unique heritage in Limpopo Province. Every year, mainly during the Easter holidays and in September, millions of ZCC congregation members flock to this area for worship. The municipality has to capitalise on this unique advantage besides the fact that there is a by-pass directing these people to travel along the periphery of the City. Businesses in Polokwane should take advantage of this unique opportunity and gear it to provide a service to these people e.g. Open until late at night. There is a need for the municipality to develop a heritage database that will be looking at the Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS).

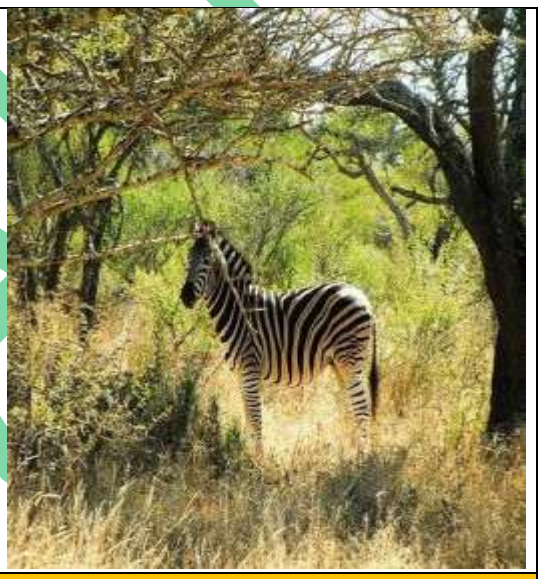
Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

DRAFT

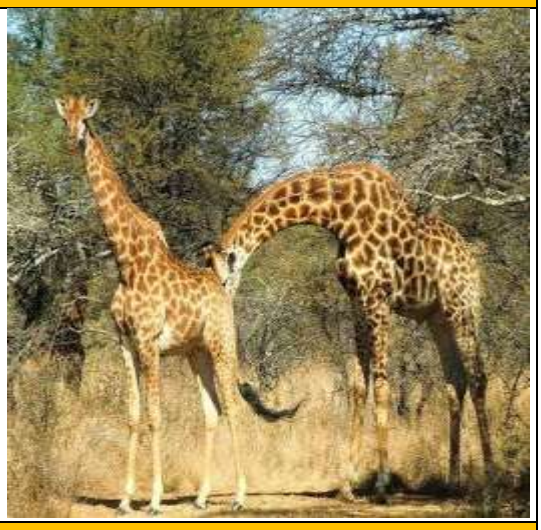
7.1.9 Polokwane Game Reserve

Polokwane Game Reserve is just a 10 minutes' drive from the City Centre Covering approximately **3200** hectares, this scenic reserve is one of the largest municipal reserves in South Africa.

The Game Reserve still has its unspoilt bush veld and meandering drives and it's also a home to approximately 20 game species. Amongst the favourites are the rare white rhino (currently placed in a secure environment outside the reserve, sable antelope and giraffe. The centre of the city has a large bronze statue of necking giraffe so the animal's association with the City is a special one. The park is also the nesting place of approximately 200 bird species. It is a shining example of preservation of the threatened Pietersburg Plateau False Grassland and plant 0enthusiasts will discover 110 different grasses, approximately 280 flowering plants and 68 tree species. It is eco-tourism at its best.
It is important to note that, the following sensitive areas within Polokwane municipality must remain protected from development (i.e. no development within 150m):



Polokwane Game Reserve 1



Polokwane Game Reserve 2

Sterpark Koppie (one of only two habitats worldwide for endemic endangered **Euphorbia Clivicola**, a large Aloe marlothii 'forest', high geological and microclimate diversity, over 20 tree species which is the highest and therefore the most visible point in Polokwane).

Flora Park wetland (a seasonal wetland harbouring the only known community of endemic **Haemanthus montanus** bulbs and a rare form of Serapegia);

Buffer Zone along the Sand River of 100m on either side of the channel. The profusion of Syringa and other invasive weeds must be addressed as part of a planned rehabilitation strategy.

The **Suid Street drainage channel** (a dense stand of Vachelia karroo), which provides an ideal linear open space.

Unprotected Sensitive plant communities – The endemic plant communities (e.g., **Euphorbia clivicola** and **Euphorbia groenewaldii)** and other sensitive communities of high biodiversity around wetlands and ridges in the Polokwane area are not protected in any way and are therefore under threat from development, removal, habitat destruction, etc.

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.1.10 Polokwane Frog Colony

Polokwane Frog Colony Reserve is a (breeding grounds for 12 Frog species including endangered Giant Bullfrog). - **Giant Bullfrog - Pyxicephalus adspersus**

Giant Bullfrog - Pyxicephalus adspersus

Common name	Scientific name	Status in Polokwane
Giant Bullfrog	Pyxicephalus adspersus	Restricted to a few seasonal wetlands scattered throughout the Polokwane Municipal Area

The **Giant bullfrog** (Pyxicephalus adspersus) is a species of frog in the Pyxicephalidae family. It is also known as the **pixie frog** due to its Latin name. Its natural habitats are dry savanna, moist savanna, subtropical or tropical dry shrubland, intermittent freshwater lakes, intermittent freshwater marshes, arable land, pastureland, and canals and ditches. This is a large frog, with males weighing 1.4 kg (3.1 lb), though can easily exceed 2 kg (4.4 lb); females are half the size, making it unique among frogs, as in most amphibian's females are usually larger than males. Males can reach 23 cm (9 inches) while females are much smaller. The Giant Bullfrog is the largest amphibian found in southern Africa. Areas has been identified within the Polokwane Municipal areas which serve as habitat for this species. the species needs to be protected.

DRAFT

7.1.11 Moletjie Nature Reserve

Moletjie Nature Reserve is a habitat for the rare and **endangered Cape Vulture**. This Nature Preservation Reserve is located at Moletjie, alongside Mmadikoti and Setlogong villages. It is Famously known for the beautiful mountain which is home for the **rare Cape Vultures.**

The reserve is a critical stronghold for the species and provides a safe nesting area, despite recent population declines in the colony. Visitors can see the vultures in their natural habitat while participating in activities like hiking.

- **Habitat:** The reserve provides a home for Cape Vultures, which are considered a vulnerable species.
- **Colony Status:** The colony at Moletjie Nature Reserve is vital for conservation, though it is currently experiencing a decline.
- **Conservation Importance:** The reserve plays a crucial role in protecting and studying the vultures, highlighting the challenges and importance of vulture conservation.
- **Visitor Activities:** can visit the reserve to see the vultures, with access to activities like hiking.

Moletjie Nature Reserve

Moletjie Nature Reserve

Moletjie Nature Reserve

Moletjie Nature Reserve

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.1.12 Biodiversity Summary for the City of Polokwane

Biodiversity - is all the different kinds of life you'll find in one area—the variety of animals, plants, fungi, and even microorganisms like bacteria that make up our natural world. Each of these species and organisms work together in ecosystems, like an intricate web, to maintain balance and support life

Biodiversity is the extraordinary variety of life on Earth — from genes and species to ecosystems and the valuable functions they perform. For at least 3.8 billion years, a complex web of life has been evolving on Earth. Millions of species inhabit land, freshwater, and ocean ecosystems. All species, including human beings, are intricately linked by their interactions with each other and the environments they live in.

Biodiversity —is the variety of all living things and their interactions. Biodiversity changes over time as extinction occurs and new species evolve. Scientists often speak of **three levels** of diversity:

1. **Species,**
2. **Genetic, and**
3. **Ecosystem diversity**.

In fact, these levels cannot be separated. Each is important, interacting with and influencing others. Changes at one level can cause changes at other levels. Biodiversity includes not only species we consider **rare, threatened, or endangered** but also every living thing—from humans to organisms we know little about, such as microbes, fungi, and invertebrates. Biodiversity refers to the species diversity of the **flora and fauna** found in an ecosystem and is often used as an indicator of 'ecosystem health'. Abundant biodiversity may represent health in one ecosystem, while in another the ecosystem may be optimal when occupied by only a few endemic species. Human activities, water quality and invasive species can alter and threaten the biodiversity of an ecosystem and thus the overall integrity of the ecosystem

7.1.13 Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004

This is an Act to provide for the management and conservation of South Africa's biodiversity within the framework of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998; the protection of species and ecosystems that warrant national protection; the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources; the fair and equitable sharing. The Main objectives of this Act are:

(a) to provide, within the framework of the National Environmental Management Act,

- the management and conservation of biological diversity within the Republic and of the components of such biological diversity;
- the use of indigenous biological resources in a sustainable manner; and
- the fair and equitable sharing among stakeholders of benefits arising from bioprospecting involving indigenous biological resources;

(b) to give effect to ratified international agreements relating to biodiversity which are binding on the Republic;

(c) to provide for cooperative governance in biodiversity management and conservation; and (d) to provide for a South African National Biodiversity Institute to assist in achieving the objectives of this Act." Biological diversity" or "biodiversity" here means the variability among living organisms from all sources including, terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and the ecological complexes of which they are part and also includes diversity within species, between species, and of ecosystems. The Act applies to the territory of the Republic including its territorial waters, exclusive economic zone and continental shelf.

7.1.14 Biodiversity By-Laws for the City of Polokwane

- The municipality is considering the development of Biodiversity By-Laws.

7.1.15 Euphorbia Clivicola

The Clivicola is located on the farm Krugersburg in Pietersburg Extension 11. The plant is a critically endangered species and has been listed as a CITES Schedule II species. It is only found in **Polokwane** and **Percy Five** in the whole wide world. The plant needs to be protected for the sake of future generations. Less than 300 plants are left in the habitat.

7.1.16 Euphorbia groenewaldii

Another endangered species that needs to be protected is the groenewaldii. The species forms part of the biodiversity of the Pietersburg false plateau. Plans are in place to fence off the area where these plans are located through creation of botanical garden.

7.2. CLIMATE CHANGE AND GLOBAL WARMING

When talking about climate, allusion is made to the long-term average weather patterns of a given region (i.e., temperature, pressure, precipitation). In this context, climate change then refers to perceived increases in the long-term average temperature of the earth's climate system. This temperature increase alters typical processes of ice formation and melting, changes the hydrological cycles and modifies the air and ocean currents. As a consequence, social, biological and ecological systems are also affected; and there is a strong threat on food supply, health, availability of water resources, economic growth, etc.

The understanding of climate change has been growing and today scientist is 95% certain that the perceived increases in global temperature are mostly caused by the concentration of Greenhouse Gases (GHG) in the atmosphere and other human activities. Solar radiation penetrates into the earth warming its surface; however only a fraction of this radiation is returned back to the space as most of it is trapped by the accumulation of these GHG gasses. The trapped radiation goes back to heat up the earth's surface, increasing its temperature just as a greenhouse operates.

Most of the GHG are present naturally in the atmosphere in small proportions; however, since the industrial revolution their concentration has notably risen. This rise has primarily been

DRAFT

linked to the combustion of fossil fuels driven by the demand for energy, goods and services, and to the conversion of natural ecosystems to intensive land use.

Climate change is becoming increasingly apparent in Limpopo Province. The usual manifestations of climate change are evident by the long-term changes in weather indicators such as rainfall or temperature. Polokwane Municipality, as a secondary city, should play a role in planning and implementing Climate change mitigation strategies.

Rainfall

Typical rainfall for the Limpopo province ranges from 200mm in the hot dry areas to 1500mm in the high rainfall areas, with most of it happening between October and April. Rainfall in the province varies significantly between years. There has been a perceptible decrease in the total rainfall on much of the eastern part of Southern Africa including most of the Limpopo River Basin This can have serious impacts on the water balance of the region, affecting the largely rural population dependent on agriculture.

Drivers and Pressures

Without a doubt, the main drivers of climate change are population and economic growth. As the population numbers increase, more people aspire to higher material standards - creating an even greater demand for goods and services as for the energy to provide these. Transportation, industry, commerce, and the residential sector are the greatest contributors to GHG emissions, due to their high demand of energy which is supplied from non-renewable sources. The energy sector is responsible for about 89% of the national emissions of CO2, mainly from energy industries (57%), transportation (9%) and manufacturing and construction (9%) Other sources of emissions are industrial processes and agriculture and land usage.
Source: Limpopo Environmental Outlook Report

7.2.1 Climate Change Response Strategies

Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies

a) Does the City of Polokwane Have Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies?

- ***Yes – City of Polokwane finalized its Climate Change risk and vulnerability report and climate Adaptation Action Plan in July 2024, led by CSIR with municipal input. The plan is now integrated into the 2025/26 IDP under Vision 2030: Smart City.***

b) **IF No** -What is the plan for Developing the Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies?

- ***N/A***

c) **If Yes** -When was it Developed?

- ***Developed and finalized in July 2024. It has been partially incorporated into the 2025/26 IDP cycle.***

DRAFT

d) Was the Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies Adopted by Council?

- ***Not yet adopted***

e) What are the **Challenges** in the Implementation of Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies.?

- ***Awaiting Council adoption.***

- ***Other key challenges now include: securing dedicated budget allocations, mainstreaming climate actions across municipal departments and ensuring community-level participation in adaptation programmes.***

f) Does the City of Polokwane Need Support on the **Climate Change Functions?**

- ***Yes – Support is required for capacity building, monitoring systems and financing mechanisms to implement adaptation actions.***

(g) Was there any Previous Engagement with **National/Provincial** Department of Environmental Affairs Regarding the Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies -Briefly Explain what the engagement was all about and what was Resolved?

- ***Yes – Engagements on the development of the draft technical guidelines for climate change needs and response assessment and implementation plans in response to section 17(1) of the National Climate Change Act 22 of 2024. Have since expanded to include CSIR, DHS, and Limpopo Provincial Government. Collaboration now focuses on operationalizing the Adaptation Action Plan and aligning with the Limpopo Development Plan.***

(H) Does the City of Polokwane have an allocated Budget to address the **Climate Change Functions?**

- ***No – A provisional allocation should be made in the 2026/27 IDP and in phases. Funding remains limited and it will be dependent on external partnerships to unroll all the plans as indicated.***

Additional information required as highlighted during the presentation

(I)Amendment of disaster management plan to include climate change response

- ***Polokwane municipality this financial year has amended its disaster management plan to include climate change response and adaptation plan.***

Waste management

(J). Availability of IWMP adopted

- ***Polokwane municipality IWMP was adopted by Council and has recently been endorsed by MEC***

Biodiversity

(K) availability of Biodiversity by laws

- ***Polokwane municipality to prepare a draft Biodiversity by law and ensure its finalization for adoption and implementation***

7.2.2 Climate Change Response Plan

A climate change response plan is a strategy to address climate change by reducing emissions and adapting to the climate change that's already happening. Here are some examples of climate change response plans: This plan aims to stop the increase in greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions by 2020-2025, stabilize them for up to 10 years, and then reduce them. This plan sets targets to achieve a 100% renewable electricity supply by 2025 and 2027.

Because we are already committed to some level of climate change, responding to climate change involves a two-pronged approach: **Reducing emissions of** and stabilizing the levels of heat-trapping greenhouse gases in the atmosphere ("mitigation"); Adapting to the climate change already in the pipeline **("adaptation")**

7.2.3 Ways to reduce Climate Change

Ways to reduce Climate Change include the Following i.e.

a. Saving energy at home
b. Changing your home's energy source
c. Using public transportation, walking, or biking
d. Switching to an electric vehicle
e. Reducing, reusing, repairing, and recycling
f. Eating more vegetables
g. Throwing away less food
h. Ending reliance on fossil fuels
i. Using renewable energy
j. Improving energy efficiency

7.2.4 Plans to address Climate change in South Africa

1) **National Climate Change Response Policy (NCCRP)**-This policy was approved in 2011 and is a comprehensive plan to address climate change in the short, medium, and long term. The policy's objectives include: Managing the impacts of climate change and Contributing to the global effort to stabilize greenhouse gas concentrations

2) **National Climate Change Adaptation Strategy (NCCAS)** –This **10-year plan** is South Africa's adaptation plan and is based on the country's commitments under the Paris Agreement. The NCCAS is reviewed every five years.

DRAFT

3) **Just Energy Transition (JET) Investment Plan -** This plan outlines actions and investments to reduce the carbon emissions of South Africa's energy sector. The plan focuses on investments in electricity infrastructure, new energy vehicles, green hydrogen, and skills development.

4) **National Climate Change Response Database** -This database allows project managers to upload information on their projects and provide updates. The database supports climate change monitoring and evaluation. Some other actions that can be taken to address climate change include: carbon pricing, advances in technology, enhanced competition in the sector, water conservation measures, and reducing energy use.

5) **Invest in renewable Energy** - Changing our main energy sources to clean and renewable energy is the best way to stop using fossil fuels. These include technologies like solar, wind, wave, tidal and geothermal power

7.2.5 Impact of Cities on Climate Change

Cities act as the concentration of economic activity within any region. Cities are therefore consumers of the vast majority of natural resources within the country and act as a major contributor to environmental degradation. Although urbanization is the driving force for modernization, economic growth and development, there is increasing concern about the effects of expanding cities, principally on human health, livelihoods and the environment.

The implications of rapid urbanization and demographic trends for employment, food security, water supply, shelter and sanitation, especially the disposal of wastes (solid and liquid) that the cities produce are staggering. This intense utilisation of natural resources has severe effects on the natural environment within the region causing it the ecosystems within the area to become severely distressed.

The urban landscape has highly concentrated populations that are serviced by major infrastructure, which renders them vulnerable to the impacts of climate change and environmental degradation. These impacts may be warmer temperatures, fiercer storms and increases in rainfall over shorter periods, contributing to the exposure of the society to flash floods and other natural disasters. At the same time, better urban planning, policies and service delivery infrastructure choices can reduce energy use, greenhouse gas emissions, improve the resilience of urban infrastructure to climate change, and minimize the impact of climate change on the poor, thus shaping future trends.

Addressing the effects of climate change, environmental degradation and reduction of GHG emissions not only improves the natural environment, ecosystem services and living habitat, but also helps Cities in three dimensions of sustainability: **economic, environmental, and social.**

Climate change is not just an environmental issue and more importantly it is not an issue which should be addressed in isolation. The impacts of climate change and the varying parameters in which planning for these should occur, cut across all sectors and ultimately culminate in direct impacts on the city's ability to deliver sustainable services. issues pertaining to climate change risks and vulnerabilities relate to

DRAFT

- Increasing temperatures impacting on social welfare and natural assets.
- Increased rainfall which could lead to infrastructure damage, particularly with regards to road infrastructure.
- Water service disruption due to increasing rainfall overburdening existing system capacity. Subsequently concerns were raised pertaining to the potential contamination to potable water as a result of ineffective and under capacitated service infrastructure.
- Increased dry spells will lead to a heightened need for water and again the over-capacitating of an already strained resource network.
- Changing weather patterns will greatly affect the agricultural sector of the EMM leading to inter alia reduced agricultural production.

7.2.6 City of Polokwane Climate Change Response Strategy

- Development of City of Polokwane Climate Change Response Strategy**.**
- The City of Polokwane just got funded by GIZ through assistance of DFFE to start developing climate change response plan. The Climate Change Risk Vulnerability was completed

Solar Energy

As part of Free Basic Electricity, the municipality has provided households with solar **Panels.** Plans are in place to increase the provision of **solar Panels** to other parts of the municipality.

7.2.7 Environmental Challenges

The following is a generalized summary of the existing Environmental problems encountered within the municipal area:

- Waste Management
- Mine and Industrial site rehabilitation
- Sinkholes.
- Depletion of Soil nutrients
- Soil erosion
- Reduction in scenic value
- Deforestation
- Overgrazing
- Invasive alien's plants
- Unprotected Sensitive plant communities
- Borrow pits.
- Illegal Sand mining
- Aging urban forest
- Illegal dumping

General Challenging issues

There is a need to develop and maintain rural cemeteries, burial sites and recreational facilities. There is no proper control and coordination of identification process of suitable land that should be utilised for burial purposes; burial site ends up being established on

DRAFT

environmentally sensitive areas. However, the municipality has completed the process of engaging traditional authorities in identifying ideal or suitable sites for the establishment of regional parks and regional cemeteries in rural areas.

7.2.8 Major Environmental Achievements

Item	Progress
Greening	Polokwane Municipality planted **3094** trees in 2024/25 Financial Year and in the year 2025/2026 2618 trees planted across the City
Arbor day celebration.	The municipality successfully hosted and celebrated National Arbor at Ga-Mothapo
National Arbor City Awards	Polokwane Municipality entered Arbor City competition.
Invasive Alien plant control	Alien invasive plant species were eradicated from Sterkloop channel and other open spaces.
Kroomdraai Plantation	Polokwane Municipality through Asset Management Business Unit has appointed Valuer to perform valuation count of plantation Kroomdraai forest. Council owns portion 4 No 1025 Kroomdraai plantation farm which is located at Haenerstburg, with these GPS coordinates 23º 54'10.59" S 29º 56.09.51" E. The farm is about **49 hectors** of which 41 hectares in planted. The main use of the land is forestry with pine trees (Pinus elliottii). The valuation was completed. Polokwane Municipality has appointed service provider for harvesting the plantation.
Future environmental plans	The State of the Environment Report, the Strategic Environmental Assessment report, Environmental Strategic Framework report and Environmental Management Plan to be reviewed and shall commence once funded.
Cemetery Management system	A new online system is being introduced for Cemetery Management in collaboration with the GIS section of the Planning SBU.
Maintenance of parks	Detailed activity-based operational/maintenance plans have been developed for all the parks within the Municipality
EPWP	Environmental Management have one project funded through EPWP grant, namely Urban Forestry

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.2.9 Provincial Intervention for Environmental Management – LEDET

LEDET Interventions For Environmental Management				
PROGRAMME NAME	**PROJECT DESCRIPTION/TYPE OF STRUCTURE**	**PROGRAMME DESCRIPTION**	**DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY**	**LOCAL MUNICIPALITY**
Environmental Empowerment Services	**Limpopo Green Schools competition**	Schools' competition to promote green economy	Capricorn	All locals
	Tree planting	Promote planting of trees to mitigate for climate change	Capricorn	All locals
		LEDET		
	Environmental knowledge Capacity building	Environmental capacity building workshops to wards committees and Traditional Leader	Capricorn	All locals

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.2.10 DFFE Interventions for Greening

DFFE Interventions For Greening
DFFE intervention for greening was through working with Polokwane Municipality in planting trees at **Ga-Mamabolo, Bjatladi, Ga-Mothapo, Ga-Mashashane and Moletjie.**

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.2.11 Approved Capital Projects

	Project Name	Project Description	Budget
1	**Greening Programme**	Procurement and planting of trees.	R 2,608.696

DRAFT

	Project Name	Project Description	Budget
2	**Construction of Ablution Facility at Mankweng Parks**	Construction of ablution facility at Mankweng Parks	R 1,304.348
3	**Grass cutting equipment**	Procurement of grass cutting equipment	R 2 500 000
4	**Upgrading of Game Reserve Facilities**	Refurbishment of Game Reserve Facilities (Chalets, kudu house and lapas)	R 2000 000
5	**Development of regional parks in Rural areas**	Development of regional park in Rural areas	R 1,739.130
6	**Purchase of Land for New Mankweng Cemetery**	Purchase of land for New Mankweng Cemetery for Burial Sites in Mankweng	R 700 000.00
7	**Development of Heroes Acre in Silicon Cemetery**	Development of Heroes Acre in Silicon Cemetery	R 500 000.00
8	**Greening Programme for Disteneng**	Planting of trees at Disteneng	R 869,565.00
9	**Upgrading of Tom Naude**	Various upgrades, Security improvement, installation of Apollo Solar Lights	R 3,478.261
10	**Upgrading of Triangle Park**	Upgrading of Triangle Park	R5 347 826.00

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.2.12 Construction of ablution facilities at Mankweng Zone 1 Park

Mankweng Zone 1 Park

Upgrading of Triangle Park

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

DRAFT

7.2.13 Upgrading of Triangle Park

7.2.14 Upgrading of Tom Naude Park

DRAFT

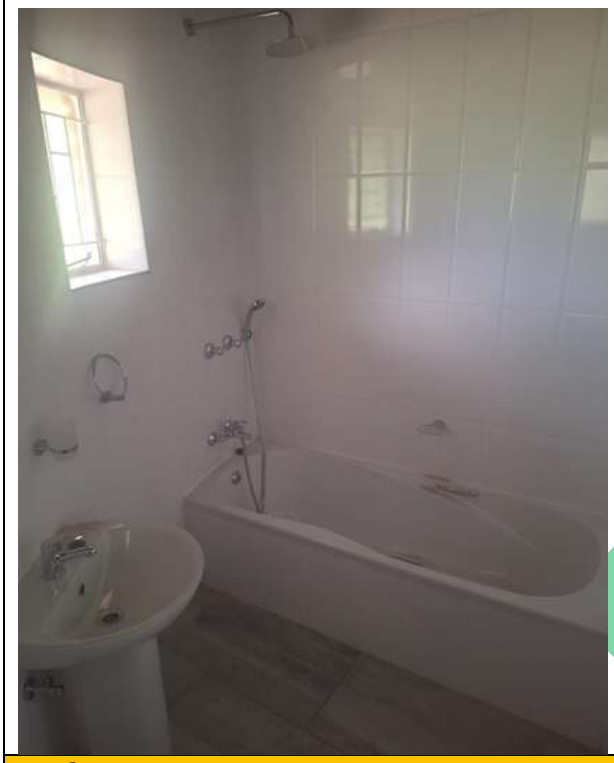
Tom Naude Park

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

DRAFT

7.2.15 Refurbishment of Chalets at Municipal Game Reserve

Tilling	After Installation of Kitchen Units

	
Bathroom	**After Installation of Wall wardrobes**

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.2.16 Polokwane Environmental Forum

Polokwane Environmental Forum was established by City of Polokwane with the aim of addressing the environmental challenges in a coordinated manner within Polokwane City. Environmental management SBU being the custodian of the forum. Environmental challenges such as illegal dumping and illegal sand mining just to mention the few are addressed during the meetings. Meetings for the Forum are held once quarterly. The following are the key external stakeholders i.e., LEDET, Capricorn District Municipality, DEA, SAB, Polokwane Anglo Smelters, Coca Cola and University of Limpopo. Internal SBU's that are part of stakeholders include Waste, Environmental Health, Water, Environmental Management, Planning, Energy and GIS.

7.2.17 Capricorn District Environmental Management Forum(CDEMF)

This forum is coordinated at District level (**Capricorn District)** and of which Polokwane Municipality is an active member of the forum.

7.2.18 Arbor Day Celebration and Greening Programme

Polokwane Municipality has celebrated Arbor day through tree planting and provision of fruit trees under the theme **"My tree, oxygen"**. The municipality has provided over 1000 trees to

Ga-Mothapo area during September 2025, while other trees were planted in schools, churches, sidewalks, parks, households etc.

Arbor Day Celebration at Ga-Mothapo Traditional Authority

Tree Planting at Ga-Mothapo Traditional Authority

Tree Planting During Arbor Month at Ga-Mothapo Traditional Authority

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

Greening Programme

Greening Programme

Greening Programme

7.3 Maintenance of Parks and Open Spaces (48 x Municipal Parks)

The City of Polokwane like other municipalities has both the developed and undeveloped parks which are 48 in total and requires continuous maintenance: 48 parks are listed below:

7.3.1. LISTS OF THE MUNICIPAL PARKS

ITEM	NAME OF PARK	ITEM	NAME OF PARK
01	Civic Centre	26	Eduan Park
02	Ivy park	27	Grasmere
03	Penina park	28	Connie Van Resnsburg park
04	Tom Naude park	29	Kobie Van Zyl
05	Industrial Art Park	30	Valencia Park

ITEM	NAME OF PARK	ITEM	NAME OF PARK
06	SABC Park	31	Sterpark
07	Sterkloop park	32	Orion Avenue park
08	Andre Bekker Park	33	Kaptein Slegtekamp Park
09	Herman Park	34	Voortrekker Park
10	Rhebok Park	35	Aloe Park
11	Wilge park	36	Seshego Zone 4 Park
12	Flora Park Dam	37	Seshego Zone 1 Park
13	Macdonald Park	38	Seshego Zone 3 Park
14	Zen Park	39	Seshego Zone 8 Park
15	Swimming pool park	40	Seshego Zone 5 Park
16	Rainbow Park	41	Emdo Park
17	Westenburg park	42	Seshego Zone 1 Mini Park
18	RDP Westenburg	43	Tri-Angle Park
19	RSA Park	44	Ext 76 Park
20	Die Sirkel Park	45	Kgoroshi Park
21	Oost Skool Park	46	Mamotintane Park
22	Tommy Ferguson	47	Sebayeng Park
23	Welgelegen Park	48	Mankweng Zone 1 Park
24	Gert Du Toit Park	49	Mankweng Unit C Park
25	Ladanna Park		

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.3.2 Maintenance of Parks through Grass cutting

Maintenance of Parks through Grass cutting

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.3.3 Gardening and Flowers Maintenance

Flowers Maintenance	**Painting of Brenner Fountain at Civic Centre**

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.3.4 Grass Cutting Teams

The grass-cutting teams consists of permanent staff and temporary laborers only brought in during rainy seasons to ensure there is enough capacity to deal with the fast-growing grass. Due to lack of capacity, grass cutting teams from various areas (Seshego, Mankweng, City) are at times clustered together in one area with their tractors and brush cutters to ensure there is an immediate impact. The grass cutting teams are as follow:

7.3.5 AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme

AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme (Location)
BENDOR
Veldspaat drive from Munnik to Sasol garage
De Meer sidewalk from Veldspaat to Logan open area
The Crescent Open area
De Wet sidewalk from Outspan to De Meer
Vharanani street Sidewalk from Outspan to De Meer
Hillary open area
Hyde close
DE Villiers and Outspan Open area
Eduan Park
Logan sidewalk and Open area
De Meer Open area
Stadium peripheries
Suid street area from De Wet to Dorp street

AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme (Location)
Ster Park
Aquarius and Virgo Open area
Ster Park sidewalks
Apollo open area
Open Stands
Serala View
Sidewalks
Ivy Park and Ivy dale
Ext 34 entrance and sidewalks
Campbell street from Marshal to N1 South
CBD
Sidewalks
NIRVANA
Safire street open area
Ladanna
Vermiculite from Makro to Nelson Mandela drive
Witklip drive
Corner Vermiculite and Nelson Mandela drive Open area
Spelenkon street open areas
Staff hostel in Asbes street
MANKWENG AREAS
Sebayeng Entrance
Mankweng entrance from dumping towards Nkerase
Open area between Zone 1 and Toronto towards R71
Mamadimo Valley from unit C to Stop sign towards Mamadimo park sports ground
SESHEGO AREAS
Old road from circle centre to Traffic open area, Lesedi open area next to the ground
N1 South circle to Seshego zone 5 crossing
Ext 71 open area and taxi rank
Road from zone 8 AFM church to Juju Valley side walk
Zone 5 B, C, and D
Zone 4 Skotipola from circle to Blood river Robot
Khensani drive from circle to Hostel traffic lights
Ext 40 and Ext 44 open areas
Mahlasedi park Vermiculite from Micro to N. Mandela drive
Zone 8 outline from corner Helen Joseph to and Mandela
Entrance Legae la batho from traffic lights to Ext 75 and Madiba park to from Traffic light to Ext 73

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

DRAFT

7.3.6 Availability of Alien Invasive Species Eradication Plan

Within the Environmental Management SBU of the City of Polokwane, there is a sub-unit dealing with Horticulture, there are dedicated team of Horticulturists who are responsible for alien invasive eradication programme.

The programmes involve physical removal of alien species in the municipality jurisdiction. The programme is implemented through **EPWP**.

The plan covers the entire City of Polokwane and its being implemented in terms of the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983); National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No 10 of 2004) and others.

7.4. National Arbor City Competition

The Polokwane municipality continues to participate in the Arbor City Competition an initiative of the National Department of Forestry and Fisheries. The municipality remains the overall winner of the Arbor City Competition of 2023 and remains the defending winners of 2025 National Arbor City Competition.

7.5. AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT

An effective air quality management enables the municipality to safeguard public health and manage harmful emissions. In terms of National Environmental Management: Air Quality, 2014 municipalities are required to monitor ambient air quality, regulate emission sources, enforce compliance and maintain an AQMP that is periodically reviewed and updated.

The scope covers the full technical, analytical and consultative process required to produce the implementable and compliant AQMP, including baseline assessments, emissions inventory updates, dispersion modelling, strategy development and capacity building.

7.5.1 Air Quality Management Plan developed and adopted/approved by Council.

The City of Polokwane Environmental Health Section has developed the Air Quality Management Plan (AQMP) which was adopted by the Council.

Table: Status of Polokwane Sector Plans

Municipal Sector Plans	AVAILABLE	NOT AVAILABLE	DEVELOPMENT STAGE	UNDER REVIEW
Air Quality Management Plan	YES		We are currently reviewing the plan	YES

DRAFT

Municipal Sector Plans	AVAILABLE	NOT AVAILABLE	DEVELOPMENT STAGE	UNDER REVIEW
			through LEDET municipal support budget.	

Air Quality Management Plan provides the "**blueprint**" upon which City of Polokwane and will continue to implement air quality management effectively and efficiently within the City over the next coming years to ensure good air quality for our children and future generations.

Section 24 of the Constitution states that 'Everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to their health and well-being' and to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that prevent pollution and ecological degradation; promote conservation; and secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.' The Constitution further places an obligation in terms of section 152(1)(b) and (d) on the part of Local Government as stipulated in sections 4(2)(d) and 4(2)(i), 73(1) and (2) of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 to ensure that the right to a clean and healthy environment is fulfilled.

The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act 39 of 2004 (AQA) requires Municipalities to introduce Air Quality Management Plans (AQMP) that set out what will be done to achieve the prescribed air quality standards. After five years, the AQMP must be reviewed, the goals realigned and a revised AQMP should be developed. As part of their legal obligation,

An AQMP describes the current state of air quality in an area, how it is changing over time and what can be done to ensure clean air is achieved and maintained. An AQMP provides objectives and sets a course of action to attain air quality management goals. It identifies and addresses significant sources of impact using appropriate solutions to ensure that health effects and environmental impacts are minimized.

Polokwane Municipality has been selected as one of the two municipalities to receive support in reviewing the Air Quality Management Plan (AQMP). The current AQMP was approved in 2016 and is due for review. The plan was developed in-house, sourcing information from the District's AQMP.

Through the municipal support program, LEDET has appointed Mamadi Sustainability (Pty)Ltd to review and update the existing 2016 AQMP and to develop a second generation AQMP.

Mamadi will deliver a comprehensive review and update the Polokwane Municipality AQMP in line with NEM: AQA, the National Framework for Air Quality Management and the approved terms of reference.

7.5.2 Submission of AQO Annual Report & report on implementation of Air Quality Management Plan

AIR QUALITY

DRAFT

The ambient air quality is measured at four (4) places in Polokwane City, namely, the Civic Square,Ladanna Fire Station, Annadale (close to the industrial area) and Seshego. The information from the monitoring station indicates that the readings for the City of Polokwane are well below the values for other South African Cities.

There are a number of air pollution risks in the Municipal area that must be recognized:

- Polokwane Smelter (SOx, solid particulates, NOx)
- Municipal Landfill (odours, carbon monoxide, methane, particulates)
- Industrial Activities (coal burning and related processes)
- Ready-mix Materials quarry (dust)
- Motocross track (dust, noise, carbon monoxide)
- Old Asbestos dump/factory, Industrial (Asbestos fibres, dust)

7.5.3 Developed an Air Quality By-Laws

The City of Polokwane has developed the Air Quality By –Laws which was adopted by Council the Public Participation Public Notice as published on local Newspapers, Municipal Website, Municipal Notice Boards.

Municipal Sector Plans	AVAILABLE	NOT AVAILABLE	DEVELOPMENT STAGE	UNDER REVIEW
Air quality management By-law	**YES**		**Review in house until LEDET approves to appoint a service provider through their municipal support budget.**	**YES**

7.5.4 Air quality monitoring stations and monitoring of ambient air quality pollutants

The following equipment have been placed around Polokwane municipality jurisdiction:

a) One station is situated at Greenside Primary school (CDM)
b) One is station is situated in the Polokwane Game Reserve (Anglo Smelters)
c) A new air pollution monitoring station was donated to Polokwane Municipality worth the value of **R6 000 000** from the Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism Limpopo(LEDET).
d) The Air Quality Monitor station is situated at Polokwane Municipality Fire Department.

DRAFT

Air Quality Monitor station situated at Polokwane Municipality Fire Department.

7.5.5 Designation of Air Quality Management Officer

Designation of Air Quality Management Officer –

a) Does the City of Polokwane have a Designated Air Quality officer? **(Yes or No).**

- **Yes**

b) **If No** -why has the City not appointed the Air Quality Designated Officer – (Elaborate more on the Plans to Rectify this).

c) **If Yes** -How many officers are Designated as Air Quality officer?

- **01**

d) When were they appointed by Who? (e.g., CM)?

2023 by City Manager

e) List the Names and Positions of the Air Quality Designated Officer at the City of Polokwane.
Maleso Pheladi Ramabulana

f) What are the Duties and Responsibilities of the Air Quality Designated Officer?

- **Coordinates matters relating to air quality management within the municipality.**
- **Developed the air quality management plan.**
- **Enforcing compliance with the requirements of the regulations developed in terms of the AQA: enforcing the dust control regulation as are of principle responsibility and providing input-role regulation of activities declared as controlled emitters (small boiler operations and temporary asphalt).**

- **Monitoring of ambient air quality – baseline monitoring. Parameters being measured are particulate matter (PM10), sulphur dioxide, nitrogen dioxide, ozone and carbon monoxide.**
- **Responding and resolving complaints from the members of the public pertaining to air pollution.**
- **Monitoring compliance in terms of noise caused by activities.**
- **Monitoring compliance in respect of reasonable steps taken prevent air pollution.**
- **Participating in local and district forums for environmental management& air quality management.**
- **Partaking in joint inspections with environmental management inspectors.**

g) Elaborate on the **Challenges and Corrective** Actions Faced by Air Quality Designated Officer.

- **Procurement of proper air pollution monitoring equipment and payments of software licenses not being stipulated on the service level agreement.**
- **This can be corrected by having proper service level agreements when purchasing a new equipment.**

7.6 ENVIRONMENTAL GOVERNANCE AND CROSS CUTTING ISSUES

7.6.1 Municipal Projects consider EIA.

It is reflected under the IDP Projects phase. All Municipal projects that trigger Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) listing notices are subjected to EIA process.

Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) is an environmental decision support tool, which provides information on the likely impacts of development projects to those who take the decision as to whether the project should be authorized. The purpose of an EIA is to determine the potential environmental, social, and health effects of a proposed development, so that those who take the decisions in developing the project and in authorizing the project are informed about the likely consequences of their decisions **before** they take those decisions and are thereby more accountable. It is intended to facilitate informed and transparent decision-making while seeking to avoid, reduce or mitigate potential adverse impacts through the consideration of alternative options, sites or processes.

7.6.2 Municipal commenting on EIA as Affected and Interested Parties

The EIA commence are now being done. The Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) register under EAPASA are mandated to comment on the EIA application as interested/or and affected parties.

Municipal commenting on EIA as Affected and Interested Parties

a) Briefly indicate if Polokwane Municipality Provide comments as interested and affected parties on EIA Application?

- **Yes, the Polokwane municipality through Environmental Management SBU has dedicated official providing comments on the received EIA reports.**

b) Which other SBU /Directorate within the Polokwane Municipality are involved in the EIA Application comments (Specify the SBU and their areas of Focus on EIA application).

- **Environmental management services focus on whole review of EIA applications.**

c) Explain the Process for Approval of EIA Application at the City of Polokwane.

- **Polokwane Municipality only review and offer formal comments of the EIA application for the competent Authority consideration.**
- **LEDET, DFFE, DMR.DWS are the competent Authorities to issue Approval in the form of Environmental Authorisation (EA).**

d) What is the Turnaround Time for Polokwane Municipality to Provide Comments on EIA applications?

- **The turnaround time is <u>14 days</u>.**

e) What systems have been put in Place by Polokwane Municipality to ensure that all Major **Municipal Infrastructure Projects** are Complying with EIA requirements as specified in the Legislation?

- **There is a need to Put in place team of Environmental Management Inspectors to monitor compliance and include environmental management unit in all project planning meetings.**

7.6.3 Environmental Outlook

For Environmental Outlook the City of Polokwane rely on CDM and LEDET plans. The City has not yet developed its own environmental Outlook.

7.6.4 Environmental Management Framework (EMF)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA)

EMFs are part of the suite of Integrated Environmental Management (IEM)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) are tools that are used to support informed decisions regarding the management of environmental impacts that arise out of human activities and developments.

Environmental Management Frameworks are one of the tools that can attempt to achieve the desired developmental and ecological balance by utilizing early identification and mapping of sensitive ecosystems and resources to assist in pre-empting potential future land use conflicts.

Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) is a process of prior examination and appraisal of policies, plans, and programmes and other higher level or pre-project initiatives. The City of Polokwane developments decisions are guided by these two main Environmental tools.

Environmental Management Plan (EMP) is a document that describes how the environmental impacts of a project or activity will be prevented, reduced, monitored, and managed.

Environmental Management Framework (EMF)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA)

a) The City of Polokwane (**EMP) Environmental Management Plan** is more than **<u>5 years</u>** and needs to be reviewed. -explain when this will be Conducted as the **EMP** is Outdated.

- **Once the budget is allocated for the renewal of EMP, the preparation will start immediately.**

7.6.5 Environmental advocacy/ empowerment/ education and awareness

Environmental advocacy/ empowerment/ education and awareness which addresses air quality management, biodiversity, conservation, climate change, waste management, etc.

The City of Polokwane Municipality has a well-established team of officials that handles the environmental education and awareness programmes to the community. The City of Polokwane has established **Polokwane Environmental Education Centre** and other designated officials (Waste Education Officers) whose responsibilities is to educate the public about environmental management issues.

7.6.6 Availability of an organizational structure supporting environmental functions

Availability of an organizational structure supporting environmental functions such as Air Quality Management, Biodiversity and Conservation, Climate Change, Coastal Management, Waste Management, Integrated Environmental Management, Environmental Advocacy and designation of officers in line with NEMA/SEMA requirements.

The City of Polokwane has an Approved Organisational Structure that has a Directorate called Community Services headed by the Director, all unit that deals with environmental aspect are located under this Directorate i.e. ***(Environmental Management SBU, Waste SBU, and Environmental health SBU).***

The SBU's are headed by a Managers that is responsible for Unit daily functions that include supporting environmental functions such as Air Quality Management, Biodiversity and Conservation, Climate Change, Waste Management, Intergrated Environmental Management, Environmental Advocacy and designation of officers in line with NEMA/SEMA requirements.

7.6.7 Allocation and availability of budgets for staffing of environmental unit, environmental advocacy, EMF, SEA and EIA

Each Financial year, the City of Polokwane allocate a Budget for staffing of environmental unit, environmental advocacy, EMF, SEA and EIA, etc. including Projects.

7.7. ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Polokwane Municipality provides environmental health services only for the "City area". The Services in the other areas are done by the Capricorn District Municipality (CDM). There is a service level agreement entered into between the Polokwane Municipality and Capricorn

DRAFT

District Municipality as it is a district function which will end in 2028. The devolution process is not completed yet and hope before 2028 it will be resolved.

Services rendered are inter alia control and monitor of food premises, food control, food and water sampling, inspection of schools and pre-schools, inspection of accommodation establishments and air pollution control. The National Health Act 61/2003 sec 34 determine that “until a service level agreement contemplated in sec 32(3) is concluded, municipalities must continue to provide, within the resources available to them, the health services that they were providing in the year before this act took place.

- Section 10(3)(b)-Authorization of Environmental Health Practitioners in writing
- Section 11-Powers, duties and functions of inspectors
- Section 24-Right to prosecute per provision of environmental health services in the municipal area is limited as the available practitioners do not meet set standards. The standards determine that there must be 1 x EHP per 15 000 populations. Currently there is a shortfall of 12 of employees compared to the standards to cover the whole population.

7.7.1 Food and Water Samples

Food and Water Sample

7.7.2 Noise Level Meter

Noise Level Meter

DRAFT

DRAFT

7.7.3 THE ROLES OF HEALTH SERVICES SBU IN THE MUNICIPALITY

The Following are the roles of Health Services SBU in the Municipality i.e.

- Health surveillance of premises
- Surveillance and prevention of communicable diseases
- Environmental pollution
- Water quality monitoring
- Air quality management
- Noise management
- Waste management
- Health care risk waste
- Food safety management
- Vector Control
- Disposal of the dead
- Chemical safety

7.7.4 Scope of Practice of Environmental Health Practitioners:

WATER MONITORING

(a) Monitoring water quality and availability, including mapping water sources and enforcing laws and regulations related to water quality management;

(b) ensuring water safety and accessibility in respect of a safe quality (microbiological, physical and chemical) and an adequate quantity for domestic use as well as in respect of the quality for recreational, industrial, food production and any other human or animal use;

(c) promoting access to water for all communities by providing inputs toward the planning, design and management of the water supply system and ensuring healthy community water supplies through surveillance;

(d) ensuring monitoring of effective waste water treatment and water pollution control, including the collection, treatment and safe disposal of sewage and other waterborne waste, and surveillance of the quality of surface water (including sea water) and ground water;

(e) advocating proper and safe water usage and waste water disposal;

(f) sampling and testing water in the field and examining and analysing it in a laboratory.

DRAFT

FOOD CONTROL

(a) Ensuring food safety in respect of acceptable microbiological and chemical standards, quality of all food for human consumption and optimal hygiene control throughout the food supply chain from the point of origin, all primary raw material or raw products production, up to the point of consumption;

(b) inspecting food production, distribution and consumption areas;

(c) monitoring informal food trading;

(d) inspecting food premises and any nuisances emanating therefrom;

(e) enforcing food legislation and the Codex Alimentarius;

(f) applying food quality monitoring programmes and principles through various techniques, e.g. Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Points System (HACCP System) audits;

(g) promoting the safe transportation, handling, storage and preparation of foodstuffs used in the Primary School Nutrition Programme (PSNP), prisons, health establishments, at airports, etc.;

(h) promoting the safe handling of meat and meat products through, amongst others, meat inspections and examination of abattoirs;

(i) promoting the safe handling of milk and milk products.

HEALTH SURVEILLANCE OF PREMISES

(a) assessing aspects such as ventilation and indoor air quality, lightin~1 moisture proofing, thermal quality, structural safety and floor space;

(b) assessing overcrowded, dirty or other unsatisfactory health conditions on any residential, commercial, industrial or other occupied premises;

(c) monitoring all buildings and all other permanent or temporary physical structures used for residential, public or institutional purposes (including health care and other care, detainment, work and recreation, travel, tourism, holidaying and camping) and the facilities in connection therewith and the immediate precincts;

(d) ensuring urban and rural land-use planning and practices that are conducive to sustainable development by conducting sound environmental health impact and other assessments;

(e) ensuring the prevention and abatement of any condition on any premises, which is likely to constitute a health hazard;

(f) ensuring the health safety of public transport facilities such as buses, trains, taxis, boats and aeroplanes as well as all other facilities in connection therewith;

DRAFT

SURVEILLANCE AND PREVENTION OF COMMUNICABLE DISEASES

(a) Promoting health and hygiene, aiming at preventing environmentally induced diseases and related communicable diseases;

(b) collecting, analysing and disseminating epidemiological data and information;

(c) using the Participatory Hygiene and Sanitation Transformation (PHAST) training approaches and any other educational training programmes or approaches for effectual control measures at community level;

(d) conducting epidemiological surveillance of diseases;

(e) Establishing an effective environmental health surveillance and information system within the different spheres of governance;

(f) Developing environmental health measures, including protocols, with reference to epidemics, emergencies, diseases and migrations of populations.

VECTOR CONTROL MONITORING

(a) Identifying vectors, their habitats and breeding places;

(b) Conducting vector control in the interest of public health, including control of arthropods, molluscs, rodents and other alternative hosts of diseases;

(c) Removing or remedying conditions resulting in or favouring the prevalence of or increase in rodents, insects, disease carriers or pests;

(d) Ensuring the residual spraying of premises and precincts;

(e) Investigating zoonotic diseases and vector-borne diseases in the working and living environment;

(f) Surveying imported cargo and livestock for the prevalence of disease vectors;

(g) Undertaking serological testing of rodents, dogs and other pets or animals.

ENVIRONMENTAL POLLUTION CONTROL

(a) Ensuring hygienic working, living and recreational environments;

(b) Identifying the polluting agents and sources of water, air and soil pollution;

(c) Conducting environmental health impact assessments of development projects and policies, including assessments of major hazard installations;

(d) Identifying environmental health hazards and conducting risk assessment and mapping thereof;

(e) Preventing accidents, e.g. owing to paraffin usage;

(f) Approving environmental health impact assessment reports and commenting on environmental impact assessment applications;

(g) Ensuring clean and safe air externally (ambient and point sources) through emission inventory monitoring, modelling and toxicological reports, reviews and complaint investigations;

DRAFT

(h) Controlling and preventing vibration and noise pollution;

(i) Preventing and controlling soil pollution that is detrimental to human, animal or plant life;

(j) Ensuring compliance with the provisions of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993), and its regulations, including anticipating, identifying, evaluating and controlling occupational hazards;

(k) Taking the required preventative measures to ensure that the general environment is free from health risks;

(l) Ensuring the registration, permitting, monitoring and auditing of all industries, activities, trade, etc., which involves controlling the internal effects of pollution on the worker and the external effects of pollution on the community and the environment;

(m) Monitoring management of infrastructure integrity, including management of the infrastructure integrity of pipelines and tanks;

(n) Ensuring, jointly with other role players, a readiness for abnormal operating conditions and disasters;

(0) Developing sustainable indicators appropriate for monitoring the effectiveness of environmental management systems of industries.

DISPOSAL OF THE DEAD

(a) Controlling, restricting or prohibiting the business of an undertaker or embalmer, mortuaries and other places or facilities for the storage of dead bodies;

(b) Monitoring practices at cemeteries, crematoria and other facilities used for the disposal of dead bodies;

(c) Managing, controlling and monitoring exhumations and reburials or the disposal of human remains.

CHEMICAL SAFETY

(a) Monitoring and regulating all operators, fumigation firms and formal and informal retailers that deal with the manufacture, application, transport and storage of chemicals;

(b) Permitting, licensing and auditing the premises of the above, e.g. by issuing Scheduled Trade Permits;

(c) Facilitating advice, education and training on pesticides and/or chemical safety.

NOISE CONTROL

(a) Assessing the extent of noise pollution and its effects on human health;

(b) Facilitating noise control measures;

(c) Measuring ambient sound levels and noise levels.

CHALLENGES

DRAFT

- Devolution of Environmental health practitioners (EHP) not finalised between Capricorn District Municipality and Polokwane Municipality.
- MOU was signed in 20and agreed that in the next two years the process of devolution should be finalised and to date there is no progress.
- Shortage of staff resulting in not being able to reach the entire community.
- Shortage of Personal Protective Clothing (PPE)

The industry inspections are being conducted by municipal officials on a quarterly basis.

7.7.5 Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement by EMIs

Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement are being conducted by municipal officials on a quarterly basis.

Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement by EMIs (Environmental Management Inspectors)

a) Briefly Indicate the compliance, monitoring and enforcement conducted by Polokwane Municipality together with the CDM district.

- **Continuous environmental compliance, monitoring and enforcement are conducted by Polokwane Municipality EMI's in most cases jointly with CDM, LEDET and DMR EMI's on both green and brown aspects**

b) Does the City of Polokwane have Officers that are appointed as **EMIs?**

- **Yes**

c) How Many Officers were appointed as EMIs?

- **Five in number (3 Environmental Management SBU and 1 Waste Management)**

(c)) What are the areas of Focus by EMI of Polokwane Municipality?

- **Focus on Brown and Green issues**

d) List the Names and Positions of Officers that are appointed as EMIs for the City of Polokwane.

(i)PITJADI MB: SUPERINTENDENT: NATURAL RESOURCES
(ii) SEOLOANE MF: SUPERINTENDENT: OPEN SPACE
(iii) MABASO RJ: NATURE CONSERVATIONIST
(iv)MAMAILA FA: SENIOR SUPERINTENDENT: WASTE MANAGEMENT
(V) MANTHATA MM: MANAGER ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

e) What are the Duties and Responsibilities of the EMIs at the City of Polokwane?

- **To enforce the provisions of NEMA, NEMWA, NEMAOA, NEMBA and NEMPA**
- **To conduct routine inspections**

f) Elaborate on the **Challenges and Corrective** Actions Faced by EMIs.

- **Lack of budget to procure specific uniform for EMI's and other supportive tools of work.**
- **Environmental enforcement must be subunit on its own, EMI's must be responsible for Enforcement as their key performance areas. Additional Personnel is needed**
- **Training should be continuous because we are dealing with legislation that changes from time to time**

g) Were the EMIs in the City of Polokwane Trained /Attended any Training before they are appointed as EMIs -Elaborate Briefly on the Training attended or Conducted for EMI's

- **Yes, training was provided by DFFE for one month.**

7.7.6 Allocation and availability of Air Quality Management related work budget

The allocated budget is insufficient. There is a need for Council to allocate more budget on Air Quality Management related work. Over the previous financial years IDP, air quality related projects were developed, and allocated budgets.

7.8 WASTE MANAGEMENT

7.8.1 Waste Management Services Municipal Wide

INTRODUCTION

The **Waste Management SBU** strives to provide **efficient, effective and appropriate** waste management services to all waste generators, while recognizing the contributions made by private sector in enhancing the provision of these services as contained in the integrated waste management plan within these legislative prescripts:

- Waste Act & Environmental Management Act.
- Norms and Standards.
- Municipal Integrated Waste Management Plan.
- Municipal policies and Bylaw.

7.8.2 Vision and Mission-Waste SBU

Vision

- A clean and litter free environment for all through best innovative waste management practices.

Mission objectives

- To have all general waste collected, reused, recycled, and disposed of in an environmentally friendly manner.

7.8.3 Core Functions of Waste SBU

DRAFT

- Awareness and education to change public mind set about best waste management practices.
- Waste minimization i.e., **Reduction, Reuse and Recycling** of waste before disposal
- Waste storage, collection, transportation & disposal at licensed landfill sites.
- Cleaning and clearing of illegal dumping.
- Street cleaning services (manual litter picking and mechanical street sweeping in the CBD).
- Rural waste management including EPWP litter picking.
- Hazardous waste monitoring with special reference to medical waste: competency of province.

7.8.4 Personnel of Waste SBU

Personnel of Waste SBU Consist of the Following: i.e.

- ✓ 1 x Manager
- ✓ 1 x Assistant Manager Operations.
- ✓ 1 x Assistant Manager Awareness
- ✓ 1x Admin Assistant, 1 x Admin clerk.
- ✓ 3x Senior superintendents.
- ✓ 6 x Supervisors,
- ✓ 22x Operators,
- ✓ 2 X Drivers,
- ✓ 124 X Labourers.
- ✓ 238 EPWP beneficiaries (Urban areas).
- ✓ 145 EPWP beneficiaries (rural areas).

7.8.5 Types of Equipment Required

TYPE OF EQUIPMENT	QUANTITY	AREAS OF OPERATION	SHORTAGE
TLB	3	City, Mankweng & Seshego: Clearing of illegal dumping, Clearing of transfer stations	3 X TLB
Tipper trucks	5	Work with TLB's	Minimum of 2 X trucks per TLB
Grab trucks **Multipurpose**	3 3	Clearing of commercial and communal skip containers Cleaning of rural skip containers	2 X multipurpose 2 X Contracted
Roll on roll off	4	Clearing of Transfer stations & skip containers in hospitals, industries. Skip containers in hospitals, schools, large industries	2X City 1X Seshego 1X Mankweng To purchase 2X RORO Trucks
Compactors	9	Seshego, Moletjie and Aganang clusters waste collection City outer CBD routes Mankweng, Sebayeng and Dikgale waste collection	2 Seshego for residential and rural areas 3 Mankweng Urban & 2 rural collection
Fleet Africa compactors	14	Daily collection of waste from businesses and institutions, rural weekly collection	8X City 7X Seshego 2X Mankweng

DRAFT

TYPE OF EQUIPMENT	QUANTITY	AREAS OF OPERATION	SHORTAGE
4 Ton Trucks	5	Collection of litter picking & street cleaning bags	2X City 2X Seshego 2X Mankweng

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.8.6 Service Level Standards: Operations

CATEGORY	EQUIPMENT	FREQUENCY
Residential	Compactor	Once a week
Business	Compactor	Daily
Transfer Station	Roro and FEL	Daily
Industrial	Load lugger and Grab	Week days
Communal Skip	Gran and Load Lugger	Daily
Illegal Dumping	Tipper trucks	Week days
Street Sweeping at Night CBD	2X Street Sweepers	Daily
Litter picking	4-ton trucks	Daily

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

DRAFT

7.8.7 Weekly Waste Collection Service

Service Provision

- **104 782** x Households receive weekly waste collection service in all urban areas: **City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng.**
- **75 x villages receive weekly waste collection service** in rural areas.
- Clearing and cleaning Illegal dumping **weekly in all hotspots**
- **14 x recycling companies** operational at Weltevreden landfill site.
- **01 x recycling company** operational at Aganang landfill site.

7.8.8 Waste Facilities (Landfill sites and Transfer Stations)

Landfill sites: Total 02

- Weltevreden Landfill site.
- Aganang Landfill site.

Transfer stations: Total 09

- **City**: Webster, Ladanna & Westernburg
- **Mankweng**: Dikgale, Makotopong, Mankweng
- **Seshego:** Makgakga, Vaalkop & Seshego

7.8.9 Rural Skips Distribution Summary

CLUSTER	NUMBER OF SKIPS	CHALLENGES
Maja/Chuene/Molepo	21 (telecons 116)	none
Mankweng/ Sebayeng/ Dikgale	31 (telecons 35)	none
Aganang/ Moletjie/ Seshego	33 (telecons 11)	none

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.8.10 Current Waste Management Projects

PROJECT NAME	SCOPE OF WORK	BUDGET AMOUNT
Extension of Landfill site	Construction of a cell and leachate dam	16 208 043
Molepo Transfer Station	100% of Construction and electrification completed by 30 June 2027	4 173 913
6 &9 M³ Skip containers	Purchase of skip containers	2 000 000
240 litre bins	Purchase of 240 litre bins	1 000 000
Upgrading of Aganang landfill fence	Installation of concrete palisade fence	2 500 000
Ga-Maja Transfer station	Construction of platform and electrification	5 078 260
Ga-Chuene Transfer station	Construction of platform and electrification	4 739 130
Construction of Mashashane transfer station	Planning for Construction of Mashashane transfer station	1 100 000
Rehabilitation of Weltevreden landfill site	Landfill capping	5 043 478

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.8.11 Contracted Services under Waste Management

3 Contracted services for these areas:

- City: CBD (2 compactors and 2 Street Sweepers)
- City Residential 3 waste compactors
- Business and skips in the city and industrial areas 2 Grab Trucks

DRAFT

IN-HOUSE SERVICES

Replaced outsourced services:

- ✓ 3 x Compactors for Seshego residential areas
- ✓ 3 x Compactors for Mankweng and Sebayeng.

7.8.12 IMPLEMENTATION OF BY-LAW

- Compliance monitoring of the By-Laws will also need to be implemented.
- The By-Laws put in place the necessary institutional and legal frame works.
- A critical component to the implementation of the IWMP is the supporting legal framework and budget.
- Law enforcement remains a serious challenge because of lack of personnel.
- Issuing of fines and impounding of vehicles to be investigated.
- Fines imposed to be reflected in municipal billing to be investigated.

7.9 Challenges for cleanliness of the City

- Attitudes on Littering and illegal dumping by general public – only two officials allocated to deal with this anomaly.
- Down town untidy due to uncontrolled hawkers, car washers, illegal mechanics, job seekers, street kids sleeping in the city streets and illegal occupations.
- Contributing factors include mainly lack of adequate pole and pavement bins.
- Stakeholders that must be involved: Environment, Roads & LED SBUs, Law Enforcement, Ward Councillors.
- Illegal dumping-building rubble on open spaces & general waste in rural areas
- Lack of support for Ward by the public during cleaning campaigns.
- Lack of adequate personnel (aging staff, budget constraints to fill vacant positions timeously).
- Removal of planted no-illegal dumping boards for selling scrap yards for cash.
- Long turn-around time for repairs of trucks and aging fleet to render an effective service, e.g., cleaning of communal skip containers especially in rural areas.
- Weltevreden landfill site lifespan has been extended for another three years.

7.9.1 Designation of Waste Management Officer

Designated Waste Management Officer has been appointed.

7.9.2 South African Waste Information System (SAWIS) reporting

The City of Polokwane is timeously reporting on SAWIS portal as required by the Act. **(Waste Information System).**

DRAFT

The South African Waste Information System (SAWIS) developed by the Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) in 2005, is a system used by government and industry to capture routine data on the tonnages of waste generated, recycled and disposed of in South Africa on A monthly and annual basis.

Publicly available reports generated from SAWIS are available through SAWIC 'Waste in South Africa. The Waste Information Centre provides the public, business, industry and government with access to information on the management of waste in South Africa. The Centre also provides users with access to the South African Waste Information System (SAWIS).

7.10. Designation of Waste Management Officer

Designation of Waste Management Officer

a) Does the City of Polokwane have a Designation of Waste Management Officer?

- **Yes**

b) **If No** -why has the City not appointed the Designation of Waste Management Officer - (Elaborate more on the Plans to Rectify this).

c) **If Yes** -How many officers are Designated as Waste Management Officer?

- **1**

d) When were they appointed by Who?

- **2023, appointed by EM**

e) List the Names and Positions of the Designated Waste Management Officer at the City of Polokwane. **Mr. Adolf Mamaila**

f) What are the **Duties and Responsibilities** of the Designated Waste Management Officer?

- **Implementation of IWMP as required by the Waste Act**
- **Implementation of Council Polices and By –Laws**
- **Financial planning and management of the unit and budgeting**
- **Project conception, implementation, and management**
- **Liaise with internal and external stakeholders.**
- **Coordinate and implement performance management system within the department.**

g) Elaborate on the **Challenges and Corrective** Actions Faced by Designated Waste Management Officer.

Challenges

- **Lack of adequate of personnel e.g. Awareness and education officers, operators of trucks, general workers for loading bins, supervisors to ensure that the work is done and completed according to service level standards**
- **Growing and unabated illegal dumping in rural areas as well**

Proposed solutions

- **Adequate budgeting annually to acquire adequate personnel, equipment and trucks to render an effective and efficient waste management service to the community.**
- **To increase education and awareness personnel**

- **Councillors to assist with education about best waste management practices in their constituencies.**

7.10.1 Waste Management Service

Waste management is one of the critical services rendered by municipalities. The availability and/or unavailability of this service have a direct impact on the quality of life of citizens, their health as well as the degradation of physical environment.

Waste management embraces "prevention, generation, characterization, monitoring, treatment, handling, recycling and residual disposition of solid wastes at the approved landfill sites. There are various types of solid waste that include municipal (residential, institutional, commercial), agricultural, and special (health care, household hazardous wastes, sewage sludge). Functions relating to waste management include:

- Awareness and education to change the attitude of the public.
- Waste minimization (reduce, re use and recycle) The 3 Rs.
- Waste generation, storage, collection and transportation.
- Waste treatment where waste is hazardous.
- Landfill disposal sites of waste
- Environmental negative impacts considerations
- Financial and marketing aspects
- Research, Policy and regulation
- Education, awareness and training
- Planning and implementation

Polokwane Municipality is able to handle this function satisfactorily as there is a full-fledged unit established to focus on waste management. Waste collection is currently rendered in the city, Seshego, Mankweng, and Sebayeng Townships from **104 782 HH**. Municipal trucks collect waste **once a week** at residential areas/suburbs/Townships and **daily** at businesses and industrial areas). Rural areas waste collection to be implemented. At the moment, 75 **rural villages** receive weekly waste collection service. EPWP litter picking is being done in all wards. Rural waste collection to be implemented in all villages in this financial year (2026/27). All collected waste are transported to Weltevreden and Aganang municipal Landfill sites, which are both licensed. The Aganang landfill site receive waste mainly from Moletjie and Aganang clusters.

7.10.2 Aganang Clusters Waste Removal Services

Currently in the Aganang Clusters, Waste Removal Services is Rendered in the following areas i.e.

1) **Knobel hospital**
2) **Post office**
3) **Mashashane crossing.**
4) **Maphepha centre**
5) **SASSA**
6) **Matlala police station**
7) **The local market**
8) **Tibane shopping centre.**

DRAFT

9) **Kgabo park**
10) **Vlaakfontein**
11) **Rampuru village**
12) **Tibane village**
13) **Ramalapa Village**

7.11 New Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP) 2025-2030

The New IWMP Was Endorsed by MEC on **14 November 2025.**

Developed in collaboration with the Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment, and Tourism **(LEDET),** this initiative supports municipalities in designing and implementing effective, sustainable waste management strategies in compliance with national legislative requirements.

Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP) for Polokwane Local Municipality (PLM) represents a comprehensive and strategic framework designed to address the municipality's waste management challenges while ensuring alignment with provincial and national waste management objectives. A detailed Situational Analysis provided valuable insights into Polokwane's waste landscape, considering factors such as demographic shifts, waste composition, and existing waste management infrastructure.

The key objectives of the IWMP for Polokwane include:

1. Ensuring the efficient and effective delivery of waste services.
2. Expanding waste minimization and recycling initiatives.
3. Strengthening the management and operation of landfill sites.
4. Establishing robust waste information management and reporting systems.
5. Implementing, monitoring, and continuously improving the IWMP.
6. Enhancing waste education and public awareness.
7. Improving institutional capacity and operational efficiency.
8. Ensuring financially viable and sustainable waste management services.
9. Strengthening regulatory compliance and enforcement through effective by-laws.

These objectives are closely aligned with provincial and national waste management strategies, reinforcing Polokwane's commitment to an integrated and coordinated waste management approach. They encompass essential areas such as service

DRAFT

delivery optimization, public engagement, institutional development, and legal compliance, ensuring a holistic response to the municipality's waste-related challenges.

A collaborative and participatory approach has been central to the IWMP's development, integrating stakeholder engagement at every stage. This inclusive process fosters community ownership and broad-based support, ultimately enhancing the plan's effectiveness and long-term sustainability.

To bridge existing gaps and advance waste management practices, the IWMP incorporates various implementation mechanisms, including strategic partnerships, legislative interventions, financial sustainability measures, and a structured execution plan. Key recommendations emphasize enhanced public awareness through education and training programs, improved waste management infrastructure, stricter control of illegal dumping, revision of waste tariffs, and the promotion of waste reduction, reuse, and recycling initiatives.

A robust monitoring, evaluation, and review framework is crucial to the IWMP's success. This structured system ensures that prioritized objectives are met efficiently, allowing for adaptive management and effective resource allocation. Given the dynamic nature of waste management, regular evaluations and annual reviews will be conducted to maintain the plan's relevance and responsiveness to emerging challenges. The next scheduled review will be instrumental in refining strategies, sustaining stakeholder confidence, and preventing policy obsolescence.

Ultimately, the IWMP serves as a strategic roadmap for establishing a resilient, sustainable, and well-regulated waste management system within Polokwane. Through collaboration, stakeholder participation, and adherence to regulatory standards, the municipality is committed to achieving an efficient, environmentally responsible, and future-ready waste management framework that benefits both the community and the broader ecosystem.

DRAFT

7.11.1 Polokwane New IWMP was endorsed by MEC of LEDET

Polokwane New IWMP endorsed by MEC of LEDET

The New IWMP was Endorsed by MEC on **14 November 2025.**

7.11.2 Recycling and Recovery of Waste

Polokwane Municipality IWMP Goal is to promote recycling and the recovery of waste; in a tabular format and this would be represented as follows:

Table: Promote Recycling and Recovery of Waste

Immediate goals	Short term goals	Medium term goals	Long term goals
Establish mechanisms for promoting separation at source (develop waste minimisation plan with clear programmes, project, budget and timelines for implementation.	Roll out separation at source to 30 % of households	Roll out separation at source to 70 % of households	100% households receiving separation at source
Conduct a feasibility study to determine whether there is a need to establish buy back centres	Develop plans to establish buy back centres	Buy back centres established	Utilization of buy back centres.
Develop a composting strategy/plan to divert garden waste from landfill sites	Establish a compost recycling plant	Compost recycling plant fully operational and is operated in a sustainable manner	

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.11.3 Refuse Removal Trends

Table: Refuse Removal

Municipality	Removed by local authority/ Private company			Communal refuse dumps			No rubbish disposal		
Polokwane	**2018**	**2019**	**2020**	**2018**	**2019**	**2020**	**2018**	**2019**	**2020**
Households	43.08%	43.332%	43.4%	56.92%	56.67%	56.6%	56.92%	56.67%	56.6%

Source: Stats, S.A,

There is an improvement in areas that had no service at all since 2017. As indicated earlier, the unavailability of such a service has a direct impact on the health of the citizen as well as the physical environment. A high number **56.6%** of households in rural areas still use communal dumps in comparison of households with access to refuse removed by local authority/private company **of 43.4%.**

DRAFT

Currently, only City / Seshego and Mankweng / Sebayeng clusters have conventional waste management services in place. There are now two landfill sites licensed and two transfer stations in the CBD area. In the **Mankweng/Sebayeng** there is one transfer station. There are four rural transfer station at **Makgakga, Vaalkop, Dikgale and Makotopong** that were completed and operational.

Construction of Westernburg and Seshego transfer stations completed and will be completed during 2025/2026 financial year. Additional budget for rural transfer stations on the MTREF capital budget is required for transfer stations at **Maja/Chuene, Aganang cluster to take the service close to the residences.** Ladanna transfer station is without paving, proper retention walls and ramping. There is also a need to budget for it in order to comply fully to Norms and Standards for construction of transfer stations.

The bulk of rural areas normally do not have conventional waste management methods, illegal dumping characterised these areas without such services. A certain level of Rural Waste Collection service under the EPWP incentive Grant is undertaken in all **wards** municipal wide. The employees render litter picking service three days per week and the waste is collected by waste municipal trucks and disposed of at the two landfill sites.

One more rural transfer station is budgeted for on the MTREF namely Molepo Transfer station for 2025/2026. It is therefore important for the municipality to develop and implement a municipal-wide waste management plan in rural areas with clear sustainable service levels (IWMP). In order to promote the notion of waste recycling, DEA constructed and donated the **Mankweng Buy back centre** to Polokwane Municipality and the municipality is in the process of appointing a new service provider after the old one has expired.

According to the IWMP there are additional Buy back centres that must be established in rural areas as well to support and promote waste minimisation in those areas. Waste recycling should also be introduced in all rural transfer stations in order to intensity recycling and create basic job opportunities.

7.11.4 Licensed Landfill Sites

The City of Polokwane has **X 2 licensed landfill**, both fully operational namely, Weltevreden and Aganang landfill sites. The municipality also has **7 transfer stations in total:**

- 7 x permitted.

7.11.5 Waste Management Challenges

Challenges	Measures to address challenges
• Lack of adequate trucks and long turn-around time for repairs to render effective service in rural areas, illegal dumping and industrial cleaning resulting in over usage of overtime.	▪ Purchase of adequate trucks, compactors, tipper trucks and ROROS to render effective and efficient service in the urban and rural areas. ▪ Repairs of waste trucks to prioritised as there are no relief trucks during breakdowns.

DRAFT

Challenges	Measures to address challenges
• Weltevreden landfill site is remaining with only one years' lifespan. • Landfill site does not charge disposal fee currently	▪ The feasibility study of the landfill site was completed, and the license was issued. ▪ Implementation of waste disposal charges at the landfill sites to be re- introduced to argument revenue
• Shortage of personnel for refuse removal. Some staff members are old and sickly and on light duty resulting in over usage of temporary workers on waste collection and transfer stations as well	• Continuous budgeting and filling of vacant positions is imperative especially operators, labourers, supervisors and Awareness and education officers to enhance efficient service delivery
• There is no full refuse removal service in rural areas only 63 villages receive weekly service. • There are no transfer stations in all clusters.eg Maja/Chuene, Mashashane and Matlala areas. • Ladanna transfer station upgraded with walling around, water connection and guard house. The working area is not paved, ramp and retention are also dilapidated. • There are no transfer stations at Westernburg and Seshego resulting in lots of illegal dumping.	• Construction of rural transfer station will be implemented at Ga Molepo, Ga Maja and Ga Chuene villages. • Seshego and Westenburg Transfer stations are under constructions for 2025/2026 financial year. • A waste minimisation strategy/plan with clear programmes and projects with timelines to be finalised and implemented
• The municipal area is characterised by lot of illegal dumping from building rubble due to inadequate awareness and education officers and inadequate law enforcement. • Down town is untidy due to illegal activities by hawkers, illegal outdoor advertising, car washers, illegal mechanics, street kids, job seekers who sleep in the streets on municipal properties. • Lack of adequate street pavement bins in the CBD	• All budgeted positions of senior superintendent, operators, supervisors, awareness and education officers to be advertised and filled. • The use of EPWP beneficiaries for litter picking in the City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng. A pilot outsourcing using cooperatives to be undertaken first in the City. • Working together with other SBUs to control all illegal activities (Housing SBU) and the sweeping of sand in the CBD (Roads and Storm Water SBU) • Waste awareness and education plan compiled and awaiting approval

DRAFT

Challenges	Measures to address challenges
• Mankweng illegal dumping area is licensed for closure but without budget for rehabilitation	• Mankweng pit to be budgeted for closure and rehabilitation as it continues creating pollution of the environment.

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.11.6 Waste Management Status Quo

	ACTIVITY	PROGRESS
1.	IWMP	The IWMP was Endorsed by MEC on **14** November 2025 and currently assisting in the implementation of projects i.e rural waste collection and two-way bag system
2.	By-Law	By-Law approved by Council and is now gazetted. The fines and penalties are also approved already by the Chief Magistrate
3	Waste collection in rural areas	EPWP litter picking, and collection is being done in all 29 wards. **75** villages are currently receiving weekly waste collection service and rural kerbside collection is extended to all villages in all wards in this financial year. Additional acquisition of trucks and personnel will ensure that the service is rolled out to other villages
4.	Plan\program on waste collection in the City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	A schedule on waste collection is in place and it also guides the placement of personnel and allocation of trucks
6	Weltevreden landfill site	• Cashier house is completed, and the landfill site has been classified as a high-risk area to collect cash at the site instead rates and taxes accounts to be used. • Landfill approved tariff implemented as of 01/07/2026 for both weltevreden and Aganang Landfill sites • Landfill external auditing is continuing and being done every year.

DRAFT

	ACTIVITY	PROGRESS
		• License for landfill site extension is issued (Weltevreden)
7.	6 and 9 M³ skip containers for rural transfer stations.	Service provider is appointed to provide with the skip containers to cater rural areas.
8.	Aganang landfill site	Budget provided to repair for broken palisade
9.	Vaalkop transfer station	To provide Budgeting for installation of electricity
10	Makotopong transfer station	To provide Budgeting for installation of electricity

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.11.7 Waste Collection in Rural Areas

EPWP litter picking will be done in all **wards** with a total budget of R 1 000 000 for rural and R12 000 000 for urban. Kerbside rural waste collection to be implemented in this financial year. This is as part of implementing the endorsed IWMP.

DRAFT

7.12 Waste Management Services Status Quo

7.12.1 Status Quo on Rendered Services

NO	TYPE OF SERVICES	PLACES RENDERED	FREQUENCY	Transport Mode
1.	**Residential kerb side collection**	City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	Once a week	Outsourced compactors
2.	**Businesses**	Mankweng and Sebayeng	Daily	3 in house compactors

NO	TYPE OF SERVICES	PLACES RENDERED	FREQUENCY	Transport Mode
3.	**Street sweeping and litter picking**	City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	Daily and week days only	2 x outsourced sweepers, 1 X 19 M³ compactor truck and 1 x Grab 141 rural x and 264 urban temporary employees for manual litter picking
3.	**Industrial areas and communal skip containers**	City**,** Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	Daily and when necessary	In house Loud loggers, Grab trucks and ROROS. Rental trucks: 7 X Compactors, 3 X grabs for Seshego,Moletji, Aganang, 7 X Compactors, 2 X grabs, FEL and TLB for City, Molepo,Chuene, Maja 4 X Compactors, 2 X grabs, FEL and TLB for Mankweng, Dikgale, Sebayeng
4.	**Transfer stations and illegal dumping**	City, Seshego, Mankweng, Sebayeng and rural areas	Daily and when necessary	In house tippers & TLB and ROROS
5.	**Rural villages and EPWP**	Villages in all rural wards	Once a week	In house compactor trucks and 4-ton trucks
6)	**Household kerbside waste collection services in rural village areas**	Moletji and Aganang, Chuene, Maja and Molepo, Mankweng, Sebayeng and Dikgale	Once a week	Outsourced: Compactors, Tipper trucks, tractor loader backhoe

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

DRAFT

7.12.2 Rural Waste Transfer Stations and landfill sites status quo

Rural Transfer Stations

NO	NAME OF FACILITY	SPATIAL LOCATION	STATUS
1.	**Makgakga rural transfer station**	Makgakga ward 10	operational
2.	**Vaalkop rural transfer station**	Vaal kop ward 9	operational
3.	**Dikgale rural transfer station**	Ga –Dikgale ward 33	operational
4.	**Makotopong rural transfer station**	Makotopong ward 24	Operational
5.	**Webster garden transfer station**	C/o Webster and Suid streets Flora Park ward 20	Operational
6.	**Ladanna transfer station (Need upgrading)**	Vermukliet street Ladanna ward 20	operational
7	**Mankweng transfer station**	Mankweng ward 31	Operational
8.	**Molepo transfer station**	Ga-Molepo ward 4	Completed
9	**Maja transfer station**	Ward 2	Final phase in 2026/27
10	**Chuene transfer station**	Ward 1	Final phase in 2026/27
11	**Seshego transfer station**	11	Operational
12	**Westernburg transfer station**	19	Operational
11	**Aganang rural landfill site**	Aganang ward 45	Operational

NO	NAME OF FACILITY	SPATIAL LOCATION	STATUS
12	**Weltevreden general medium with insignificant water production (G:M: B -) landfill site**	Polokwane ward 20	Operational

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.12.3 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Maja/Chuene/Molepo Cluster)

City Depot: Maja/Chuene/Molepo cluster

No	Areas with Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Number of skips Containers
1.	**Thogoaneng along 37 road**	Chuene	1	2
	Thogoaneng along Bergeneck road			
2.	**Feke**	Maja	2	2
	Kopperymyn			
3.	**Between Mothapo and Mothiba ngwanamago**	Molepo	5	2
	Moremadi along power lines		5	
4.	**Rampheri**	Molepo	4	2
	Boyne (close Shell garage)			
5.	**Thaba**		3	2
Total Allocated				**10**

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.12.4 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Moletjie and Aganang clusters)

Seshego Depot: Seshego, Moletjie and Aganang clusters

No	Areas with Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Number of skips Containers
1.	Kgabo park Between Rampuru & Ceres	Aganang	45	2
2.	Kalkspruit cross Kgoroshi &Sechaba	Aganang	42	2
3	Setumong next to Matlala taxi rank Dibeng village	Aganang	43	2
4.	Vlakfontein Tibane Crossing	Aganang	44	2
5.	Opposite Mashashane clinic Opposite mohlonung police station	Aganang	40	2
6.	Diana clinic Naledi clinic	Aganang	41	2
7.	Kwena Moloto Letsokwane	Moletjie	10	2
8	Mmakgodu Kgohloane	Moletjie	36	2
9	Moletjie crossing Around Boetse Sec school	Moletjie	18	2
10	Makgofe Ga-tladi Motinti	Moletjie	16	2
11	Madihorong Matamanyane	Moletjie	15	2
12	Rankuwe Ga manamela	Moletjie	35	2
13	Ramogoana Hlahla	Moletjie	38	2
14	Sengatane Doornspruit	Moletjie	9	2
Total				30

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.12.5 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Mankweng and Sebayeng/Dikgale clusters)

Mankweng depot: Mankweng and Sebayeng/Dikgale clusters

No.	Areas with Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Proposed skips allocation
1.	Nobody Mothapo Thagalang (between Nobody and Maboi)	Mankweng	07	3
2.	Thoka, Boipuso and Thoka Reservoir	Mankweng	27	2
3.	Moremadi Moremadi Powerline	Mankweng	27	2
4.	Mentz Malesa /Badimong	Mankweng	34	3
5.	Ga Mothiba Magwareng to Mamatlho School	Sebayeng	24	2
6.	Ga Mothiba Ngwanalaka	Sebayeng	24	1
7.	Tshware	Mankweng	30	2
8.	Mamahule R71 Gate	Mankweng	06	1
9.	Mentz Dubula next to Illegal Landfill	Mankweng	28	2
10	Madiga	Sebayeng	29	2
Total				20

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU (2021)

7.12.6 Rural Villages with Communal Waste Collection Service Once a Week

Rural Villages with Communal Waste Collection

Cluster	Name of Villages	Total Number of Villages
Maja/Chuene/Molepo cluster	Bergenek; Maratapelo; Lushikishiki; Chuene Moshate; Mosholopo Maja Moshate, Marulaneng, Feke, Ga Phiri, Skoonheid, Mmotong wa Bogobe, Thamara, Koppermyn, Matabole, Ditshweneng, Mothiba Ngwanamago, Ga Thaba. Sekgweng, Sejeng, Mmakata, Dithlophaneng, Maripathekong, Boshega Moshate, Marobo, Makubung, Ga Lekgothoane, Makatjane, Mogano. Rampheri, Nnoko, Subiaco, Mankgaile, Boyne, Makgokobung, Mamatsha, Sehlale, Makgeng, Mountain view, Tshebela, Bethel.	**46**

DRAFT

Cluster	Name of Villages	Total Number of Villages
	Laastehoop, Ga Maboi, Ga Mojapelo, Sebati, Podile, Boikhutsong, Nobody Mothapo Portion.	
Moletjie/Aganangcluster	Sengatane, Mamadila, Magadangele View, Chebeng, Vaalkop, Pax, Makweya, Doornspruit, Mapangula, Moeti & Nong Maleka-a-kotama, Makgwakgwana, Traditional Rep, Kgobeng village Blood River, Dairing, Dairing Ext, Spook Park, Letsokoane, Letsokoane Ext, Masesha, Kwena Moloto 1, Kwena Moloto 2, Kwena Moloto 3, Peter Nchabeleng, Makgofe Traditional Rep Matlapa, Segoahleng, Mapateng, Boetse, Kgasha Moshate, Mashashane, Mandela, Maune, Matlaleng, Sehora, Utjane, Manyapye, Madiba, Mohlonong, Traditional Rep Mokgokong, Maphoto, Mabotja, Mokgao Park, Ranoto ,Makgofe, Tambo View, Makgakga, Mamoruswane, Motinti ,Matjaola, Tladi Traditional Rep Mahwibitswane, Mashashi, Masedibo, Komape, Komape Ext, Maleka-a-thaba, Molalahare Mabokelele, Setlogong, Seshego high, Leokama ,Moshate, Madikoti Mapeding, Monotoane, Glen rooi, Mars Jupiter, Naledi, Venus, Bersicht, Billingsgate, Madietane, Traditional Rep Rankhuwe, Ga-Piet, Mabilwane, Ditenteng, Mphela Thantsha, Manamela, Matshoane, Maupye, Helena, Selepe Ramakgaphola Traditional Rep Madihorong, Mashita, Kobo, Machema, Setati, Matamanyane, Mashobohleng, Mabitsela, Ga Chokoe Mokgonyana, Mashamaite & Mmakgodu Traditional Rep,	**139**

DRAFT

Cluster	Name of Villages	Total Number of Villages
	Phetole, Mpone, Ntlolane Phofu, Dibeng, Magoai, Kgomo school, Setumong Mmakgodu (3), Ramphele (1), Legodi (1), Mabotja (1), Mokgohloa (1), Kgohloane, (Ramphele) (1), Kgohloane, (Mabotja) (1), Traditional Rep (1) Hwibi, Goedgewonden, Moetagare, Tibane, Ramalapa, Vlak, Boratapelo, Seema, Kloesdam, Juno Ramongoana, Semenya, Makibelo, Hlahla, Matekereng Rampuru, Ceres, Kgabopark, Mabitsela, Rammetloana, Rammobola, Lonsdale, Rapitsi Traditional Rep	
Aganang Cluster	• Business Areas • Municipal offices and Traffic • Tibane Shopping Centre • Knobel Hospital & Sassa Department, • Maphepha stores • Matlala SAPS • Mashashane crossing • Masenya complex (Post Office, Progress Milling, Garage & Indians shops) • Kgomo school	**15**
Mankweng, Sebayeng/Dikgale cluster	Mamahule, Nobody Thakgalang, Nobody RDP, Nobody Mothiba, Matswiokwane, Meetsematsididi, Lethakwe, Sekapeng, Dalmada	**94**

DRAFT

Cluster	Name of Villages	Total Number of Villages
	Mamadimo Ga-Kama, Makeketela, Kgwara Moshate, Makgobathe, Masealama, Mailula, Tshware, Mehlakong, Van Vuur, Makokonong, Malahlela, Ga-Mawasha, Masekoameng, Ga Sencherere. Malesa, Iraq, Thabang, Motholo, Mamotintane, Sickline, Hlatlaganya, Ntshitshane, Ntsima, Maphoto , Kgokong. Badimong, Segoreng, Mongwaneng, Mongwaneng, Sahara, Thune, Ga-Kgole, Spitskop, Mamphaka, Komaneng. Matshelapata, Ga-Shiloane, Moshongoville, Thabakgone, Mahlanhle, Mamaakela, Segwashi, Makgongwana, Makotopong, Kotishing, Mothiba Ngwanalaka, Melkboomfontein, Ramathope, Makgwareng, Morwamaretse, Ga Mothiba. Tjatjaneng, Mantjana, Masobe (Moshate Wa Mothapo) Makgwareng, Ramogale, Old Magoa, Magwoa RDP, Masioneng, Mokgohloa, Phuti, Phomolong, Botshabelo, Masekoleng, Mathakwe, Lehlabile, Madiga, Moduane, Dikgopheng, Segopje, Ramoshai, Potse, Sefateng, Kgwareng, Maselaphaleng, Moshate Bjatladi. Morare Park, Mapelo, Mantsebe, Mantheding, Sebayeng Village	

DRAFT

Cluster	Name of Villages	Total Number of Villages
	Marobala, Titibe, Ga-Mokgopo, Mogabane, Kholetsheng, Makgoba.	

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.12.7 Plan to improve Cleanliness of the City CBD

a) Intensify supervision of litter picking in the CBD.
b) Re-arrange the current cleaning programme in the CBD by grouping all the litter pickers to clean in the morning and afternoons when there is less congestion, during the day to be taken to concentrate on hot spots areas during peak periods.
c) Ensuring that the list of hot spots such as taxi ranks, bus stops and hawkers areas are marked or ticked daily by supervisors to make sure they have been attended adequately.
d) To ensure that skip containers are cleaned daily and twice at hot spots areas.
e) Strengthen Law Enforcement by issuing notices and fines to transgressors since the waste By-Law has been approved and gazetted
f) To ensure Awareness and Education to businesses, hawkers and taxi areas is done and flyers in this regarded distributed to all in the CBD.
g) Placing concrete bins in all the CBD streets.

7.12.8 Waste Management Challenges and Intervention

a) The number of litter pickers will be increased in order to improve cleanliness in the CBD and other areas.
b) Some temporary litter pickers are allocated to trucks because of shortage of permanent staff for loading of bins.
c) Congestion and littering caused by car washers, hawkers and homeless people on the streets.
d) Displacement and damage of refuse containers by vagrants, job seekers and street kids.

DRAFT

e) The operations of multidisciplinary By-law enforcement task team will be intensified to prevail over these challenges on a continuous basis in relation to 2.3 and 2.4 above.

f) Shortage of Awareness and Education officers. The whole municipality is manned with one Awareness and Education official. Ward Committees who head Waste Management desks and Councilors to be oriented on basic education and awareness during their community meetings so that they can play a key role in combating challenges of environmental pollution throughout the municipal area. LEDET and Municipal Communication to be partners in this initiative.

7.12.9 Management of illegal Dumping in the City, Seshego and Westenburg

Areas with illegal dumping challenge in City, Seshego and Westenburg

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westenburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
List of areas with illegal dumping challenge in City and Westenburg			
• **Sterkpark**	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, and Law enforcement
• **De wet and R 71**	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, and Law enforcement
• **Mall of the north on R81(Behind Farm Yard**	weekly with TLB and tipper truck	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, and Law enforcement

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westenburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
	EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month		
• **RSA**	EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, and Law enforcement
• **N1 South**	monthly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On monthly basis	Education and awareness, and Law enforcement
• **Buite street taxi holding area**	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On daily basis	Education and awareness, and Law enforcement
• **Lawton street**	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, and Law enforcement
• **Saphire street Nirvana**	monthly with TLB and tipper truck	On monthly basis	Education and awareness, and Law enforcement

DRAFT

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westenburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
	EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month		
• **Covydale and Buys street**	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	**Westenburg** transfer station utilised	Two skips in coydale street shifted further from the residents. New Westernburg transfer station is completed.
List of areas with illegal dumping challenge in Seshego			
• **Emdo, Legae la batho, Madiba park, Phase 3, extension 76, 71 and 73**	Monthly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	on monthly basis	New Seshego transfer station is under construction. Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
• **Zone 1 next to Biko park, Zone 2 next to Moletji drive**	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	on weekly basis	
• **Bridge between hospital view and Madibapark**	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	on weekly basis	

DRAFT

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westenburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
• **Alf Makaleng street**	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	on weekly basis	

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.12.10 General Method of Dealing with Illegal Dumping

- Cleaning by TLB and Tipper trucks as per drawn program.
- Manual litter picking utilising EPWP urban cleaners.
- Awareness and education and law enforcement
- Planting of No Dumping Boards.
- Illegal dumping sites are cleaned on **weekly basis.**

7.12.11 Challenges in addressing illegal dumping problem.

- Continued unabated illegal dumping of building rubble by unscrupulous developers especially at night.
- Transplanting/stealing of No Dumping Boards and being sold at scrap yards by street kids and job seekers for cash.
- Despite weekly house to house waste collection, communities continue to dispose waste at open spaces and corners of streets.
- Lack of transfer stations in communities. Those available are far apart and not accessible to other villages.

DRAFT

7.12.12 Progress Report on Waste Management Capital Projects

NO	PROJECT NAME	WARD NO	BUDGET	PROGRESS / STATUS QUO
1.	**Extension of landfill site**	Ward 20	16 208 043	The extension of the landfill site is under construction
2.	**Upgrading of Aganang landfill fence**	Ward 8	2 500 000	Upgrading of concrete palisade fence for Aganang Landfill site
3.	**Procurement of 240 litre bins**	Ward 11	1 000 000	Purchase of 20 x 6/9 m3 skip containers
4.	**Molepo transfer station**	Ward 03	4 347 826	Construction of platform and electrification
5.	**Ga Maja Transfer station**	Ward 02	5 078 260	Construction of platform and electrification
6.	**Ga Chuene transfer station**	01	4 739 130	Construction of platform and electrification
7.	**6&9M3 Skip containers**	All wards	2 000 000	Procurement of 20 Skip containers is underway
8.	**Construction of Mashashane transfer station**	Aganang Cluster 40,41,42,43,44,45 20	1 100 000	Planning for Construction of Mashashane transfer station
9.	**Rehabilitation of landfill site**		5 043 478	Landfill capping

DRAFT

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.12.13 Square Concrete Street Bins Purchased for the City CBD

Square Concrete Street Bins Purchased for the City CBD

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

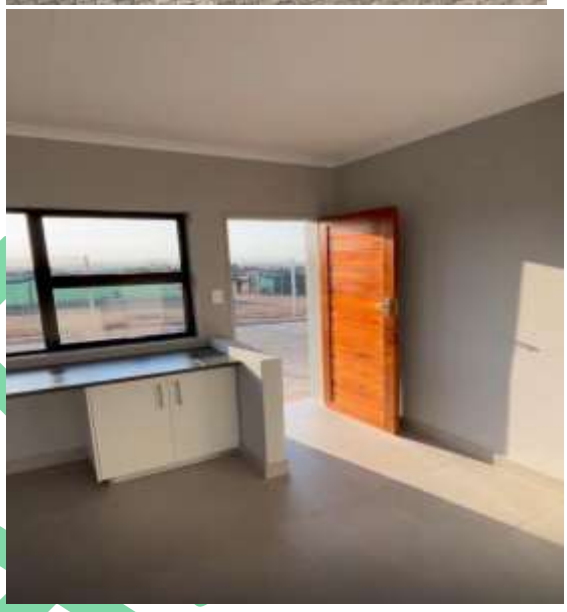
7.12.14 240L Bins Purchased

DRAFT

240L Bins Purchased

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.12.15 Completed Seshego Transfer Station



Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.12.16 Construction of perimeter fence completed at Extension of weltevreden landfill site

Construction of perimeter **fence completed** at **Extension of weltevreden landfill site**

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.12.17 Completed Westenburg Transfer Station

Completed Westenburg Transfer Station

Completed Westenburg Transfer Station

Completed Westenburg Transfer Station

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.12.18 Skip Bins Procured by Council

Skip Bins Procured by Council

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.13 By-Law Enforcement & Security

The City has an obligation in terms of Sect 152 (1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 108 of 1996, to promote safety and healthy environment; and to encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government. These objectives were realized through the establishment of Community Safety Forum with representatives from the community structures; establishment of the shift system; and through constant crime prevention operations with other Law Enforcement Agencies. The SBU is sub-divided into the following three (3) sub-units and their functions:

1. **Law Enforcement**

   The sub-unit provides the following services within the municipality:

   - Enforcement of municipal by-laws
   - Conduct crime prevention operations with other law enforcement agencies.
   - Conduct crime awareness campaigns.
   - Investigation of internal crime/incidents
   - Participate in the activities and meetings of Community Policing Forums and Community Safety Forums within the municipal jurisdiction,
   - Coordinate protest marches and picketing's in line with the provisions of the Regulations of Gatherings Act.
   - Attend to community protests and illegal land use activities.
   - Provide safety and security during council meetings, municipal and external events organized through Joint Operations Committee (JOC).

2. **Asset Protection**

   The sub-unit renders the following services:

   - Provides 24/7 security services to protect municipal properties, assets and employees,
   - Conduct security awareness to municipal employees and contractors operating within the municipality.
   - Coordinate suitability checks/vetting of municipal employees and private companies rendering service to Polokwane Municipality with the assistance of State Security Agency (SSA).
   - Conduct security inspections and risk assessments at municipal premises.
   - Facilitate Technical Surveillance Counter Measure (TSCM) at critical premises with the assistance of SSA.

DRAFT

3. **Emergency Control Centre**

- Provides 24/7 emergency call center management.
- Provides technical access control and support of automated access into municipal buildings (e.g., motorized gates, automated access control systems, biometric access control system, walkthrough metal and parcel scanner).
- Provide, maintain and monitor CCTV Surveillance camera networks and IP related equipment.

7.13.1 SBU challenges and intervention

The table below illustrates the challenges and the interventions

Challenges	Interventions to address these challenges.
Decentralized by law enforcement	- To request OD to assist in the work study that will lead towards the centralization of by law enforcement.
Vandalism and theft of municipal assets and infrastructure	- Appointment of additional law enforcement officers and the deployment of physical/patrol security officers and installation of electric security measures at municipal properties
Inadequate budget for the procurement and maintenance of CCTV Cameras and Access control systems.	- Request more budget for the procurement of new CCTV and Access Control systems; and for repairs and maintenance
Vagrants / dislocated people sleeping on the streets	- Intensify joint law enforcement with different stakeholders
Shortage of personnel	- To submit duly completed vacancy requisition forms for all budgeted vacant posts to HR
Shortage of patrol vehicles	- To request for additional patrol vehicles through Fleet Management
Inadequate office space for By-Law Enforcement & Security SBU	- To secure dedicated office space for the entire SBU
Increased lawlessness in and around the city (disrespect of municipal by laws and other applicable legislation).	- Intensify Safer City Operations with different stakeholders
Inadequate technology to combat crime	- To benchmark for alternative best practice model and technology to assist in curbing crime.

Source: PLK By-Law Enforcement & Security SBU

7.13.2 CCTV Camera Installation

DRAFT

The City has expanded the installation of New CCTV Camera sets at six intersections and were supported by LPR cameras to assist in curbing crime and the promotion of safety. Below are the examples of the cameras fitted with the license plate recognition system:

CCTV Cameras with LPR at Landros Mare & Veldspad.

CCTV camera with LPR at R101 and Lawton Drive

Source: PLK By-Law Enforcement & Security SBU

7.14. Safer City Concept

A multi-disciplinary joint operations work stream has been established through the concept of Safer City to address lawlessness and public nuisance across all clusters of the municipality. The operations are conducted on weekly basis. The operations focus on by-laws, National Road Traffic Act, Building Regulations, illegal land use, transgressions, illegal water and electricity connections, and general crime prevention.

Community Safety Forum members sit on monthly basis to report on the safety challenges affecting the community followed by the Stakeholder consultative meetings that are held quarterly to give progress and feedback of the operations conducted over a period of three months.

Below are the pictures taken during the Safer City Operations:

Joint Safer City operations parade by different stakeholders

joint operation searching for expired food in retailers

Source: PLK By-Law Enforcement & Security SBU

7.14.1 Safer Schools Campaigns

The SBU continues to conduct crime prevention and safer school campaigns at different schools and communities within the jurisdiction of Polokwane in an attempt to promote safety and to educate leaners on the dangers of using drugs and bullying.

Safer School Campaigns

Source: PLK By-Law Enforcement & Security SBU

7.15 DISASTER MANAGEMENT AND FIRE SERVICES

7.15.1 Fire Services Status Quo

Polokwane Municipality was authorised to perform Fire Services and Disaster Management in terms of section 18 of Local Government Municipal Structures Amendment Act, 2000 (Act no.33 of 2000. Further to proclamation, a Memorandum of Understanding was entered into between Polokwane Municipality and Capricorn District Municipality. Fire Services is designated as a professional service made of three sections, namely Fire Operations, Fire Safety and Fire Training.

Fire Services Subunit is expected to meet the prescribed standards and norms as part of the mandate to ensure fire coverage. However, the municipality is unable to meet the essential national standards and established minimum standards as provided in various SANS Codes. The norms and standards that are provided for Fire Services like Community Protection Against Fire as stipulated in SANS10090 and manning levels, equipment and Risk Profile as enshrined in SANS 10010 and Fire Safety buildings in terms of SANS 10400. The Fire Service must comply with these norms and standards and other relevant supporting legislations like National Building Regulations Act no103 of 1977.

7.15.2 Polokwane Fire Stations

The municipality has three dedicated Fire Service stations in Mankweng, Ladanna and Silicon areas that are manned 24/7. The main fire station is situated in Ladanna responding to N1 North, Seshego, Moletji and Aganang cluster. The second satellite Fire Station is at the Civil Airfield, Silicon Road next to Game Reserve responding to calls on N1 South, Molepo Chuene Maja (R37 road) and Mankweng Fire Station which respond to Mankweng and Sebayeng Dikagle incidents. The Subunit was further allocated three sites to build the fire satellite stations Moletji Leokama ditshaba (Joubert Park). Matlala a` Thaba Ipopeng Centre and Maja Koppermyn. These satellite stations are needed to boost and improve the capacity of the Fire Services to respond. The stations are continuing to render services with limited staff component on the shift. However, the municipality has hired 19 Fire fighters through EPWP programme. capacity to render effective and quality service.

DRAFT

7.15.3. Challenges of Fires Services Unit

The Subunit is still experiencing human resource constraints due to limited staff components and high rate of resignations, which makes the municipality to be non-compliant with the general guideline of 1(one) firefighter for every 1 000 to 1 500 residents. These constraints result in poor response time and overburdened staff members. Other clusters do not have satellite fire stations making the current state of firefighting services reflects at least 70 per cent of the municipal servicing area.

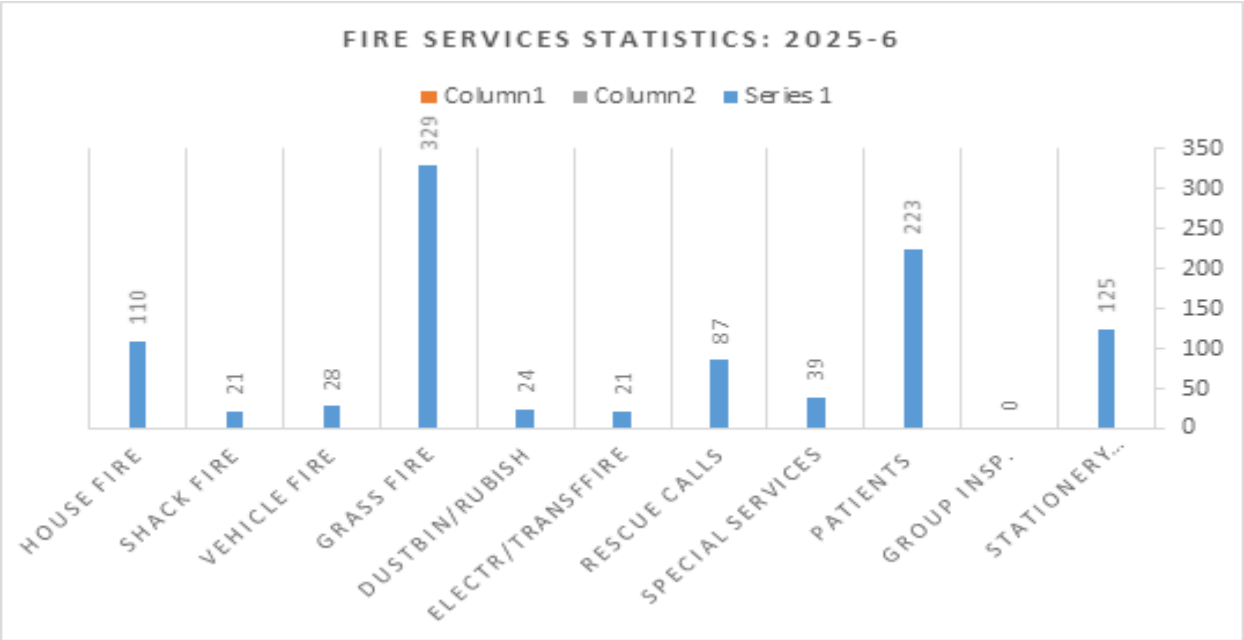
Generally, there is lack of awareness about fire incidents and the causes of fire amongst the community, especially communities living in informal settlements. Shortage of technical training such as Urban Search & Rescue, Advanced level Hazmat response capabilities, and Incident Management has an impact on effective response. There is an inadequate technical competency on fire safety especially in building plan scrutinize and rational designs assessment to speed up investment. Fire Services lack sufficient emphasis on community fire safety and general fire education. Due to limited personnel, there is inadequate focus on Major Hazard Installation Regulations in the municipality. Basic Conditions of Employment Act (BCEA) has added negative impact on shift-based systems for the services. BCEA has reduced working hours for safety and security personnel without considering minimum standard of deployment of personnel. It has created disjuncture between working hours and conditions of services. To accommodate the BCEA, the municipality must employ additional human resources at high cost to meet the challenge

7.15.4. Achievements

The Sub unit has been allocated budget to procure services and equipment. Five capital projects were implemented, and important lifesaving equipment were acquired. These include hydraulic equipment, rescue ropes, multi-purpose branches, ancillary equipment, airbags set, carborundum cutters, complete set of bar, standpipes, key and air chisel kit. In terms of fire prevention, the municipality has conducted 2100 KM of re-blading through mechanical removal by using graders or disc ploughs in line The National Veld and Forest Fire Act of 1998. It has responded to 433 fires, 345 other incidents like special services, accidents and rescue calls.

7.16 Fire Services statistics

DRAFT



Source: Polokwane Disaster Management and Fire Services

Total number of 33 municipal staff members have been trained on Basic Aid Level 1 training course. Fire Services Sub-Unit has conducted 901 fire safety inspections to ensure compliance with legislations, By-Laws and applicable SANS codes. The inspections include transportation of dangerous, occupancy, full building inspection for existing facilities, normal routine inspections and water pressure tests

However, there is a need to invest in modern firefighting equipment and infrastructure such as drone, Rapid Response Vehicle and Arial ladders. Fire Services must also enter into Memorandum of Understanding with nearby designated Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) Fire Services as part of preparedness to handle emergencies effectively

7.17 STATUS QUO FOR DISASTER MANAGEMENT SUBUNIT

Disaster Management services were further authorised to perform the function in terms of section 43 of the Disaster Management no.16 of 2015. The authorisation was granted in section 18 of Local Government Municipal Structures Amendment Act, 2000. Disaster Management Sub-Unit has the responsibility to coordinate the appropriate prevention, mitigation and disaster response initiatives to be implemented in the municipality. The persistent climate change effects have further added more responsibilities to the Subunit given the existing structure. Both climate change and general disaster risk activities require up to date, reliable and accurate data management and communication systems. Disaster

DRAFT

Management Subunit must coordinate disaster management efforts and align its activities with global frameworks, such as the Sendai Framework for Disaster Risk Reduction of 2015. The Subunit has the role to play in strengthening disaster resilience and response.

Natural or anthropogenic disasters have intensified in frequency and impact in the municipality over the past three years due to climate change requiring preparedness and disaster risk reduction measures. It becomes critically clear that efforts must be made to minimise the consequences of extreme events and increase resilience to disasters, especially rural and urban poor.

National Climate Change Response White Paper (NCCRP) sets out the climate change response strategy for addressing climate change mitigation and adaptation in the short, medium and long term and further propounded a risk-based approach to identifying and prioritising short-to medium-term interventions to address these areas in sector plans. The White paper also support Disaster Management Policy Framework Key Performance Area on integrated institutional capacity that require multi-sectoral coordination between sectors to deal with climate adaptation and disaster risk reduction.

7.17.1 Challenges of Disaster management

Disaster management Subunit is operating under severe structural and resource constraints, including limited staff. These key challenges make the services to be heavy rely on reactive responses rather than proactive risk reductions. Some of hurdles include inadequate capacity, fragmented coordination across sectors. The Subunit has limited budget and equipment to undertake its core functions. Disaster Management system is also exaggerating the performance through its reactive funding model where budget allocation considers post recovery projects over risk reduction and preventative infrastructure to build resilience. Communication and information management systems are not integrated with early warning system not clearly understood by the vulnerable communities including practitioners. Local Disaster Management Centre require an interoperability and compatibility of the system to function well, and this results poor response and risk reductions activities.

7.17.2 Achievements of Disaster management

The Subunit has functional Municipal Disaster Advisory Forum meeting on quarterly basis. Infrastructure damage assessments were conducted, and the municipality has benefitted from Disaster Emergency Grant and Disaster Reconstruction and Rehabilitation projects worth more than R34 million in the previous financial year. Public Infrastructure Unit (Roads and

DRAFT

Storm water) implemented earth lining channels projects that have significantly reduced water run off to streets and main roads in the city.

7.17.3 Joint awareness Session

Joint awareness Session

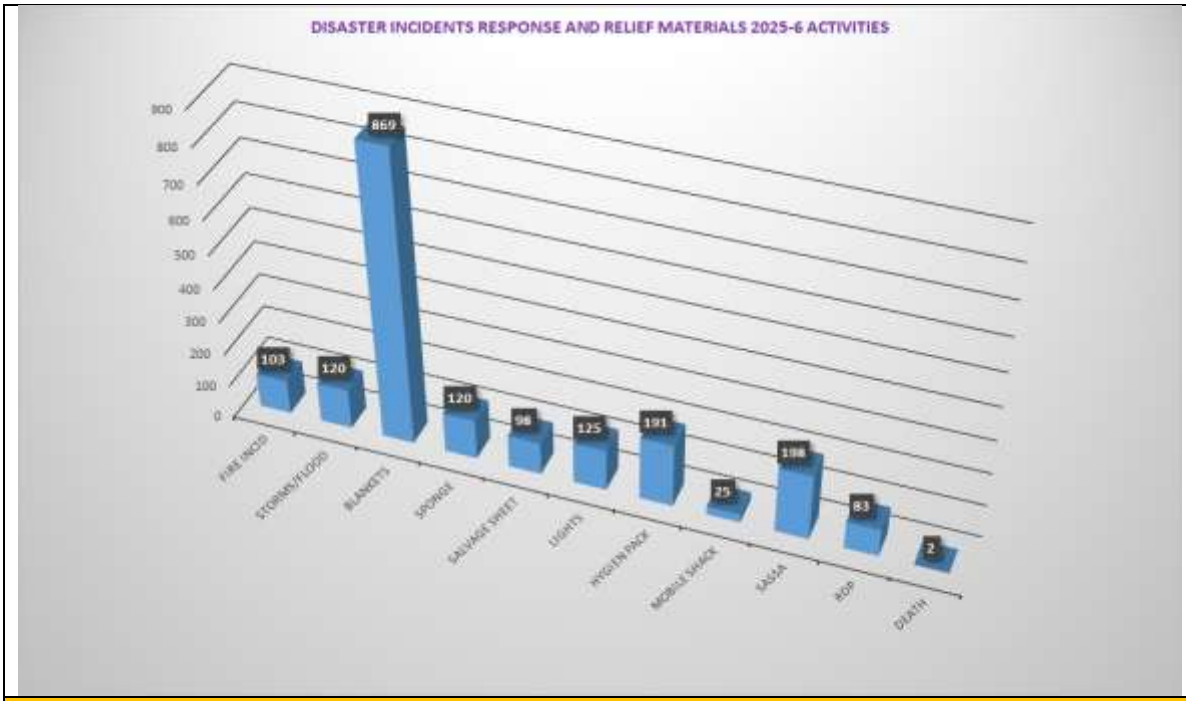
Source:Polokwane Disaster Management and Fire Services

7.17.4 Total number of incidents attended to

A total number of 217 incidents were attended with 1292 relief items were issued to the victims within 12 hours of reporting. The municipality has hosted 69 soccer games that the Unit ensured compliance to Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act. The Unit also ensure compliance to other 18 events such as festivals, conferences, rallies, cultural day and Moria pilgrimages. Awareness campaigns amounting to 91 including 13 evacuation trainings were conducted at traditional authorities, schools, shopping malls or complexes, clinics, TVET colleges, businesses, taxi rank, and sector departments.

However, the Unit has to ensure preparedness for all hazards given the challenges of climate change such as extreme weather conditions including anthropogenic and natural disasters. It

must also fulfil its mandate for fire safety, prevention, develop mitigation measures and community preparedness. Capacity building programmes are crucial for development of skills and further encourage staff professionalization.



Total number of incidents attended to

Source: Polokwane Disaster Management and Fire Services

7.17.5 Municipal Disaster Management Advisory Forum Meeting

Municipal Disaster Management Advisory Forum Meeting

7.17.6 Two New Fire Trucks Procured and Delivered (Red fleet)

New Fire and Disaster Trucks (Red Fleet)

Source: Polokwane Disaster Management and Fire Services

7.18 TRAFFIC AND LICENSES ANALYSIS

7.18.1 Traffic and licenses services

Polokwane Municipality has Traffic and Licences services resorting under Directorate: **Public Safety.**

The Strategic Business unit ensures the following services:

- All road traffic law enforcement functions- Municipal-wide
- Licensing services conducted at 03 licensing Facilities situated centrally, Eastern and western areas of the Municipality namely:

✓ **Mankweng Licensing Centre.**

✓ **City/ Ladanna licensing Centre and**

✓ **Aganang Licensing Centre.**

7.18.2 Roles and responsibilities: Traffic and Licenses

Traffic and licensing provide the following key performance areas:

- Traffic related escort Services, Traffic regulations, diverting and control during
- Traffic law enforcement
- Road Traffic safety awareness
- Accident's scene management, securing and recordings.
- Speed checks and collection of outstanding fines.
- Driver and vehicle fitness
- Enforcement of Municipal by-laws (Safer city project, roadside By-laws) and parking offences
- Other services such as internal and external training needs law enforcement courses.

The following traffic services are conducted only within the city cluster:

- Vehicle Mass measuring,
- Pound and impoundment of vehicles,
- Vehicle roadworthiness tests.

The Municipality has plans in place to roll out the above services at Mankweng and Aganang Traffic Stations.

The Mankweng Facility shall in the 2027/2028 financial year be ready for vehicular impoundments whilst Aganang facility be on vehicle roadworthy tests.

The Municipality in collaboration with National and Provincial Spheres of Government is currently rolling out the electronic leaners license issuing facilities at all three facilities.

Traffic services are conducted around the clock (24/7) within the City cluster with incidences occurring outside the city attended on ad-hoc basis.

This arrangement serves to be the interim measure when gearing up for a comprehended shift compliment and staffing exercises which are in progress. (in phase approach)

DRAFT

7.18.3 City of Polokwane Traffic Fleet

City of Polokwane Traffic Fleet

City of Polokwane Traffic Fleet

Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU

7.18.4 New Traffic Vehicles Procured and Delivered

TRAFFIC
CONTROL

TRAFFIC
CONTROL
PM18/53

7.18.5 City of Polokwane Main Traffic Department at Ladanna

City of Polokwane Traffic Department at Ladanna	
Service Counter	**Customer Waiting Facility**

Eyes Test Machine	**Service Counter**
Licence Card	**Motor vehicles licence Renewal Forms**

Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU:

- Traffic and Licensing facility within the city is currently of assistance to Polokwane residents,
- The above pics highlight services and points that are utilised for services**.**
- The Municipality has ensured shelter for its clients whilst waiting for services.
- All applications and collection of Licences are conducted at this facility.

7.18.6 Upgrading of Mankweng Traffic and licensing Centre

17 Mar 2026 10:39:11
Sovenga
Polokwane
Capricorn District Municipality

Fencing of Mankweng Traffic and licensing New Offices

Fencing of Mankweng Traffic and licensing New Offices

Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU:

- Mankweng Traffic and Licensing centre is currently under upgrading.
- The project is currently at phase two with significant progress made towards completion.
- The facility should upon completion assist in reducing travelling time to the city in need for Traffic facilities and the influx currently experienced at the same facility.
- A functional facility shall augment services required by the community in the Mankweng/Chuene -Maja and Sebayeng clusters.
- The Municipality shall achieve its goal of bringing services closer to its community.
-

7.18.7 Revenue Enhancement Streams

The following are available revenue streams:

- Traffic fines:

The Municipality employed services of a Traffic Management Solution in support of back-office and traffic fine processing.

Technical support services installed in vehicles and alongside road verges for traffic fines, issuing, tracing and processing.

DRAFT

- Enforcement of Municipal By-Laws
- Pound and impounding vehicles.
- Licensing services and
- Other miscellaneous traffic related activities

7.18.8 Basic Service Delivery Projects (BSD)

The SBU Traffic and Licensing has a functional team that ensure road safety awareness to schools, adult training needs, companies etc.

The objectives of this team are to ensure road safety education thus saving limb and lives from injuries/ fatalities.

7.19 Licensing Services:

The Municipality operates on agency basis on behalf of the Limpopo Department: Transport and Community Safety on the following services:

- Registrations and licensing of motor vehicles,
- Roadworthy tests on Vehicles
- Applications and examining learners and driving licenses.
- Applications for professional driving permits
- Applications and testing of instructor certificates.

The Municipality has entered into an agency agreement on a profit-sharing model.

7.19.1. Licensing Transactions Over a period of 12 months (2025/2026)

The tables below depict transactions performed within licensing units for the period July 2025-June 2026.

- **02**: Vehicle Registrations,
- **63**: Driving License Issue,

- **71**: Learners License Issue.
  - **The licensing transactions have been grouped per Cluster for easy reference.**

CITY CLUSTER

POLOKWANE

JULY 2025 TO JUNE 2026

TXN	JUL 25	AUG 25	SEP 25	OCT 25	NOV 25	DEC 25	JAN 26	FEB 26	MAR 26	APR 26	MAY 26	JUN 26	TOTAL
02	2848	2661	2590	2732	2330	2159	2878	2586	2698	2354	2376	2235	30447
63	2501	2414	2497	2845	2419	2387	2551	2189	2720	2201	2216	2108	29048
71	677	681	665	772	666	532	674	668	754	657	621	743	8100

MANKWENG

JULY 2025 TO JUNE 2026

TXN	JUL 25	AUG 25	SEP 25	OCT 25	NOV 25	DEC 25	JAN 26	FEB 26	MAR 26	APR 26	MAY 26	JUN 26	TOTAL
02	301	295	300	329	303	375	516	617	690	621	291	779	5417
63	602	605	478	594	484	626	671	635	631	537	589	612	7064
71	162	91	141	146	128	226	266	190	231	169	208	212	2170

AGANANG

JULY 2025 TO JUNE 2026

TXN	JUL 25	AUG 25	SEP 25	OCT 25	NOV 25	DEC 25	JAN 26	FEB 26	MAR 26	APR 26	MAY 26	JUN 26	TOTAL
02	29	34	31	35	24	26	34	33	39	35	26	34	380
63	666	465	376	472	375	514	487	454	474	386	411	472	5552
71	311	151	183	137	172	235	215	222	166	147	157	193	2289

DRAFT

Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU

7.19.2 Polokwane Road Accidents Statistics

The table below depicts yearly accident Statistics recorded within the City of Polokwane Municipality:

Financial Year	Accidents Statistics (Total)
2020/21	2341
2021/22	1995
2022/23	1780
2023/24	1680
2024/25	1754
2025/26	1904

Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU

The above figure highlights only accidents with Minor or no injuries and including minor damages on the affected vehicles. All accidents with fatalities are recorded and captured by The South African Police Services and including investigations thereof.

7.19.3 Traffic and Licences Challenges:

The following are current challenges:

- Offices need structural refurbishments. (Dilapidated)
- Inadequate traffic and licensing facilities.
- Licensing services continuously disrupted due to Network disruptions
- Centralized City licensing facility which is unable to cope with the influx.
- Inadequate parking facilities for both customers and employees.
- No waiting area facilities at Mankweng licensing stations
- Shortage of personnel.
- Inadequate specialized vehicles- (Motor bikes and tow trucks)

7.19.4 Measures to address Challenges:

DRAFT

Measures to address challenges:

- Refurbishment of the current facility and including structural expansion in place
- Decentralization of services including satellite stations at strategic areas (Rates Hall, clusters and other service points thus accommodating' "one stop shop'' idea.
- New technological innovations, including wireless, etc., thus relieving the current load on the conventional IT system.
- Satellite stations to cater for shorter travelling costs and time.
- Decentralization of Traffic services with licenses thus accommodating law enforcement operations.
- Whilst gearing towards being a Metro Municipality, gradually fund the newly approved positions on the recently approved Organogram thus avoiding pressure of reaching the targeted personnel number required for All services within Metro-Municipality.
- Procure specialized Vehicles such as Law Enforcement Motorbikes, adapted/specially made tow trucks for easy maneuvering during law enforcement operations.
- Decentralization of infrastructural facilities namely Vehicle Test yards, Vehicle pounds and other related at all clusters

7.20 SPORT AND RECREATION ANALYSIS

Sport and Recreation has the potential to serve as a tool for development as well as catalyst for social and personal change. It is also worth noting that sport and recreation builds stronger, healthier, happier and safer communities, a vehicle for positive social change. The priority of the municipality is to enhance participation in Sport and Recreation activities which include hosting of municipal, district, provincial, international Sports and Recreation events. The municipality also assist sport structures with the aim of attracting major events that will market the City as sporting hub and that have an impact on the local economy. The focus continues to be provision of sport equipment and grading of rural sport facilities, conducting sport and recreation programmes and maintenance of existing infrastructure.

Sport is used in promotion and marketing of Polokwane through presenting major events in order to establish Polokwane as the sport hub of the Limpopo Province. The municipality continues to provide a marketing platform for the City through the hosting of the national sporting activities such as the premier league matches. The national event attracts TV coverage beyond the borders of the country, giving a glimpse into the sporting facilities that exist within our city.

The municipality has hosted other events that have directly benefitted the communities within the municipality such as the **Indigenous and Golden Games, the Mayoral Cluster Races, and the City Marathon Road Race.** Polokwane Mayoral Marathon has been classified as

DRAFT

Comrade Marathon qualifier and in 2025 City Marathon the event was sold with more interest coming from athletes throughout the country and beyond.

Currently Sport and Recreation also coordinates programmes that are aimed at raising funds for charity and providing bursaries for needy community members by hosting the Mayoral Charity Golf Day and the City Marathon Road Race. Through partnership with the sponsors, the municipality continue to raise monies in order to fund needy students from Polokwane. There is hoped to continue amassing sponsorship that would make it possible to spread beneficiation to a far greater audience than what is being reached at the moment. The partnerships with professional football clubs have provided the City with opportunities to contribute towards local economic development in that premier league matches played at the New Peter Mokaba Stadium contributes to local retail and hospitality establishments enhancing their revenue generation.

The municipality continuously promotes sport by hosting municipal cluster marathons, indigenous and golden games. This are hosted at ward to cluster level and finally municipal level. Holiday programmes are presented to the community during the school holidays to ensure that children who are on holiday spend quality time.

Polokwane Municipality has launched a programme that is Polokwane Mayoral Football and Netball tournament, which is running from ward, cluster and lastly at the municipal level. The main aim is to enhance talent identification while promoting Sport in the municipality. Polokwane Municipality will continue to strive to be a winning team in promoting Social Cohesion. The municipality continues to fulfil the constitutional mandate of social cohesion by actively maintaining facilities and bringing major events to such through the Directorate Community Services.

These events not only give access to the multitude of participants, but they generally contribute to economic growth of the City. Events and facilities are deliberately used to empower disadvantaged communities and individuals, providing them access to schooling, recreational activities as well. The notion of Sport and Tourism should be looked at quite seriously and deliberate programmes to be packaged in conjunction with other relevant stakeholders in the Economic cluster. The hosting of national and international games should provide an impetus to investors and role players in the hospitality and tourism sector to want to partner more and more as such programme would be proving to be catalysts for the business growths.

Polokwane Municipality also conduct skills development and capacity building workshops through federations for various sporting codes.

7.20.1 Municipal Swimming Pool at CBD

Municipality has several Swimming Pools within its area.ie City **CBD** Swimming Pool, **Seshego** Swimming Pool, Nirvana Swimming Pool, **Westenburg** Swimming Pool
Municipal Swimming Pools

DRAFT

Source: PLK Sport SBU

7.20.2 Nirvana Swimming Pool Re-opened to the Public (Ward 19)

Executive Mayor of Polokwane Municipality, **Cllr Makoro John Mpe** officially **reopened** the Nirvana Swimming Pool. The revitalization project began. It represents an investment in service delivery and community Upliftment. This effort is a proof to the municipality's commitment to ensuring the sustainability of public infrastructure for the benefit of all.

In a move that signals a shift towards greater municipal efficiency, the facility's ongoing maintenance will be managed internally. This aligns with our broader vision of building government capacity and strengthening self-reliance. Our track record, seen in projects like the Civic Centre Park and Peter Mokaba Stadium, demonstrates our ability to maintain public assets with excellence.

With its gates now open, **Nirvana Swimming Pool** is set to transform community life. It will serve as a space for families, schools and aspiring athletes to connect, grow and thrive. The facility is more than just a swimming pool. It is a space that embodies the spirit of **Nirvana**, a place of joy, harmony and shared progress. To ensure accessibility, the municipality has introduced affordable tariffs and a flexible schedule that accommodates diverse needs. The pool is set to become a cornerstone of social and physical development in **Ward 19.**

Nirvana Swimming Pool Reopened to the Public (Ward 19)

Nirvana Swimming Pool Reopened to the Public (Ward 19)

Nirvana Swimming Pool Reopened to the Public (Ward 19)

Source: PLK Sport SBU

7.20.3 New Peter Mokaba Stadium

Figure: New Peter Mokaba Stadium

New Peter Mokaba Stadium

New Peter Mokaba Stadium

New Peter Mokaba Stadium Soccer Pitch

New Peter Mokaba Stadium Soccer Pitch

Source: PLK Sport SBU

The New Peter **Mokaba Stadium** is one of the five stadiums that was constructed to host the 2010 FIFA World Cup in South Africa. It was built next to the old Peter Mokaba Stadium and is currently being used for all types of events over and above Soccer, Rugby and meetings. Already the venue is popular for school tours, hosting of lifestyle activities and offices.

Peter Mokaba Stadium holds much historical significance in South Africa. It was named after one of the renowned sons of the struggle and emancipation of South Africa against the apartheid regime. **Peter Mokaba** was born and bred in Polokwane and was renowned for his fighting spirit and for his inspirational leadership.

Although the Peter Mokaba Stadium was built with a capacity for **45 000** spectators, this was reduced to **41 700** for the World Cup purposes, however for national events the safe capacity is 43 500 according to standard set out in the SASREA ACT. Interestingly, the stadium's design was inspired by the **baobab tree**, which is often said to look like it is upside down, with its roots emerging out of the ground and reaching for the sky. The stadium's steel structure gathers together at each corner of the stadium and is supported by structures that resemble massive tree trunks.

There is a VIP area that accommodates up to **500 VIPs**, a VIP reception area and lounge, as well as offices and storage areas. The stadium is less than five kilometres from the City centre of Polokwane. This area boasts a number of other sights and activities, including the Polokwane Museum, Polokwane Bird and Reptile Park.

A number of major events have been hosted at the two venues, including Rugby matches, weddings, conferences, political rallies, IEC centre during elections, religious gatherings and meetings.

7.20.5 Two Premier Soccer League Teams Hosted at the new and old Peter Mokaba Stadium

The new and old Peter Mokaba Stadium host four Premier Soccer League teams in the Limpopo Province, namely **Polokwane City FC**, **Sekhukhune United FC**, **Kaizer Chiefs FC and Magesi FC**. The teams will be hosted over a period of three seasons subject to them retaining PSL status. A total of over 48 odd matches are scheduled to be played in both stadia's. In the 2025/2026 season Magesi FC will be hosting majority of their home matches at the Seshego Stadium which has been upgraded to host major events including athletics. The upgrades will enable the locals to walk to the stadium to watch their favourite premier league matches.

7.20.6 Horticultural Services

Horticultural Sub-SBU render services to all sport facilities (sport fields, community halls, swimming pools, showground and shooting ranges) at all cluster of Polokwane Municipality. Horticultural services include landscaping, pitch maintenance and refuse removal especially in City, Seshego and Mankweng clusters. Grass cutting (turf grass and wild grass) and tree felling is done to all facilities that falls under sport and recreation SBU.

Marking of soccer, rugby, softball, athletics, cricket and other sporting codes including all indigenous games is done within the SBU. Rolling of cricket pitch and preparation of all types of events that are hosted in our facilities is also a responsibility of horticultural service team.

7.20.7 Sport and Recreational Facilities

Polokwane Municipality is also responsible for managing sport and recreation facilities which are leased out on long- and short-term basis bringing in revenue and ensures that the

DRAFT

maintenance of such facilities is done in terms of council policies and used in terms of Sport and Recreation Act 2, of 2010, for hosting of events.

Various outdoor and indoor sports and recreation facilities including community halls that are used for professional and leisure activities. The indoor facilities include **Jack Botes Hall** which host meetings, weddings, funerals, music concerts and legislature sittings. **Ngoako Ramahlodi indoor centre** which hosts activities like indoor soccer, netball, basketball, volleyball, karate and also serves as a community hall for hosting of music events, community meetings and funerals. The Polokwane Indoor recreation centre caters for activity such as gymnastics, badminton, squash, kickboxing and a gymnasium (Virgin active).

Outdoor facilities include Golf club, Cricket, Tennis, Korfball, Jukskei, shooting range, Motorsport,4X4Motor Vehicle Track, Close Circuit Motorcycle track, Model Flying Aeroplanes, Rugby, Softball, Bowling, Soccer. The **Old Peter Mokaba stadium** remains the only facility in the province that complies to host national and international athletics events. The municipality also has various facilities with all-weather surfaces and artificial grass surfaces which ensures that sports and recreation activities can be played under various conditions.

DRAFT

7.21 New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane

7.21.1 Profile information on New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane

1. **Background to the project.**

The City of Polokwane has been identified as the home of softball. the City of Polokwane is one of the Municipalities benefitting from the Ring-Fenced MIG (UIDG) Sport Allocation to the total amount of R85 m in three (3) financial years. The planning of the project commenced during the 2019/20FY, where Polokwane Municipality was allocated an amount R 25 000 000.00. However, due delays caused by the National Lockdown announced in March 2020, the finalization of the Procurement process was delayed. Construction of the project commenced during 2020/21 financial year and was affected by delays after the main contractor terminated the contract and left site. A new contractor has since commenced with construction after delays due insufficient funding.

The City of Polokwane has been allocated an amount of R **184 000 000.00** for a period of three years. The funding will be utilized for the Construction and professional fees of Polokwane Softball in Polokwane city cluster within Polokwane Municipality.
The project involves the Design, Planning and Construction of an International Softball Stadium in Polokwane. The project consists of design and construction of 3 Softball Fields, a practice field and associated 3500-seater Concrete Grandstand for field A, steel and timber Grands for fields B and C and associated buildings

The detailed scope of works is as follows:

2. **<u>Associated Facilities & infrastructure for the whole stadium</u>**

- Grandstand Building (with facilities for visiting and home teams, administration, media, VIP, storage, ancillary spaces, ramps, staircases, part circulation spaces and ablutions.
- Ablution facilities for all Fields (A, B, C and 2 practice fields) located in the Grandstand Building
- Electrical, Mechanical and Fire prevention works.
- Sewer collection and reticulation works, water supply and reticulation work.
- Roadworks for entry and exit to site, internal and circulation road works and parking.
- Public plaza works.
- Landscaping to spaces around the Grandstand, Stand B and the public plaza.
- Secured Kids Play Area

3 Main Field A

- Field A Grandstand with roof (3500-seating)
- Field A, 6260m2 (International Standard) with netting and safety requirements as per manual
- Earth Berm (Future seating), Dugouts, Bullpens and batting cages
- Lighting and electronic requirements as per client specification

4.Field B

- Field B (Area 6260m2) (International Standard)
- Field B Seating Stand (1000 spectators)
- Earth Berm, Steel Structure Pavilion, Bullpens and batting cages
- Lighting and electronic requirements as per client specification
- Field C
- Field C (Area 6260m2) prepared for match standards and conditions.

2 x Practice Fields

- Open grassed area practice field of area 8250m2 (75m x 110m).

The Polokwane Municipality has certain financial expenditure obligations to achieve (e.g., expenditure of allocated budgets within the required financial year). The Polokwane Municipality would try by all means to balance out the available budget with the actual expenditure claimed for work done.

5.Expected completion date.

Construction of the works started **12 December 2020** and is scheduled to be completed by **December 2026** after several delays to the project.

Intervention meetings have been held with the Contractor to get a commitment to put in place a catch-up plan. The Contractor has started increasing resources on site as agreed with the Project Team in order to catch up with the programme.

DRAFT

3. **How will the community benefit?**

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) for Polokwane Municipality has also noted the need for recreational facilities and has provided for such a development in the current 5-year plan. The Construction of an International Softball Stadium will attract tourists together with international events like World Olympics and Word Cups Games. This will boost the local tourism industry.

Expected number of jobs to be created (temporary and permanent).

A cumulative number of local work (unskilled labour) opportunities created to date is **41** at cumulative wages **of R 568 129,12**

No of youth to benefit.

28 Youth male, **10** Youth female and **1** person living with a disability have been employed on the construction project.

Challenges and possible interventions.

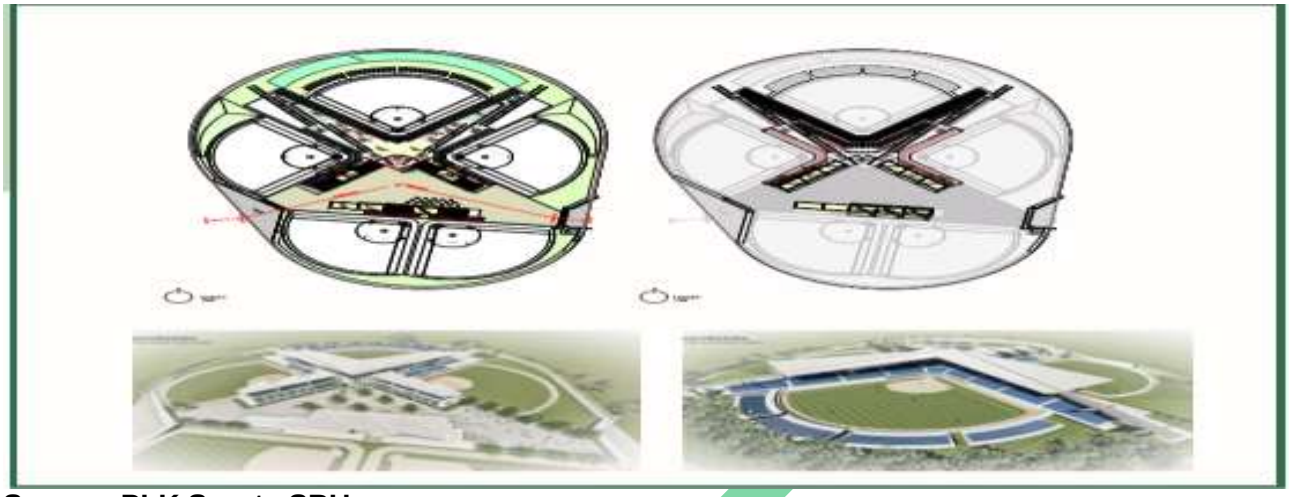
The contractor is behind schedule and a valid extension of time was applied for and granted.

Intervention meetings have been held with the Contractor to get a commitment to put in place a catch-up plan. The Contractor has started increasing resources on site as agreed with the Project Team in order to catch up with the programme and there is a visible improvement.

The contractor has highlighted cash flow challenges due to price escalations on material caused largely by the pandemic. The municipality is assisting with paying for material directly through cession agreement and the contractor has submitted a variation order that is currently under review.

7.21.2 Softball Stadium Concept Designs

DRAFT



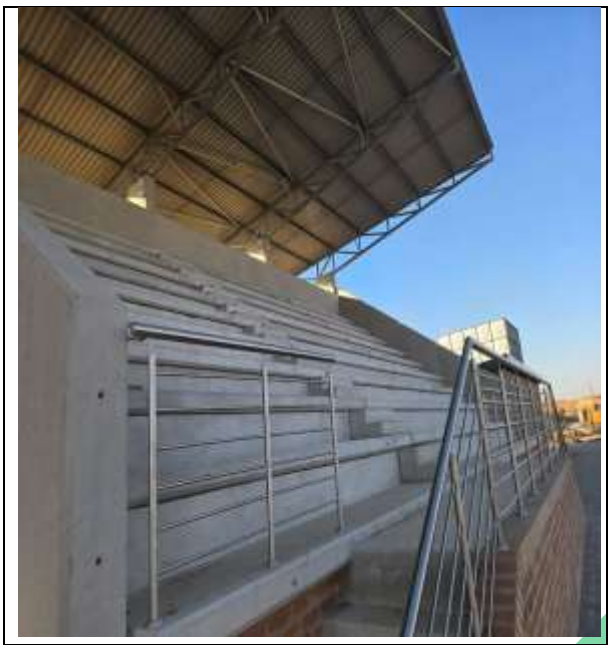
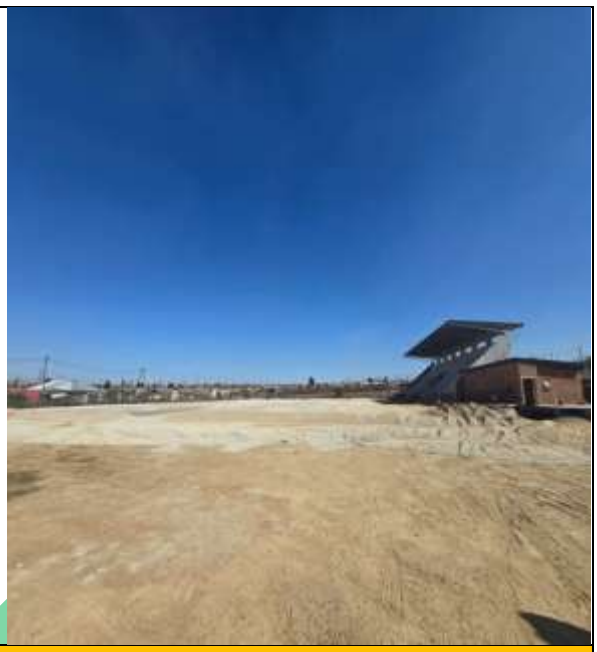
Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.21.3 Fencing of Softball Stadium Progress

Fencing of Softball Stadium

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.21.4 Construction of EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium

EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium(Finalization)

EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium(Finalization)

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.21.6 EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium Completed

EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium Completed

EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium Completed

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.21.7 Aerial Overview of EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium

Aerial Overview of EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Stadium

7.21.8 Construction of Mankweng Stadium

Construction of Mankweng Stadium

Construction of Mankweng Stadium

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.21.9 Laastehoop Sports Complex (Finalization)

Laastehoop Sports Complex (Finalization)

Laastehoop Sports Complex (Finalization)

Laastehoop Sports Complex (Finalization)

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.22 Sports Ground Grading Status Quo

Sport and Recreation received **one grader** for blading of sports ground in all 45 wards. The annual target is to grade 6. 4 sport fields per ward which equals to 288 for the entire municipal area. In the 2024/2025 financial, Sport and Recreation achieved the **288 target** in all 7 clusters of the municipality.

7.22.1 Matena Football Club Sport filed Grading (Ward 45, Aganang Cluster)

Matena Football club Sport filed Grading (Ward 45, Aganang Cluster)

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.22.2 Sports Field Grading Program

The grading of fields is mainly seasonal and such services are mainly required during the festive season when tournaments are held and during the Easter weekends when such tournaments are continuing to be held in the communities.

The SBU has only one functional grader for the entire municipality. Essentially a minimum of two graders are required at any given time to become efficient and address the back logs. This plan does not include ad hoc requests.

Sports Field Grading Programme

Clusters:	Overall Graded Grounds per cluster:	Average per ward:
Sebayeng/Dikgale Cluster **(6 wards)**	73 Grounds	12.1
Mankweng Cluster **(7 wards)**	32 Grounds	4.5
Moletjie Cluster **(8 wards)**	111 Grounds	13.8
Molepo/Maja/Chuene Cluster **(5 wards)**	16 Grounds	3.2
Aganang Cluster **(6 wards)**	12 Grounds	
Seshego Cluster **(6 wards)**	37 Grounds	6.1
City Cluster **(4 wards)**	7 Grounds	1.75
Overall grounds:	**288**	

Source: PLK Sports SBU

The above-mentioned grading plan take into consideration raining season and the fact that at times, sports field can be graded twice in a space of two or three months because of heavy rains. During Easter weekends, requests are also ad hoc and are treated on a first come basis and availability of equipment.

The lack of budget to maintain the sport and recreational facilities is a huge risk as most of the facilities are not in compliance with fire and disaster requirements. Sport and Recreation operates over 62 facilities mainly within the city bounds.

DRAFT

7.22.3 Tennis Court Renovations

The City of Polokwane has successfully completed a project aimed at promoting sport tourism in the province. Through extensive renovations, the municipality has rejuvenated **15 tennis courts** within the city CBD and an additional **2 courts in Seshego Cluster,** setting Polokwane's position as a hub for athletic excellence and leisure activities.

The need for renovating tennis courts and other sport and recreational facilities cannot be over-elaborated as these spaces serve as vital community assets, nurturing physical activity, social interaction, and a sense of belonging among residents.

Tennis South Africa's approval of the renovated courts to host national and international events is a proof to the quality and standard of the upgrades. This endorsement not only showcases Polokwane's readiness to welcome athletes and visitors from across the globe but also opens doors to economic opportunities and cultural exchange, further enriching the fabric of the community.

with the Tennis Courts renovations will play a significant role in driving Polokwane's development and growth. The transformation of these tennis courts signifies our municipality's keenness to providing world-class sporting facilities for our residents and visitors,"

By investing in projects like these and creating an enabling environment for investment through initiatives such as land donations, the city is laying the foundation for sustainable development and prosperity in Polokwane.

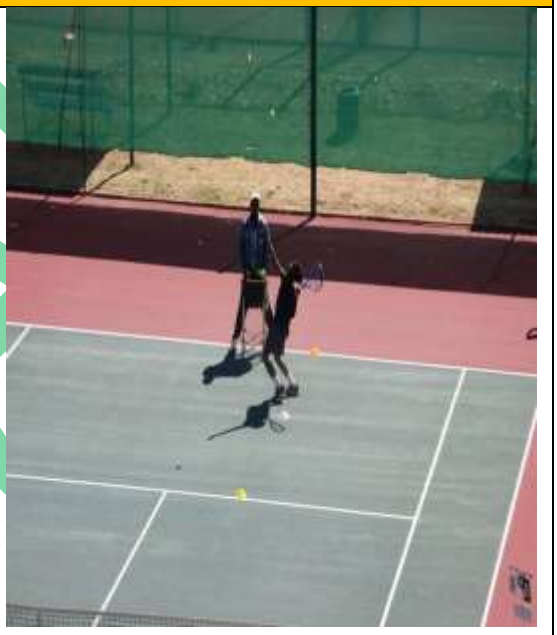
The renovation project included essential enhancements such as high mast lights for night games, fencing around the playing area for safety and security, practice walls, and upgraded playing surfaces with new nets. While these improvements mark a substantial step forward, there is acknowledgment of the need to further develop ablution facilities and expand parking areas to accommodate larger crowds effectively.

Polokwane Municipality remains steadfast to improving its sport and recreational infrastructure to meet the evolving needs of its residents and visitors. Through continued investment and strategic partnerships, the municipality aims to unlock the full potential of Polokwane as a destination for sport tourism.

Tennis Courts Renovation Programme

DRAFT

Polokwane Tennis Club Renovated



Polokwane Tennis Club Renovated

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.22.4 Upgrading of Seshego Stadium Completed

Seshego Stadium has undergone upgrades so that the facility can bring an even better sporting experience. The stadium meets PSL standards, allowing Polokwane to host some of the prestigious games at Seshego Stadium. Seshego Stadium has been upgraded to accommodate hosting of PSL matches and athletics at the local level, district and provincial level. Magesi FC will continue using the facility as their home ground in 2025/2026 season.

The final scope of work for the upgrade of Seshego Stadium was the installation of Standby generator at the facility. There will be lights and matches will continue.

Upgrading of Seshego Stadium Completed

Upgrading of Seshego Stadium

Upgrading of Seshego Stadium

Upgrading of Seshego Stadium

Upgraded turnstiles | Clear view fence

Upgrading of Seshego Stadium

7.22.5 Grand stand for Seshego Stadium Renovated

Upgrading of Seshego Stadium Completed

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.22.6 Overview of Newly Upgraded Seshego Stadium Hosting PSL Games

Overview of Newly Upgraded Seshego Stadium Hosting PSL Games

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.22.7 Mayoral Charity Golf Cup

Learners from less privileged families stands to benefit bursaries from the money raised during this event. The Funds will support indigent students in the Polokwane area to gain access to tertiary education.

The annual event also sees local golfers, businesspeople and politicians come together at the club to support the noble initiative.

This is not a new concept to the people of Polokwane. The municipality, through the executive mayor Office, host this important event since **2011** to change the lives of vulnerable or less privileged children within our communities.

The aim is to assist Students to gain access to tertiary education through the Mayoral Bursary Fund. It is through these event contributions that less privileged children will continue to have a meaningful place in the development and economy of our country.

Polokwane Golf Club

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.22.8 Polokwane City Marathon

Polokwane City Marathon is now an Annual event playing a pivotal role in driving economic growth and positioning the city of Polokwane as a vibrant hub of tourism investment, and opportunity.

The City of Polokwane aspires to be more than just a city and that it aims to be a beacon of excellence, innovation, and progress.

As the City continue on its journey towards metropolitan status, it is imperative that we leverage the potential of sports to propel us forward. The City understand the profound importance of sports and the undeniable benefits it brings to individuals, communities, and society as a whole.

Distances for Polokwane City Marathon

- 42.2km
- 21.1km
- 10km
- 5km

Polokwane City Marathon is Hosted at the New Peter Mokaba Stadium as the **Starting Point**.

Polokwane City Marathon

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.23 CULTURAL SERVICES

7.23.1Cultural Services

The provision of cultural services is an important function of Polokwane Municipality in supporting social cohesion and promoting Local Economic Development through thriving cultural industries. The Strategic Business Unit (SBU) Cultural Services is responsible for libraries, museums, heritage and cultural programs – Promotion of Reading (Libraries); Promotion, Management and Conservation of Heritage Resources (Museums) and Presentation of Cultural Programs (Cultural Desk).

7.24 Libraries

7.24.1 Challenges and Interventions for Libraries

The Municipality renders a flagship library service in the **CBD (City Library)** and operate branch libraries in **Mankweng, Matlala, Moletjie, Nirvana, Seshego and Westenburg**. The Municipality provide library materials on loan to users within the municipal jurisdiction, Polokwane Place of Safety's resource centre, Siloe School for the Blind and four old age homes.

The Provincial Department of Sport, Arts and Culture (DSAC) provided a library at Molepo area which is operated jointly by Polokwane Municipality and DSAC. Part of the Molepo-Chuene-Maja cluster office has been converted for library purposes but is **not yet operational** due to lack of budget for books and furniture. We hope that in the next financial year budget will be made available for the purpose of opening to members of the public.

City Library	**Moletjie Library**

Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

Current Services:

The Polokwane Municipal Libraries renders information service to the community and provides reading materials for a variety of purposes, e.g., education and cultural development, self-improvement and recreation. In order to promote and cultivate a culture of reading, the libraries section actively engages with the community through various "outreach" programs. The following are the core functions:

Provision of information: The Reference & Study section of our libraries are frequented by users from various parts of the province. User groups are tertiary students; secondary school learners doing research for school projects; primary school learners and their parents; persons requiring information to enhance their general knowledge and to improve their personal circumstances.

Books for informal reading: Municipal Libraries provide a variety of materials suitable for informal/leisure reading. One improves his/her reading skills by consistently engaging in reading. The libraries provide books for self-development and cultural development.

Circulation service: Circulation of books remains an integral part of every library's services. While anybody may read as much as they can free of charge inside our libraries, a borrower of books must enrol as a library member (prescribed rules & subject to payment of the relevant fees) before being allowed to borrow library material for home use.

.

Provision of study space: Library users need space to study, the environment of such space should be conducive for studies – calling for good lighting levels, good ventilation, etc. The libraries made study areas available to accommodate daily visitors, allowing them the use of all books in the library. This is a growing need in our libraries. There are also requests for after-hours utilisation of study areas – which we try to provide during peak times.

Internet and Wi-Fi: The libraries currently offer a limited number of Internet connections to users to aid learners, students and upcoming entrepreneurs. A connection is free for one hour per day and is sponsored by the "Conditional Grant for Public Libraries" – Free Wi-Fi is limited to the study section of the City Library but covers branch libraries entirely.

Technological Aids: To render distribution of information effectively all service points have dependable photocopiers/reprographic resources. Our libraries offer photocopying at cost to users. All our libraries **urgently need the installation** of updated 3M Book theft Detection systems to ensure that patrons borrow books legitimately. A budget has been allocated for the installation of these Theft Detector Systems in the 2025/26 Financial Years. **Theft Detection Systems were installed at Westenburg- and Nirvana Libraries respectively. The City Library will have these systems installed during the 2026/2027 financial years.**

Library Outreach and awareness programs: The municipal libraries continuously present holiday programs, conduct outreach to schools to inform learners about libraries, assist in establishing reading clubs and provide library orientation for new user's /school groups. Municipal libraries support the celebration of National events like South African Library Week (SALW) and World Book Day in order to promote the use of libraries and reading.

Challenges:

Vacancies:
The large number of unfunded vacancies (48) have remained unfilled. Positions provided on the organogram but not budgeted for, is detrimental to the upkeep of service standards. This has a negative impact on staff morale as the current staff feel exploited and overworked.

Grading of library staff:
The current grading of qualified librarians (who holds a four-year degree) on levels lower than posts that require a three-year degree or even only a diploma is a justified complaint amongst library staff. An anomaly is the requirement of a degree for librarians, yet the position of Library Assistant does not require a tertiary qualification other than Matric. This situation must be URGENTLY rectified to normalise this formal situation. Library Assistants must possess at least a national Diploma.

All Polokwane libraries are open to the public from 08:30 to 16:30 on weekdays due to disputes about remuneration after normal working hours. Libraries are operational on weekends and not public holidays.

User fees:
The current policy regarding user fees should be revisited. Statistics on membership numbers (new as well as existing) indicates that our numbers do not meet targets due to the fact that many users prefer to visit the library to do the reading at the library instead of paying for membership which allows the user to use the reading material at home. Benchmarking amongst other municipal libraries indicates that Polokwane remain as one of few municipalities

DRAFT

that still impose membership fees. The meagre amount of revenue collected does not justify the risk involved in handling and transporting said income.

Book stock development:

The current book collection can be regarded as stale, outdated and irrelevant. Library book stock needs constant replenishment and updating in order to provide in the informational and educational needs of the community. Every library should have an up to date, well balanced, representative and relevant book collection to give library users the best possible resources that will enable them to excel. Due to escalating publishers' prices our limited budget barely allows for maintenance. Annual funds required to provide books for envisaged new libraries must be appropriated. The proposed annual budget for this purpose must be approximately R2 000 000 to enable the institution to be provide the users with the latest editions of reference works. Plans are afoot to migrate to atomization or digitization and have a collection of e-books.

No library expansion program:

Interpretations of the so called "Unfunded Mandate" is hampering the expansion and rendering of library services in Polokwane. Rural areas where people need to travel great distances to reach the nearest library are affected, contributing to poor performance at schools. Areas identified in earlier IDP documents should be prioritized. Alternative forms of accommodation, (for example modular- and container libraries) should be considered for satellite libraries.

The existing City Library's position in the CBD is not ideal for library purposes. No parent will allow his child to face the traffic in order to visit the library for leisure reading. Insufficient parking makes it even difficult to bring users by car. Transport costs/availability is also a limiting factor for users that use public transport. In addition, the building cannot easily be extended to accommodate the ever-increasing number of users. Council, DSAC and the Province are currently developing a larger "**Cultural Precinct" at Bakone Malapa.**

It is important that in order to guide library development and align it with developmental goals, a library master plan be developed. Such a plan should be aligned with the IDP in order to provide services where communities prioritize the need for library services.

ITC and connectivity:

While Internet access and Wi-Fi can aid library services all remote locations experience various IT related problems, where slowness/lack of bandwidth is hampering service delivery. The allocation of funds for the appointment of unfunded positions of Education Assistants (Internet) must be prioritized. This will propel the library services towards the 2030 smart city vision.

Inter-Governmental Relations:

Limited assistance to fund libraries is being received from the Limpopo Department of Sports Arts and Culture through the "Conditional Grant" allocations. Needs related to books, equipment, ITC, personnel and maintenance is communicated to DSAC on a regular basis. The "partnership" between the department and municipalities leans to favour municipalities that can't afford to render services.

Status of library buildings:

DRAFT

Our existing library buildings can be regarded as functional. There are challenges regarding lighting levels, floor finishes, roof leakages etc. Regular maintenance of our libraries can ensure structural integrity of our libraries. In almost all cases library usage exceeds expectations/projections at the planning stage. Library facilities are unable to cope with inflow of students during peak and examination periods.

There is a backlog regarding maintenance tasks at all of the libraries. Our libraries and museums' maintenance depend on the maintenance priority list of the Facilities and PMU Management teams. This leaves Cultural Services in a vulnerable position. Services such as water, sanitation, roads infrastructure and energy receive preference.

Interventions:

Staff matters.

- HR/Council to address staff related challenges v/s service delivery.

User fees

- Council to take a decision about the abolishment of library membership fees and introduce measures that will ensure the well-being of the municipal book collection in accordance with GRAP 17.

Library expansion

- Find sources for funding of new library infrastructure e.g., IUDG in order to provide branch libraries. Identify existing infrastructure in clusters that may be converted for library use.
- Provide new City Library as part of Cultural Precinct in partnership with Limpopo DSAC.
- Prioritize funds for a Library master plan.
- Council to increase the allocation for maintenance and repairs of existing library infrastructure.

Book stock development

- Council to commit sufficient funding to renew and expand the library's book collection. The procedure of asset control of damaged, outdated and lost books should be revisited. The proposed annual budget for this purpose must be in excess of R2 000 000. **The budget allocation (2025/2026) was R1 300 000.00. A total of 3755 books were procured during 2025/2026. The current budget allocation for 2026/2027 is R1 000 000.**

ITC and connectivity

- IT SBU must urgently address network problems, slow connection, insufficient licenses for Papyrus and other software.

Inter-governmental relations

- SLA between Polokwane Municipality and Limpopo DSAC is renewed for a period of 5 years.

7.24.2 Purchase of New Library Books

DRAFT

Each Financial Year, Budget is Allocated to Purchase **New Library Books**. The Main Objectives is to ensure that Municipal Libraries Contains Latest Version Books that will assist Students in their Studies and Research. Education Remains Key Priority for the City of Polokwane.

New Library Books

New Library Books

New Library Books
Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

7.25 Museums

The aim is development of museums and heritage through research; collection; education; protection and conservation.

7.25.1 Objectives of the Museum

- Upgrade all existing museum exhibitions to acceptable modernized standards, representative of all communities.
- Upgrade collection and its management systems
- Undertake heritage studies to eventually include the whole municipal area and to develop Cultural Resources Management plans (CRMP) for areas identified as heritage sites.
- Engage museums in extensive research to accumulate data that will be necessary for the development and up-keeping of museum norms and standards.
- Engage the museums in aggressive collection of objects that are worthy/necessary for research, exhibition, and conservation.
- Ensure proper conservation of museum collections as well as heritage sites.
- Upgrade infrastructure and amenities at museums and other heritage sites.
- Undertake museum related research and collection of specific books to enhance available information to public and academics.
- Be involved in internship programs related to museums, tourism, and heritage related services.
- Equip museum staff with necessary knowledge relevant to the sector (museums)
- Engage in outreach programs to schools to promote museums.
- Engage in job creation through EPWP program.
- Take part in the Local Geographic Naming of Polokwane Municipality
- Steer and take lead in directing the future of the vulnerable state of public statues and heritage in general, through the newly established heritage committee.

7.25.2 Museums located within the City

The are other 4 museums that are located within the City:

1. **Irish House Museum-** A cultural history museum where history and culture of people within Polokwane; Limpopo and beyond is exhibited. An exhibition budget has been put in place and currently the project is being executed to change the one currently on show. Currently, the first phase of the exhibition has been completed. An exhibition budget allocation of approximately R2 million is needed to finalize the second phase of the project.

DRAFT

2. **Hugh Exton photographic Museum-A Museum** of photography which contains a collection of the renowned photographer, Mr. Hugh Exton, who captured more than twenty thousand photographs on glass negatives. Since the exhibition is old, there is a need for exhibition update in this museum and provisional, budget has been set aside in the multiyear budget to prepare for a change in the exhibition in this museum.
3. **Polokwane Art museum**- a museum of art where painting, works on wood and sculptures are housed and maintained/conserved. Budget is needed to address challenges relating to the updating of the museum.
4. **Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum** Bakone Malapa is regarded as a living museum, the Bakone Malapa Northern Sotho Open-Air Museum is one of several museums and national monuments that bear testimony to South Africa's peoples.
   It is an Open-air Museum, where tribesmen practice long-standing traditions to enlighten visitors about the traditions of Africa's people, Bakone Malapa is a reconstructed village in the style used by the northern Sotho about 250 years ago designed to demonstrate the daily life of the Bakone, a highly sophisticated subgroup of the northern Sotho tribe. The cultural village includes two homesteads or lapas that display and explain fire making, maize grinding and beer brewing as they would have been carried out years ago. There are also handcraft demonstrations that include pottery, basketry, and bead work and most of these locally made crafts are then sold from the local craft shop.
   The guides are excellent story tellers and the village's architectural and cultural styles come alive through their eyes as they take one through the village's traditional way of life. the museum is more than a cultural village alone. There is a bird sanctuary, a game reserve, hiking trails and outdoor recreation areas.

7.25.3 Irish House Museum

Irish House Museum

Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

DRAFT

7.25.4 Hugh Exton Photographic Museum

Hugh Exton Photographic Museum

Hugh Exton Photographic Museum

Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

7.25.5 Polokwane Art Museum

Art Museum

Artist busy with their Work

Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

7.25.6 Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum.

Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum.

Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum.

Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum.

Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum.

7.26 Heritage Sites

The museum services are also responsible for the management of heritage objects, both movable and immovable within Polokwane Municipality. The best-known heritage sites are the Irish House Museum and the Hugh Exton Photographic museums due to their aesthetic and history attached to the presence today in the development of the City of Polokwane. These buildings are currently in use as museums and are Council owned. There are other buildings

which could be noted such as churches and privately owned properties which still holds significant status in the City's development and in a well-preserved condition.

Eersteling monument-The first **gold mine** in the country before the discovery of Pilgrim's Rest and lately, the Witwatersrand Gold mine. The remains of these mine are still visible on site.

British Fort Marabastad monument-This fort was the site of a Boer Siege in 1880, where 140 soldiers were held for a period of 104 days. The Fort was declared a National Heritage site by the then National Monument Council (NMC), now South African Heritage Resources Authority (SAHRA) and Concentration camp-a concentration of graves for those who participated and succumbed the 1899-1902 war.

7.26.1 Eersteling Monument

Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

7.26.2 Concentration Camp heritage site

The site us a national monument and is listed in the national inventory of the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA). The onsite has recently been rehabilitated by SAHRA and the municipality museums officials monitored to process in line with proper standards necessary for the heritage management.

Concentration Camp heritage site

Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

7.27 Other heritage sites that have been identified

Other heritage sites that have been identified by means of surveys are **Moletjie heritage site** (Rock Art) and **Mothapo rock** art site and it is planned to Investigate / study them further for tourism development purposes.

7.27.1 Moletjie Rock Art Shelter

DRAFT

Moletjie Rock Art Shelter is situated approximately 35km north east of Polokwane CBD on portion of farm Malietzies 606LS. The site is characterized of a promontory granite boulder (rocky) outcrop hill at Ga-Legodi Village, within the jurisdiction of Polokwane Municipality in Limpopo Province.

Overall survey of heritage sites at Moletjie and Maja Chuene has been completed but detailed studies still need to be done. Excavation of a heritage site at Moletjie Ga-Legodi has been done. A conservation Management Plan needs to be done, which will include the Rock Art Site in this area. Heritage sites at Ga-Dikgale have been completed recently and therefore detailed studies are awaited. Specific site study of the site at Mothapo has been identified to be made. Heritage Sites have been identified in part within the newly incorporated areas of Aganang such as Percy Fyfe Nature Reserve to mention one. The museums continue to comment on structural demolition applications for developmental purposes.

There is also rock art cave that exist at ga-Molepo, Ditlhophaneng with beautiful rock outcrops. The site is still intact and needs further development at ga-Mmakata at Makatiana there are natural rocks named dipitseng due to their natural formation, which could be turned into a tourist's attraction of the area. The site has been tapped and needs further commitment by the municipality. So far monitoring is done regularly.

DRAFT

7.27.2 Challenges for museums Unit

Vacancies:

The large number of vacancies, as well as positions provided for on the organogram but not budgeted for remain vacant. This is detrimental to the upkeep of service standards. It also generates a lot of unhappiness as staff feels exploited and overworked.

Budget is always a problem for the development of museums to fully function. Museum's budget is always given low preference and they (museums) are expected to draw visitors to Polokwane as a Centre Hub and a Gateway to Africa. The absence or low budget cannot afford to draw new museum audience and therefore additional allocation of funds is a necessity for continuous visit to the museums.

The status of public Art is not earning full enjoyment as far as municipal holistic budget allocation is concerned. The museums are unable to render preservation as well conservation of public art due to either lack of budget or public consultation. The transformation of Industrial Art Park into a business site will ultimately lead to compromise into the City's public art space. Although progress is already at an advanced stage, the relocation of these works of art will need to be properly taken into consideration and must be under strict care of art experts.

7.28 Cultural Desk

This division of Cultural Services responsible for implementing cultural initiatives targeted at:

1. Developing cultural practitioners, particularly performers and writers
2. Creating sustainable cultural industries that make a significant economic contribution to Polokwane Municipality and the region
3. Fostering and strengthening social harmony among Polokwane Municipality residents across racial, age and gender divide
4. Creating partnerships of strategic importance with other government spheres, business, funding bodies and projects of mutual interest
5. Our cultural initiatives primarily serve young artists, schoolchildren, and vulnerable groups like elderly people, individuals in prison, and children in safe or caring environments.

7.28.1 Key programs within the Cultural Desk Subsection

Key initiatives under the Cultural Desk Subsection include the following:

The following are key programs within the Cultural Desk Subsection: Cultural Competitions; Holiday Program, Mayor's Debate Tournament, Outreach Programs and Annual Polokwane Literary Fair

1. **Cultural Competitions**
    - Cultural Competitions take place in all the clusters of the municipality, culminating in Municipal Finals which has a standardized financial reward for winners in each category. They include poetry, storytelling, stand-up comedy, drama, music and dance. These competitions serve as a platform to unearth and nurture raw talent.

DRAFT

2. **Holiday Program**
    - It is a day-long cultural activity held on a chosen holiday in year with a different theme each year. It is used as an instrument for social cohesion where people from various groups/generations come together to share cultural experiences and knowledge.

3. **Polokwane Annual Mayoral Debate Tournament**
    - This program is aimed at fostering the culture of conversations through reading and research. It is aimed at young learners who are equipped with debating and presentation skills throughout the tournament. This program prides itself for producing learners who go on to become Top Matric Achievers yearly.

4. **Outreach Program**
    - This program is aimed at taking Cultural Desk services to the people through stakeholder consultations as well as min cultural activities carried out during planned visits to our stakeholders.

5. **Annual Polokwane Literary Fair**

Started in 2012, the Annual Polokwane Literary Fair is a critical arts initiative championed by Polokwane Municipality in collaboration with key strategic partners.

The Fair has enjoyed partnerships with such premium brands as the South African Book Development Council (the now defunct council was the *custodian of the* ***National Book Week*** *and* ***South African Book Fair***), (JIAS) Johannesburg Institute for Advanced Study (*a joint initiative of the University of Johannesburg in South Africa and Nanyang Technological University in Singapore*), Department of Correctional Services, Nal'ibali, Radio Stations, Book Clubs, Local Business and Social Clubs. These partnerships have boosted the profile of this fair nationally, courted continental curiosity and ensured important crosspollination of artistic ideas.

In the years that the fair was staged, it has managed to grow from a modest gathering of literary enthusiasts to a major calendar event within social and academic circles in South Africa – a catalyst for sustainable development through literary arts.

The following are **the Fundamental Objectives** upon which the Polokwane Literary Fair is founded:

- Creating a Sustainable Literary Industry that contributes towards the local economy by skilling literary practitioners (writers, publishers, editors, distributors) and building dependable markets (readers and audiences)

DRAFT

- Promote and agitate for a culture of conversations and partnerships of strategic importance

These objectives are realised through **Key Content Drivers**, delivered through the Children's Program and the Main Program**:**

- Workshops, Seminars and Master Classes
- Conversations (panel discussions, interviews and book launches)
- Visual Arts Exhibition
- Performances (music, poetry, storytelling and live visual art)
- Outreach to privileged stakeholders (prisons, old age facilities, orphanages and schools)
- Lifetime Awards
- Corporate Social Investment

Central to successful implementation of the fair are its **Esteemed Participants:**

- Featured Artists (Writers, Poets, Visual Artists and Musicians)
- Expert Guests (Presenters, Panelists, Facilitators and Moderators)
- Beneficiaries (CSI Stakeholders and Hosting Venues for the Outreach Program)
- Audiences/Customers

7.28.2 Cultural Desk Challenges

1. **Financial Resources**

   Financial Resources remain the largest hindrance to proper implementation of Cultural Programs. Core programs such as The Annual Polokwane Literary Fair and Cultural Competitions could not be implemented in the past three Financial Years as their budget has been significantly reduced by almost 80%. The 20% allocated budget is now being used to support cultural stakeholders who seeking collaborations with Polokwane Municipality. This exercise is unsustainable as an institution such as Polokwane Municipality cannot rely solely on responding to external requests for collaboration and not be able to implement its own core programs.

2. **Infrastructure**

   - According to cultural organizations, the province needs to do a lot to promote culture, and local artists should be given the chance to flourish by being given access to public theaters and other relevant spaces. There are no public theatres in Polokwane and Limpopo Province and this has resulted in high demand for the free use of facilities by cultural organizations, which can currently only be granted use free of charge subject to certain conditions, during the week (Monday to Thursday). Venues under Cultural Services, such as the Library Auditorium and activities rooms, are used extensively by non-cultural structures in order to generate revenue for the municipality

DRAFT

CHAPTER Eight - Good Governance and Public Participation Analysis

8.1 Performance Management System (PMS)

The Local Government Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 as amended makes provision for the establishment of the performance management system in the municipalities. Chapter 6 of the MSA provides a detailed provision of how the performance management system should be established. Furthermore, the performance management system is intended to promote the culture of performance amongst its political structures, political office bearers and councillors and its administration. Polokwane Municipality has an established performance management system that is functional and aligned to the provisions of chapter 6 of the Local Government Systems Act.

8.1.1 THE LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK FOR PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT

Performance Management in Local Government is governed by a number of policy directives legislations and regulations. The White Paper 1998 on Local Government laid the basis of performance management in municipalities. Furthermore, the Local Government Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 builds on the foundation that was laid by the 1998 White Paper on Local Government. The Systems Act makes provision for the development of performance management in municipalities. Furthermore, it makes provisions for performance planning, setting of targets, regular monitoring of performance and performance reporting. Section 43 of the Systems Act provides that the minister responsible for local government after consultations with the MECs for local government and organised local government may by regulation prescribed general key performance indicators that are appropriate and applicable to local government. The Local Government Planning and Performance Regulations was published in 2001. Chapter 3 of the Regulation makes provision for performance management in municipalities. Furthermore, the Regulation makes provision for setting performance targets, indicators, monitoring of performance and performance reporting.

The MFMA contains various important provisions related to municipal performance management. It requires municipalities to annually adopt a Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) with service delivery targets and performance indicators. Whilst considering and approving the annual budget the Municipality must also set measurable

DRAFT

performance targets for each revenue source and vote. The Municipality must lastly compile an annual report, which must include a performance report compiled in terms of the Systems Act. In terms of a circular issued by National Treasury provision is also made for the compilation on an annual basis of departmental SDBIPs.

The Municipal Performance Regulations for City Managers and Managers directly accountable to the City Manager and the Framework for Programme Information (FPPI) issued by National Treasury. Polokwane Municipality has an approved Performance Management Policy. The **Policy is reviewed on an annual basis.** The latest review on the Performance Management Policy was done on the **30 May 2025** during the approval of the 2025/26 IDP and MTREF Budget. The reviewed PMS became effective from the 1st July 2025 and it will effective until the 30th June 2026. The Policy is titled Polokwane Municipality's Organisational Performance and Senior Managers Individual Policy.

8.1.2 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE MANUAL

Polokwane Municipality developed the PMS Standard Operating Procedure in 2017. The SOP serves as a guide on how performance management should be undertaken in the municipality. Further, it ensures that performance management is done in a uniform manner across all the business operations of the municipality. The SOP is aligned to the Organisational Performance and Senior Managers Individual Policy.

8.1.3 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS

Polokwane Municipality has institutionalised performance management. The staff establishment of the municipality has a Business Unit called Performance Management under the Directorate Chief Operations Officer. The SBU is headed by the Manager and an Assistant Manager. Furthermore, the SBU has three (3) Performance Management Coordinators. The main function of the PMS SBU is to ensure the implementation of institutional performance in the municipality. This is achieved through collation of performance information, measuring of performance, monitoring of performance and performance reporting. The SBU is also responsible for in-year and annual reporting of performance information and submission of performance report to executive management, **APAC)**, council and sector departments.

DRAFT

8.1.4 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT AND MEASURES AT VARIOUS LEVELS

Performance management can be applied to various levels within any organization. The legislative framework as set out above provides for performance management at various levels in a municipality including organizational (sometimes also referred to as municipal, corporate or strategic) level, departmental (also referred to as services, operational or section/team level) and lastly, individual level.

8.2 ORGANISATIONAL PERFORMANCE

The five-year IDP of a municipality forms the basis for performance management, whilst at operational level the annual SDBIP forms the basis. The IDP is a long-term plan and by its nature the performance measures associated with it will have a long-term focus, measuring whether a municipality is achieving its IDP objectives. The SDBIP (both for the municipality as a whole and that of a department) is more short-term in nature and the measures set in terms of the SDBIP, reviewing the progress made with implementing the current budget and achieving annual service delivery targets.

The measures set for the Municipality at organizational level is captured in an organizational scorecard structured in terms of the preferred performance management model of the Municipality.

8.3 INDIVIDUAL PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT OF SENIOR MANAGERS

PMS SBU is responsible for individual performance management of senior managers. The individual performance managers are governed by the Performance Regulation of City Manager and Managers directly reporting to the City Manager. All senior managers in Polokwane Municipality signed their annual performance agreements within one month after the start of each financial year. This includes senior managers who are acting. Senior managers have signed their 2026/27 performance agreements in the month of July 2026 for implementation, performance measurements and monitoring. The performance agreements are published in the municipal website.

8.3.1 PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENTS AND EVALUATION OF SENIOR MANAGERS

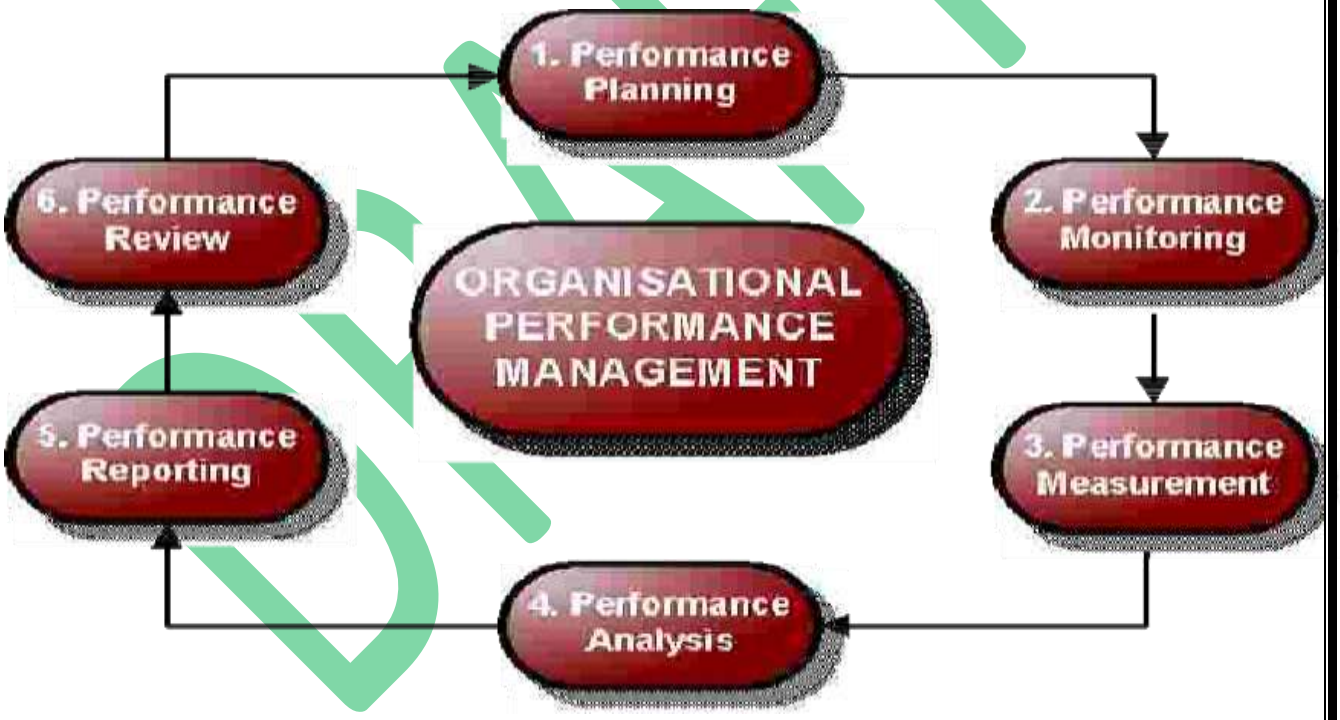
Individual Performance Assessment

DRAFT

Polokwane Municipality embraces the culture of performance management against all its employees including the senior managers. The municipality is consistently assessing the performance of senior managers and reporting the outcomes to the assessments to council. The assessments and evaluations of the 2024/25 annual assessments and 2025-26 mid-year assessments were conducted on the 4th March 2026 for all the senior managers. The assessment and evaluation of the City Manager was conducted on the 9th June 2026. There is no outstanding performance assessments and evaluations for senior managers and that of the City Manager.

8.3.2 THE PROCESS OF MANAGING PERFORMANCE

The annual process of managing performance at organizational level in the Polokwane Municipality involves the steps as set out in the diagram below:



Source: PLK PMS SBU

8.4 Alignment of the IDP, Budget and SDBIP

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) outlines how the challenges of sustainable development in a Municipality are to be met through strategic interventions and service delivery over the five-year period. The IDP is developed by the Municipality in conjunction with the community and a credible IDP must be supported by a realistic budget. The IDP is supported by a Municipal Scorecard which sets out the key deliverables over the election period in a log-frame format.

8.5 Performance Reporting

The PMS Policy of Polokwane Municipality makes provision for the reporting timeframes. The timeframes are guided by the IDP/Budget and PMS Process Plan that gets approved by Council. Furthermore, the reporting timeframes are line with the provisions of the MFMA and the MSA. Polokwane Municipality compiles performance management reports quarterly, which is 30 days after the end of each quarter. The municipality has ensured that performance management reporting compliance is included in the corporate calendar of the municipality. The municipality is consistently complying with the reporting timelines as provided and approved by council.

8.5.1 Automated Performance Reporting System

Polokwane Municipality implemented the automated performance system in 2016. The name of the system is Action Assist Performance Management System. Quarterly performance reporting is done in the system. The automated performance management system is provided for in the Performance Management System Policy. The system is implemented at the level of the SBU Managers, Executive Directors, City Manager, Internal Audit and Risk Management. The system makes provision for segregation of duties for SBU Managers, Executive Directors and Internal Audit.
The Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) is automated into the system every beginning of the municipal financial year. The automation is done in-house by the PMS SBU. Furthermore, the SBU acts as the administrators of the SDBIP in the system. ICT is responsible for the overall management and access to the system.

8.6 Assurance over Performance Information

Section 45 of the Local Government Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 as amended makes provision for the audit of performance by internal and external audit. Polokwane Municipal has an established Internal Audit and has performance auditors who are responsible for auditing performance information. The Annual Internal Audit Plan includes the quarterly audit of performance information. The audit is done for all the quarterly reporting, mid-year reports and annual performance report.

DRAFT

The external audit is done by the Office of the Auditor General as part their responsibilities as contained in the Public Audit Act 25 of 2004 as amended. The AGSA issues the Audit Report which reflects on the validity, accuracy, completeness and usefulness of the performance information. The latest audit report was for the 2024/25 financial year and two developmental areas were scoped by the AG, that is Basic Service Delivery and Local Economic Development. The outcome of the audit was an unqualified audit opinion for the two scoped developmental areas.

The Audit and Performance Audit Committee is responsible for quarterly reviewing performance information of the municipality. Furthermore, the APAC advises management on performance related information. The APAC Chair presents performance reports in council quarterly.

8.7 PMS Challenges

Challenge	Root causes	Impact	Existing interventions	Further interventions required
❖ Inadequate review of performance indicators to ensure consistency.	Inadequate technical review	Unreliable measurement	PMS review and Internal Audit review	Pre-approval technical quality assurance
❖ Ineffective internal controls on performance management and adequate implementation of Internal Audit findings.	Lack of verification at the Directorate level	Audit findings	Internal audit reviews	Enforcement of source-level verification at the Directorate level

DRAFT

Challenge	Root causes	Impact	Existing interventions	Further interventions required
❖ Incomplete listing of reported achievements for key service delivery areas, water and sanitation and energy services.	Poor record keeping	Under/overstatement of performance	Quarterly reviews by Internal Audit	Improvement on records keeping and ensuring that all reported achievemnets are listed in a form of an evidence register
❖ Inadequate reviews of portfolio of evidence to ensure completeness of reported performance.	Lack of verification at the Directorate level	Audit findings	Internal audit reviews	Introduction and enforcement of review controls at the Directorate level
❖ Reliance on performance adjustment to do corrections on performance information.	Corrections done late and not immediately after being raised by Internal Audit	Reduced credibility	PMS adjustments during the audit processes	Introduction and enforcement of preventative controls at the Directorate level

DRAFT

8.8 MUNICIPAL CLUSTERS OFFICES

8.8.1 Municipal Cluster Offices

The Cluster Offices model was established as a strategic service delivery intervention to advance the principles of **Batho Pele**, promote a responsive and citizen-centred system of governance, and strengthen equitable, non-partisan access to municipal services. The model was introduced in response to the need to address longstanding service delivery challenges experienced by communities located in the peripheral areas of the municipality, where residents were required to travel considerable distances to access municipal services. This often resulted in increased costs to

communities and prolonged turnaround times for service requests due to the geographical size of the municipal area.

The decentralised Cluster Offices model provides an effective platform for the delivery of efficient, accessible, reliable and responsive municipal services. In doing so, it supports the Municipality's constitutional mandate as outlined in Section 152 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, which requires local government to provide democratic and accountable governance, ensure the sustainable provision of services, promote social and economic development, and encourage community participation in matters of local governance.

Furthermore, the establishment of Cluster Offices was a deliberate organisational intervention aimed at reducing the social and administrative distance between communities and the municipality. By bringing municipal services closer to residents, the model has strengthened public engagement, improved accessibility to government services, enhanced responsiveness to community needs, and contributed positively towards reducing service delivery-related grievances and protests experienced within the municipality.

The approved organisational structure for the Cluster Offices consists of 47 positions, comprising one (1) Manager, six (6) Assistant Managers, six (6) Administrative Assistants, eighteen (18) Cleaners, and fifteen (15) General Workers/Groundsmen. At present, 27 positions are filled, while one additional employee has been appointed on a contractual basis to perform the functions of a Senior Administration Clerk. It should be noted that this position is not reflected on the approved organisational structure, highlighting a staffing gap within the administrative component of the unit.

This version is more appropriate for an official IDP document and aligns with the professional language and strategic reporting style typically used in municipal planning and status quo reports.

8.9 The Clusters Offices Status Quo Review

The review of the status quo across the municipal cluster offices confirms that the decentralisation of municipal services remains the cornerstone of improving equitable access to service delivery across Polokwane Municipality. While all cluster offices are strategically located to serve their respective communities, a common trend emerging from the assessment is that the existing infrastructure, staffing levels and operational resources have not kept pace with the growing service delivery demands in the clusters.

Across all clusters, there is a consistent need to strengthen municipal presence through the deployment of additional personnel from various Service Business Units (SBUs), supported by adequate machinery, fleet, ICT infrastructure and purpose-built facilities. Decentralising key municipal functions—including Roads and Storm Water, Water and Sanitation, Waste Management, Traffic and Licensing, Local Economic Development (LED), Planning, Community Services and Customer Care—will significantly improve response times, enhance operational efficiency and bring municipal services closer to communities.

DRAFT

The review further demonstrates that cluster offices are evolving beyond administrative centres into integrated service delivery hubs. Existing and proposed Thusong Service Centres, satellite offices and mobile service centres present an opportunity to integrate municipal and government services under one roof, enabling residents to access services such as Home Affairs, SASSA, SAPS, Health and municipal services without travelling long distances.

The success of decentralisation will, however, depend on sustained investment in infrastructure upgrades, expansion of municipal office accommodation, establishment of operational depots, deployment of additional service units and personnel, and strengthening partnerships with government departments and strategic stakeholders. Collectively, these interventions will position the Cluster Offices Programme as the primary platform for responsive, accessible and people-centred local government service delivery.

All Clusters have Municipal Offices that assist in Monitoring of Service Delivery. The Municipal Offices are as Follows:

8.9.1 City Cluster Office - Municipal Head Office

The Civic Centre will remain the Municipal Head Office and will also accommodate staff that is deployed to work in the City Cluster. It is recommended that services provided at the rates halls be incorporated into other municipal centres including the Westenburg and Nirvana Community Centres, and various shopping centre to enhance revenue collection and provide access to residents around these areas with access to officials with regards to queries on their accounts and other municipal services.

Relocation of staff that is deployed to other clusters (to their respective cluster offices or depots) will provide an opportunity for essential refurbishment to be done to the Civic Centre and also alleviate the problem of office accommodation at the Main Building with a ripple effect of improving services in the outlying clusters.

8.9.2 Molepo–Chuene–Maja Cluster Office

The Molepo–Chuene–Maja Cluster Office is strategically located to provide equitable access to municipal services across one of the municipality's geographically extensive rural areas. Planned improvements to the road network will further enhance accessibility and strengthen the office's role as a decentralised service delivery hub. However, the existing facility requires expansion to accommodate additional municipal functions, service units and staff necessary to respond effectively to community needs.

Given the size and dispersed nature of the cluster, the deployment of additional personnel, machinery and operational resources across various municipal service units is critical to improving service coverage and ensuring timely service delivery. The establishment of secure mobile service centres and the operationalisation of the

DRAFT

planned Thusong Service Centre will significantly enhance access to both municipal and government services while reducing travel distances for residents.

8.9.3 Mankweng Cluster Office

The Mankweng Cluster is supported by three satellite offices together with several strategic municipal facilities that provide a strong foundation for decentralised service delivery. The planned Thusong Service Centre and office precinct present an opportunity to consolidate municipal and government services into an integrated service delivery node that will improve accessibility for surrounding communities.

As one of the Municipality's fastest-growing peri-urban clusters, **Mankweng presents significant opportunities to evolve into a major revenue-generating node for Polokwane Municipality.** The cluster continues to experience sustained residential expansion, commercial growth, institutional development driven by the presence of the University of Limpopo, hospitals, retail centres and associated economic activities. This growth creates an ideal environment for expanding the municipal revenue base through property rates, service charges, business licensing, development applications and improved compliance with municipal by-laws.

The strategic deployment of additional Service Business Units, particularly **Local Economic Development (LED), Town Planning and Development Planning, Building Control, Revenue Management, Customer Care and Business Licensing**, will unlock the cluster's economic potential by facilitating investment, accelerating development approvals, formalising informal businesses and improving access to municipal services. These functions will not only stimulate local economic growth but will also strengthen revenue generation through improved planning, development management and enhanced municipal compliance.

To fully realise this vision, there is an urgent need to establish a dedicated municipal depot and strengthen operational capacity through the deployment of additional personnel and machinery across service units, particularly Roads and Storm Water, Waste Management and other frontline services. Strengthening the operational footprint of municipal SBUs within the cluster will improve service response times, enhance investor confidence and position Mankweng as a fully integrated decentralised municipal service centre that simultaneously advances service delivery, local economic development and long-term municipal financial sustainability. The cluster has the potential to become one of the Municipality's leading revenue-generating areas while serving as a model for decentralised, people-centred and economically driven service delivery.

8.9.4 Sebayeng–Dikgale Cluster Office

The Sebayeng–Dikgale Cluster Office occupies a strategically located facility that requires upgrading and expansion to support growing municipal operations and staff deployment. The successful establishment of the Segopje Mobile Service Centre

DRAFT

demonstrates the effectiveness of decentralised service delivery, with several government departments already utilising the facility to deliver integrated services to surrounding communities.

The cluster is strategically positioned along key transport routes and serves a vast rural population with significant untapped economic potential. **With the deployment of additional municipal service units, particularly Traffic and Licensing, Local Economic Development (LED), Town Planning and Development Planning, Building Control, Revenue Management and Customer Care, the Sebayeng–Dikgale Cluster has the potential to transform into a vibrant service delivery and revenue-generating hub for the Municipality.**

The establishment of these services within the cluster will improve accessibility for residents, stimulate local economic activity, facilitate business formalisation, accelerate development approvals and enhance compliance with municipal by-laws and licensing requirements. This will create new opportunities to expand the municipal revenue base through property rates, business licensing, traffic and licensing services, development applications and service charges while reducing the need for communities to travel to the Civic Centre.

To sustain and expand this momentum, there is a critical need to deploy additional personnel from various Service Business Units, including Traffic and Licensing, Local Economic Development, Planning, Roads and Storm Water, Water and Sanitation and Community Services.

Dedicated operational machinery, supporting infrastructure and the establishment of a municipal depot will further strengthen the Municipality's ability to deliver efficient and responsive services throughout this vast rural cluster. By strengthening its institutional capacity and broadening the range of decentralised municipal services, the Sebayeng–Dikgale Cluster will not only improve service delivery outcomes but will also emerge as an important economic growth node that contributes meaningfully to the Municipality's long-term revenue generation, financial sustainability and the successful implementation of its decentralisation agenda.

8.9.5 Seshego Cluster Office

The Seshego Cluster currently benefits from three strategically located municipal offices (Zone 1, 3 and 8 offices) that provide important customer services to local communities. The proposed development of a new integrated Cluster Office within the Seshego precinct presents an opportunity to significantly expand decentralised municipal services while supporting economic development and integrated spatial planning.

As one of the Municipality's fastest-growing urban clusters, **Seshego is strategically positioned to become a major revenue generation hub for the Municipality.** The ongoing and planned human settlements developments within the cluster are expected to drive substantial growth in the municipal customer base through the

DRAFT

creation of new residential neighbourhoods, commercial developments and supporting economic activities. This growth presents significant opportunities to increase municipal revenue through property rates, service charges, business licensing and improved billing of municipal services. The proximity of these new developments provides an ideal platform for strengthening customer care, revenue collection and municipal compliance services within the cluster, ensuring that new developments are integrated into the municipal revenue management system from inception.

The proposed Cluster Office should therefore be developed not only as a decentralised service delivery centre but also as a strategic customer service and revenue management hub capable of supporting the Municipality's long-term financial sustainability. The integration of Revenue Management, Customer Care, Town Planning, Building Control, Local Economic Development and Business Licensing services within the cluster will improve accessibility for residents and investors, accelerate development approvals and enhance revenue collection while stimulating local economic growth.

As one of the Municipality's largest urban clusters, Seshego requires the deployment of additional municipal service units and personnel to broaden the range of services available locally. Expanding decentralised services, including licensing, customer care, planning, LED, revenue management and other frontline municipal functions, will improve accessibility for residents, reduce pressure on the Civic Centre and strengthen service delivery across the cluster. This approach reinforces the Municipality's commitment to decentralising services by bringing decision-making, customer support and revenue administration closer to communities while positioning Seshego as a key catalyst for sustainable urban growth and municipal financial resilience.

8.9.6 Aganang Cluster Office

The Aganang Cluster Office is well positioned to serve as a fully-fledged decentralised municipal service centre, supported by substantial office accommodation and specialised facilities. The existing infrastructure provides a solid platform from which municipal services can be expanded to serve communities across the cluster and surrounding satellite offices.

To maximise the value of this investment, the Municipality should prioritise the deployment of additional personnel across key Service Business Units, strengthen ICT infrastructure and expand municipal services to satellite facilities. The integration of additional government departments within the cluster office will further enhance service accessibility while reinforcing the principles of decentralised governance and integrated service delivery.

8.9.7 Moletjie Cluster Office

The Moletjie Cluster Office occupies a centrally located facility that remains well positioned to support decentralised municipal services throughout the cluster. The presence of the award-winning Thusong Service Centre provides a strong foundation

DRAFT

for integrated government service delivery and demonstrates the benefits of collaborative service provision.

Despite these strengths, the municipal office requires upgrading and expansion to accommodate increased staff deployment and additional municipal service units. The deployment of more personnel, operational resources and frontline municipal services across the cluster will strengthen service delivery capacity, improve accessibility for residents and build on the success of the existing Thusong Service Centre as a model of integrated service delivery.

8.10 Recommendations for Municipal Clusters Office Full Operations

1. Accelerate the decentralisation of municipal services by deploying additional personnel from all frontline Service Business Units to every cluster office to ensure communities receive comprehensive municipal services closer to where they live.
2. Upgrade and expand existing cluster office infrastructure to accommodate additional staff, service units and integrated customer service facilities.
3. Prioritise the establishment and operationalisation of municipal depots within strategic clusters to improve fleet management, operational efficiency and rapid response to service delivery requests.
4. Increase the allocation of operational machinery, specialised fleet and equipment to cluster offices to improve roads maintenance, waste management, water and sanitation, parks maintenance and other municipal services.
5. Expand the network of Thusong Service Centres, satellite offices and mobile service centres as platforms for integrated municipal and government service delivery.
6. Strengthen partnerships with national and provincial government departments, public entities and traditional authorities to co-locate services and improve access to government programmes.
7. Invest in reliable ICT infrastructure across all cluster offices to support digital service delivery, communication with the Civic Centre and improved customer service.
8. Expand community facilities such as libraries, customer care centres and public service points within clusters to improve access to municipal information and services.
9. Ensure every cluster office has a comprehensive complement of multidisciplinary personnel, including Roads and Storm Water, Water and Sanitation, Waste Management, Traffic and Licensing, Local Economic Development, Planning, Community Services, Revenue, Customer Care and Technical Support.
10. Adopt the Cluster Offices Programme as the Municipality's primary decentralised service delivery model, recognising that strengthening cluster offices through adequate staffing, operational resources and integrated service delivery platforms is fundamental to achieving responsive, accessible and people-centred local government services.

DRAFT

8.11 INTERNAL AUDIT FUNCTION

8.11.1 Definition, objectives and mandate of Internal Audit Function

Internal Audit is an independent, objective assurance and consulting function established to add value and improve the municipality's operations. It is mandated in terms of Section 165 of the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) to evaluate the effectiveness of risk management, internal controls, and governance processes of Polokwane Municipality.

As such, the Internal Audit Function of Polokwane Municipality has been established in terms of Section 165 of the Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003), to assist the City Manager and **APAC** in the effective discharge of their responsibilities. Therefore, the Internal Audit Function provides them with an independent analysis, appraisals, recommendations, counsel and information concerning the activities reviewed.

While the primary function of internal auditing is to strengthen governance, risk management, and control processes, its effects extend beyond Polokwane Municipality as it contributes to the municipality's overall stability and sustainability by providing assurance on its operational efficiency, reliability of reporting, compliance with laws and/or regulations, safeguarding of assets, and ethical culture. This, in turn, fosters public trust and confidence in the municipality and the broader systems of which it is a part.

The Internal Audit Function of Polokwane Municipality is bound by the Global Internal Auditing Standards ***(GIAS, 2024)***. This is also in compliance of Section 62(1) (c) (ii) of the MFMA which requires Internal Audit to operate in accordance with prescribed norms and standards. Further information regarding the nature, role, responsibility, status and authority of the Internal Audit Activity within Polokwane Municipality together with its scope and responsibilities is outlined in the **approved Internal Audit Charter**.

8.11.2 Internal Audit Strategy and Strategic Coverage Plan

The Internal Audit Function has developed a strategy that is aimed at supporting the strategic objectives and success of the municipality. The said strategy aligns with the expectations of the **APAC**, Management, Council and other key stakeholders of the Internal Audit Function of Polokwane Municipality.

Over and above the Internal Audit Strategy, the Internal Audit Strategic Coverage Plan has been developed based on a documented assessment of the municipal strategies, objectives, and risks and also informed by the inputs of Management and the **APAC** as well as the understanding of Internal Audit regarding the municipality's governance, risk management, and control processes.

8.11.3 Audit and Performance Audit Committee (APAC)

The **(APAC)** is a vital component of the municipality's governance structure and plays a central role in strengthening oversight, promoting accountability, and enhancing transparency. As an

DRAFT

independent advisory body established in terms of Section 166 of the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), Act No. 56 of 2003, the APAC supports the Council and Accounting Officer by providing objective advice on financial reporting, performance management, risk management, and internal control systems.

The APAC operates in line with the MFMA, Treasury Regulations, and the municipality's APAC Charter as approved by the Council.

The Committee is composed of six (6) independent external members, appointed by the municipal Council. The Committee members are individuals with appropriate expertise in accounting and municipal finance, governance, auditing, ICT, risk management, and performance management. One of the members is appointed as the Chairperson by the Council.

The Committee meets at least four times per year and holds special meetings as and when needed and reports to Council at a minimum quarterly. The attendance of the City Manager, Group Chief Financial Officer, Deputy Chief Financial Officer, Executive Directors, Internal Audit and Legal Services is compulsory for all APAC meetings; and this is to ensure effective engagement in critical issues. Other Managers, National Treasury, Provincial Treasury, CoGHSTA and SALGA attend APAC meetings by invitation.

8.11.4 Audit of Performance Management Information

The auditing of performance information is a key element in promoting good governance, ensuring that the municipality's developmental objectives as outlined in the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) are achieved in an efficient, effective, and transparent manner. In line with the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) and the Municipal Systems Act, Polokwane Municipality is committed to providing reliable and credible performance information to its stakeholders, including the community, Council, and other oversight bodies e.g. **APAC)**

Our Internal Audit Function plays an essential role in evaluating the integrity and reliability of reported performance information. Through the audits that are conducted on a quarterly basis, the Internal Audit Function verifies whether the reported achievements against service delivery targets are supported by adequate and appropriate Portfolio of Evidence (PoE); and audited organisational performance reports serve before Council on a quarterly basis. These audits also assess whether the performance information of the municipality is consistent, measurable, and aligned with the SMART principles (Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Realistic, and Time-bound).

Management remains fully committed to the principles of clean administration, ethical conduct, and good governance. As such, the municipality's performance information (i.e. Annual Performance Report) is also subjected through the external audit process by the Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA). This external audit enhances accountability and public trust by verifying the credibility of performance reports published by Polokwane Municipality. It

DRAFT

further assists in driving performance improvements, ensuring compliance with legislation, and upholding transparency in service delivery outcomes.

For the 2024–2025 financial year, the Auditor-General's audit outcomes on performance information reflected both progress and areas for improvement. The municipality received an unqualified audit opinion on Local Economic Development (LED) and Basic Service Delivery, demonstrating credible and well-supported reporting in those key areas.

The Annual Performance Report (APR) for the 2025–2026 financial year is currently being prepared and is due for submission to the Auditor-General by **31 August 2026**. The municipality remains focused on strengthening internal controls, verifying performance information at source, and ensuring that the upcoming submission meets the standards of accuracy, completeness, and audit readiness.

8.11.5 Operation Clean Audit (OPCA)

The Municipality also established a task team to drive the Clean Audit initiative called **"Operation Clean Audit"** and which aims at improving governance, financial systems and service delivery at both local and provincial government level, reversing poor internal controls, poor quality of financial statements and non-compliance with Supply Chain Management whilst attaining a clean audit opinion. OPCA committee has been established to address **Audit findings.**

The Task Team is an operational forum which formulates action plans and monitor progress in implementing action plans towards achieving a clean audit.

The Task Team reports to Council via the **APAC** which is responsible to Council for financial and internal control oversight in line with the **APAC** Charter.

Prevailing challenges noticeable include recurring audit findings indicated in the Internal Audit reports; information not presented to Internal Audit on time or not submitted at all, establishing greater synergy between Council committees and **APAC**; achieving greater compliance with key areas of legislation, the MSA, other regulations and policies.

8.11.6 Resources availability for Internal Audit

The Internal Audit function comprises of the Chief Audit Executive, Four (4) Assistant Managers: Internal Audit, Nine (9) Internal Auditors, as well as a panel of three Co-Sourced Internal Audit Service Providers.

8.11.7 Report of the Chief Audit Executive on AGSA Audit Opinions

The Chief Audit Executive is required to coordinate with other internal and external providers of assurance services in order to minimize duplication of efforts, highlight gaps in the coverage of key risks, and enhance the overall value that is added by all providers.

DRAFT

To fulfill this, an assurance map that links identified significant risk categories with relevant sources of assurance is in place and provides the level of assurance required for each risk category. Part of the assurance providers on this map is the Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA) and the following are the matters of emphasis from the AGSA regarding Polokwane Municipality for the past four financial years.

8.11.8 Auditor General (SA) Audit Opinion

2021/2022 Financial Year: Unqualified

The matters of emphasis were as follows:

- Restatement of corresponding figures
- Significant uncertainties
- Material water losses

2022/2023 Financial Year: Unqualified

The matters of emphasis were as follows:

- Restatement of corresponding figures
- Significant uncertainties
- Material water losses
- Material impairments

2023/2024 Financial Year: Unqualified

The matters of emphasis were as follows:

- Material impairments
- Water and electricity losses
- Contingencies
- Restatement of corresponding figures

2024/2025 Financial Year: Unqualified

The matters of emphasis were as follows:

- Water and electricity losses
- Restatement of corresponding figures

The following table reflects the movement of the municipality's Audit Opinion for the term of office of the current Council:

Financial Year	Audit opinion	Movement of audit opinion
2020/2021	Qualified	→
2021/2022	Unqualified	↑
2022/2023	Unqualified	→
2023/2024	Unqualified	→

DRAFT

Financial Year	Audit opinion	Movement of audit opinion
2024/2025	Unqualified	⇨

Source: PLK Auditor General Opinion Report

⇧ **Improved audit opinion**

⇨ **Maintained same audit opinion**

⇩ **Regressed**

8.11.9 FINANCIAL MISCONDUCT BOARD

The Municipality has also established the Financial Misconduct Board in line with the provisions of the Municipal Regulations on Financial Misconduct, Procedures and Criminal Procedures, Government Gazette No. 37682 of May 2014 on Local Government and Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) 2003. The Financial Misconduct Board is an independent advisory body that assists the Council with the investigation of allegations of financial misconduct and also provides recommendations to Council on further steps to be taken regarding disciplinary proceedings, or any other relevant steps to be taken.

The above-mentioned Board is composed of the following members:

a) One member of the **APAC**
b) Manager: Legal Services
c) Chief Audit Executive(CAE)
d) Chief Risk officer (CRO)
e) Assistant Manager: Labour Relations *(Secretariat of the Board)*
f) Representative of Provincial Treasury *(seconded by the Department)*

The Financial Misconduct Board presents its reports to Council through the chairperson of the Board as and when there are finalised investigations that were referred to it by the Council.

8.12 PUBLIC PARTICIPATION AND COUNCIL SUPPORT

8.12.1 Key Municipal Stakeholders

The relationship between Polokwane Municipality and its stakeholders is fundamental to effective governance, accountability, and sustainable service delivery. Stakeholder participation in municipal affairs is essential, as the Municipality is accountable to its stakeholders for decisions, policies, and actions undertaken in the execution of its constitutional and legislative mandate.

For municipal governance, stakeholders extend beyond residents and communities. They include all individuals, groups, institutions, government entities, and other bodies that may

DRAFT

influence, be affected by, or have an interest in the Municipality's operations, planning processes, and developmental objectives. Stakeholders may have either a direct or indirect interest in municipal affairs and may include persons or entities that are not immediately aware of the extent of their interest or influence.

The primary purpose of stakeholder identification is to recognise and engage all persons, organisations, and institutions that have a legitimate interest in, or may be affected by, municipal planning, decision-making, implementation, and management processes. Effective stakeholder identification promotes transparency, inclusivity, meaningful public participation, and informed decision-making.

Key stakeholders of Polokwane Municipality include:

1. Traditional Authorities.
2. Local Communities.
3. Business Sector.
4. Traditional Healers.
5. Government Departments and State Agencies.
6. Educational Institutions and the Education Sector.
7. Non-Governmental Organisations (NGOs).
8. Transport Sector.
9. Labour Unions.
10. Financial Institutions.
11. Farmers and Agricultural Organisations.
12. Civic Organisations.
13. Religious and Faith-Based Organisations.

This list is not exhaustive and may be reviewed and expanded from time to time to ensure the inclusion of all relevant stakeholders in municipal governance and development processes.

DRAFT

8.12.2 Relationship with Traditional Leaders

Traditional Authorities are recognised institutions of customary governance that play a significant role in representing and advancing the interests of traditional communities within the municipal area. As custodians of customary law, culture, traditions, and communal land interests, Traditional Authorities serve as an important link between the Municipality and communities under traditional leadership.

The role of Traditional Authorities includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- Facilitating communication and consultation between the Municipality and traditional communities on matters affecting local development, service delivery, land use, and community welfare.
- Promoting meaningful public participation by ensuring that the views, needs, and concerns of traditional communities are represented in municipal planning and decision-making processes.
- Providing guidance and advice on matters relating to customary practices, cultural heritage, traditional governance, and community development.
- Supporting the Municipality in the implementation of development programmes, projects, and initiatives within areas under traditional leadership.
- Assisting in the mobilisation of communities for municipal consultations, awareness campaigns, and developmental initiatives.
- Contributing to social cohesion, conflict resolution, and the maintenance of peace and stability within communities.
- Collaborating with the Municipality to promote sustainable land use planning, environmental stewardship, and the equitable utilisation of communal resources.
- Participating, where applicable, in municipal structures and forums established to strengthen cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations.

Polokwane Municipality maintains a constructive and collaborative relationship with Traditional Authorities, recognising their important role in community leadership, public participation, and local development. Traditional Leaders are regarded as key strategic partners in advancing the Municipality's developmental objectives and ensuring effective engagement with communities under traditional leadership. As a standard practice, Traditional Leaders are consulted both before and after Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and Budget Review processes. Before public participation activities within traditional communities, the Municipality engages with the relevant Magoshi (Traditional Leaders) to discuss and coordinate consultation programmes. This approach promotes meaningful participation, strengthens cooperation, and ensures that the concerns and priorities of traditional communities are appropriately considered during municipal planning and decision-making processes.

Institutionally, Traditional Affairs are coordinated through the Office of the Speaker, with all stakeholder engagement facilitated by the Public Participation Unit. This arrangement provides a structured and formal mechanism for ongoing interaction between the Municipality and Traditional Authorities. In addition to IDP and Budget Review consultations, the Municipality convenes quarterly meetings with Traditional Leaders to discuss matters of mutual interest, including governance, development initiatives, and service delivery challenges.

The Municipality further demonstrates its respect for Traditional Authorities through established protocols during Community Outreach Programmes (Imbizo). It is customary for the Municipality to pay courtesy visits to the relevant Traditional Authorities before engaging with communities in their respective areas of jurisdiction. This practice promotes mutual respect, strengthens relationships, and enhances community participation.

DRAFT

Traditional Authorities also play an important developmental role in the Municipality's Annual Charity Fund initiative, which supports rural-based Non-Governmental Organisations (NGOs) and Community-Based Organisations (CBOs). Traditional Leaders assist in identifying eligible organisations within their communities to ensure that support reaches deserving beneficiaries and effectively addresses local development needs.

Overall, Polokwane Municipality enjoys a positive and mutually beneficial relationship with its Traditional Authorities. Their active participation in municipal programmes and development initiatives contributes significantly to improved public participation, enhanced service delivery, community development, and the promotion of cooperative governance within the municipal area.

8.12.3 The building blocks of Good Governance

Good governance is the foundation of an effective, accountable, and developmental local government system. It encompasses the principles, processes, and institutions through which decisions are made, implemented, and monitored in a manner that promotes public trust, democratic participation, and sustainable development. The key pillars of good governance include participation, accountability, transparency, predictability, responsiveness, effectiveness, and adherence to the rule of law.

Section 152 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, places an obligation on municipalities to provide democratic and accountable government for local communities, to ensure the provision of sustainable services, to promote social and economic development, and to encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in matters of local government. In fulfilling this constitutional mandate, municipalities must create an environment that enables meaningful public participation and promotes transparent and accountable governance.

Developmental local government requires municipalities to work in partnership with communities, stakeholders, and other spheres of government to improve the quality of life of residents and address local developmental challenges. To achieve this objective, municipalities must actively promote the principles of good governance and ensure that communities are involved in planning, decision-making, implementation, monitoring, and evaluation processes.

The key building blocks of good governance include:

- **Participation**

Participation ensures that all residents, stakeholders, community organisations, and interest groups have the opportunity to contribute to municipal planning, policy development, budgeting, and decision-making processes. Meaningful participation strengthens democracy, enhances public ownership of municipal programmes, and ensures that development initiatives respond to the actual needs of communities.

DRAFT

- **Accountability**

Accountability requires municipal officials, councillors, and political office bearers to take responsibility for their decisions, actions, and the use of public resources. Through regular reporting, oversight mechanisms, performance management systems, and public engagement processes, the Municipality remains answerable to its communities and stakeholders.

- **Transparency**

Transparency promotes openness in municipal operations, decision-making, and the management of public resources. The Municipality is committed to providing accurate, timely, and accessible information to stakeholders to enable informed participation and strengthen public confidence in local government.

- **Predictability**

Predictability refers to the consistent and fair application of laws, policies, procedures, and regulations. It provides certainty to residents, businesses, investors, and stakeholders by ensuring that municipal decisions are guided by established legislative and policy frameworks.

- **Responsiveness**

Responsiveness requires the Municipality to listen to and address the needs, concerns, and expectations of communities and stakeholders in a timely and effective manner. Through stakeholder engagement, public participation platforms, and service delivery mechanisms, the Municipality seeks to continuously improve its responsiveness to community priorities.

- **Effectiveness and Efficiency**

Effective and efficient governance ensures that municipal resources are utilised responsibly to achieve maximum developmental impact and service delivery outcomes. The Municipality strives to deliver services in a manner that is cost-effective, sustainable, and aligned with community needs and strategic priorities.

- **Rule of Law**

The rule of law requires all municipal activities to be conducted in accordance with the Constitution, applicable legislation, municipal by-laws, and established policies. This principle promotes fairness, consistency, and the protection of the rights of all stakeholders.

To promote and sustain a culture of good governance, the Municipality has established various structures, systems, and mechanisms that facilitate stakeholder engagement, public participation, accountability, and oversight. These include ward committees, community consultation meetings, Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and budget consultation processes, stakeholder forums, community outreach programmes, and other platforms designed to strengthen the relationship between the Municipality and its stakeholders.

Through these mechanisms, Polokwane Municipality seeks to foster inclusive governance, enhance service delivery, strengthen public trust, and ensure that all residents and stakeholders have a meaningful opportunity to participate in shaping the future development of the municipality.

DRAFT

8.12.4 Ward Committee and Community Development Workers (CDW's)

Polokwane Municipality has established Ward Committees in all 45 wards in accordance with Part 4 of the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 117 of 1998. These committees serve as an important mechanism for enhancing participatory democracy, strengthening communication between communities and the Municipality, and ensuring that community needs and concerns are effectively communicated to Council.

To provide a clear governance framework for the operation of Ward Committees, the Municipality has adopted a Ward Committees By-law which regulates, amongst other matters, the procedures for the election of Ward Committee members, the circumstances under which members may vacate office, and the frequency and conduct of Ward Committee meetings. The By-law further seeks to promote accountability, transparency, and the effective functioning of Ward Committees as structures of community participation.

Ward Committees meet monthly to deliberate on matters affecting their respective wards, identify community needs and service delivery challenges, promote public participation, and provide feedback on municipal programmes and projects. Through these engagements, Ward Committees serve as a critical link between the Municipality and local communities by facilitating the flow of information, community concerns, and development priorities.

The Office of the Speaker coordinates and supports the functioning of Ward Committees and consolidates reports received from the various wards. These reports are submitted to Council on a quarterly basis, enabling Council to consider key issues, challenges, and development priorities raised by communities across the municipality. This reporting process assists Council in monitoring service delivery, improving responsiveness, and ensuring that community concerns are integrated into municipal planning and decision-making processes.

The Municipality remains committed to strengthening the effectiveness and functionality of Ward Committees. In pursuit of this objective, Council commissioned a Ward Committees Satisfaction Survey in October 2023. The purpose of the survey was to assess community perceptions regarding the performance and effectiveness of Ward Committees, identify areas requiring improvement, and determine appropriate interventions to enhance their functionality. The survey also provided valuable insights into community participation levels and the effectiveness of existing communication and feedback mechanisms.
The findings and recommendations of the survey are currently being utilised to inform municipal planning processes, institutional strengthening initiatives, and the allocation of resources aimed at improving community participation. In addition, the Municipality is implementing measures to strengthen feedback mechanisms to ensure that issues raised by Ward Committees are monitored, addressed, and communicated back to communities in a more structured and timely manner.

A significant milestone in strengthening ward-based planning was achieved through Council's approval of the Ward Committees Operational Plans Framework in May 2025. As a result, for the first time since the 2025/2026 financial year, all Ward Committees will develop and implement Ward Committee Operational Plans. These plans provide a structured approach to

DRAFT

identifying ward priorities, coordinating community-based activities, monitoring service delivery concerns, and aligning ward-level needs with the Municipality's Integrated Development Plan (IDP), Budget, and broader developmental objectives. The Plans contain, amongst others, details of annual meetings for Ward Committees, Ward Public Meetings and projects to be implemented in the Ward during the financial year.

Through the establishment and continuous strengthening of Ward Committees, Polokwane Municipality seeks to promote meaningful public participation, improve accountability and responsiveness, strengthen local democracy, and ensure that communities play an active role in shaping the development of their respective wards and the municipality as a whole.

8.13 SECRETARIAT

8.13.1 Main objectives of Secretariat unit

The Secretariat Unit plays a critical role in supporting the governance and decision-making functions of the Municipality. Its primary objectives are to:

- Provide and coordinate an effective Councillor Support Programme to enable councillors to execute their legislative, oversight, and representative responsibilities effectively.
- Facilitate the efficient administration and coordination of meetings of the Municipal Council, the Mayoral Committee, Portfolio Committees, and other committees established by Council.
- Ensure effective internal political coordination and communication between the Office of the Executive Mayor, the Office of the Speaker, the Office of the Chief Whip of Council, and relevant municipal structures.
- Provide administrative and procedural support to Portfolio Committees and other decision-making structures to ensure informed, transparent, and effective decision-making processes.
- Maintain and manage Council records, resolutions, agendas, minutes, and related documentation in accordance with applicable legislative and regulatory requirements.
- Promote sound records management practices to ensure the integrity, accessibility, preservation, and security of municipal records and information.

8.13.2 Challenges and Constraints: Secretariat

Despite the progress made in supporting Council and committee structures, the Secretariat function continue to experience several operational challenges, including:

- Late submission of reports by departments for inclusion in the agenda packs of Portfolio Committees, the Mayoral Committee, and Council meetings. This places significant pressure on the Secretariat to comply with legislative and procedural

DRAFT

requirements relating to the preparation, quality assurance, and distribution of meeting documentation.

- Limited office accommodation and inadequate records storage space, which constrains the effective management, safeguarding, and retrieval of municipal records.
- Increasing volumes of records and documentation requiring systematic management, preservation, and archiving in line with records management standards and legislative requirements.

8.13.3 Interventions and Improvement Measures

To address the identified challenges and enhance the effectiveness of the Secretariat Management function, the Municipality has implemented the following measures:

- Annual schedules and timelines for the submission, processing, and distribution of reports are communicated in advance to all departments to ensure compliance with the Council Rules of Order and applicable administrative procedures.
- Continuous engagement with departments is undertaken to promote adherence to submission deadlines and improve the quality and timeliness of reports submitted for consideration by Council and its committees.
- The Municipality is progressively implementing electronic records management systems to facilitate the digitisation, storage, retrieval, and preservation of records securely and efficiently.
- Municipal records are being converted to electronic formats where feasible, while hard-copy records are filed and archived timeously in accordance with approved records management policies and procedures.
- Measures are being explored to improve office accommodation and records storage capacity to ensure compliance with legislative requirements and best practices in records management.
- Ongoing efforts are being made to strengthen information management systems and promote a paperless environment to improve operational efficiency, accessibility of records, and institutional memory.

Through these interventions, the Municipality seeks to strengthen governance processes, improve administrative efficiency, enhance decision-making support services, and ensure effective records management in support of accountable and transparent local government.

8.14 COUNCIL AND POLITICAL GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE

The Municipal Council is the highest decision-making and oversight body of Polokwane Municipality. In terms of its constitutional and legislative mandate, Council is responsible for the formulation and approval of municipal policies, by-laws, strategies, and plans, as well as the oversight of their implementation. Council's role is primarily focused on legislative, participatory, and oversight functions to ensure accountable, transparent, and effective local governance.

DRAFT

The Municipality operates under an Executive Mayor governance system, in which the Executive Mayor serves as the political head of the Municipality and provides strategic leadership and political direction to achieve the Municipality's developmental objectives. The Executive Mayor is responsible for championing the implementation of Council-approved policies, programmes, and strategic priorities, while promoting effective governance and service delivery.

To support the Executive Mayor in the execution of these responsibilities, a Mayoral Committee has been established in accordance with applicable local government legislation. The Mayoral Committee consists of ten (10) councillors, of whom five (5) serve on a full-time basis. The Committee assists the Executive Mayor in the consideration of policy matters, strategic planning, service delivery priorities, and the monitoring of municipal performance.

The Municipality has also established Portfolio Committees to strengthen governance, oversight, and accountability. These committees consider matters within their respective areas of responsibility, scrutinise reports and recommendations from the executive, and conduct regular project/site visits to verify what is reported, monitor implementation of Council resolutions, and make recommendations to Council. Through these functions, Portfolio Committees play a critical role in ensuring accountability by executive political structures and municipal administration.

Council meetings are convened at least once every quarter to consider and adopt policies, budgets, reports, and other matters affecting the Municipality. The Mayoral Committee and Portfolio Committees generally meet on a monthly basis to facilitate ongoing governance, policy review, monitoring, and oversight of municipal programmes and operations.

The Council of Polokwane Municipality comprises ninety (90) councillors, consisting of forty-five (45) Ward Councillors directly elected to represent individual wards and forty-five (45) Proportional Representation (PR) Councillors appointed to ensure equitable political representation in accordance with the electoral system prescribed by local government legislation.

Through this governance structure, Polokwane Municipality seeks to promote sound decision-making, democratic participation, effective oversight, accountability, and responsive service delivery for the benefit of all communities within its jurisdiction.

8.14.1 Political Parties Represented in Council:

There are 8 political parties represented in the Council of Polokwane Municipality as follows:

	Name of Political Party	No of Councillors
1	ANC	57
2	EFF	20

DRAFT

3	DA	07
4	VF+ (FF+)	02
5	COPE	01
6	ABC	01
7	MSM	01
8	ACDP	01

8.14.2 City of Polokwane Council Meeting

City of Polokwane Council Meeting

8.14.3 Portfolio Committees

Section 79 of the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 117 of 1998, empowers a municipal council to establish one or more committees as may be necessary for the effective and efficient performance of its functions and the exercise of its powers. In line with this legislative provision, the Polokwane Municipal Council resolved, through Council Resolution No. CR51/10/23, to re-establish and formalise certain committees as Section 79 Council Committees. These committees were previously functioning as committees established to assist the Executive Mayor in terms of Section 80 of the Municipal Structures Act.

The conversion of these committees to Section 79 Portfolio Committees was intended to strengthen Council's oversight, legislative, public participation, and accountability functions,

thereby enhancing governance and promoting greater separation between the executive and oversight responsibilities of Council.

The following Portfolio Committees have been established by Council:

- Administration and Governance
- Community Safety
- Energy
- Finance
- Housing
- Local Economic Development, Land Use and Spatial Planning
- Roads, Transport and Storm water
- Waste and Environmental Management
- Sport, Arts, Culture and Special Programmes
- Water and Sanitation

In accordance with the principles of good governance and oversight, these Portfolio Committees are chaired by non-executive councillors, being councillors who do not serve as Members of the Mayoral Committee (MMCs). This arrangement promotes independent oversight of executive functions and strengthens accountability within the Municipality.

Council has delegated specific responsibilities and powers to the Portfolio Committees to enable them to effectively fulfil their mandate. These responsibilities include:

- Exercising oversight over the performance of the relevant municipal departments and Members of the Mayoral Committee responsible for those portfolios.
- Considering and scrutinising policies, plans, reports, budgets, and programmes before their submission to Council.
- Monitoring the implementation of Council resolutions, municipal programmes, and service delivery commitments.
- Facilitating public participation and stakeholder engagement on matters falling within their respective portfolios.
- Considering community concerns and sector-specific issues and making recommendations to Council.
- Contributing to the development and review of municipal policies, strategies, and by-laws.
- Promoting transparency, accountability, and good governance in municipal administration and service delivery.

All Portfolio Committees are fully functional and actively fulfil their responsibilities in accordance with their approved mandates. To strengthen their effectiveness and ensure focused oversight, each Portfolio Committee develops an Annual Work Plan for approval by Council each financial year. These work plans outline priority areas, key activities, oversight responsibilities, performance targets, and reporting requirements for each committee.

DRAFT

The adoption of Annual Work Plans provides a structured framework against which Council can monitor, assess, and evaluate the performance and functionality of each Portfolio Committee. The plans also assist committees in prioritising critical service delivery issues, monitoring departmental performance, and ensuring that municipal programmes and projects are implemented in line with Council-approved objectives and community expectations.

Through the establishment and strengthening of its Section 79 Portfolio Committees, Polokwane Municipality continues to promote effective oversight, enhanced accountability, meaningful public participation, and sound governance practices in support of its developmental mandate and service delivery objectives.

8.14.4 Municipal Public Account Committee (MPAC)

Section 79A of the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 117 of 1998, as amended, provides for the establishment of a Municipal Public Accounts Committee (MPAC) as an oversight committee of Council. The MPAC serves as a key accountability mechanism within the Municipality and plays a critical role in strengthening oversight, promoting transparency, and ensuring sound financial governance.

The Committee is responsible for exercising independent oversight over the financial affairs, performance, and governance practices of the Municipality and provides recommendations to Council on matters relating to financial management, audit outcomes, and institutional performance.

The primary functions of the Municipal Public Accounts Committee include:

- Reviewing reports issued by the Auditor-General of South Africa, together with comments and responses from the municipal administration and the Audit and Performance Audit Committee (APAC), and making recommendations to Council.
- Reviewing Internal Audit reports and considering comments and recommendations from management and the Audit and Performance Audit Committee before submitting recommendations to Council.
- Initiating, considering, and developing the Oversight Report on the Municipality's Annual Report as contemplated in Section 129 of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 56 of 2003 (MFMA).
- Considering and making recommendations to Council on any matter referred to it by the Municipal Council, a committee of Council, the City Manager, an individual councillor, or a member of the Committee.
- Investigating, on its own initiative and subject to the direction of Council, any matter affecting the Municipality and reporting its findings and recommendations to Council.
- Monitoring the implementation of audit recommendations and corrective measures aimed at improving governance, financial management, accountability, and service delivery.
- Strengthening public accountability by ensuring that municipal resources are utilised economically, efficiently, effectively, and in accordance with applicable legislation.

DRAFT

In accordance with Section 129(5) of the Municipal Finance Management Act and the national *Guidelines for the Establishment of Municipal Public Accounts Committees*, Polokwane Municipal Council has established and maintains a functional MPAC to support Council in fulfilling its oversight responsibilities.

The Committee comprises councillors representing various political parties within Council, thereby ensuring inclusivity, political diversity, and balanced oversight.

The Committee is fully functional and reports to Council on a quarterly basis against its Council approved Annual Work Plan.

8.14.5 Local Geographic Names Committee

The Local Geographic Names Committee has been established as a consultative and advisory structure to facilitate the management, standardisation, review, and recommendation of geographical names within the jurisdiction of Polokwane Municipality. The Committee operates in alignment with the principles and requirements of the South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC) and relevant national legislation governing geographical names.

The Committee serves an important role in promoting the preservation of cultural heritage, recognising historical significance, fostering social cohesion, and ensuring that geographical names reflect the identity, history, values, and diversity of local communities.

The primary functions of the Local Geographic Names Committee include:

- Advising and engaging with the Municipality to ensure that the principles, policies, and guidelines of the South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC) are applied in the naming and renaming of geographical features, public places, and municipal assets falling within the Municipality's area of jurisdiction.
- Considering and evaluating proposals relating to the naming, renaming, or standardisation of geographical features and places within the municipal area.
- Making recommendations to the Municipal Council for consideration and onward submission to the South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC) for approval, where required by law.
- Undertaking the necessary preparatory and administrative processes for the submission of geographical names to the SAGNC, including research, verification, motivation reports, and supporting documentation.
- Facilitating broad-based consultation and participation by local communities, interested and affected parties, Traditional Authorities, heritage organisations, and other relevant stakeholders during naming and renaming processes.
- Promoting transparency, inclusivity, and public involvement in accordance with the constitutional principles of participatory democracy and good governance.
- Ensuring that proposed geographical names are historically and culturally appropriate, linguistically correct, non-discriminatory, and reflective of the heritage and diversity of the people of Polokwane.
- Supporting the preservation, restoration, and promotion of indigenous, historical, and culturally significant place names within the Municipality.

DRAFT

Through the work of the Local Geographic Names Committee, Polokwane Municipality seeks to ensure that geographical naming processes are conducted in a fair, transparent, consultative, and legally compliant manner, while promoting social inclusion, cultural recognition, and the preservation of local heritage for present and future generations.

8.14.6 Rules and Ethics Committee

The Rules and Ethics Committee is a Council committee established to promote ethical leadership, accountability, good governance, and compliance with the legislative framework governing the conduct of councillors and the functioning of Council. The Committee plays a critical role in ensuring that the Municipality maintains high standards of integrity, professionalism, and transparency in its governance processes.

The primary responsibilities of the Rules and Ethics Committee include:

- Developing, reviewing, and recommending policies and procedures to facilitate the effective implementation of the Code of Conduct for Councillors and related governance frameworks.
- Developing and reviewing Council rules, procedures, and governance instruments aimed at enhancing the efficiency, effectiveness, and orderly functioning of Council and its committees.
- Monitoring and evaluating compliance with the Code of Conduct for Councillors, Council Rules of Order, and other applicable legislative and regulatory requirements.
- Investigating alleged breaches of the Code of Conduct for Councillors and considering matters referred to it by Council or other competent authorities.
- Acting as a disciplinary committee in matters relating to contraventions of the Code of Conduct for Councillors and making appropriate recommendations to Council in accordance with applicable legislation and prescribed procedures.
- Promoting ethical conduct, good governance, accountability, and responsible leadership among councillors and political office bearers.

The Committee remains fully functional and reports to Council on a quarterly basis against its approved Annual Work Plan. Through its oversight and governance responsibilities, the Committee contributes to strengthening institutional accountability and ensuring adherence to ethical and governance standards throughout the Municipality.

Among its key achievements during the reporting period, the Committee reviewed and refined several important governance instruments, including:

- The Council Rules of Order for Municipal Council.
- The Uniform Standing Procedure (USP) governing non-attendance of meetings and other breaches of the Code of Conduct for Councillors and Council Rules of Order.
- Other governance-related policies and procedures aimed at improving Council effectiveness and accountability.

DRAFT

The Committee has also successfully considered and finalised all disciplinary matters referred to it by Council during the 2025/2026 financial year. This has contributed to the consistent application of the Code of Conduct for Councillors, reinforced accountability measures, and promoted a culture of ethical leadership within the Municipality.

Through its ongoing work, the Rules and Ethics Committee continues to strengthen governance systems, support compliance with legislative requirements, uphold ethical standards, and promote public confidence in the integrity and effectiveness of the Municipality's political leadership and decision-making processes.

8.15 COMMUNICATION AND MARKETING

Communications and marketing are important elements of good governance. It is through communication that the communities and other stakeholders are informed about the activities, challenges and achievements of the municipality and thereby being empowered to participate in the affairs of the municipality. Section 18 of the Municipal Systems Act stresses the importance of communication between the Council and its communities. It gives guidelines of issues that the municipality must communicate about to its stakeholders.

The Incorporation of Aganang Municipality resulted in the municipality growing bigger in size and this necessitates a review of the organogram and the approach model of the Communications and Marketing unit so that the municipality can efficiently and effectively respond to the needs of the communities in all clusters with the assistance of the Public Participation Unit and Clusters Services Unit.

A variety of media platforms are used to encourage community participation in municipal affairs. These include programmes of mobilizing, informing and educating, engaging and empowering communities in municipal affairs.

The turnaround and developmental strategies and activities driven by the political leadership are highlighted during direct and rapid response activities with communities.

Face-to-face or direct communications with communities & community structures are conducted through outreach programmes such as the mayoral roadshows and other interested groups meetings on a regular basis.

Services challenges and achievements, products and programmes of the municipality continue to be profiled on the social media, radio stations, print media, online news services, posters and third-party website as a way of marketing Polokwane as a city that is capable to respond to the needs of its communicators and visitors to the province. The municipality created and maintained sound relationship with the media personnel.

The municipality has adopted a communications brand which is an umbrella brand that would provide shelter under which developmental activities that relates to the growth of the city should be communicated to the residents of Polokwane. The "Re aga Polokwane" (which means we are building Polokwane) platform is being used to ensure that the City's

DRAFT

stakeholders have a better understanding of the various projects that the city is embarking on and why the city has embarked on these projects. Further, the brand provides residents and businesses with a platform and opportunity for their own initiative to come up with programmes that will benefit and improve the city in various ways. The programme is in full swing.

Under this banner, the municipality must continue to develop and implement a comprehensive well-researched marketing strategy that will implement campaigns geared towards revenue enhancement, water conservation, key municipal projects, service delivery achievements, investments opportunities and internal communications.

The municipality will continue to develop and improve processes to enhance public participation and strengthening of relations with critical stakeholders to entrench participatory local government.

Billboards, electronic and conventional that are allocated to the municipality around the city are being used to communicate key programmes around awareness. The municipality must take advantage of the availability of this infrastructure and allocate funding to access other available billboards in the city and other urban areas to deliver effective awareness campaigns like water and environmental conservation.

8.15.1 Complaints Management System

The municipality uses suggestions books to record all complains, suggestions and complements by the community about municipal services or any other matter that affects the municipality. Complaints are also received through government hotlines, walk-ins and through the media.

The Call Centre currently managed by various service departments including the Water and Sanitation and the Energy Services with different contact numbers is available and allows members of the public to report complaints or other service-related issues. The Revenue Management Services also has a dedicated call centre.

Processes are currently underway to implement an integrated or one stop call centre. The municipality is also implementing a digital application to report service related issues.

There is an urgent need for the municipality to establish a dedicated customer care unit to be able to centralize customer care services and develop and monitor implementation of services standards (from standard operating procedures developed by all the business units) within the municipality. The unit should also conduct customer care surveys in order to improve its services to all stakeholders.

The municipality also participates in the District and the Provincial Hotline and Batho Pele Forums where management of complaints are attended with the aim of reducing complaints received.

The municipality coordinates Batho pele Days where government departments offering direct services to the public like Home Affairs, SASSA, Eskom, SAPS are invited to exhibit and perform their services at areas where it is usually difficult for communities to access such services without travelling far.

8.15.2 New electronic and social media channels of communication

The City of Polokwane is Available on Electronic and all social media channels of Communication. The municipality is taking advantage of new electronic and social media

DRAFT

channels to improve on the speed through which information reaches residents and other stakeholders. These include communication through digital media platforms in the form of **SMSs, social media chat groups, WhatsApp Channel, Facebook, X (formerly Twitter), YouTube, LinkedIn, MyPolokwane Citizen App and online news services**.

Electronic and social media channels of Communication

Source: PLK Communication and Marketing SBU

8.15.3 City of Polokwane Newsletters

The City of Polokwane has two newsletters that are released quarterly to internal staff and external public members. The Main Purpose is to inform the Staff, Councillors and the Community members about Key Municipal Activities that Transpired During the Quarter. Newsletters are free for everyone to Collect Read Municipal News.

8.16 LEGAL SERVICES

The municipality has a well-established legal services unit which is responsible for the following**:**

1. Co-ordinate, facilitate and manage all external and internal legal actions and processes on behalf of and against the Municipality.
2. Develop and review by-laws and policies.
3. Develop and review a system of delegation of powers.
4. Advise on matters of legal compliance.
5. Effective legal support services
6. Municipal policy framework

7. Contracts (including service level agreements) drafting and vetting.
8. Finalization of (long) outstanding litigious matters.
9. Management of Illegal Land Use.

8.16.1 Core Functions of Legal Services

The Unit is further sub- divided into the following **4 Specialized** areas:

1. Litigations
2. Properties
3. Legislation and law enforcement
4. Governance and corporate affairs

8.16.2 Legislation & Law Enforcement

By-laws/Policies Status	Number of Cases
By-laws drafted/amended awaiting council adoption	**02** • Electricity Supply By-Law 2023 (Amendment) • Problem Properties By-Law 2026
By-laws adopted & promulgated	**00**
Policies drafted/amended & pending adoption by council	**00**
Policies adopted	**11** • Bereavement Policy • Bulk Services Contribution Policy • Disaster Management Plan • Integrated Waste Management Plan • Investment Incentives Policy • Recruitment of Casual Contract and EPWP Workers • Risk Management Framework • Security Policy • Project Management Standard Operating Procedure • Travel Allowance Policy

By-laws/Policies Status	Number of Cases
	• Retention Policy

Source: Legal Services SBU 2025

Challenges:

- Legal Services not engaged in consultation and drafting of by-laws and policies.
- Legal Services Legislation & Law Enforcement do not receive council agendas and minutes to follow up on flow of by-laws and policies adopted.
- Legal Services Legislation & Law Enforcement do not have access to Green Gazette for purposes of receiving promulgated by-laws to update the municipal code.
- Legal Services Legislation & Law Enforcement do not have access to a legal library for purposes of access to legislation, case law and other law reports.

Interventions aimed at addressing challenges

- Informative emails to be forwarded to all Directorates in every quarter to create awareness of the role of Legislation & Law Enforcement in drafting of by-laws and policies.
- Request for access to council agendas and minutes, Green Gazette and a proper legal library to be escalated to senior management.

RAFT

8.16.3 Litigation

Civil Litigation – Damages claimed against Municipality	Number
Pending litigation	89
Matters finalised	08
Civil Litigation – Contingent Assets in favour of Municipality	
Pending litigation	10
Matters finalised	01

Source: Legal Services SBU 2025

Challenges:

- The primary challenge experienced by the Legal Services SBU is the delay or lack of cooperation from end-user departments in providing instructions, participating in consultations, and submitting supporting documentation. These delays result in:
    - Late filing of pleadings or the Municipality being barred from filing pleadings;

- The need to institute interlocutory applications, resulting in unnecessary delays in the finalisation of matters;
- Increased legal costs due to additional work performed by appointed attorneys; and
- Inadequate legal representation, as appointed attorneys are often not provided with sufficient information and documentation to effectively execute their mandates.

Interventions aimed at addressing challenges

- End-user departments are notified of consultations well in advance to ensure their attendance and participation.
- Supporting documentation and instructions should be submitted timeously to the Legal Services SBU.
- Improved cooperation between the Legal Services SBU and end-user departments which enables the appointed legal practitioners to prepare adequately and execute their mandates efficiently, thereby reducing delays and mitigating litigation risks.

8.16.4 Governance and Corporate Affairs

Service Level Agreements	Number
Instructions received for drafting	132
Service Level Agreement drafted	132
Service level agreement delivered to relevant SBU	132
Number not yet signed and awaiting CM's signature	00
Delegation of Powers	
Instruction received for drafting	01
Drafted	01
Finalized	01

Source: Legal Services SBU

8.16.5 Properties

Property Agreements	Number
Instructions received for drafting	06
Property Agreement drafted	06
Property agreement delivered to relevant SBU	06
Number not yet signed and awaiting CM's signature	05

Source: Legal Services

8.17 RISK MANAGEMENT

8.17.1 Risk Management core responsibilities

Risk Management is a key responsibility of management as outlined in Section 62 of the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) and is essential to the Municipality's internal operations. It involves the ongoing identification and mitigation of risks that could affect service delivery.

Polokwane Municipality's Risk Management Unit is responsible for establishing and maintaining an effective Risk Management, Business Continuity Management and Fraud Risk Management system. The Unit facilitates strategic and operational risk assessments, coordinates fraud prevention and business continuity initiatives, and monitors the implementation of mitigation measures to support effective governance and service delivery.

8.17.2 Risk Management Committee

The Municipality has established a Risk Management Committee, chaired by an independent Chairperson and comprising all Municipal Executive Directors, to provide independent oversight of the Municipality's Risk Management, Business Continuity Management and Fraud Risk Management functions in accordance with the National Treasury Local Government Risk Management Framework.

The Committee meets on a quarterly basis and reports to the Audit and Performance Audit Committee (APAC). It advises the City Manager on the adequacy and effectiveness of the Municipality's Risk Management processes, Business Continuity Management arrangements and Fraud Risk Management programme. In carrying out its responsibilities, the Committee reviews the Municipality's strategic and operational risk profile, monitors the implementation of mitigation measures, oversees fraud prevention and anti-corruption initiatives, and provides strategic guidance to strengthen governance, organisational resilience and ethical conduct.

DRAFT

8.17.3 The Risk Champions Committee

Municipality, a Risk Champions Committee comprising designated representatives from each Strategic Business Unit (SBU) has been constituted. The Committee serves as the link between the Risk Management Unit and the respective SBUs.

Risk Champions support the implementation of Risk Management, Business Continuity Management and Fraud Risk Management within their respective Directorates by promoting risk, ethics and fraud awareness, communicating new risk management developments and requirements, reporting emerging risks and incidents, identifying directorate training needs, providing support to management on risk management matters, and facilitating communication between their Directorates and the Risk Management Unit

8.17.4 Top 12 Strategic Risks Identified

Strategic risks are reviewed annually to assess the Municipality's risk profile, evaluate the effectiveness of existing mitigation measures, and identify emerging risks. The annual strategic risk assessment is aligned with the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and budget planning process to ensure that appropriate mitigation measures are incorporated into municipal planning and resource allocation.

The top 12 strategic risks identified for the 2026/27 financial year are:

1. Ageing and overstretched municipal infrastructure (Water, Electricity, Roads and Facilities)
2. High water losses
3. High electricity distribution losses
4. Inadequate and Overloaded Wastewater Treatment Infrastructure
5. Theft and vandalism of municipal infrastructure
6. Revenue losses
7. Ineffective Project Management
8. Land invasion of private and state-owned land
9. Illegal occupation of municipal land
10. Slow local economic growth
11. Cyber security threats and potential cyber attacks
12. Fraud and corruption

8.18 Fraud and Corruption Strategy

Polokwane Municipality is committed to promoting a culture of ethics, integrity and accountability and adopts a zero tolerance approach to fraud and corruption.

8.18.1 Polokwane Municipality statement of attitude to fraud

DRAFT

Polokwane Municipality regards any act of fraud, corruption or other unethical conduct as a serious offence and does not tolerate any form of dishonest or unlawful behaviour. The Municipality is committed to protecting its assets, resources and reputation by ensuring that all reported allegations are appropriately assessed, investigated and, where necessary, referred to the relevant law enforcement authorities for further action. To reinforce this commitment, the Municipality conducts ongoing ethics and fraud awareness initiatives to educate employees, stakeholders and the public on fraud prevention, reporting mechanisms and their responsibility to safeguard municipal resources. Allegations of fraud and corruption are investigated and reported to the Risk Management Committee and the Audit and Performance Audit Committee (APAC) to ensure appropriate oversight and accountability.

8.18.2 Whistle Blowing Policy

Council has approved a Whistle Blowing Policy in compliance with the Protected Disclosures Act. The policy is intended to encourage and enable employees to report suspected fraud, corruption and other unethical conduct within Polokwane Municipality through appropriate reporting channels, rather than overlooking such matters or using inappropriate channels.

The Municipality also encourages communities, stakeholders and service providers who suspect fraud, corruption or unethical conduct to report such matters through the approved whistle blowing mechanisms, including the Municipal Ethics and Fraud Hotline (0800 20 50 53), which provides a confidential reporting platform. All disclosures are treated in accordance with the Whistle Blowing Policy.

8.19 EXECUTIVE SUPPORT / SPECIAL FOCUS PROGRAMMES

Special Focus is located within the Office of the Executive Mayor (Executive Support SBU) and operates within a comprehensive constitutional, legislative, policy and international framework aimed at promoting equality, human dignity, inclusion, non-discrimination, safety and the socio-economic development of **women, youth, persons with disabilities and other vulnerable groups**. The forums for all the targeted groups were established, including the Local Aids Council and the Local AIDS Council Technical Committee, with the aim of mainstreaming all the Executive Support programmes into the municipal services and processes. The Ward AIDS Councils will be Re- established in all 45 wards of the municipality. The unit plays a role of supporting and strengthening these councils to yield best possible results of reducing HIV and AIDS and other opportunistic diseases. Social ills such as Gender Based Violence, Teenage pregnancy, Substance abuse and others, are also addressed within these municipal structures. The HIV and AIDS/Special Programmes Centre provides training, information and counselling to individuals, organizations, schools and other community structures. The centre also serves as a condom distribution site.

Section 73(1) of the Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000 requires municipalities to give effect to the provisions of the Constitution to give priority to the basic needs of the local

DRAFT

community and to promote its development. The Act, Section 73 (2) further states that municipal services should be equitable, accessible and be provided in a manner that is conducive to the prudent, economic, efficient and effective use of available resources.

8.19.1 Core Function of the Executive Support/Special Focus SBU

The core function of this unit is to provide care and support services to the vulnerable groups in the community. Mainstreaming of services is ensured though the following programmes:

- **HIV/AIDS, STI and TB (HAST)**
- **Gender Focal Point**
- **Disability Rights Advocacy**
- **Youth Development**
- **Children's Rights Advocacy**
- **Older Persons' Rights Advocacy**

The Executive Support Programmes are regulated through community forums: i.e.

- **Local AIDS Council, Local AIDS Council Technical Committee and The Ward AIDS Councils.** - Accelerate prevention to reduce new HIV, TB, and STIs infections in collaboration with Department of Health, other government departments and development partners.
- **Gender Forum and the Men's Forum**- To ensure gender mainstreaming and equity in the community and stakeholders within the Municipality. Ensuring accountability and accelerating efforts to address and end Gender Based and create awareness on economic development for PWDs, women, youth and men. Violence. Taking priority action that is incorporated into the National Strategic Plan on GBVF framework. Advocate for the rights of LGBTIQ+ (Lesbian, Guys, Bisexual, Transgender, Intersex and others) Community.
- **Multi Party Women Commission** – To ensure gender mainstreaming and equity within municipal processes and to Act as an advisory and consultative body for all women Councilors and representing their interests within Municipal structure
- **Older Persons Forum -** Advocate for the rights of older persons and creating awareness on abuse against the elderly.
- **Disability Forum** - Advocate for the rights of People with Disabilities and economic development and addressing PWD unemployment. Economic Development and addressing PWD unemployment. Creating Accessible environment for Persons with Disabilities within the Municipality Built Environment (Facilities)
- **Children's Rights Stakeholders Forum -** Advocacy services for children, with special reference to the rights of children and create awareness on children's safety.

- **Youth Forum -** Advocacy for youth economic development and unemployment to reduce youth unemployment**.** To create awareness on youth programmes.
- **Civil Society Organizations Forum** – to create awareness on moral regeneration and monitor all organisation that are focusing on HIV and Aids, Disability, Children, Gender, Older Persons, Religion, Traditional Healers and other sectors
- The **Local Drug Action Committee was established** to address issues of **substance abuse.**

DRAFT

The 95/95/95 Fast Track City Programme had been introduced in the City of Polokwane with the main aim of achieving HIV/AIDS, STIs and TB goals and objectives using the Local Implementation Plan by attaining the 95/95/95 targets. The implementation strategy will:

- Ensure that at least 95% of PLHIV and TB know their status.
- Improve access to Anti Retro Viral and TB treatment to 95%
- Ensure that 95% of PLHIV and TB who are on treatment are virally suppressed and those TB+s is cured.
- Increase the utilization of combination HIV prevention services,
- Reduce to zero the negative impact of stigma and discrimination,
- Establish a common web-based platform for real time monitoring progress.

All the programmes are implemented in collaboration with government departments, civil society organizations, faith-based organisations, traditional authorities and developmental partners to ensure effective services to the vulnerable groups.

8.19.2 Special Focus Challenges

Special Focus Challenges raised during the IDP Consultation meetings are:

Challenges raised during the IDP Consultation	Corrective measure
1. **Braille Documents for the blind and partially sighted persons**	As a short-term intervention strategy, the documents and agendas used during community consultation meetings are printed in Braille with the assistance of South African National Association of the Blind and Partially sighted (SANABP). Plans are underway to have the IDP and Budget document printed in Braille. Plans are also underway for the procurement of the Braille machine for the municipality.
2. **Sign language interpreter for all municipal events and the rates hall.**	As a short term intervention strategy, the sign language services are outsourced from the local organizations for the deaf.
3. **The money raised during the Mayor`s Charity Fund not enough to cover the huge number of NGOs in the Municipality.**	The municipality in partnership with government departments and financial institutions strive to capacitate Community Based Organizations (CBOs) in terms of financial management and fundraising skills to ensure sustainability of their initiatives.
4. **The Participation of people with disabilities and women as well in the procurement process.**	Women and people with disabilities and youth are encouraged to register on the municipal data base.

Challenges raised during the IDP Consultation	Corrective measure
5. Most of our buildings still not user friendly to our people living with disabilities.	Access ramps were constructed at the 1st, 2nd and 3rd floor entrances of the building.
6. Inclusion of people with disabilities in the workforce (non-compliance to the 2% employment mandate) The Employment Equity Survey conducted confirmed an increase of employees with disabilities from 1.1% to 2%.	People with disabilities are encouraged to apply for advertised jobs through the disability forum and organizations.
7. Shortage of land for NGOs and CBOs.	The land acquisition and disposal of municipal property policy that was adopted by council will enable community organizations to make applications for leasing or buying of land. Plans are underway to seek permission for the utilization of some Municipal Vacant land as a one stop centre for community service organizations, including the Victim Support and Empowerment Centre.

Source: Special Focus SBU

8.20 Health and Social Development

8.20.1 Health Facilities Analysis

To optimize the delivery of quality health care services to the community of Polokwane, the provision of health services is fairly covering the communities. There are 40 clinics and 1 health care centre found in the municipal area. Most of the clinics operates 24 hours and are fairly equipped with all necessary infrastructures. The municipality also harbours a provincial hospital, 1 District hospital and 2 tertiary hospitals.

8.20.2 Regional Hospitals in the City of Polokwane

The following are the Major Hospitals in City of Polokwane

1. Polokwane Hospital
2. Mankweng Hospital in Mankweng township (30 km east of Polokwane)
3. Pholoso Netcare Hospital (next to savannah Mall)
4. Seshego District Hospital (10 km out of Polokwane City)
5. Knobel Hospital in Aganang Cluster (60 km North West of Polokwane.)
6. Med clinic Limpopo (Polokwane)
7. Rethabile Health Centre in Polokwane City

DRAFT

8. Over 40 clinics associated with all the above hospitals

Regional Hospitals in the City of Polokwane

Polokwane Hospital	
Pholoso Netcare Hospital next to savannah Mall	
Mankweng Hospital in Sovenga township (30 km east of Polokwane)	

Seshego District Hospital (10 km out of Polokwane City)	

Source: Limpopo Dept Health

8.20.3 HIV /AIDS Prevalence in Polokwane

HIV and AIDS can have a substantial impact on the growth of a particular population. However, there are many factors affecting the impact of the HIV virus on population progression: adult HIV prevalence rates; the speed at which the virus progresses; age distribution of the virus; the mother-to-child transmission; child treatment; adult treatment; and the percentage by which the virus decreases total fertility. ARV treatment can also prolong the lifespan of people that are HIV+. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV live for approximately 10 years before reaching the final stage of the disease (called AIDS). When patients reach this stage, recovery is highly unlikely.

8.20.4 Number of HIV+ people - Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National

HIV+ and AIDS estimates are defined as follows:

The HIV+ estimates are calculated by using the prevalence rates from the HIV/AIDS model built by the Actuarial Society of Southern Africa (ASSA-2008). These rates are used as base rates on a provincial level. S&P Global slightly adjusted the provincial ASSA-2008 data to more accurately reflect the national HIV Prevalence rate per population group as used in the national demographic models. The ASSA model in turn uses the prevalence rates from various primary data sets, in particular the HIV/AIDS surveys conducted by the Department of Health and the Antenatal clinic surveys. Their rates are further adjusted for over-reporting and then smoothed.

Number of HIV+ people - Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total, 2014-2024 [Number and percentage]

DRAFT

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2014	53,300	86,000	375,000	6,210,000	*61.9%*	*14.2%*	*0.86%*
2015	54,500	87,700	381,000	6,350,000	*62.1%*	*14.3%*	*0.86%*
2016	55,600	89,200	388,000	6,490,000	*62.3%*	*14.3%*	*0.86%*
2017	56,800	91,100	395,000	6,650,000	*62.4%*	*14.4%*	*0.85%*
2018	58,000	93,000	402,000	6,820,000	*62.4%*	*14.4%*	*0.85%*
2019	59,100	94,900	409,000	7,000,000	*62.3%*	*14.5%*	*0.85%*
2020	60,200	96,600	416,000	7,170,000	*62.3%*	*14.5%*	*0.84%*
2021	61,300	98,300	422,000	7,340,000	*62.4%*	*14.5%*	*0.84%*
2022	62,500	100,000	428,000	7,520,000	*62.5%*	*14.6%*	*0.83%*
2023	64,100	102,000	437,000	7,730,000	*62.6%*	*14.7%*	*0.83%*
2024	65,900	105,000	447,000	7,950,000	*62.8%*	*14.7%*	*0.83%*
Average Annual growth							
2014-2024	*2.14%*	*2.01%*	*1.78%*	*2.49%*			

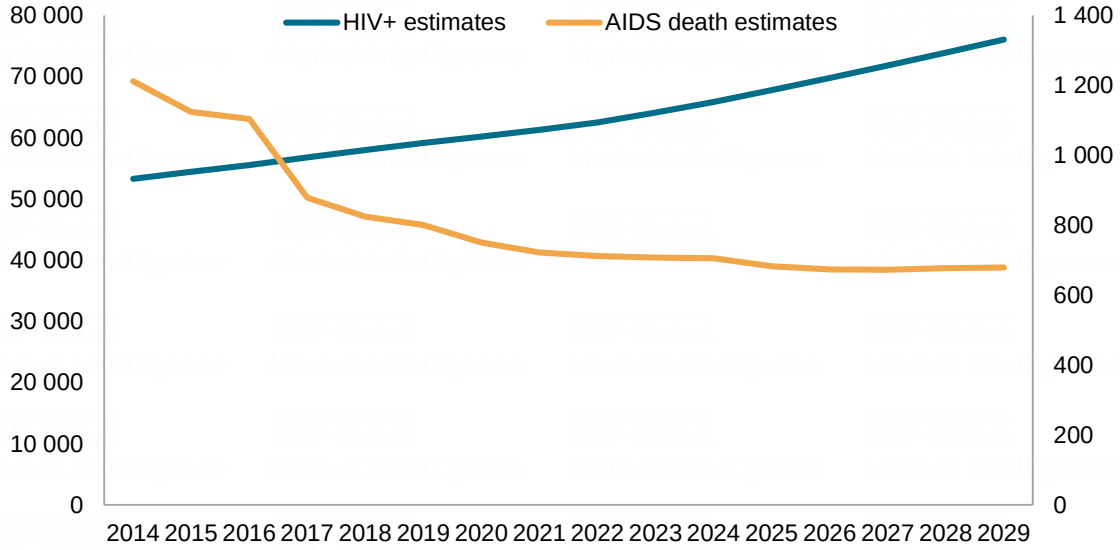
S&P Global Market Intelligence 2025

In 2024, 65 900 people in the Polokwane Local Municipality were living with HIV. This reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 2.14% since 2014, and in 2024 represented 7.36% of the local municipality's total population. The Capricorn District Municipality had an average annual growth rate of 2.01% from 2014 to 2024 in the number of people infected with HIV, which is lower than that of the Polokwane Local Municipality. The number of infections in the Limpopo Province increased from 375,000 in 2014 to 447,000 in 2024. When looking at the

South Africa as a whole it can be seen that the number of people that are infected increased from 2014 to 2024 with an average annual growth rate of 2.49%.

The lifespan of people that are HIV+ could be prolonged with modern ARV treatments. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV can live for 10 years and longer before they reach the final AIDS stage of the disease.

CHART 7. AIDS profile and forecast - Polokwane Local Municipality, 2014-2029 [numbers]



S&P Global Market Intelligence 2025

8.20.5 Awards Received by Special Focus

The Special Focus unit received an award for the **most resourceful Council** in terms of gender mainstreaming during the Capricorn/Swaziland Gender Protocol and Justice summit.

8.21 National Strategic Plan (NSP) on Gender Based Violence and Femicide(GBVF)

8.21.1 The NSP on GBVF

Introduction

The NSP on GBVF serves as a multi-sectoral, coherent strategic policy and programming framework designed to guide and strengthen South Africa's coordinated national response to the GBVF crisis. Municipalities are expected to play a pivotal role in the implementation of the

NSP on GBVF within their respective jurisdictions. This includes providing leadership, coordinating stakeholders, monitoring interventions, and ensuring accountability in the fight against GBVF at the local level.

The Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities (DWYPD), in collaboration with the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (COGTA) and the South African Local Government Association (SALGA), is mandated to support municipalities in fulfilling their coordination and leadership responsibilities in the implementation of the NSP on GBVF. To ensure the provision of effective, tailored support, it is necessary to gather accurate and up-to-date progress reports from municipalities.

The data collected will offer insights into the scope and impact of GBVF-related interventions across municipal areas.

Specifically, the questionnaire seeks to assess:

- Integration of the NSP on GBVF priorities to Municipality plans (i.e. **IDPs**, District One Plans etc.) and implementation.
- The leadership role played by municipalities in addressing GBVF.
- The availability and functionality of GBVF related resources (i.e. TCCs, Victim Friendly Rooms in Police Stations, Victim Empowerment, shelters, white door centres etc). and institutional capacity.
- GBVF-related services accessible within municipal boundaries.
- GBVF related Initiatives by key local stakeholders.
- The existence and functionality of GBVF-related structures; and
- The influence of community leadership in mobilizing collective action against GBVF.

The DWYPD works with the EU funded Technical Monitors and Data Capturers and Offices of the Premier in each province to support municipalities in completing the questionnaire thereby providing data on progress that has been made to fight against the scourge of GBVF. The data collection tool provides guidance on the stakeholders that can be approached in order to gather the information

8.21.2 Integration of the NSP on GBVF priorities to the Municipal IDP

DRAFT

NSP Assessment Questions	Response by City of Polokwane Special Focus SBU
Existence and functionality of GBVF Structures in the Municipality	
Is there a GBVF Response Forum (GBVF RRT) in existence in the Municipality?	We have the Response Forum for the following programmes, Youth (drug committee) HAST (Ward Aids Council Committees, Local aids council and Technical aids council) for GBVF we only established the district response forum, the local one will be established. Children, Disability and Older person none)
How long has the GBVF RRT been in existence?	From 3 years to 1 year
Indicate training that has been received by the GBVF RRT	100 Days Challenge on GBVF, HAST,
Does the GBVF Response Forum meet quarterly?	Yes
Name stakeholders that are represented in the GBVF RRT	SANCA, Community, Chapter 9 Institution, NPOs, Sectors, Sister Departments,
Do the stakeholders report on the implementation of their GBVF Implementation Plan?	Yes
Are there minutes of the GBVF RRT meeting?	Yes
What other GBVF Forums are in place ?	Men's Forum, Disability Forum, Children's Forum, Youth Forum, Older Persons Forum and Local Aids Forum
Political leadership and coordination of GBVF stakeholders and interventions by the Municipality.	
Is GBVF included in the performance agreements of the Mayor, City Manager, Corporate Affairs Manager and other managers in the Municipality?	The Special focus as a whole is included in the performance agreement of the Executive Mayor, City Manager and Chief Operations Director
Is the Mayor or counsellor delegated by mayor chairing the GBVF Forum (GBVF RRT); if not then who is chairing and why?	The Special focus Portfolio is chaired by the Member of the Mayoral Committee.
Presence of GBVF Multi Stakeholder Plan that is administered by the Municipality. if the Municipality is not administering the plan, then which stakeholder is administering and why?	Forum Plans
Assess the interventions identified on the GBVF Multi Stakeholder Plan and provide your comments	Yes
Mayor or counsellor delegated by Mayor provides quarterly report to either the District Municipality or Province on	HIV/AIDS District and Province Drug committee

NSP Assessment Questions	Response by City of Polokwane Special Focus SBU
implementation of GBVF Multi stakeholder plan in areas located under the Municipality	District RRT GBVF
Identify community leadership stakeholders **(except Municipality)** who are represented in the GBVF RRT/ Forum	NGOs, Provincial Departments(SASSA, Agriculture, DSD, Premier's Office, CoGHSTA, Health,) Chapter 9 Institutions, community, Traditional leaders, Traditional healers, Civil society, Religious Institutions, VEPs, Thuthuzela Care Centres
GBV Implementation Plan by the leadership structures	Multi Party Women's Commission
Monitoring the implementation of the GBVF plan of the leadership structures	Speaker
Where do the leadership structures report to?	Council
Any other information regarding the leadership and coordination of GBVF Structures in the Municipality	The Special focus unit is based in the office of the Executive Mayor and all six programmes are chaired by the Member of the Mayoral Committee (MMC)
Prioritisation of GBVF in ward committee sessions	
Is GBVF a standard item in the ward committee meetings?	**N/A**
Are relevant GBV stakeholders represented in the ward committee?	**N/A**
Any other information on prioritisation of GBVF in ward committee sessions	**N/A**
Gender Focal Points (SPU, GEYODI personnel) in the Municipality	
Is there Gender Focal Points in the Municipality?	All programmes have coordinators
How many officials make up Gender Focal Points?	We have six officials 1. Gender Focal Person 2. HIV/AIDS 3. Children 4. Youth 5. Disability 6. Older Persons
In which office are they located in the Municipality?	Executive Support Unit: office of the Executive Mayor
What are other responsibilities of the GFPs in the Municipality?	
What is the level of the GFPs in the Municipality?	Manager Office of the Executive Mayor Level :1 Assistant Manager Special Focus Level: 3

NSP Assessment Questions	Response by City of Polokwane Special Focus SBU
	Chief Special Focus Level: 4 (Gender) 5 Coordinators Level: 8 - Disability - Children - Youth - Elderly - HAST
Do they participate in management meetings?	Extended Exco Meetings and Directorate Meetings
Are GFPs implementing or monitoring GBVF Initiatives?	Yes (All Programmes by the Coordinators)
Any other district sector department with GFPs	Only Special Focus Sub Unit
CPFs, GBVF District Coordinators, GBVF Brigades and Community Development Workers trained on GBVF, GBVF Ambassadors, Crime prevention wardens;	
GBVF is included in the performance agreements of the CPFs and Community Development Workers	N/A
CPF and CDW report on GBVF related interventions	They do report
Name structures and institutions where the CPFs and CDWs report to on their GBVF interventions	Law Enforcement Office, SAPS, Ward Councillors
Other information on personnel that is supporting the Municipality in the fight against GBVF	*Activities*
Gender Based Violence related services available in the Local Municipality (use data from GBVF Dashboard)	
Victim Empowerment programme: Is there a victim empowerment facility in the municipality area	Yes
Thuthuzela Care Centre: Is there a **Thuthuzela Care Centre** in the area; Does the TTC have a social worker, forensic nurse, court preparer and physical care facilities	Yes
Is there a shelter for women and children and **indicate the facilities that are in place and those that are still needed?**	Yes
Is there Sexual Offences court and what are the gaps?	Yes
Name the NGOs that focus on GBVF, Substance abuse; life skills within in the Municipality	SANCA, VEPs, Thuthuzela Care Centres and Department of Social Development
What are the gaps in GBVF interventions?	Appointment of Sign language interpreters
GBVF Interventions implemented in areas located under the Municipality	

NSP Assessment Questions	Response by City of Polokwane Special Focus SBU
Name the **initiatives implemented** from last financial year, directed at the Following : i.e.	**initiatives implemented by the Municipality**
1. GBVF Prevention	Awareness Campaigns, 100 Days Challenge, Workshops, Entrepreneur Training
2 Victim support	VEPs, Thuthuzela Care Centre
3 Women empowerment	Entrepreneurial skills, Women in Farming,
4 Girl and Boy child	Partnership with Kgatelopele on Boy child and Girl child
5 TOXIC Masculinity / Patriarchy	N/A
6 LGBTQIA+ Community	Awareness and Pride, human rights Workshops
7 Man's sector interventions	In Partnership will Limpopo Chaplaincy to Champion, Father A Nation(FAN) Men's Issues
8 Harmful cultural norms	N/A

8.22 NSP ON GBVF AND WYPD PRIORITIES

8.22.1 Special Focus IDP Strategic Objectives and Strategies

Special Focus Strategies

Programme Objective	Short term strategies (1-5 yrs)	Medium term strategies (5 - 10yrs)	Long term strategies (10-15 yrs)
Promote the rights of and provide empowerment and support for disadvantaged groups	Liaise with the Department of Social Development and other relevant structures including the National Youth Development Agency for the implementation of a youth development programmes, specifically in rural and impoverished areas.	Implementation of youth development programmes in all clusters.	Implementation of youth development programmes in all clusters.

Programme Objective	Short term strategies (1-5 yrs)	Medium term strategies (5 - 10yrs)	Long term strategies (10-15 yrs)
	Facilitate Entrepreneurship summits. Conduct a Walk-in-campaign for employment opportunities with major companies and mines. Provide continued support to NPOs.	Strengthen and maintain rapport with job providers. Continue with walk-in campaigns for employment opportunities with major companies including mines. Engage and sign contracts (MOU) with Institutions of higher Learning to consign graduates to participating companies.	Strengthen and maintain rapport with job providers. Continue with walk-in campaigns for employment opportunities with major companies including mines. Engage and sign contract (MOU) with Institutions of higher Learning to consign graduates to participating companies.
	Engagement with public and private institutions to implement career days and mentorship programmes.	Engagement with public and private institutions to implement career days and mentorship programmes.	Engagement with public and private institutions to implement career days and mentorship programmes.
	Liaise with the Department of Health and developmental partners to reduce HIV. Establish Ward AIDS Councils. Implement the 95/95/95/ Fast track Strategy for municipalities to reduce HIV BY 2030	Fast track HIV Counselling and Testing and other programmes to fight HIV and AIDS. 95/95/95/ Fast track municipalities to end HIV BY 2030	Fast track HIV Counselling and Testing and other programmes to fight HIV and AIDS. 95/95/95/ Fast track municipalities to end HIV BY 2030
	Provide disaggregated data and mainstreaming in terms of employment and entrepreneurship opportunities for women, youth and persons with disabilities.	Continued mainstreaming and disaggregated data in terms of gender, youth and persons with disabilities.	80% target of mainstreamed and disaggregated data for gender, youth and persons with disabilities.
	Reduce the rate of violence against women, children, older persons and people with disabilities as well as all	Create continued awareness on GBV, gender inequality as well as stigma and discrimination against	Create continued awareness on GBV, gender inequality as well as stigma and discrimination against

DRAFT

Programme Objective	Short term strategies (1-5 yrs)	Medium term strategies (5 - 10yrs)	Long term strategies (10-15 yrs)
	acts of stigma and discrimination in societies.	women, children and people with disabilities.	women, children, older persons and people with disabilities.

8.23 Legislative Background

The Following are some of the policies and plans that Guide the City of Polokwane **Special Focus unit i**n their day to day operations.

8.23.1 Protection of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination (PEPUDA)

PEPUDA is the acronym for the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, a South African law enacted in 2000. It aims to promote equality and prevent unfair discrimination, hate speech, and harassment. PEPUDA also establishes Equality Courts to address complaints related to these issues. **Key Provisions for PEPUDA include:**

- **Prohibits unfair discrimination:** It forbids discrimination based on various grounds, including race, gender, sex, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, and more.
- **Prohibits hate speech:** It aims to prevent and prohibit the dissemination or publication of information that could reasonably be interpreted as unfairly discriminatory.
- **Prohibits harassment:** It prevents and prohibits any form of harassment

8.23.2 Bill of Rights: Chapter two of SA Constitution

The Bill of Rights in South Africa, found in Chapter 2 of the Constitution, is the cornerstone of the country's democracy and guarantees fundamental rights to all people. It outlines both civil and political rights, as well as socio-economic rights, and is a product of the country's long struggle against apartheid. Key aspects of the South African Bill of Rights include:

- **Core Principles:** -It enshrines the values of human dignity, equality, and freedom.
- **Enshrined Rights:**-It guarantees rights such as the right to life, equality, human dignity, privacy, freedom of religion, expression, association, and movement.

- **Socio-Economic Rights:**-It also includes socio-economic rights like the right to housing, healthcare, food, water, and social security.
- **Limitation of Rights:** -The Constitution recognises that the rights contained in the Bill of Rights are not absolute. In terms of section 36 of the Constitution, a right may be limited only in terms of a law of general application and only to the extent that the limitation is reasonable and justifiable in an open and democratic society based on human dignity, equality and freedom, taking into account all relevant factors. The Constitution separately regulates the limitation of rights during a state of emergency in terms of section 37. In addition, socio-economic rights such as housing, healthcare, food, water and social security are subject to their respective constitutional qualifications, including progressive realisation within available resources.
- **Interpretation:** -The Constitutional Court plays a key role in interpreting the Bill of Rights and its application in specific cases.
- **Historical Context:**-It was developed in response to the injustices of apartheid and draws inspiration from the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.
- **Responsibility:** -While individuals are entitled to these rights, they also have a responsibility to respect the rights of others.

8.23.3 Protection from Harassment Act

The Protection from Harassment Act 17 of 2011 in South Africa aims to protect individuals from harassment and stalking, including sexual harassment. It provides a legal framework for victims to obtain protection orders against those who engage in harmful or unwanted conduct. The Act aims to protect individuals' constitutional rights to privacy and dignity. Key aspects of the Act:

- **Definition of Harassment:** -Harassment includes conduct that causes harm or leads the complainant to reasonably believe harm may be caused, encompassing both direct and indirect actions.
- **Protection Orders:** -The Act allows for the issuance of protection orders by a magistrate's court, which can prohibit the harasser from engaging in certain behaviours, enlisting help from others, or committing other specified acts.
- **Sexual Harassment:** -The Act specifically addresses sexual harassment, defining it as unwelcome sexual attention that is known or reasonably known to be unwelcome, and includes behaviour that offends, intimidates, or humiliates.
- **Consequential Amendments:** -The Act also makes consequential amendments to the Firearms Control Act, 2000.

DRAFT

- **Recourse for Victims:** -Victims of harassment can apply for protection orders, lodge criminal complaints (if the harassment constitutes a criminal offence), and seek support from relevant organizations and legal professionals.
- **Violation of Protection Orders:** -Violating a protection order can result in legal consequences, including fines or imprisonment.
- **Protection beyond Domestic Relationships:** -The Act extends the protection offered under the Domestic Violence Act to individuals not necessarily in domestic relationships. In essence, the Protection from Harassment Act provides a crucial legal tool for individuals to seek protection from harmful and unwanted behaviour, promoting safety and well-being.

8.23.4. Preventing and Combating of Human Trafficking in Human Persons Act

- The Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act, 2013 (Act No. 7 of 2013), is a South African law aimed at combating human trafficking. It provides a comprehensive legal framework that criminalizes human trafficking and related offenses, establishes measures to protect and assist victims, and outlines procedures for prosecution and repatriation of foreign victims.

8.23.5 Employment Equity Act

- The Employment Equity Act 55 of 1998 seeks to promote equality, eliminate unfair discrimination in employment and achieve equitable representation of suitably qualified persons from designated groups through affirmative action measures. The Act has been substantially amended by the Employment Equity Amendment Act 4 of 2022. The amendments introduced, among other measures, sectoral numerical targets and revised requirements relating to designated employers and employment equity compliance. The amendments came into operation on 1 January 2025, while the five-year sector numerical targets and related regulations came into effect during 2025.

8.23.6 National Strategic Plan on Gender Based Violence

- The South African National Strategic Plan on Gender-Based Violence and Femicide (NSP-GBVF) is a comprehensive, ten-year plan (2020-2030) designed to combat all forms of violence and abuse against women, children, and LGBTQIA+ individuals. It focuses on creating a safe environment, with a multi-sectoral approach involving

government, civil society, and the private sector. The NSP-GBVF is organized around six key pillars: accountability, prevention, justice, response, economic empowerment, and research.

8.23.7 Gender-Responsive Budgeting, Planning, Monitoring, Evaluation and Auditing Framework

- The Gender-Responsive Planning, Budgeting, Monitoring, Evaluation and Auditing (GRPBMEA) Framework provides an approach for integrating gender equality and women's empowerment considerations into government planning, budgeting, monitoring, evaluation and auditing systems. It seeks to ensure that policies, programmes, resource allocations and performance management processes respond to gender inequalities and promote inclusive development. The Framework was approved by Cabinet in 2019.

8.23.8 National Youth Policy

- South Africa's National Youth Policy (NYP) 2020-2030 is a comprehensive framework for youth development, aiming to address the needs and challenges of young people across the country. It's a cross-sectoral policy, developed by young people for young people, focused on redressing past wrongs and tackling current issues. The policy aims to ensure that all young South Africans have the opportunities to reach their full potential as individuals and active participants in society.

8.23.9 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities

- The South African White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities, approved in December 2015, is a policy document aimed at promoting and protecting the rights of people with disabilities. It outlines strategies for the full inclusion and participation of disabled individuals in all areas of society, with a focus on mainstreaming disability within government and ensuring socio-economic inclusion. The White Paper is designed to accelerate transformation and redress towards full inclusion, integration, and equality for people with disabilities.

8.24 Gender Related Treaties that South Africa is a signatory to

The City of Polokwane Special Focus is also Guided by Gender related treaties that South Africa is a signatory to i.e.

- South Africa is party to several key international and regional treaties focused on gender equality and the protection of women's rights. These include the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women **(CEDAW),** the Beijing Declaration and Platform for Action, and the Protocol to the African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights on the Rights of Women in Africa **(Maputo Protocol).** These treaties commit South Africa to eliminating discrimination against women and promoting gender equality across various sectors.

8.24.1 CEDAW

- **CEDAW**, or the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women, is an international treaty adopted by the United Nations in 1979. It's often referred to as an "international bill of rights for women" and defines discrimination against women and sets an agenda for national action to end it.

8.24.2 Beijing Platform for Action Protocol on the Rights of Women in Africa

- The Beijing Platform for Action (BPFA) is a landmark document for advancing women's rights and gender equality globally, adopted in 1995. While it's a global agreement, it doesn't directly create a specific protocol on the rights of women in Africa, but rather serves as a framework for various regional and national initiatives, including those within the African continent. The BPFA's 12 critical areas of concern, such as ending violence against women and ensuring women's participation in decision-making, are reflected in the African Union's work, including the Maputo Protocol.

8.24.3 Sustainable Development Goals – goal 5

- Goal 5: Achieve gender equality and empower all women and Girls. Gender equality is not only a fundamental human right, but a necessary foundation for a peaceful, prosperous and sustainable world. There has been progress over the last decades, but the world is not on track to achieve gender equality by 2030

8.24.4 Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities (CRPD)

- The Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities (CRPD) is a United Nations treaty that aims to protect the rights and dignity of people with disabilities. It was adopted in 2006 and came into force in 2008. The CRPD defines persons with disabilities to include those with long-term physical, mental, intellectual, or sensory impairments that hinder their full participation in society.

8.25 SWOT analysis for Special Focus Unit

The table below depicts the **SWOT Analysis** for the City of Polokwane **Special Focus** relating to the ability of the Municipality to protect members of the vulnerable and implementation policies that enable immediate response to any incidences of discrimination and/ or violation of rights of vulnerable groups and GBV.

STRENGHTS	WEAKNESSES
▪ The team is interdependent and works cooperatively ▪ Team members mostly multitask, undertaking Administration of Reports, Procurement. ▪ Good working relations with all Ward Councilors.	▪ All Forums are not that effective due to lack of Stipend. ▪ Limited budget allocation constrains the implementation of Events, Awareness programmes, and Workshops. ▪ Limited capacity to reach all Wards on a Monthly basis. ▪ We are not reaching employment equity target of 7 % disability (including youth and women) ▪ Appointment of sign language interpreters
OPPORTUNITIES	**THREATS**
▪ The team Leverages on cooperating with other SBU's. ▪ Achieving set objectives (KPA's and KPI's), within the provided Budget	▪ Lack of commitment by Forum Members ▪ Lack of Synergy amongst Municipal SBU's on dedicated Service Delivery deliverables ▪ Possibility of Litigation by the Vulnerable Groups and Audit Findings ▪ Audit findings on equity targets and appointment of sign language interpreter ▪ Deaf society might litigate the municipality on discrimination

8.25.1Challenges that affect Negatively the Vulnerable Groups in the City

What are the <u>Challenges</u> that affect Negatively the <u>Vulnerable Groups</u> in the City of Polokwane Communities?

- The City has no enough Centers dedicated to servicing of Vulnerable Groups
- Most Communities lack Awareness on the Protocols and Legislative Frameworks aimed at protecting the Vulnerable Groups

- Lack of Cooperation or Silo operation by various Government Departments within the City of Polokwane
- The City is Vast and has limited resources to meet its obligations

8.25.2 GBVF Hotspots under the City of Polokwane

- Mashashane, (More Incidents are reported there).
- Moletjie (The cooperation of Ward Councilors and Traditional Authorities is minimal).
- The City Cluster (More Cases are not reported due to undue threats by perpetrators and poor Policing.
- Molepo, Maja Chuene (Ward 1 has multiple GBVF cases).
- Mankweng stats shows that it is high in GBVF.

8.25.3 Key NSP Assessment Areas

NSP Assessment Questions	**Response by City of Polokwane Special Focus SBU**
SERVICE DELIVERY, INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT AND FREE BASIC SERVICES	
Is there linkage between the **gender, age and disability dis-aggregated data** and services and infrastructure that the Municipality is planning to provide?	No **Intervention:** Develop WYPD data framework
Has the Municipality identified **gender, age and disability** Key Performance Indicators(KPI) in the services and the infrastructure it is planning to provide to the community E.g. **(for example, percentage of women to benefit, percentage of youth to benefit etc.)?**	No **Intervention:** Incorporate WYPD indicators
Are any **Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilitie**s (**WYPD**) targets identified for free basic services planned for indigent groups .	Yes
ECONOMIC PROFILE AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT INITIATIVES	

NSP Assessment Questions	Response by City of Polokwane Special Focus SBU
To what extent has the Municipality integrated strategies for **supporting its vulnerable groups** in their planned economic development initiatives?	▪ The inclusion of Vulnerable Groups on the Supply Chain Database. ▪ Inclusion on Employment and Local Economic Developments Initiatives
Are the key Performance Indicators(KPI) on economic development initiatives disaggregated by **gender, age and persons with disabilities?**	▪ No, All KPI's are silent on this aspect, this is due to lack of responsive planning towards the vulnerable groups
Are there any planned economic development interventions targeting the Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities **WYPD**?	▪ Yes, the LED has Internships and Incubation Programmes, and Targeted exposure to Economic Developments within the City
COMMUNITY CONSULTATIONS AND THE IDENTIFICATION OF DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES	
There is evidence of community consultations held to **identify priority interventions?**	▪ Yes, through the IDP Programmes and Mayoral Outreach.
Representation of the **vulnerable groups** during the consultation sessions is indicated?	▪ Yes, Vulnerable Groups through Special Focus are coordinated to participate
Consultation times, invitations and transportation reflect that the **vulnerable were considered during consultation** meetings?	Yes
There is mention of initiatives that have been taken by the Municipality to ensure that **vulnerable groups participate** in the IDP consultation sessions, focusing on amongst others:	▪ Provision of Sign Language Interpretation during the said sessions. ▪ Provision of Transportation for the Invited Vulnerable Groups ▪ Allocating of a spot on the reply by the representatives of the groups
1 **Security provision** to ensure safety of attendees	▪ Municipality Community Safety Personnel are availed, and if JOC classify the session as High Security Threat, SAPS is notified to provide surveillance
2 **Transportation considerations** to ensure that all those interested attend the session	Yes
3 **Venue** for IDP consultations catering for **persons with disabilities**	▪ All Venues allocated for IDP's should be Accessible to all
4 **Appropriate time** for consultations selected in order to ensure maximum participation	▪ The Public Participation Unit, are advising in the Planning of the Sessions

NSP Assessment Questions	Response by City of Polokwane Special Focus SBU
5 **Social media platforms** usage for consultation sessions in order to ensure maximum of all	▪ Yes
GENDER BASED VIOLENCE AND FEMICIDE INTERVENTIONS	
Is there any **GBVF coordination structure** (s) that is / are led by the Municipality?	▪ Yes, Polokwane Gender Forum and
Is there **Multi Stakeholder GBVF Plan** that identifies specific GBVF interventions that are going to be implemented by the various stakeholders within areas located under the Municipality?	▪ Yes the Gender Forum and Men's Forum
the **Multi Stakeholders GBVF** Plan- the extent to which its indicators and targets contribute to the outcomes of the National Strategic Plan on **Gender Based Violence and Femicide (NSP on GBVF).**	▪ Yes
DEMOGRAPHIC DATA OF THE MUNICIPALITY	
Is the data on the population of the Municipality **gender, age and disability disaggregated?**	▪ The Disaggregated Data available needs to be reviewed, the current data is as of 2015 Census
Is there evidence of linkage of the disaggregated data to any Municipal services and programmes?	▪ Minimal
Is there any linkage made **between service provision** and **location of gender-based violence and Femicide hotspots**	▪ No, The Municipality is actually reactive to prevalence of incidence, there is a need for Ward Committees and Councilors to lead in this instance
GOVERNANCE AND INSTITTUTIONAL PERFORMANCE	
Is the **gender of the individuals** appointed in senior management, Council, Council Sub Committees, Management structures and its sub structures, identified?	▪ The City Manager, the Directors, Members of Mayoral Committee and the Speaker.
Is there acknowledgement of high or low levels of representation and **the goal to bridge the gap?**	▪ yes
OTHER DEVELOPMENT PLANS OF THE MUNICIPALITY	
To what extent has the Municipality integrated strategies for supporting its **vulnerable groups** in their planned initiatives?	▪ The City of Polokwane has an Established Special Programmes Office, dedicated to the Vulnerable Groups
Are the key Performance indicators(KPI) on the initiatives **disaggregated by gender, age and persons with disabilities?**	▪ No **Intervention:** Develop WYPD data framework

NSP Assessment Questions	Response by City of Polokwane Special Focus SBU
Are there any planned development interventions targeting the **Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities** (**WYPD)**?	▪ Yes
Is there budget allocated to the initiatives of **Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities** (**WYPD)**?	▪ Special Programmes Office is provided for in the IDP, which however is not enough ▪ Not all Business Units of the City of Polokwane do not have WYPD specific Budgeting

8.26 Project Management Unit (PMU)

8.26.1 Roles and Responsibilities for PMU

- ✓ Support on project and contract management
- ✓ Monitoring and evaluation of project performance, expenditure and compliance through dedicated PMU support to each directorate responsible for the implementation of capex infrastructure projects.
- ✓ Coordination of various grant performance and reporting processes
- ✓ Institutional coordination of PSP performance for quarterly reporting
- ✓ Implementation of EPWP program and related compliance

The Municipality is currently responsible for capital infrastructure projects funded from **IUDG, RBIG, NDPG, WSIG; PTNG, EPWP, MDRG, INEP, HSDG and CRR.**

8.26.2 NEIGHBORHOOD DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

The Precinct Plan is for development and connection of the identified business nodes in Seshego urban hub as part of the NDPG (Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grant) funded project from National Treasury. During the investigations about Seshego Urban hub, it was realized that there are some areas where the facilities/infrastructure need re-designing to accommodate growth patterns at Seshego. It becomes the priority of the precinct plan to address those problems at a minimal cost while ensuring that people still receive the required services as they are supposed to.

The precinct plan is aimed at promoting the performance of Seshego urban hub with the following objectives: Formalise public transportation facilities and services. Increase

DRAFT

pedestrian volumes to the hub by defining and improving pedestrian movement. To create vibrancy, job opportunities and increase population thresholds by means of the integration and mix of land uses such as commercial, transport, social and public space, higher residential densities and training facilities. Establish a public square to encourage social and cultural gathering and interaction. Improve the Economic Development within the entire hub. To date, 25 projects have been identified during the precinct planning and it will require R850 300 125.00 to complete the project in phases.

In the 2020/21 the NDPG team at National Treasury advised that a x 108 sub precinct be developed to focus on heart of the already approved precinct plan. The Precinct Plan Review aims to transform the existing Seshego into an urban hub that is vibrant, pedestrian orientated, create convenience and functions as a Transit Oriented Development (TOD) environment. The interventions proposed are subject to availability of bulk infrastructure capacity and strong precinct management. Successful government interventions will stimulate private sector opportunities and confidence to invest in the hub. All these interventions will be to the advantage of the broader community of Seshego and Polokwane it is noted that the Precinct Plan recommendations may have to be updated if any final designs impact on the Precinct design proposals.

The precinct plan review together with x108 sub-precinct developed report was approved by National Treasury which allow the municipality to implement the project. Further source the private sector for investment within the hub as part of economic enhancement within the hub and surrounding areas to improving the social cohesion within the society.

National Treasury has reviewed the NDPG funding and reprioritised the grant to fund projects on the Programme and Project Preparation Support Grant (PPPSG) which is a conditional grant aimed at supporting municipalities to develop a pipeline of investment ready capital programmes and projects, through establishing and institutionalising an effective and efficient system of programme and project preparation as outlined in the Division of Revenue Act. The grant is spent in accordance with the work plans as submitted by the City and approved by the Neighbourhood Development Partnership Programme (NDPP).

8.27 Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) is a nation-wide Government Programme aiming at drawing significant numbers of unemployed into productive work, so that they increase their capacity to earn an income.

The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) was initiated in 2004 with the primary goal of reducing unemployment across South Africa. The EPWP provides labour intensive employment created through the infrastructure sector, social sector, environment sector as well as the non-state sector. These sectors under the EPWP therefore have a dual purpose namely, job creation and upgrading of infrastructure.

The persistently high rate of unemployment in South Africa is one of the most pressing socio-economic challenges facing the Government and the City of Polokwane is not immune to these

challenges. High youth unemployment in particular means young people are not acquiring the skills or experience needed to drive the economy forward.

Therefore, job creation and skills development remain the key priorities of the the City of Polokwane. EPWP targets are set annually by the National Government, which the Municipality is expected to achieve. With the introduction of the EPWP phase III, the Municipality has performed well in terms of job creation, by achieving their target for the first year. Currently most jobs are created through Capital projects as well as Operational projects, and quite a significant number of jobs are created through Water and Sanitation, Waste Management, Roads and storm water, Environment Management and Transportation Projects.

An EPWP policy document was developed and approved by Council in 2012/13 financial year and is reviewed annually. The policy is aimed at providing an enabling environment for the Municipality to upscale the EPWP Programme, through the re-orientation of the line budget function and channelling a substantial amount of the overall annual budget allocation and human resources towards the implementation of EPWP. This policy also advocates for the establishment of a Municipal EPWP Steering Committee which has since been established and is responsible for the strategic direction and coordination of EPWP.

To ensure accountability by all Directorates in the achievement of these set National EPWP targets, the Directorates are allocated annually, a portion of the total target which the Directorates must achieve.

The Municipality is currently implementing PHASE V of the Expanded Public Works Program which came into effect in April 2024.

8.27.1 Objectives of EPWP Phase V

The Objective of EPWP Phase V is:

To create five million work opportunities over the next five years ending 31 March 2029. This phase emphasizes increased youth participation, strengthened skills development, and targeted exit strategies for participants. It aims to enhance the quality of work experiences and the services delivered to communities.

·**EPWP Phase V Focus**

- Improve coordination and effectiveness of structures implementing the Programme
- Improve the implementation framework from recruitment to the end. Implementation should be through effective **monitoring and accountability**,
- Define impactful projects. While providing work opportunities and skills, there is a need to contribute towards improving the quality and delivery of services to the people
- Improve training to provide meaningful skills while preserving the cost benefit.

DRAFT

- Ensure proper exit strategies through enterprise development and linking other participants with permanent employment for the participants to be able to become entrepreneurs and also enter the job marker. Well positioned to coordinate and participate in the implementation of the EPWP Phase 5.

8.27.2 Community Work Programme

The Municipality in partnership with the Department of Co-operative Governance Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA) is implementing the Community Work Program (CWP). The CWP targets specific areas, where a significant number of people unemployed are drawn into productive work. The communities identify useful work at community level.

The programme aims to provide an employment safety net, by providing a minimum level of regular work opportunities to participants, with a predictable number of days of work provided per month. It is targeted at the unemployed and/or underemployed people of working age, including those whose livelihood activities are insufficient to lift them out of poverty. The Polokwane Municipality has received an allocation of 1882 participants from (COGHSTA) through the CWP and participants are distributed across different wards.

8.27.3 EPWP Jobs Targets

As part of the EPWP, the municipality set EPWP targets for each project which contractors have to achieve. It is also a requirement in terms of demographics that, 55% of the people employed during project construction should be youth. For the 2025/26 Financial year a total of 3686 EPWP participants were reported, out of which 1613 was infrastructure sector, 710 was for Environment & Culture sector and 1363 for Social Sector.

- EPWP Job Creation Target for 2025/26 Financial Year was 3600, and the target achieved is 3686
- EPWP Job Creation Target for 2026/27 Financial Year is: 3600

8.28 PMU Challenges

- Poor performance of service providers leading to delays on completion of projects.
- Delays in approvals of technical reports DWS for water and sanitation projects.
- Delays in the approval of Implementation Readiness Status (IRS) documents by DWS prevent the municipality from conducting long term planning on water and waste water projects.
- Vandalism of completed infrastructure.

DRAFT

- Projects not sufficiently budgeted for leading to over commitment and budget deficit
- Lack of a centralized project management system, poor record keeping, inconsistencies on reporting and project information.
- Poor Contract Management which lead to financial loss on litigations and escalated project costs on terminated contracts.

8.28.1 Proposed Intervention on PMU Challenges

- Strengthen performance assessment and link to SCM allocation register to avoid allocating poor performing Service Providers with more projects.
- Impose penalties to Contractors for delays on completion of projects
- Signing of Cession agreements with Suppliers to avoid delays on delivery of materials.
- Weekly progress meetings to monitor progress and for early detection of challenges on the projects.
- Identify relevant training programmes project managers for capacity building on project and contract management.
- Ensure that qualified and skilled people are employed on site per the tender submission.
- MUNSOFT project management module has been introduced to improve projects reporting and record keeping.
- Registration of all capital infrastructure projects on the ArcGIS software for 'as built' information.
- MUNSOFT project management module has been introduced to improve projects reporting and record keeping.

8.29 Technical Report Approval

The municipality implements its Regional Water Scheme (RWS) projects mostly through the Integrated Urban Development Grant (IUDG) and Water Services Infrastructure Grant (WSIG). It is a requirement that the water projects be taken through the process of the technical reports by the municipality through appointed consultants, which are then processed by the Department of Water and Sanitation for recommendation of grant funding.

8.30 Capital Expenditure Framework(CEF)

The framework includes all the infrastructure that falls within the mandate of the municipality. The infrastructure is funded by the municipality and includes own funding, various grants received as well as borrowing raised by the municipality itself.

The CEF is an important tool in ensuring that long term infrastructure investment decisions are timeously made in a financially viable way to support the Integrated Urban Development Framework(IUDF) objectives in facilitating spatial transformation.

The CEF also serves a business plan for the implementation of Integrated Urban Development Grant(IUDG) funded projects. The Municipality has reviews its capital expenditure framework

DRAFT

which was approved in 2019/20FY. Council approved the reviewed CEF on 29 July 2025. The CEF will be reviewed again in 2027/28FY.

8.31 2025/26 Grants performance.

The municipality has received allocations of grants to support infrastructure development in the current financial year which are managed as follows:

GRANT REGISTER		
Code	**Grant**	**SBU**
IUDG	**Integrated Urban Development Grant**	PMU, Roads and Storm water, Water and Sanitation, Sports and Recreation, Waste Management, Energy services and Planning and Economic development
RBIG	**Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant**	Water and Sanitation
PTNG	**Public Transport Infrastructure Grant**	Transportation Services
EPWP	**Extended publics work programme**	PMU
INEP	**Integrated National Electrification Programme**	Energy Services
NDPG	**Neighbourhood Dev Partnership Grant**	Roads Services Energy Services Water and Sanitation Community Services
WSIG	**Water Services Infrastructure Grant**	Water and Sanitation
EEDSMG	**Energy Efficiency and Demand Side Management Grant**	Energy Services
MDRG	**Municipal Disaster Relief Grant**	Roads & Storm water
HSDG	**Human Settlement Development Grant**	Planning and Economic Development

Source: Polokwane PMU SBU

8.32 Overall governance dashboard

Indicator	Baseline/current status	Trend	Assessment
Council seats	90	→	Stable
Wards	45	→	Stable
Ward Committees	45	→	Stable
Cluster offices	6/7*	→	Strengthen
Cluster-office establishment	47	→	Needs capacity
Cluster positions filled	27	↓	57.4%
Audit opinion	Unqualified	→	Maintained
PMS system	Automated	→	Strength
Performance-information controls	Weak areas identified	→	Priority
Integrated call centre	Not fully operational		Priority
Local GBVF forum	Not yet established		Gap
Risk management	Top 12 risks identified		Established

Source: Polokwane PMU SBU

DRAFT

8.33. INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP)

8.33.1 Legislative Background Introduction

It is required in terms of Section 25 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 32 of 2000, that each municipal council must within a prescribed period after the start of its elected term, adopt a strategic plan, known as the Integrated Development Plan (IDP). IDP is a 5-year plan which **guides and informs the municipality's planning, development and budgeting.** It is reviewed annually based on its performance and other changing circumstances deemed

relevant by the municipal council (Section 34 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 as amended).

Integrated development planning is a **process** through which a municipality conducts a comprehensive analysis of the community needs and subsequently priorities available resources to address those needs. The process seeks to ensure **vertical and horizontal integration** between the municipal planned interventions with the planning efforts of **national and provincial spheres of government** as well as within the various sectors of government. This process also allows for the participation of private sector, the community and community organisations identified by the Municipality as key stakeholders in the development planning of the municipal area. In compliance with the Municipal Systems Act (2000, as amended),

The City of Polokwane IDP is underpinned by key sector plans and strategies, which include the Municipality's long-term plan (**Vision 2030/Smart City**), Spatial Development Framework **(SDF),** Polokwane 20 Years Economic Growth and Development Plan **(EGDP),** Integrated Waste Management Plan **(IWMP),** Water Services Development Plan (WSDP), Integrated Transport Plan **(ITP)** and the Environmental Management Plan(**EMP)** amongst others. The IDP is responding to the community priorities, provincial, national priorities and is in line with State of the Nation Address (SONA), State of the Province Address (SOPA), State of the City Address(SOCA), Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs IDP guidelines and the District Development Model (DDM).

8.33.2 Integrated Development Planning

Local Municipalities in South Africa have to use "integrated development planning" as a method to plan future development in their areas. Apartheid planning left us with cities and towns that:

- Have racially divided business and residential areas
- Are badly planned to cater for the poor - with long travelling distances to work and poor access to business and other services.
- Have great differences in level of services between rich and poor areas.
- Have sprawling informal settlements and spread-out residential areas that make cheap service delivery difficult.

Rural areas were left underdeveloped and largely un-serviced. The new approach to local government has to be developmental and aims to overcome the poor planning of the past.

Integrated Development Planning is an approach to planning that involves the entire municipality and its citizens in finding the best solutions to achieve good long-term development.

DRAFT

An Integrated Development Plan is a **super plan** for an area that gives an overall framework for development. It aims to co-ordinate the work of local and other spheres of government in a coherent plan to improve the quality of life for all the people living in an area. It should consider the existing conditions and problems and resources available for development. The plan should look at economic and social development for the area as a whole. It must set a framework for how land should be used, what infrastructure and services are needed and how the environment should be protected.

All municipalities have to produce an Integrated Development Plan (IDP). The municipality is responsible for the co-ordination of the IDP and must draw in other stakeholders in the area who can impact on and/or benefit from development in the area.

Once the IDP is drawn up, all municipal planning and projects should happen in terms of the IDP. The annual Council budget should be based on the IDP. Other government departments working in the area should take the IDP into account when making their own plans.

It should take **6 to 9 months** to develop an IDP. During this period service delivery and development continues. The IDP is reviewed every year and necessary changes can be made.

The IDP has a lifespan of **5 years** that is linked directly to the **term of office for local councillors**. After every local government election, the new council has to decide on the future of the IDP. The Council can adopt the existing IDP or develop a new IDP that takes into consideration existing plans.

The Executive Mayor of the municipality have to manage the IDP Process. The Executive Mayor may assign this responsibility to the City Manager.

The IDP has to be drawn up in consultation with forums and stakeholders. The Draft and Final IDP document has to be approved by the Council.

DRAFT

8.33.3 Evolution of the IDP (Trends since 2001-2031)

1st Generation (2001-2006)	2nd Generation (2006-2011)	3rd Generation (2011-2016)	4th Generation (2016-2021)	5th Generation (2021-2026)	6th Generation 2026 -2031 (New Council Term)
Eradication of service delivery **backlogs**	Eradication of service delivery **backlogs**	Participation of provincial and national spheres of government	Intergovernmental programme pipelining	NDP vision 2030 **– spatial transformation**	**Focus Area will be DDM –** District Development Model is a

	IDP being a plan of all government	Alignment of planning and budgeting processes	Respond to policy imperatives (NDP, IUDF, **SPLUMA)**	Facilitate **spatial integration,** growth, inclusion and access	process by which **joint and collaborative planning** is undertaken at **local, district and metropolitan** by all three spheres of governance resulting in a single strategically focussed **One Plan**
		Integration of municipal sector plans into the IDP	Spatial planning		

Source: PLK IDP SBU

8.33.4 Medium Term Development Plan (MTDP) 2024-2029

Medium Term Development Plan (MTDP) 2024 -2029 is the government's strategic roadmap for the next five years, aiming to accelerate the goals of the long-term National Development Plan (NDP) 2030. It replaces previous fragmented frameworks with an integrated, outcomes-focused approach. Municipal IDPs are expected to align with and draw from these national priorities set out in the MTDP. The 2026/2030 IDPs represent the last 5-years for implementation of the NDP. Government has set **five goals** for the next five years, which are:

1. **A dynamic, growing economy.**
2. **A more equal society, where no person lives in poverty.**
3. **A capable state delivering basic services to all citizens.**
4. **A safe and secure environment.**
5. **A cohesive and united nation.**

To achieve these goals, the MTDP 2024-2029 identifies three Strategic Priorities which will be implemented across the state:

1. **Strategic Priority 1: Drive inclusive growth and job creation.**
2. **Strategic Priority 2: Reduce poverty and tackle the high cost of living.**
3. **Strategic Priority 3: Build a capable, ethical and developmental state.**

These three Strategic Priorities, with a set of policy choices and priority interventions, will be implemented across all government and overseen and monitored by the centre of government. The IDP then takes this direction and translates it into concrete, context-specific plans for the municipality, ensuring that local development efforts contribute directly to the national and provincial development agenda.

8.33.5 IDP/ Budget Process Plan

In terms of Municipal System Act, 32 of 2000, Section 28(1), each municipal Council must adopt a process set out in writing to guide the planning, drafting, adoption and review of its

Integrated Development Plan. Annually, City of Polokwane Council approves IDP/Budget/PMS process plan that is aligned with the Municipal Corporate Calendar detailing activities and processes that will unfold culminating with the final approval and adoption of the IDP and Budget by Council and it is aligned with the Municipal Corporate Calendar.

8.33.6 The IDP/Budget Committees

Legislation requires municipalities to establish appropriate mechanism, processes and procedures for the organs of state, including traditional authorities and other role players to be identified and consulted on the drafting of the Integrated Development Plan. To achieve this purpose, the City of Polokwane established committees towards attainment of the above legislative requirement as follows:

8.33.7 IDP/Budget Technical Committee

The IDP /Budget Technical committee is chaired by the **City Manager** and constituted by all Directors and all Managers who are appointed annually by the City Manager. This committee serve as a working committee for municipal planning, budgeting and institutional performance.

8.33.8 IDP/Budget Steering Committee

The IDP Steering committee is chaired by the Executive Mayor and composed of all members of the Mayoral committee, Speaker of Council, Chief whip; MPAC Chairperson, Ethic Chairperson, Geographic Names Chairperson, MM, all Directors and selected Managers. Councillors in the committee play oversight role over municipal planning, budgeting and institutional performance whereas municipal employees provide expertise and technical knowledge in a supporting role.

8.33.9 IDP Representative Forum

The IDP Representative Forum is platform that the City of Polokwane use to engage with organized formations and government departments. The City of Polokwane is now Using **Media Platform** (Local Newspapers) to Request Inputs and Comments from the Stakeholders on each Phase of the IDP.

8.34 IDP/Budget Public Participation and Stakeholder Engagements Process

Municipal System Act, 32 of 2000, Chapter 4 provides for the municipalities to develop a culture of municipal governance that complements formal representative government with a system of participatory governance and to encourage and create conditions for the local community to participate in the affairs of the municipality including in the preparation,

DRAFT

implementation and review of its Integrated Development Plan. Polokwane Municipality is divided into seven (7) clusters for administrative purposes and further has a diverse and active citizenry that requires an effective public participation process to ensure that they are fully engaged in matters of their development. These includes community, business sector, government departments, non-governmental organisations, Traditional Authorities amongst others.

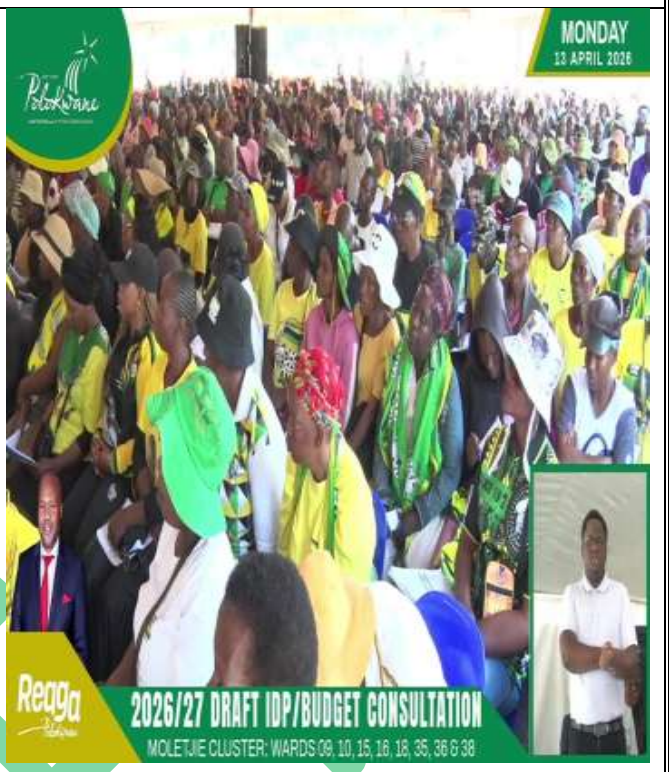
Polokwane Municipality has dedicated the month of **April** annually to consult with its stakeholders and source inputs into the tabled draft IDP and Budget. During these meetings Council gives feedback on the implementation of the current financial year projects, budgets and interventions where necessary and further present proposed projects, programmes, budgets and tariff increases for the coming financial year for engagements with stakeholders. Copies of both the draft and final IDP and Budgets are placed at strategic places within the seven (7) municipal clusters, libraries and also get posted on the municipal website for consumption by members of the public.

8.34.1 IDP /Budget Public Participation Meetings (April 2026)

Overview of Attendance of 2026 IDP /Budget Public Participation Meetings

SDA 1	**Sebayeng /Dikgale Cluster**

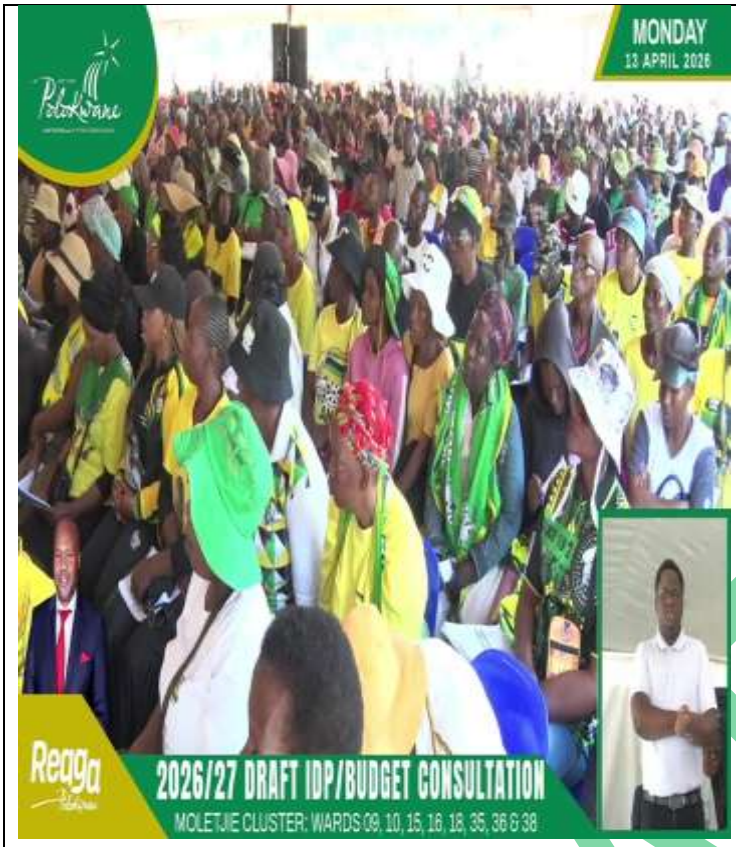
City Cluster



Moletjie Cluster

Aganang Cluster

Seshego Cluster



Moletjie Cluster

Molepo /Chuene /Maja Cluster

Mankweng Cluster

Executive Mayor Cllr Makoro John Mpe Addressing the Community at Seshego Cluster IDP

Source: City of Polokwane Communication SBU

8.35 MEC IDP Assessments

Municipal System Act, 32 of 2000, Section 32 requires municipalities to submit the adopted Integrated Development Plans (IDP) to the Office of the MEC for local government within ten **(10) days** after Council approval. This is to allow the MEC for local government to assess the IDPs of municipalities for compliance and to make proposals for amendments where possible for consideration by local councils. Polokwane Municipality has always complied with legislation and submitted the adopted IDP within the prescribed timelines. Polokwane Municipality always considers proposals by the MEC for Local Government from the IDP Assessments and incorporates them into planning. Below is the Ratings Received from MEC assessment on Polokwane final IDP's.

8.35.1 MEC rating for Polokwane Municipality IDP

MEC IDP Assessment Rating for Polokwane (High; Medium and Low)	
Financial Year Final IDP Assessment	**MEC Rating**
2021/26	**High**
2022/23	**High**
2023/24	**High**
2024/25	**High**
2025/26	**High**
2026/27	**Not yet Released**

Source: PLK IDP SBU

8.36 Strategic Planning Session (Bosberaad)

The purpose of the strategic planning session is to maintain a favourable balance between an organization and its environment over a long run. Strategic Planning has been defined as "a disciplined effort to produce fundamental decisions and actions that shape and guide what an organization is, what it does, and why it does it". It provides a systematic process for gathering information about the bigger picture and using it to establish a long-term direction and then translate that direction into specific goals, objectives, and actions. It blends futuristic thinking, objective analysis, and subjective evaluation of goals and priorities to chart a future course of

action that will ensure the organization's vitality and effectiveness in the long run. "At best it permeates the culture of an organization, creating an almost intuitive sense of where it is going and what is important".

In today's highly competitive business and organizational environment, budget-oriented planning or forecast planning methods are insufficient for organization to prosper. There is a need to engage in strategic planning that clearly defines objectives and assesses both the internal and external situation to formulate strategy, evaluate progress, and make judgments as necessary to stay on track. Polokwane Municipality usually host its strategic planning sessions **each financial year** in terms of the IDP/Budget/PMS Process Plan. The session is led by the Executive Mayor. The Executive Mayor with the support of the Members of the Mayoral Committee, Chairpersons of Council Committees, leaders of all parties Represented in Council , Senior Management and EXCO Managers embarks on a retreat to make a thorough **introspection** on whether the municipality is on track to achieve its **Vision 2030/Smart City** and take the necessary actions / decisions to ensure that Polokwane Municipality succeeds in bettering the lives of its communities and therefore achieve its Vision 2030.

8.37 District Development Model (DDM)

8.37.1The District Development Model – One Plan

Lack of coordination between National and Provincial Governments, between departments and particularly at local government level, has not served the country. The pattern of operating in silos has led to lack of coherence in planning and implementation and has made monitoring and oversight of government's programme difficult.

The President in the 2019 Presidency Budget Speech (2019) identified the "pattern of operating in silos" as a challenge which led to "lack of coherence in planning and implementation and has made monitoring and oversight of government's programme difficult". The consequence has been non optimal delivery of services and diminished impact on the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and employment.

8.37.2 The Approach

The rolling out of "a new integrated district-based approach to effectively address our service delivery challenges and localised procurement and job creation, that promotes and supports local businesses, and that involves communities, was important.

8.37.3 DDM Gazette

The regulation framing the institutionalisation of **District Development Model** in terms of section 47(1) b of the intergovernmental relations Framework Act of 2005 was gazetted by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional affairs on the **15 April 2024**

DRAFT

8.38 The Living IDP Portal

The Living IDP (Integrated Development Plan) Portal is a digital municipal planning platform developed by South Africa's Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs **(CoGTA)** through the National Strategic Hub.

It transitions traditional 5-year municipal IDPs from static **PDF documents** into a dynamic, geospatial, and interactive digital format. Key features and resources include:

- **Interactive Planning:** Allows municipalities to update and monitor spatial and developmental plans continuously, aligning them with local needs, Sustainable Development Goals, and national priorities.
- **Integrated Data:** Pulls a "single source of truth" across national departments to map settlement characteristics, population trends, and service delivery needs.
- **Targeted Rollout:** Piloted across selected municipalities to streamline the crafting and reviewing of 2026/2027 local government IDPs.

8.38.1 The Future of Municipal Planning

The Future of Municipal Planning is Here: Introducing the Living IDP Portal.

For decades South African municipalities have treated Integrated Development Plans as static documents produced every five years, often outdated by the time. That era is ending!

The Living IDP Portal, developed by the National Strategic Hub, represents a fundamental shift in how we think about municipal planning. **This isn't just digitisation**, it's a complete reimagining of development planning as a dynamic, data-driven, continuously evolving process.

8.38.2 What makes it revolutionary:

DRAFT

- **Real-time integration** with national data sources means situational analyses stay current, not frozen in time.
- **Seamless alignment** across spheres of government linking municipal priorities directly to provincial, national, and even international frameworks.
- **Structured, searchable intelligence** rather than 500-page PDF documents gathering dust.
- **Built-in compliance** with the Municipal Systems Act and performance management regulations

The Living IDP (Integrated Development Plan) Portal is currently under piloting with few identified municipalities, and this confirms the vision: **planning that breathes, adapts, and responds to changing realities.**

This is what **digital transformation** in local government actually looks like, not technology for technology's sake, but tools that fundamentally improve how Municipalities serve communities.

The Living IDP Portal is now live. **18 Selected municipalities** will be piloting the fully-digital portal to develop the 2026/27 Review of their IDPs, in preparation for a roll out to all municipalities for the next generation IDPs.

DRAFT

CHAPTER Nine - Municipal Transformation and Organisational Development Analysis

9.Human Resource (HR)

9.1 ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE

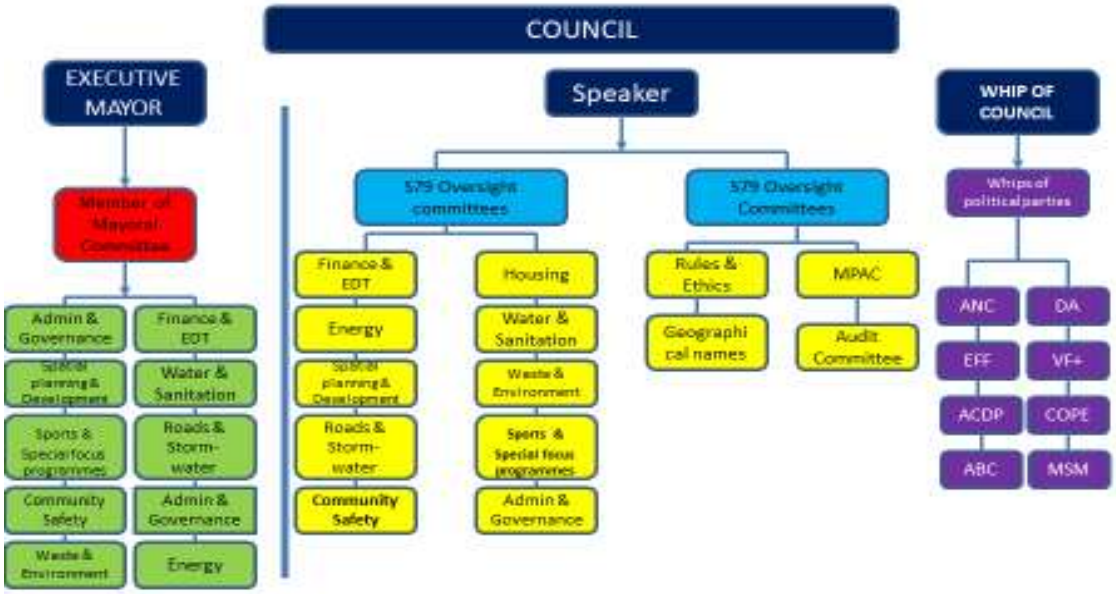
Municipalities are faced with increased scrutiny, budget constraints and pressure to improve services. Leaders are taking a hard look at Service Delivery as part of their strategic initiatives to modernize. Service delivery is carried out primarily through human capital. Polokwane municipality can only position itself to deliver effectively and efficiently from inside by attracting and keeping skilled workers and by also promoting itself as being a desirable place to relocate to or grow up and stay in. The ability to maintain skilled workers is accomplished by anticipating and accommodating new trends in service delivery, skills, local population, demographics and new economic opportunities.

The organizational structure is not simply an organization's chart. It is all people, positions procedures, processes, culture, technology, and related elements that make up the organization. It explains how all these pieces work together (or in some instances they don't work together). The structure must be aligned to the strategic objectives of the municipality in order to achieve the mission and goals of a Smart City. The structure must be totally aligned with strategy for the organization to achieve its mission and goals.
The governance model consists of the Legislative Authority (Speaker of Council, Chief Whip and Section 79 Portfolio and Standing Committees), the Executive Authority (Executive Mayor and Members of the Mayoral Committee (MMCs) as indicated below.

DRAFT

9.1.1 Political Governance Structure

POLITICAL GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE

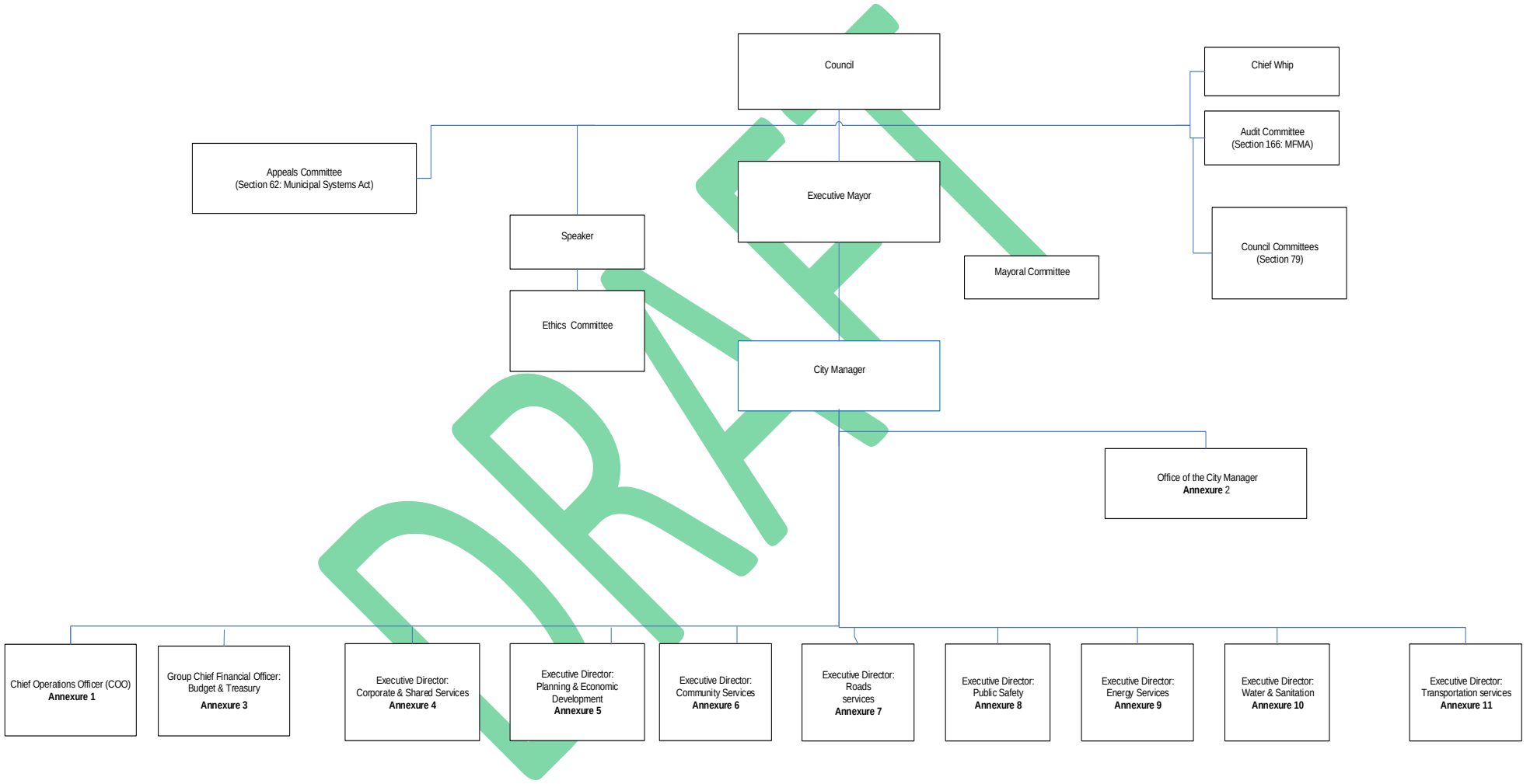


The organizational structure has **2746** positions. The structure is being implemented through a **phased in** approach in response to new developments.

9.2 ADMINISTRATIVE GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE

As approved by Council on **28 May 2026**

City Of Polokwane



DRAFT

9.2.1. Appointment of Senior Managers

There are **(11)** Senior Manager Positions on the City of Polokwane's Organogram

1. City Manager
2. Group Chief Financial Officer (GCFO)
3. Executive Director: Planning and Economic Development
4. Executive Director: Community Services
5. Executive Director: Transportation Services
6. Executive Director: Roads Services
7. Executive Director: Corporate and Shared Services
8. Executive Director: Water and Sanitation
9. Executive Director: Energy Services
10. Chief Operations Officer (COO)
11. **Executive Director: Public Safety**

9.2.2 New Senior Managers Positions on the organogram

It has been resolved that Executive Director: **Public Safety** position will only be filled when the City attains the **Metro status**. The functions of this Directorate are still rendered by Directorate Community Services, the Human Settlements Directorate functions are rendered by Planning and Economic Development.

9.2.3 Total number of positions in the structure per Directorate

Table 1: Total number of positions in the structure per Directorate

Job Level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	Total
Office of the City Manager	1	0	0	1	**0**	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3
Chief Operations Office	10	0	27	**2**	15	25	13	10	12	4	11	0	2	0	0	0	27	158
Budget and Treasury	6	0	15	8	5	21	4	13	63	45	9	1	4	0	0	0	3	197

Job Level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	Total
Corporate and Shared Services	5	0	15	19	23	10	7	13	31	4	21	**8**	5	0	0	0	71	232
Planning and Economic Development	6	0	12	8	12	24	8	16	16	3	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	108
Community Services	5	0	7	2	7	**16**	19	15	38	52	35	8	**5**	**1**	2	17	426	655
Public Safety	4	0	4	6	10	30	78	30	104	86	44	42	2	2	0	34	36	512
Transportation Services	3	0	3	1	0	4	0	4	3	8	4	0	0	2	0	0	1	33
Roads Services	2	0	3	3	3	3	4	1	8	11	6	13	1	0	0	0	77	135
Energy Services	2	0	4	6	3	10	11	22	42	20	3	0	2	0	0	0	81	206
Water and Sanitation	3	0	6	5	9	11	16	15	67	15	21	2	27	**0**	23	0	276	496
Total																		**2735**

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

The breakdown above excludes the 11 Senior Managers and the Deputy CFO appointed at job level 0.

The total staff complement based on the current organizational structure stands at **2050** with a **3,56%** turnover rate. Municipalities are highly regulated as such it's a challenge to retain or attract talent. It is a common occurrence that skilled employees will always look for greener pastures or leave for bigger cities due to the highly regulated salaries and wages.

DRAFT

A job evaluation process is underway led by SALGA (South African Local Government Association).

The process is meant to:

- Evaluate all new positions within Polokwane Municipality.
- Implement the results of the evaluation in line with the wage curve.

TABLE:2

Number of jobs on the structure	Number of jobs evaluated	Number of jobs submitted to Provincial Audit Committee
739	652	530

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.2.4 Positions and Budget Per Directorate

POSITIONS AND BUDGET PER DIRECTORATE

Directorate	Number of Positions as per Organogram	Positions Filled	Positions Vacant	Number of Budgeted vacancies	Non Budgeted vacancies	Salary Budget
City Manager 's Office	4	4	0	0	0	**R5 753 433**
Chief Operations Officer	151	112	39	39	0	**R130 690 312**
Budget & Treasury Office	198	155	43	43	0	**R138 707 148**
Corporate and Shared Services	233	159	74	74	0	**R140 995 494**
Planning & Economic Development	109	88	21	21	0	**R105 489 072**
Community Services	653	521	132	132	0	**R247 036 567**
Public Safety	479	364	115	115	0	**R333 045 853**

Directorate	Number of Positions as per Organogram	Positions Filled	Positions Vacant	Number of Budgeted vacancies	Non Budgeted vacancies	Salary Budget
Transportation Services	34	21	13	13	0	**R24 268 729**
Roads Services	135	118	17	17	0	**R59 638 183**
Energy Services	207	162	45	45	0	**R131 457 173**
Water and Sanitation	441	346	95	95		**R211 294 098**
GRAND TOTAL	**2644**	**2050**	**594**	**594**	**0**	**R1 528 376 061**

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.3 Skills Development and Training

Training presents a prime opportunity to expand the knowledge base of all employees. In some instances, many employers find training as an expensive opportunity; work time is consumed by training session. Despite this drawback, training and development provides both the municipality and the individual employee with benefits that may cost time; however, it is a worthwhile investment.

9.3.1 Addressing Weakness in workplace skills.

Most employees have some gaps in their skills. Training programmes allows for strengthening of those skills that each employee needs to improve. Development programmes bring all employees to a higher level, so they all have similar skills and knowledge. This helps reduce any weak links within the Municipality.

Improved Employee Performance

An employee who receives the necessary training can perform better his/her job. The training may also build the employee's confidence because she/he has a stronger understanding of the systems within the Municipality.

Consistency

A structured training and development program ensures that employees have a consistent experience and background knowledge. All employees need to be aware of the expectations and procedures within the Municipality.

Employee Satisfaction

Employees with access to training and development programs have the advantage over employees in other institutions that are left to seek out training opportunities on their own. The investment in training that an institution makes shows employees that they are valued. MSA 2000 S68 (1) requires municipalities to develop their human resource capacity to a level that enables them to perform their function and exercise their powers in an economical, effective, efficient an accountable way.

9.3.2 Skills Development Act (SDA)

The Skills Development Act (SDA) aims to provide an institutional framework to devise and implement national, sector and workplace strategies to develop and improve the skills of the South African workforce. Furthermore, it aims to provide the financing of skills development by means of a levy – financing scheme and a National Skills Fund.

The SDA also makes it a requirement for the Municipality to compile a Workplace Skills Plan and submit an Implementation Report to the relevant SETA. The Municipality always adheres to this requirement.

9.3.3 Learnership programmes

Polokwane Municipality has implemented following programmes for unemployed learners i.e.

TABLE 3: Learnership

Learnership	Number of Beneficiaries
Work Integrated Learning Learnerships Internships	**276**

Source: PLK Human Resource Development SBU

DRAFT

Polokwane Municipality has a total of 200 employees that meet the Municipal Regulations on Minimum Competencies, 2007.Section 14 (4) requires of municipalities to compile a report on compliance with prescribed competency levels. Polokwane Municipality will be enrolling 35 employees for MFMP for the 2026/2027 financial year.

9.3.4 Institutional Plan

Institutional Plan -The purpose of reviewing the Municipality's Organizational Structure and Service Delivery Model is to ensure that it reflects the Municipality's mandate and meets its obligations to its community.

In reviewing the structure, a holistically look at any pertinent changes that would be warranted to the current structure was taken cognizance of. The COGTA Guidelines on Staff Establishment, the Municipal staff regulations of 2021, as well as other relevant legislations were used as a process tool to make necessary amendments.

The review of the Organisational Structure reflects the alignment to the IDP and eventually saw the abolishment of redundant positions and additions of some that are deemed critical.

9.4 Employment Equity

Polokwane Municipality views employment equity as a strategic priority and it recognises it as an important measure against which a Smart City and a world class organisation is benchmarked. The creation of an equitable working environment, with the dignity of all employees respected and the diversity of employees valued and properly managed, as a solid base for longer-term growth and competitive advantage.

The transformation and the successful management of diversity will deliver a competitive advantage that will deliver a stronger, more cohesive, and more productive municipality. It contributes to greater employee satisfaction and commitment resulting in lower staff turnover and stronger customer and stakeholder orientation and satisfaction.

MSA 2000 S67 requires municipalities to develop and adopt appropriate systems and procedures to ensure fair; efficient; effective; and transparent personnel administration in accordance with the Employment Equity Act 1998. In implementing such the Municipality should be realistic for these programmes to be achievable. They should be based on accurate

DRAFT

information about race, gender and disability and reflect the demographics within Polokwane Municipality

9.4.1 Employment Equity Statistics - Polokwane Municipality

TABLE 4: Employment Equity Statistics - Polokwane Municipality

EMPLOYMENT EQUITY STATISTICS - 30 JUNE 2026										
Occupational Categories	Level	African		Coloured		Indian		White		Total
		FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	
Top Management	MM, GCFO & Directors	4	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	8
Senior Management	1-3	17	17	1	1	0	0	0	0	36
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
		26	39	0	0	2	1	2	2	71
Professionally Qualified	4	18	20	2	1	0	0	0	2	43
	5	26	21	0	1	0	0	0	2	50
	6	45	43	1	0	0	1	1	5	96
Skilled Technical	7	50	52	1	0	0	0	1	5	101
	8	74	75	1	0	0	0	2	6	158
	9	122	119	1	4	1	0	4	6	257
	10	80	128	0	2	0	1	2	3	216
	11	40	25	1	0	0	0	0	0	66
	12	12	22	1	0	0	0	0	0	35
Semi-Skilled	13	7	19	0	0	0	0	0	0	26
	14	4	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	6
	15	9	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	14
	16	10	29	0	1	0	0	0	0	40
Unskilled	17	327	495	3	4	0	0	1	1	831
Total		**870**	**1109**	**12**	**14**	**3**	**0**	**13**	**29**	**2050**

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

TABLE 5: Summary

Gender	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	National EAP	Provincial EAP	Polokwane

DRAFT

Females	870	12	3	13	**898**	55,2%	55,7%	**43,8%**
Males	1109	14	0	29	**1152**	44,8%	44,3%	**56,2%**
TOTAL					**2050**			

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.4.2 Summary of people with disabilities

TABLE 6: Summary of people with disabilities

SUMMARY OF PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES					
Gender	**African**	**Coloured**	**Indian**	**White**	**Total**
Females	8	1	0	3	**12**
Males	16	0	0	11	**27**
TOTAL					**39**
The total number of People with Disabilities constitutes 1.93% of the total workforce of 2023					

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.4.3 Equity Plan for Polokwane Municipality

The Municipality has an Equity Plan as required by the Act in place. Positive measures are being implemented within the Municipality to ensure that positive measures as set out the Municipality's goals and targets are realised. The Employment Equity is guided by the National and Provincial Economically Active Population (EAP) as well as time frames. The plan needs continuous Monitoring and Evaluation. Development of an effective communication strategy, Consultation, and participation by all stakeholders. Research to inform ongoing policy making and planning process. The demographics as per Economically Active Population for Polokwane stands at 43.00% for women and 57.00% for men. The disabled employees constitute 1.93% of the total workforce as contained the total workforce table five (5) above.

It should be noted that at top management level the municipality has implemented targets, and it follows the Equity plan. Challenges remain in the category of disabled persons and women**.** The solution to this is to:

- Implement targeted recruitment process (Targeting women and the disabled)

9.5 Job grade analysis

TABLE 6: Job Grade Analysis

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

JOB GRADE ANALYSIS - JUNE 2026

JOB GRADE ANALYSIS - 30 JUNE 2026									
	African		Coloured		Indian		White		Total
Level	FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	
1	17	20	1	1	0	0	0	0	39
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	32	44	0	0	2	1	2	1	82
4	15	20	2	1	0	0	0	2	40
5	25	24	0	1	0	0	0	2	52
6	57	53	1	0	0	1	1	5	118
7	49	53	1	0	0	0	2	3	108
8	76	78	1	0	0	0	2	6	163
9	124	116	1	4	1	0	3	6	255
10	103	131	0	1	0	1	2	3	241
11	40	26	1	0	0	0	0	0	67
12	12	26	1	0	0	0	0	0	39
13	6	18	0	0	0	0	0	0	24
14	3	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
15	8	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	13
16	10	29	0	1	0	0	0	0	40
17	338	410	3	3	0	0	0	1	755
CM, E/Dirs/ Deputy CFO/ COO & GCFO	5	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	9
Total	**920**	**1059**	**12**	**12**	**3**	**3**	**12**	**29**	**2050**

DRAFT

9.6 Vacancy and Turnover

The total staff complement based on the organizational structure stands at 2050 with a 3,56% turnover rate. The turnover is because of amongst others; the highly regulated environment, challenges of retaining skills because of rigid wage/salary grades. Eight (8) Sec 56/7 positions have been filled for the period in question and only three (3) positions are vacant due to turnover as well as new positions caused by the review of the organogram.

The staff turnover of 3,56% represents termination of 73 employees and the vacancy rate is at 22,47%. Council resolved to remove all unbudgeted positions on the Organizational Structure therefore all vacancies are budgeted for.

The turnover rate and the vacancy rate are based on the organizational structure which was approved with 2644 positions.

9.7 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH & SAFETY (OHS)

The aim of the OHS Act is to provide for the safety and health of employees at work and in connection with the use of plant and machinery. It further provides for the protection of people other than people at work from hazards arising out of or in connection with the activities from people at work.

The main objective of the Act could be described as a pro-active attempt by the employer to prevent and avoid work related injuries and illness. The Act governs the health and safety for the diverse industry of South Africa. It regulates and control health and safety in all organizations, from a normal office environment to more hazardous environments like industrial plants and construction sites this include the Polokwane Municipality.

Occupational Health and Safety is not only the responsibility of the unit but a function that is applicable at all Strategic Business Units. Occupational Health and Safety is about compliance issues that not only include the Occupational Health and Safety Act, but the compliance factor stretch over a variety of legislations including Mine Health and Safety, Railway Safety Regulator Act and Disaster Management Act.
New Regulations/Bill adopted in the Occupational Health and Safety Act are as follows:

The following notices were issued under the OHS ACT 85 0F 1993:

- Notice Issued on the OHS Act: Regulations: General Machinery comments invitations 22 August 2025.
- COID –Occupational Injuries and diseases in injuries Act Regulations: Inspections compliance and enforcement: Rehabilitation and Reintegrated and return to work :06 March 2026.
- COID-Draft regulations concerning certificate of competency :10 April 2026.
- COIDA: Letter of good standing validity and extension for ROE :30 April 2027

All injuries on duty incidents are reported to the Compensation Commissioner. This is done electronically to the Department of Labour. All serious injuries are investigated as stipulated in Sec 24 of the Occupational Health and Safety Act no 85 0f 1993. A total of 8 incident investigations were conducted, and 29 risk assessments were completed for discussions at

DRAFT

the relevant Strategic Business Units' Health and Safety Committees meetings. This process is a legislative requirement.

All construction projects are required to have site-specific health and safety specifications and a baseline risk assessment developed by the unit, which must be included in the tender. Once a contractor is appointed, the OHS Unit must approve the health and safety file prior commencement of any construction activities. During the reporting period, a total of 35 safety files were approved by the unit. for selected construction projects Health and Safety Consultants are appointed, and the management of these consultants remains the responsibility of this unit.

Occupational Health and Safety Unit conducted municipality-wide inspections ensure compliance with OHS Act and its Regulations. These inspections are ongoing and form part of day-to-day activities. during this period, a total of 08 on sites inspection checks were conducted.

9.7.1 OHS unit Challenges.

Challenges that the OHS unit encounters:

- Lack of training for OHS Officials to ensure that they are capacitated on new development and changes in the Occupational Health and Safety Act programmes.
- A proper electronic health and safety management system needs to be implemented. Late reporting of IOD by SBU's which results in non-compliance to the COIDA and may result in penalties.
- There is a need to capacitate Managers, Supervisors, and all employees on OHS training to ensure that there is a better understanding on compliance.
- Lack of proper scheduled maintenance programs that influence the health and safety of employees and public this include:
    - Fire alarms and smoke detection systems
    - Air conditioners
    - Falling structures/building
- Delayed procurement of PPE for EPWP Beneficiaries

TABLE 7: Injury on duty

Strategic Business Unit	Number of Injuries per SBU	Days lost
Waste Management	28	156

DRAFT

Strategic Business Unit	Number of Injuries per SBU	Days lost
Energy Services	11	123
Water Purification	20	130
Sports and Recreation	7	110
Roads and Transportation	18	83
Water and Sanitation	7	81
Environmental Management	41	182
Economic Development	1	7
Building Inspections	2	6
By-Law Enforcement	4	42
City Manager's Office	1	2
Seshego clusters	1	4
HRD	1	8
Revenue and customer care	1	8
Facility Management	2	5
TOTAL	**145**	**947**

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.8 Employee Relations

Employment relations are important and viewed as key in the creation of a successful organization, economic prosperity. Employment is viewed as a critical factor for the development of any organization.

The Local Labour Forum is important as a point of engagement with organized labour. The municipality has successfully trained the members of Local Labour Forum. Training of Line Managers on labour relations remains key to the management of relationship in the workplace. Training must not only be restricted to line managers, but worker representatives also form an important part in employee relations, and therefore any capacity building initiatives should include worker representatives.

Newly appointed employees are specifically workshopped/trained on the code of conduct in accordance with the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000.

The Municipality has low number of disciplinary hearings.

DRAFT

9.9 Employee Assistance Programme (EAP)

Employee Assistance Programme is important in any organization as it deals with the wellbeing of employees. EAP offers services that address personal, family problems and work-related problems. The range of psycho-social challenges that they assist with includes ill-health, poor productivity, personal finance management, emotional instability, stress and depression management, trauma, grieve and various addictions amongst others. Services are offered internally (to employees and management) and externally (to employees and their immediate families).

Employees often encounter challenges as they interact with their counterparts daily both in the workplace and outside. Some of employees who seek assistance are affected by poor working relations, lack of resources, unproductive communication channels and relations with superiors.

It would be in the best interest of the Employer and Employees to have regular team cohesion sessions, attend health proactive programme, self enhancement activities, as this will result in energised, goal orientated employees who are set to meet the objectives of the organization, resulting in return on investment for the employer.

EAP also incorporates proactive wellness programmes. It is very imperative for employees to be empowered on wellness issues, so that they can be informed and always be in the know of new medical developments or research findings which could promote healthy lifestyles. Proactive Information sharing sessions are conducted on issues such as cancer, substance abuse, HIV & AIDS, stress management, healthy lifestyle, work-life balance and so forth. Health screenings are also done quarterly to conscientize about their health status and make it part of one's lifestyle to undergo regular medical check-ups. These health screenings also help with early detection of health concerns. There is a need for employees to take proper care of their health and to participate in wellness programmes.

The Employee Assistance Programme has established good working relations with stakeholders such as Old Mutual and Sanlam who are rendering financial wellness to our employees freely.

DRAFT

This will go a long way in reducing the financial burden that they are subjected to which has resulted in several workplace challenges such as absenteeism, stress, poor productivity, and high turnover of resignation due to debts.

The impact of mental health should also be promoted and not be overlooked across the workplace. The EAP unit will continue to explore how they can support employees' emotional wellbeing. The municipality has seen an increase in several cases related to mental health mostly being men seeking intervention and support.

The functionality of the Peer Educators programme within the workplace – this has prompted a positive outlook on the EAP activities such as wellness champions and promotion of healthy living, as by virtue of having support system in a form of health champion or an enabler it makes things easier for those who need support and knowledge. The availability of Peer Educators within all the Directorates and Clusters have created a pathway for promotion of EAP services and increased utilization.

The promotion and establishment of effective workplace Men's forums, with the overall aim of empowering male employees on ways of overcoming social ills, understanding and promotion of eradication of gender-based violence. Creating and promoting positive role models for younger men, see women as their social partner/equal. This will go a long way in building a better society and creating a conducive psychosocial environment for all to live in.

The number of proactive programmes initiated had been with the purpose of empowering employees on social related skills which would contribute positively towards impactful decision making. There has also been a significant increase on the number of employees seeking rehabilitative interventions related to substance abuse.

EAP related challenges:

- Staff compliment is not adequate to ensure effective psychosocial support services to employees proactively.
- Lack of contracted services to assist with the provision of EAP related services to employees (Psychologist, psychiatrist, Occupational Therapist, and rehabilitations centers)

DRAFT

9.10 Recruitment

Municipalities are at the coalface of service delivery. The challenges of transformation places municipalities in the centre of the job markets where competition is high. To survive and deliver services municipalities must ensure that they attract and retain talent.

To make smart hiring for top talent the municipality has approved a recruitment policy as well as a scarce skill policy. After all, an institution's productivity and profitability depend on the quality of its workers. The policies, considers a mix of factors, including credentials, work experience, personality, and skills.

Challenges of a highly regulated bargained environment persist although as an institution we have policies in place to attract and retain talent.

The municipality has just reviewed the Recruitment Policy to align it with new ways of recruitment in line with the new Regulations for Staff. The turnover rate has improved from 4.26% to 3.56% which is 16.4% staff turnover decrease; it is attributed to the high unemployment rate as employees turn to stay longer except in the high-skill category.

9.10.1 External Bursary Opportunities

Each year the City of Polokwane invites Students to apply for the External Bursary programme. Bursaries are awarded to **students residing within the Polokwane Municipal area,** for studies towards a **first Degree or National Diploma in ANY field.**

Applicants must satisfy the following minimum entry criteria before applying:

- Must be a South African citizen.
- Must permanently reside within the Polokwane Municipality, in Limpopo province.
- Must be currently in Matric or have completed Matric.
- Must be studying or intend on studying towards your first Degree or National Diploma qualification, (i.e. must NOT have studied another qualification at the same level).
- Must be studying or intend on studying at a public University, University of Technology or TVET College in South Africa.
- Must NOT be in receipt of any other bursary funding.
- Must be from a disadvantaged background.
- Students with disabilities who meet all the requirements, are encouraged to apply

The City has awarded 40 Bursaries to external students who meet the above criteria in 2026.

DRAFT

9.11 Fleet Management Services

Fleet Management Services main function is to provide fleet management support to the municipality. The sub functions are including fleet administration, selection and procurement, risk management and disposal. The sub functions are listed as follow:

1. Fleet needs analysis and acquisition
2. Fleet Administration
    - Registration and license renewals
    - Vehicle inspection, maintenance and availability
    - Management and monitoring of vehicle utilization, tracking and fuel.
    - Driver behavior assessment and training
    - Compliance with NRTA, AARTO (traffic fine management) and OHSA
3. Fleet risk management
4. Fleet disposal

9.11.1 Number of Fleet

the City of Polokwane has an overall of **600** units consisting of a mixed fleet of self-propelled and non-self-propelled.

1. Council Fleet **= 375**
2. Leased through Fleet Africa **=225**

9.11.2 Municipal fleet status quo

Ownership	TOTAL FLEET	OPERATIONAL	NON-OPERATIONAL	WITHDRAWN
Council Fleet	375	338	37	
Leased Fleet Africa Fleet	225	165	42	18
TOTAL	**600**	**503**	**79**	**18**

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

DRAFT

9.11.3 Procurement of Mixed Fleet units

Council approved the outright procurement of mixed fleet units, and an amount of R61,591,997.00 (VAT INCL) were allocated for the procurement of mixed fleet units.

9.11.4 Fleet Management Sourcing Strategy

In terms of the Fleet Management Sourcing Strategy a number of sourcing methods to procure and replace fleet units were identified. A **hybrid model** including outright purchase of fleet units, outsourcing of waste compactors. To improve on efficiency of our business processes, a fleet support company was appointed to manage fleet administration including licensing, traffic fines, tracking, utilization and driver behaviour, risk management and as well as maintenance and availability. Standard Bank was appointed for fuel management.

9.11.5 Challenges Within the Fleet SBU

High maintenance costs

The biggest driver of this maintenance cost is due to old fleet units that were procured without maintenance/ warrantee/ and service plan. Driver behaviour also a mayor contributing factor to high maintenance costs.

Utilization and fuel management

Vehicle log sheet and fuel slips are not submitted timeously as per the fleet policy by some SBUs.

Driver behaviour and negligence

Accidents/Incidents that results in vehicles been written off before their expected vehicle life cycle.

9.11.6 Interventions and control measures

1) Engagements with other SBUs with regards to institutional fleet needs analysis.
2) Submission of monthly vehicle utilisation and fuel reports to SBUs.
3) Newly procured vehicles will include service/maintenance plan or warranty.

DRAFT

4) Continuous monitoring of drivers/operators by Supervisors/Managers in various user departments. (Tracking system in place)

5) Supervisors and managers to take responsibility on all tools of trade allocated to the SBU.

9.11.7 New Graders Fleet Procured

New Graders Fleet procured

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

9.11.8 Unveiling of New Graders and compactor waste truck by Executive Mayor at (Ext 44 Greenside (Ward 08)

Unveiling of New Graders and compactor waste truck by Executive Mayor at (Ext 44 Greenside (Ward 08)

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

9.11.9Compactor Waste truck and 15 Seater Mini Bus

Compactor Waste truck and 15 Seater Mini Bus

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

9.11.10 Bakkie for Water and Sanitation and 16 & 22 Seater Busses for Fleet Management services

Bakkie for Water and Sanitation and 16 & 22 Seater Busses for Fleet Management services

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

9.11.12 Compactor waste and Roll-on Roll-off (Hooklift) truck for Waste Management and Cherry picker for Energy Services

DRAFT

Compactor waste and Roll-on Roll-off (Hooklift) truck for Waste Management and Cherry picker for Energy Services

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

9.11.13 Front End loader for Waste Management and Grader for Roads and Storm water

Front End loader for Waste Management and Grader for Roads and Storm water

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

9.11.14 New Fleet Launched on 16 July 2025 by Executive Mayor

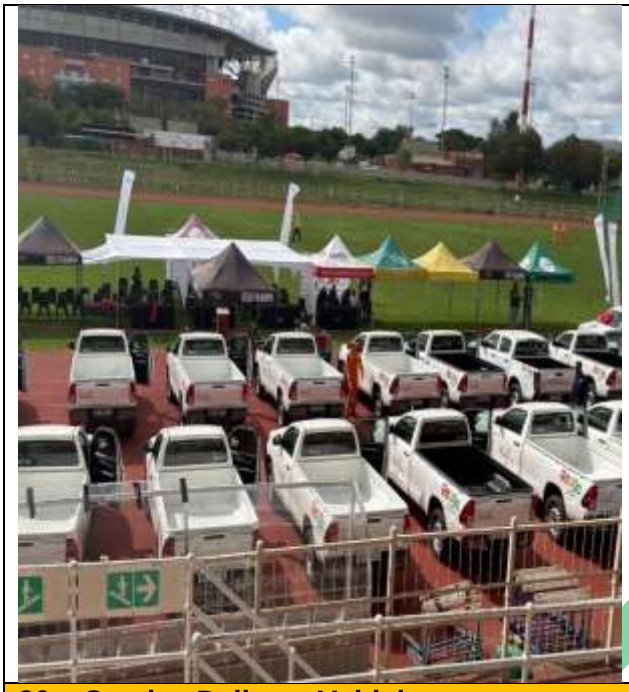
New Fleet Launched on 16 July 2025 by Executive Mayor

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

9.11.15 30 x Service Delivery Vehicles Hand over by E.M on 25 March 2026

2025/26 Financial Year

2025/26 Financial Year	
30 x Service Delivery Vehicles Hand over by E.M on 25 March 2026	
30 x Service Delivery Vehicles	



30 x Service Delivery Vehicles

30 x Service Delivery Vehicles

9.11.16 14 x traffic Vehicles and 2 x fire Trucks)

14 x traffic Vehicles and 2x fire Trucks) Hand over by E.M

New Fire and Disaster Trucks x 2

New Traffic Vehicles x14

New Traffic Vehicles x14

New Traffic Vehicles x14

Hand over by E.M -14 x traffic Vehicles and 2x fire Trucks)

9.11.17 22 Wheeler truck, two tractors and three double cab bakkies) -11 August 2026

2026/27 Procured Fleet (22 Wheeler truck, and Two tractors)

Three double cab bakkies

Fleet Hand over by E.M on 11 August 2026

2026/27 Procured Fleet (22 Wheeler truck, two tractors and three double cab bakkies)

DRAFT

9.12 Information Communication and Technology (ICT)

The Information and Communication Technology (ICT) Services Unit plays a critical role in enabling the municipality to deliver efficient, effective, and citizen-centric services. ICT provides the technological infrastructure, systems, applications, and support services necessary to facilitate municipal operations, improve service delivery, enhance governance, and promote digital transformation.

During the reporting period, ICT Services continued to support the municipality's strategic mandate through the provision of reliable network infrastructure, business applications, cybersecurity controls, user support services, data management, and digital communication platforms. The unit remained focused on ensuring business continuity, improving operational efficiency, and strengthening information security while enabling departments to leverage technology in achieving their service delivery objectives.

ICT Services supports all municipal departments by maintaining the availability, integrity, and confidentiality of information assets, while driving innovation and modernization initiatives aligned with legislative requirements and industry best practices. Through ongoing investment in technology and capacity building, the municipality seeks to create a resilient and sustainable digital environment that supports economic development, transparency, accountability, and responsive governance.

ICT Strategic Objectives

The municipality adopted the following key ICT strategic objectives:

1. **Strengthen ICT Governance and Compliance**
    - Ensure compliance with relevant legislation, regulations, and governance frameworks.
    - Enhance ICT policies, standards, and risk management practices.
    - Promote accountability and effective ICT decision-making.
    -
2. **Improve ICT Infrastructure and Service Availability**
    - Modernize network infrastructure and communication systems.
    - Improve system reliability, performance, and business continuity.
    - Reduce downtime through proactive maintenance and monitoring.
    -
3. **Enhance Cybersecurity and Information Protection**
    - Strengthen cybersecurity controls and threat management capabilities.
    - Protect municipal information assets against cyber risks.
    - Promote user awareness and compliance with security policies.
    -
4. **Support Digital Transformation and Innovation**
    - Implement digital solutions that improve operational efficiency.
    - Automate business processes and reduce reliance on manual systems.
    - Leverage emerging technologies to enhance service delivery.
    -
5. **Improve Customer and User Satisfaction**
    - Provide responsive ICT support services.
    - Improve service desk performance and issue resolution times.
    - Enhance user experience through continuous improvement initiatives.
    -
6. **Develop ICT Skills and Capacity**
    - Promote employee digital literacy and technology adoption.
    - Strengthen internal ICT capabilities through training and development.
    - Foster a culture of innovation and continuous learning.

Strategic Alignment

ICT strategic objectives are aligned to municipal strategic priorities as follows:

Municipal Strategic Priority	ICT Strategic Contribution
Good Governance and Public Participation	Strengthening ICT governance, compliance, transparency, and reporting capabilities.
Financial Sustainability	Optimizing ICT investments, improving operational efficiencies, and reducing technology-related risks.
Institutional Development and Transformation	Enabling digital transformation, process automation, and workforce modernization.

DRAFT

Municipal Strategic Priority	ICT Strategic Contribution
Basic Service Delivery	Supporting critical municipal systems that facilitate efficient service delivery to communities.
Economic Development	Providing reliable technology infrastructure that supports investment, innovation, and economic growth.
Risk Management and Business Continuity	Enhancing cybersecurity, disaster recovery, and information protection measures.

9.12.1 ICT - SMART City Concept

The Municipality's Smart City Concept is aimed at transforming service delivery through the strategic use of Information and Communication Technology (ICT) to create a connected, efficient, and citizen-centric environment. The municipality has adopted the 2030 Smart City Vision as a way of fast-tracking service delivery to the community and improve Citizens engagement through the implementation of smart technologies. Consistent with the 2030 Smart City Vision, the city launched six pillars that will assist the municipality to work towards the realization of becoming a Smart City; this will be the city that is characterized by a Smart Economy, Smart Environment, Smart Governance, Smart Living, Smart Mobility and Smart People. This Smart City concept is carried within the city's vision to be the "The ultimate in innovation and sustainable development".

All six of the aforementioned elements of a smart city can increasingly become more achievable and manageable by being connected through the use of ICT and developing technological systems. Additionally, by promoting the adoption of e-Governance solutions, the municipality can reduce manual processes, improve operational efficiency, and provide residents with convenient access to services anytime and anywhere.

9.12.2 ICT Governance

The ICT Steering Committee serves as the primary governance structure responsible for providing strategic direction, oversight, and decision-making regarding ICT initiatives within the municipality. The committee ensures that ICT investments and projects are aligned with municipal priorities and deliver value to the organization and community. The committee is mandated to provide the following:

-
- Provide strategic oversight of ICT programmes and projects.
- Ensure alignment between ICT initiatives and municipal objectives.
- Review and prioritize ICT investment proposals.
- Monitor ICT performance, risks, and compliance requirements.
- Promote effective utilization of ICT resources across the municipality.
- Support digital transformation and innovation initiatives.

During the reporting year, the ICT Steering Committee convened scheduled meetings to review ICT operational performance, strategic initiatives, infrastructure modernization projects, cybersecurity risks, and digital transformation programmes. The committee provided guidance on priority ICT investments, monitored project implementation progress, and facilitated collaboration between business units and ICT Services.
The committee also played a key role in strengthening ICT governance by ensuring that technology initiatives remained aligned with municipal strategic objectives, budget priorities, and regulatory requirements. Through its oversight and leadership, the committee contributed to improved accountability, risk management, and value realization from ICT investments.

9.12.3 ICT Strategic Achievements

The City recognises the transformation of ICT in enhancing the quality of life of citizens, improving operational efficiency and driving economic growth. The ICT SBU aims to ensure that the Information and Communication Technology assets are operational and deliver the required performance on a daily basis in order to provide an enabling environment that allows business functions to operate. The below figure shows the strategic objectives alignment to ICT strategic objectives.

Municipal Strategic Objective	ICT Strategic Objective	Achievements During Reporting Period
Improve Service Delivery	Provide integrated ICT solutions	MyPolokwane Citizen App, Automated Recruitment System, Automated Proof of Residence System
Improve Operational Efficiency	Digitise and automate municipal processes	Mobile Employee Self-Service, Workflow Automation
Improve Citizen Engagement	Expand digital service channels	MyPolokwane Citizen App implementation
Strengthen Governance	Implement ICT Governance Framework	CGICTPF implementation and ICT Steering Committee oversight
Modernise Infrastructure	Enhance ICT infrastructure and connectivity	SD-WAN implementation, VoIP deployment, replacement of 28 network switches
Promote Digital Inclusion	Improve access to ICT services	Community Wi-Fi at six municipal libraries
Enhance Information Security	Secure municipal ICT environment	Network modernisation and security enhancements

DRAFT

9.12.4 Comment on the Performance of ICT Services Overall

ICT implemented innovative solutions to improve governance and IT services that assist the municipality to enhance service delivery and support organisational objectives. These innovations are summarised as follows

KPI	Baseline 2024/25	Current Status 2025/26	Future Target – 2026/27
Municipal Systems Availability	95%	Achieved	≥99%
Network Availability	95%	Improved through SD-WAN	≥99%
Citizen Digital Services Available	Limited	MyPolokwane Citizen App Implemented	Expanded Service Catalogue
Recruitment Applications Processed Online	Manual Process	Fully Automated	100% Online
Proof of Residence Requests Processed Online	Manual Process	Automated	Increased Adoption
Municipal Libraries with Community Wi-Fi	2	6 Libraries	Expand to Additional community facilities
Employee Self-Service Adoption	Limited	Implemented	Organisation-wide Adoption
ICT Governance Compliance	Developing	CGICTPF Implemented	Adopt King V into the framework

DRAFT

9.13Key highlights of service delivery innovations

9.13.1 MyPolokwane Citizen App

The implementation of the MyPolokwane Citizen App represents a significant milestone in the municipality's digital transformation journey. The application provides residents with a centralised digital platform through which they can access municipal information, report service delivery issues, submit requests, monitor progress, and receive updates electronically

additionally. The platform improves accountability, transparency, and responsiveness by enabling the municipality to track and measure service delivery performance in real time.

9.13.2 SD-WAN Connectivity Enhancement

The municipality implemented a Software Defined Wide Area Network (SD-WAN) solution to modernise connectivity between municipal offices and service points. The solution intelligently manages network traffic, automatically redirects data when outages occur, and provides improved application performance for critical municipal systems. This has resulted in improved reliability, reduced downtime, enhanced security, and better user experience for municipal employees and citizens accessing digital services.

9.13.3 Community Wi-Fi and Digital Inclusion

Community Wi-Fi was successfully implemented at six municipal libraries to support digital inclusion and community development. The initiative provides residents with internet access for education, research, employment opportunities, e-government services, business development, and digital skills enhancement. The programme contributes to bridging the digital divide and transforms libraries into community digital hubs that promote social and economic development.

9.14 ICT Challenges and Interventions

CHALLENGES	INTERVENTIONS
Limited ICT Budget	Prioritise Critical Projects, optimize Licensing and explore cost effective solution
Fragmented Legacy system Limited Integration	Implement integrated Project Management solution for effective planning and budgeting and eliminate legacy system fragmentation and manual reconciliations
ICT equipment Theft	Strengthen access control and surveillance systems
Automation of services Manual or poor physical community engagement platform	Implement online booking solution. Automate document work flow
Cyber Security Threats	Conduct Vulnerability Test and Simulation Attacks

DRAFT

CHALLENGES	INTERVENTIONS
Increased Cyber Security and data privacy threats	Implement Cyber Security Policies Continuous Cyber security awareness programs Implement multi factor Authentication and regular security Audits

9.14.1 Network Upgrade (Cluster Offices)

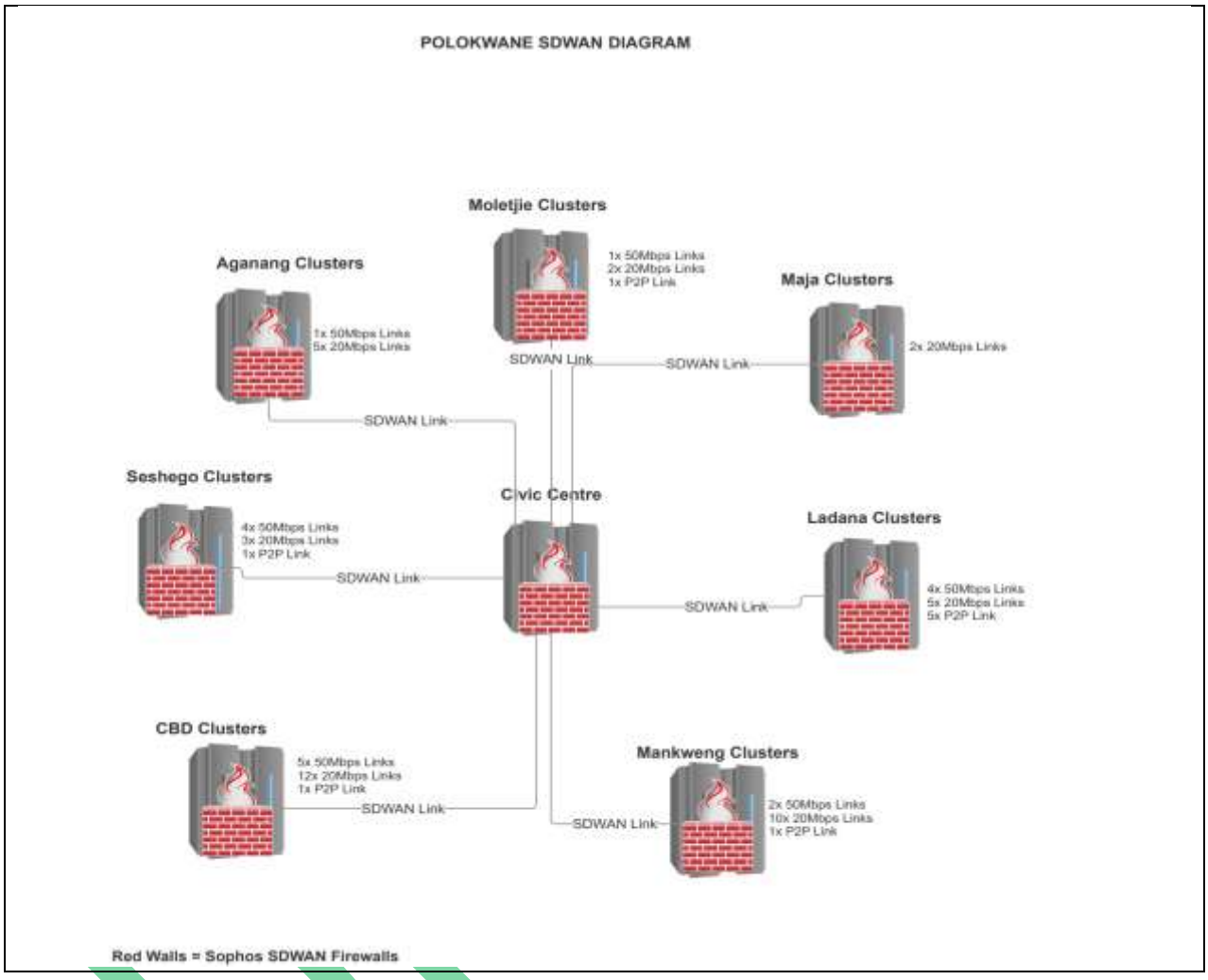
Management has made significant investments in modernizing the City's network infrastructure through the continued utilization of the SD-WAN and VoIP telephony solutions across all cluster offices. These solutions provide a secure, reliable, and resilient communications platform that enables seamless connectivity between municipal facilities and supports the efficient delivery of services.

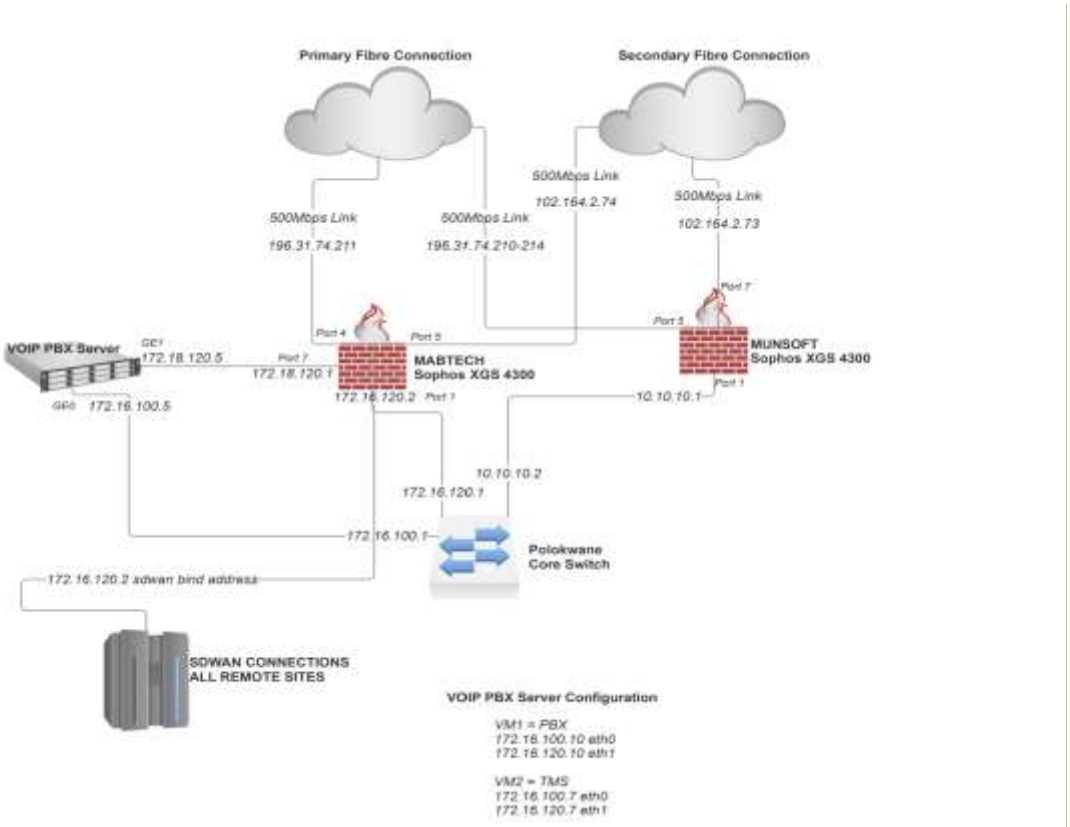
Key features of the SD-WAN solution include encrypted communications, secure network segmentation, centralized network management, application-aware traffic optimization, and real-time network monitoring, while the VoIP platform delivers cost-effective and efficient voice communication across the municipality.

Together, these technologies enhance network performance, strengthen cybersecurity, improve collaboration, and support business continuity. As a result, the City is better positioned to deliver responsive, efficient, and citizen-centric services that improve overall customer experience and satisfaction. The high-level network diagram below illustrates the current network architecture supporting these services. Below is the high level network diagram:

DRAFT

9.14.2 Polokwane SDWAN Connectivity





Source: PLK ICT SBU

9.15 ICT (Telephone Systems)

The City embarked on implementation of Voice Over IP (VOIP) telephone system. VoIP (Voice over Internet Protocol) telephone systems use internet connectivity to make and receive phone calls. Implementing VoIP in an organization can bring numerous benefits, including cost savings, increased flexibility, and improved communication. The solution is implemented in all cluster offices

9.15.1 City of Polokwane Call Centre

Service Challenges Report Line -The Municipality has implemented a **queuing system** with a voice prompt listing different services for callers to select from. The queuing system is applicable on the Municipality main line telephone numbers: **015 290 2000 and 015 023 5000.**

9.16 Citizen Engagement portal

The City has successfully implemented Phases 1 to 4 of the My Polokwane Citizen App as part of its digital transformation and Smart City objective. This initiative was introduced to

address challenges associated with the Municipality's reliance on multiple and fragmented service delivery reporting channels, including telephone calls, emails, WhatsApp messages, and physical visits to municipal offices. These channels limited the Municipality's ability to effectively track, monitor, and measure service delivery performance, resulting in inefficiencies, duplication of effort, and limited visibility into the resolution of citizen complaints and service requests.

The My Polokwane Citizen App provides a centralized and integrated digital platform that enables residents to access municipal services through a single point of engagement. Citizens can report service delivery issues, log service requests, track the progress of reported incidents, receive notifications, and access important municipal information in real time. In addition to traditional service requests, the platform has been expanded to include key municipal functions such as By-law Enforcement, Traffic Management Services, CCTV-related reporting and monitoring, Fleet Management services, and integration with the AFLA system, thereby strengthening service coordination and operational efficiency across municipal departments.

The Municipality is also in the final stages of integrating the application with the Munsoft financial system, which will provide citizens with convenient access to municipal account information and enable the electronic payment of municipal services through the platform. This integration will further enhance customer convenience, improve revenue collection processes, and promote digital service adoption. Overall, the My Polokwane Citizen App has significantly improved citizen engagement, transparency, and accountability by providing a measurable and auditable service delivery platform. The application is helping the City build a more responsive, efficient, and citizen-centric municipality while supporting data-driven decision-making and improved service delivery outcomes.

9.17 Record Management

Records management is crucial for organizations to maintain accurate and reliable records, ensure compliance with regulations, and support informed decision-making.

9.17.1 Record Management Objectives

- **Compliance**: Ensure compliance with laws, regulations, and standards related to records management.
- **Accountability:** Maintain accurate and reliable records to demonstrate accountability and transparency.
- **Risk Management:** Identify and mitigate risks associated with records management, such as data breaches or loss of critical information.
- **Efficient Records Management:** To keep all Records and perform the general administration of Council, Mayoral Committee and all other Committees established by Council and ensure that records are organized, easily accessible, and retrievable.
- **Automation**: Implement Electronic Records Management

DRAFT

9.17.2 Challenges/Constraints for Record Management

a) Lack of a storage facility that comply with Records Management Best Practises.
b) Decentralized records keeping.
c) Automation of workflow to reduce manual records
d) Lack of submission of record to records management SBU.

Solutions:

a) Continuous record management awareness, roadshow and induction.
b) Implement automated records workflow
c) Request HR training division to cover Record Management as part of induction package for new employees.
d) Centralization of records keeping and provision of a facility that comply with Records Management Best Practises.
e) Provide training and support to personnel on records management procedures and best practices.
f) Monitor and Review: Regularly monitor and review records management procedures to ensure they are effective and compliant.

9.18. CYBER SECURITY AWARENESS

The Municipality continues to prioritize cybersecurity awareness as a critical component of its ICT Governance and Information Security Programme. With the increasing reliance on digital technologies, online services, cloud-based applications, and interconnected municipal systems, cyber threats remain a significant risk to municipal operations, service delivery, and the protection of sensitive information. To address these risks, the ICT SBU conducted ongoing Cyber Security Awareness sessions aimed at educating employees on cyber threats, safe digital practices, and their role in safeguarding municipal information assets.

During the reporting period, awareness initiatives focused on key cybersecurity topics, including phishing attacks, password security, email security, ransomware, social engineering, data protection, safe internet usage, and compliance with information security policies. These sessions sought to strengthen employees' ability to identify and respond to potential cyber threats while promoting a culture of cybersecurity awareness across the Municipality. Awareness material was distributed through workshops, presentations, emails, and other internal communication channels to ensure broad participation and continuous reinforcement of cybersecurity best practices.

The cybersecurity awareness programme has contributed to improved staff awareness of information security risks and strengthened the Municipality's cyber resilience. However, cybersecurity remains an evolving challenge that requires continuous education, monitoring, and vigilance. The ICT SBU will continue to implement regular awareness campaigns, targeted training interventions, and cybersecurity best practice initiatives to ensure that employees remain informed about emerging threats and contribute to the protection of the City's information systems, digital services, and critical infrastructure.

DRAFT

The ICT SBU plays a strategic role in protecting the Municipality's information systems, networks, digital services, and data from cyber threats through the implementation and management of key cybersecurity controls. These include security patch management, firewall administration, anti-malware protection, user access control monitoring, data backup management, email and internet content filtering, disaster recovery and restoration testing, cyber security simulation exercises, and regular cybersecurity awareness training for all employees.

The Unit is also responsible for managing ICT-related risks, conducting vulnerability assessments, and ensuring the timely recovery of systems following cyber incidents. Through these initiatives, ICT continues to strengthen the Municipality's cyber resilience, safeguard critical information assets, and support secure, reliable, and uninterrupted service delivery.

9.19 Facilities Management

The Municipality has established the SBU to assist in maintaining and up keeping of municipal buildings. The SBU is responsible for routine maintenance over **110 municipal facilities**. The objective of the SBU is to maintain municipal facilities in accordance with SANS 10400:1990, SABS Standard Act: 2008 and the Occupational Health and Safety Act Regulations Act 85/1993 and Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act 2010 (Act 2 of 2010) (SASREA) in order to provide a conducive environment to the employees and the community at large, utilising or visiting the Municipal offices.

9.19.1 List of Municipal Facilities in all Clusters

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
POLOKWANE CBD		
1.	Civic Centre	Landros mare str
2.	Council Chamber	Church str
3.	Fire Brigade old Airport	Silicon road
4.	Game Reserve	Silicon road
5.	Environment	Webster street
6.	Environmental storeroom	Webster street
7.	Transfer Site	Webster street
8.	Library Gardens	Jorrison str
9.	Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre	Bus Terminals
10.	Main Transfer Site	Silicon road
11.	Bird Sanctuary	Emdo

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
12.	Museum (Irish House)	Thabo Mbeki str
13.	Bakone Malapa	R52
14.	Art Museum	Jorrison str
15.	Art Museum Storeroom	Biccard Str
16.	Town Pool	Thabo Mbeki str
17.	Visitors Information Centre	Church str
18.	Aids Centre	Magazane str
19.	Water Purification	Dalmada
20.	Recreation centre	Burger str
21.	Cricket club	Suid str
22.	Netball courts	Burger str
23.	Old Peter Mokaba Stadium	Dorp Str
24.	New Peter Mokaba Stadium	Magazyn Street
25.	Show ground	N1
26.	Sports and recreation offices	Burger str
27.	Jack Botes Hall	Church str
28.	Huge Hauston Museum	Landros Maré str
29.	Public toilets x 20	Town
30.	Tennis court	Compensatie str
31.	Cooking Facilities	Church str
32.	Cemetery	Dahl str
33.	Cemetery	Church str
34.	African Market	Market Street
35.	Substations x 15	
36.	Capricorn Flying Club	26 Pierre Street, Bendor
LADANNA; WESTENBURG AND NIRVANA		
37.	Hostel Ladanna	Asbes Str
38.	Westenburg Library	Buys str
39.	Hostel Matlala Road	Matlala Road
40.	Nirvana Library	Tagore str
41.	Water and Sanitation	Vermikuliet str
42.	Sewer Purification	Asbes str
43.	Electrical workshop	Vermikuliet str

DRAFT

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
44.	Mechanical workshop	Vermikuliet str
45.	Roads & Storm water workshop	Vermikuliet str
46.	Nursery	Asbes Str
47.	Waste offices	Vermikuliet str
48.	Nirvana Hall	Tagore str
49.	Westenburg Hall	Buys str
50.	Fire Brigade Ladanna	Vermikuliet str
51.	Nirvana stadium	Himalaya Ave
52.	Nirvana sports facilities	Himalaya Ave
53.	Westenburg sports facilities	Tagore str
54.	Nirvana Cricket grounds	Himalaya Ave
55.	Traffic Station	Ladanna
56.	Nirvana swimming pools	Orient Dr
57.	Swimming pool	Tagore str
58.	Mayor Guest House	Soetdoring
59.	Transfer site	Vermikuliet str
60.	Stores	Vermikuliet str
61.	Public toilets x2	Ladanna and Nirvana
62.	Substations x 8	
SESHEGO CLUSTER		
63.	Offices	Zone 1 Chris Hani Dr
64.	Offices	Zone 3 Kwena str
65.	Offices	Zone 8
66.	Water Purification	Zone 4
67.	Waste Purification	Zone 6
68.	Seshego Library	Zone 2
69.	Environment Deport	Zone 3
70.	Ngoako Ramahlodi Sports Complex	Zone 7
71.	Seshego stadium	Zone 1
72.	Seshego sports complex	Zone 1
73.	Seshego sports fields	Zone 6
74.	Public toilets	Zone 2 & 4
75.	Environmental depot	Zone 8

DRAFT

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
76.	Substations x 3	
77.	Mashinini Pump Station	
MANKWENG, SEBAYENG/ DIKGALE CLUSTER		
78.	Sewer Purification	Nchichane
79.	Offices	Zone A
80.	Offices	Zone C
81.	Offices	Sebayeng
82.	Traffic	Zone B
83.	Fire Station Offices	Zone A
84.	Transfer station	Nchichane
85.	Taxi Rank	Zone A
86.	Community Hall	Zone A
87.	Public toilet University Hawkers Centre	Gate 2
88.	Transfer station	Dikgale
89.	Transfer station	Makotopong
90.	Public toilet Hospital Hawkers Centre	Hospital
MOLETJIE CLUSTER		
91.	Library	Moletjie
92.	Offices	Moletjie
93.	Water Purification	Ramakgapula
94.	Ga-Manamela Stadium	Ga Manamela
95.	Transfer station	Vaalkop
96.	Transfer station	Makgakga
MOLEPO/CHUENE /MAJA CLUSTER		
97.	Office	Maja
98.	Water Treatment Plant	Ga- Chuene
99.	Sports complex	Molepo
100.	Sports complex	Maja
101.	Library	Molepo
AGANANG CLUSTER		
102.	Office	Aganang
103.	Hall	Aganang
104.	Traffic and Licensing	Aganang

DRAFT

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
105.	Ipopeng Parliament Democracy Office	Matlala
106.	Ward office	Mashashane
107.	Stadium	Mohlonong
108.	Stadium	Tibane
109.	Jupiter Hall	Mashashane
110.	Landfill site	Aganang
111.	Nobel Hawkers Centre	Nobel

Source: PLK Facilities Management SBU

9.19.2 Procedure Manual

The following procedures for maintenance services are in place when maintenance complains, or request have been received at the Facility Management Unit:

1. Every maintenance service request forwarded by a client through emails/WhatsApp's/SMSs/telephone calls to the office of Facility Management SBU shall be recorded.
2. Once the request has been received a job card will be opened and the client shall receive a reference number for which will be considered as reference for the work/call until the work is finalized and closed.
3. Maintenance team shall be dispatched to the site to attend to the request.
   At the closure of each request the client shall sign off on the job card which was opened at the beginning of the request.
4. Should the extent the works require the services of external service provider, the client will be informed of such.
5. The SBU obtain the greatest effectiveness from the work order system, work requests and activities performed by maintenance staff are recorded on work orders.

Work orders contain, at a minimum, the following information:

(i) Work order number

DRAFT

(ii) Location of work

(iii) Client Details (Contacts, Building Name, Physical Address, SBU and Dates)

(iv) Official Details (Supervisor, Technician assigned, Assigned Date, and Signatures)

(vi) Description of work requested or to be executed

(vii) Job Inspection

9.19.3 Priority of work and response times

Priority of work is taken up in three stages:

(i) High priority: where maintenance is required by law or is life threatening and affects or compromises the core business of the Municipality. This request shall be attended to at our earliest convenience.

(ii) Medium priority: where maintenance is not of a high priority. This request shall receive the priority it requires.

(iii) Low priority: where the core business of the Municipality is not compromised by the need of maintenance. This request shall receive the priority it requires.

9.19.4 Maintenance of municipal facilities

Routine maintenance

Routine Maintenance is regarded as a service attending to day to day maintenance needs. This type of maintenance is done when maintenance requests are reported to Facility Management by the client on a day-to-day basis.

Routine Maintenance *inter alia* includes maintenance assistance and services in the following instances:

9.19.5 Trades conducted under routine maintenance.

ITEM	SERVICE/TRADE	DESCRIPTION
1.	**Electrical maintenance works:**	• Repair/replace plugs, switches, light fittings and bulbs • Repair/replace electrical reticulation within erfs • Verification and certification of electrical installations on

DRAFT

ITEM	SERVICE/TRADE	DESCRIPTION
		premises • repair/replace distribution board
2.	**Plumbing maintenance works:**	•Repairing/replacing of damaged sewer pipes •Replacing of sanitary ware: basins, toilet pots, seats •Replacing of damaged toilet mechanisms •Unblocking of sewer pipes • Repairing/replacing of damaged water supply pipes •Repairing/replacing of damaged rain water gutters •Repairing/replacing of element in the geyser and geyser complete
3.	**Air conditioning maintenance works:**	• Repairing of elements in the air-conditioners and heat pumps • Replacing of damaged elements, gas etc. • Servicing of air-conditioners and heat pumps
4.	**General building maintenance works**	•Repairing of damaged brickwork • Repairing of damaged plastering and painting work • Repairing/replacing of damaged carpets •Replacing of damaged window panes Replacing/repairing of Carpentry and joinery works Replacing/repairing of precast concrete and metal works
5.	**Fixed generators maintenance works**	• Servicing of the generator, quarterly or per specification •Refilling of diesel • Testing of generators monthly (Required by law)
6.	**Supply and delivery of building and cleaning material**	• Supply and delivery of building materials • Supply and delivery of cleaning materials
7.	**Cleaning and disinfection of municipal wide ablution facilities**	• Deep and conventional cleaning of offices and public toilets •Issuing out of toilet papers to the public • Up keeping of cleanness of the facility during the day • Ensuring that the properties are not vandalised by constant appearance and locking up at the end of the day

RAFT

ITEM	SERVICE/TRADE	DESCRIPTION
8.	**Fumigation and disinfection of municipal offices and public toilets**	•Cleaning and disinfection of sanitary fittings (basins, toilet pot and seat) • Servicing of sanitary bins monthly (required by law) • Servicing of hand dryer •Servicing of soap dispenser •Servicing of seat wipes • Servicing of air fresheners Fumigation of municipal facilities • Bees and birds nest removal • Removal of termite's mount
9.	**Servicing of the lifts**	•Monthly servicing of the lifts (Library garden, council chamber; old peter Mokaba stadium and civic centre)

Source: PLK Facilities Management SBU

Scheduled Maintenance

This type of maintenance is regarded as maintenance needs identified by way of annual, quarterly and monthly inspections conducted by the Facility Management SBU, which maintenance needs are then recorded in a detailed schedule plan with implementation dates and turnaround timeframes for purposes of efficiently conducting maintenance services identified and needed.

9.19.6 Codes and Standards

Paint colours

(i) The standard paint colours to be applied on interior walls of municipal facilities are cream, white or peach, unless otherwise specified by the client as special request.

(ii) The standard paint colours to be applied on exterior walls of municipal facilities falls under the earthy group of colours or corporate colours, unless otherwise specified by the client as special request.

Tiles

(i) Tiles to be used are porcelain and vinyl which are should be non-slippery

(ii) Staircase tiles must be fitted with an aluminium/ non-slippery strip

DRAFT

Roof coverings

(i) Roof coverings should have a non-reflective finish

9.20 Refurbishment and renovation of buildings:

Refurbishment of facilities with the aim that of ensuring that they comply in accordance with SANS Building Regulations 10400:1990, SABS Standard Act: 2008, the Occupational Health and Safety Act and Regulations Act 85/1993 to provide a conducive environment to the employees and the community at large, utilising or visiting the Municipal offices.

****NB: All materials used on the works as well as work procedures must be in accordance with South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)**

9.20.1 Refurbishment of Aganang Municipal Hall

Refurbishment of Aganang Municipal Hall

DRAFT

Refurbishment of Aganang Municipal Hall

Refurbishment of Aganang Municipal Hall

CHAPTER Ten: Transportation Services Analysis

10.1 Leeto la Polokwane

Leeto La Polokwane is an important part of the City's Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTN). It aims to provide a high-quality public transport service in line with Public Transport Strategy and Action Plan of 2007 The IPTN aims to integrate different modes of public transport across the municipality. Leeto La Polokwane Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) service, provides commuters with a scheduled, affordable and safe public transport service, providing easy access to educational institutions, healthcare facilities, and economic activities.

Leeto la Polokwane is currently operating six (6) routes servicing Seshego Zone 1 via Madiba Park, Seshego Zone 2 & 3, Westenburg, Nirvana, Flora Park, Penina Park and Ivy Park. The City is planning to expand Leeto la Polokwane service in 2026/2027 financial year to cover more areas such as Meropa, Peter Mokaba Stadium, Mall of the North, Cycad and Provincial Hospital. The expansion of the service will require the additional fleet to be procured. The procurement process is currently underway to procure additional fleet to enable to service expansion.

10.1.1 Thabo Mbeki Bus Station launched

Thabo Mbeki Bus Station launched

DRAFT

Thabo Mbeki Bus Station launched

Source: PLK Transportation Services Directorate

10.1.2 COMPREHENSIVE INTEGRATED TRANSPORT PLAN (CITP)

National Land Transport Act, 2009 requires all Transport Authorities to develop Integrated Transport Plans (ITPs) for their area of jurisdiction for a period of Five (05) years and must be updated annually. Polokwane Municipality's CITP was developed in 2023 for a period of five years from 2023 to 2028 and updated annually in line with NLTA requirements. The CITP was approved by the Municipal Council and the Limpopo Member of Executive Committee (MEC) for Transport and Community Safety as a final plan which guides transport planning within Polokwane Jurisdiction. The new CITP will be developed again during the 2027/28 financial year to supersede the current CITP which expires in 2028.

10.1.3 COMMUTER TRANSPORT CORRIDORS AND FACILITIES

There are two major commuter transport corridors in Polokwane:

- **Mankweng and the CBD Corridor**
- **Seshego/Moletji and the CBD Corridor**

Mankweng Corridor: Taxis from the Mankweng Taxi Association make use of this corridor to serve commuters staying in villages in the Mankweng and Moria areas, between 25 and 50 km east of the CBD. Taxis from the Sebayeng and Dikgale villages along the northern municipal boundary use the R81 while villages in the Mankweng and Moria areas are served by taxis using the R71. The 25 km travelled on the R71 increases the average speed to 50 km/h meaning that a taxi from University of Limpopo in Mankweng will cover the distance of 30 km to town in ± 35 minutes. The 40 km to the Boyne taxi rank in Moria takes ± 50 minutes.

Seshego/Moletji Corridor: This corridor serves the ± 38 000 households north-west of the CBD. Most commuters in this area stay within 15 km from the CBD in the Seshego, Perskebult, Blood River, Moletji and surrounding residential areas. According to the 2010 National Household Travel Surveys, less than 4% of working people staying in Seshego also work there. 74% of working people who stay in Seshego, work in Polokwane. The corridor is served by taxis and buses with the modal split 4:1 in favour of taxi passenger trips. The split between public and private transport is also 4:1 in favour of public transport trips.

10.1.4 Deputy Minister of Transport Oversight Visit to the City of Polokwane

Leeto Control Centre and **Thabo Mbeki Bus Station** were both Visited by Deputy Minister of Transport.

Deputy Minister of Transport Oversight Visit

DRAFT

Deputy Minister of Transport Oversight Visit

Deputy Minister of Transport Oversight Visit

Source: PLK Transportation Services Directorate

10.2 Mode of Public Transport Facilities

Seshego/Moletji facilities: Public transport facilities on this corridor consist only of bus/taxi stops and lay-bys on some arterial roads, because commuters are picked-up and dropped-off along the routes by both taxis and buses, there are no formal ranks in the residential areas. Commuters are also dropped off along the route.

Mankweng facilities: Because of the longer distance from town compared to Seshego, Mankweng has a more vibrant commercial centre. The University of Limpopo (Turf Loop campus), the shopping centre (Paledi Mall) and the hospital (Mankweng Hospital) which form

the core of the economic hub in Mankweng. Public transport users coming from the university shopping centre and hospital rely on taxis departing from the Turf Loop Plaza Rank and the Hospital Rank to take them to town or the surrounding villages.

Polokwane CBD facilities: For inward trips, most of which are during the AM peak, bus and taxi passengers are dropped off at various bus and taxi facilities throughout the CBD such as Public Transport Facility at Indian Centre, Bus Rank at Silicon street and Thabo Mbeki bus station on Genl. Joubert street. The lack of lay-bys or formalised drop-off points in the CBD however forces taxis and buses to stop in the roadway to off-load passengers.

A total of **±17 ranks** provide local commuter services. There is only one informal rank specifically dedicated for long-distance taxis, while the remaining ranks provide both local and long-distance services. There is a bus rank in Hospital/Silicon Street for subsidised commuter buses and a terminus in Thabo Mbeki Street for long distance buses. Metered taxis do not currently have allocated holding areas but on street locations are used to hold and load passengers.

i) Pick 'n Pay Taxi Rank a (Church Str)

ii) Pick 'n Pay Rank a (Pres Paul Kruger / Devenish Str)

iii) Taxi Holding Area (Along Nelson Mandela Drive)

iv) Taxi Holding Area (Devenish / Buite Str)

v) Taxi Holding Area (Rissik / Buite Str)

vi) Spar Taxi Rank (Rissik / Bok Str)

vii) Checkers Taxi Rank (Biccard Str)

viii) Oriental Plaza Taxi Rank (Excelsior Str)

ix) Dahl Taxi Holding (RSA Café: Dahl between Grobler and Thabo Mbeki Str)

x) Westenburg Taxi Rank (Ben Harris Str)

xi) No. 87 Paul Kruger Street Long Distance Taxi Rank (Privately owned)

xii) Mall of the North Taxi Rank(R81)

xiii) Sasol Taxi Rank: Paledi Mall (R71)

xiv) Boyne Taxi Rank (R71)

xv) Bus Rank (Silicon Str)

DRAFT

xvi) Mankweng Hospital Taxi Rank

xvii) Turfloop Plaza Taxi Rank (University of North Str)

xviii) Mankweng Taxi Rank 2 (opposite the hospital)

10.2.1 Metered Taxi

- Metered taxis operate all over and outside Polokwane.
- They operate 24 hours a day.
- Metered taxis are not branded.
- No facilities provided for metered taxis, subsequently they stop all over town.

Currently metered taxis hold at the following locations:

- Pick 'n Pay in Church Street between Devenish Street and Rissik Street.
- Grobler Street between Schoeman and Landros Mare Street.
- At Savannah Mall.
- Churles Parking area between Biccard and Hans van Rensburg Street.
- Capricorn Metered Taxi Association are still waiting for operating licenses

DRAFT

10.3 Airports

There are **two airports** in Polokwane Municipality: **Gateway Airport Authority Limited (GAAL**) and Polokwane Municipality Airport. Polokwane International Airport (GAAL) is flying passengers between Polokwane and Johannesburg.

The airport is located approximately **5 km** to the north of the Polokwane CBD (Central Business District). **SA Air link** has a scheduled flight service to between Johannesburg (OR Tambo) and Polokwane under the management of Gateway Airport Authority Ltd (GAAL). The service is code shared with South African Airways as the marketing carrier and SA Air link as the operating carrier.

There are also local and international unscheduled flights that make use of this airport. The approximate annual flights are between 4000 and 5 000 with an approximate passenger traffic of 38 000. There are four flights from Monday to Friday, one flight on a Saturday and two flights on Sundays.

Polokwane International Airport 1

Polokwane International Airport 2

Source: PLK Transportation Services Directorate

10.3.1 Polokwane Municipality Airport

Polokwane Municipality Airport is leased to a private operator. Only private airplanes are landing in this airport. The lease agreement is with Land use under City Planning. This Airport is using the GAAL tower for taking off. The Municipality is not contributing financially to the rental of the tower, which leaves GAAL with the responsibility of renting the tower for the Airport that is not monitored. The near accidents that are audited in Polokwane Municipality Airport are counted under GAAL. The Monitoring and Regulation of Polokwane Municipality Airport in terms of Civil Aviation Authority compliance is very important.

10.3.2 Rail

The Passenger Rail Agency (PRASA) was operating the Shosholoza Meyl long distance passenger service between Johannesburg and Musina via Polokwane. It is an economy class service (sitter accommodation) that was operating 3 times per week in each direction. The services were negatively affected by the Lockdown during Covid-19.

10.4 FREIGHT TRANSPORT

10.4.1 Road freight

Polokwane is the largest town on the N1 transport corridor between Gauteng and SADC countries to the north including Zimbabwe, Zambia, Malawi, the DRC and Tanzania. Most of the freight imported from and exported to the above countries is transported by road. These trucks park all over the City during the day and night. The construction of the Truck Inn was recommended by the Comprehensive Integrated Transport Plan and development of intermodal freight logistics hub at the Airport. The Municipality will develop Freight Movement Plan to guide the freight transport from/to/through Polokwane Municipality.

10.4.2 AIR FREIGHT

Due to its central location in relation to the neighbouring countries such as Botswana, Mozambique and Zimbabwe, Polokwane International Airport has a significant potential for the export of freight. Long distances to Gauteng and other provinces also create opportunities for air freight transport, specifically for perishable goods such as fruit, beef and venison produced locally. The need for an Inter-modal freight hub in Polokwane has been identified by previous studies.

10.4.3 RAIL FREIGHT

Polokwane generates fresh produce and as such, freight rail plays an important part in transporting these products to various destinations in and out of South Africa. Due to the high cost of freight road transport, it is expected that the freight rail will boost the economy of Polokwane by transporting the products at a lower cost. Currently Polokwane does not have rail freight for transportation of goods out or into the Municipality.

Due to the high cost of road freight transport, Transnet has announced plans to move more freight by rail. This is a positive development for Polokwane as it will reduce damage to roads because of high freight volumes currently transported by road. On routes such as the N1 and the R81, the percentage of heavy vehicles is as high as between 15% and 20%. The fact that

DRAFT

up to 17% of trucks are overloaded indicates that a lot of damage is being caused to road infrastructure.

10.5 A SMART WAY TO TRAVEL

The City of Polokwane has introduced an Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTN), comprising buses with high technology and advanced bus station which gives passengers more than just travelling between point A and B but also provide safety with CCTV cameras and electronic payment system. This is in line with Public Transport Strategy and Action Plan of 2007 developed by the National Department of Transport (NDoT). The IPTN currently being implemented in Polokwane is intended to transform the public transport sector through provision of a high-quality and affordable transport system whilst reducing the overall journey times for transport users.

As part of its mandate, the municipality engaged and continues to engage various stakeholders on the implementation of the IPTN project, including current public transport operators, Ward Councillors and committees, commuters, and residents.

10.6 Transport implication of the SDF

Polokwane is facing high migration into its towns from rural areas (rural-urban migration), which is fuelled by the expectations of finding of jobs. Daily migration into and out of Polokwane CBD for many workers to go and work elsewhere (mining and industrial areas) is a transport matter that needs to be considered in future transport planning, thus, linking the urban and regional perspective is partly to be described in the CITP. The Polokwane's Modal Integration Transport Plan will be developed over a period of three financial years starting from 2026/27 to support the CITP in guiding the implementation of modal transport integration across the City.

10.7 INTERMODAL / LONG DISTANCE TRANSPORT HUB

Lack of transport facilities for the long-distance transport services and the integration with existing local public transport services, the integration of these services with land use management becomes a central issue to ensure that proper integrated transport services are provided where people live. Proper land use rights and densification is promoted to make transport more effective and efficient.

DRAFT

10.8 LEETO LA POLOKWANE SYSTEM ELEMENT

10.8.1 Universal Access (UA)

Universal Access (UA) on Leeto la Polokwane, is about giving all people an equal opportunity to access a quality transport service. In line with the UA principles, **Leeto La Polokwane** is designed to provide easy access to all people with a variety of needs.

The UA features on **Leeto La Polokwane** include the use of deployable boarding bridges to allow passengers on wheelchairs, and mothers with baby strollers to enter and exit the buses safely. The other features are raised tactile (textured) paving, beeping alarms, and voice announcements that guide people who have reduced vision and who cannot read. The City developed the Universal Design Access Plan (UDAP) in 2024 which is currently being implemented to ensure compliance to UA principles. As part of the implementation of UDAP, the City has established the UA Transversal Committee to address UA issues across the City affecting various Directorates.

Leeto La Polokwane Buses

Source: PLK Transportation Services Directorate

10.8.2 Non-Motorized Transport (NMT)

An important aspect to Leeto La Polokwane is the provision of infrastructure for both **pedestrians and cyclists**. As a result, The City has built about 17.01 km of Non-Motorized Transport (NMT) facilities which includes the pedestrian walkways that are dedicated to human powered means of getting access for cycling, walking, skating, the use of wheelchairs and handcarts.

The NMT is along Nelson Mandela Intersection and a three-legged road joining the intersection on Ditlou Street and Bo-Okelo Street, as well as F8 Street in Seshego. The Leeto la Polokwane infrastructure aims to comply with universal access design standards to ensure the safety and inclusivity for everyone using the system. The City has conducted assessments on Leeto la Polokwane routes in Westenburg, Nirvana and Flora Park to assess the status of the NMT along the current network.

Non-Motorized Transport (NMT)

Source: PLK Transportation Services Directorate

10.8.3 Industry Transition

- The provision of Leeto La Polokwane public passenger transport services are currently provided on a month-to-month Interim Vehicle Operating Company Agreement (VOCA) pending conclusion of long-term contract
- Negotiations on the 12-year VOCA between the city and the Vehicle Operating Company (VOC), for provision of public passenger transport services integrating Phase 1A and 1B at 98% complete.
- Conclusion and signing of the long-term VOCA in line with Section 41 NLTA is contingent upon Parties agreeing on bus ownership transfer, stakeholder consultation in line with Section 33 of the Municipal Finance Management Act and Council approval.
- Draft Information Statement for the long-term VOCA is in place to enable stakeholder consultation in line with Section 33 MFMA.
- Paid compensation to forty (40) affected operating licence holders from the taxi associations: Flora Park Pietersburg (23), Seshego Polokwane (4) and Westenburg (13) in line with signed Restraint of Trade and Compensation Agreement (ROTCA).

The corresponding number of minibus taxi (MBT) vehicles were removed and the Leeto bus service operationalised on part of Phase 1B in the 2025/26 financial year.

- Engagement with the minibus taxi industry and the (VOC) on continuous implementation of Phase 1A routes and gradual operationalisation of Phase 1B routes.

10.8.4 Engagement with the minibus taxi industry

Engagements with the minibus taxi industry

Engagements with the minibus taxi industry

Source: PLK Transportation Services Directorate

10.8.5 Integrated Transport Planning and Operations

- 21 standard buses have been procured and delivered to Polokwane.
- 5 x 9-meter buses delivered and 10 x 9-meter buses outstanding.
- Polokwane Municipality has instituted Legal proceedings in respect of recovery of funds. The matter is currently under mediation.

- The City will be procuring more additional buses in 2026/2027 financial.
- The following routes have been implemented as part of Phase 1B network expansion of Leeto la Polokwane:
  - Penina Park and Ivy Park
  - Westenburg-Nirvana
  - Nirvana-Westenburg
- The City is currently operating six (6) routes as of 2025/2026 financial year. The routes are shown in figure 1 below:

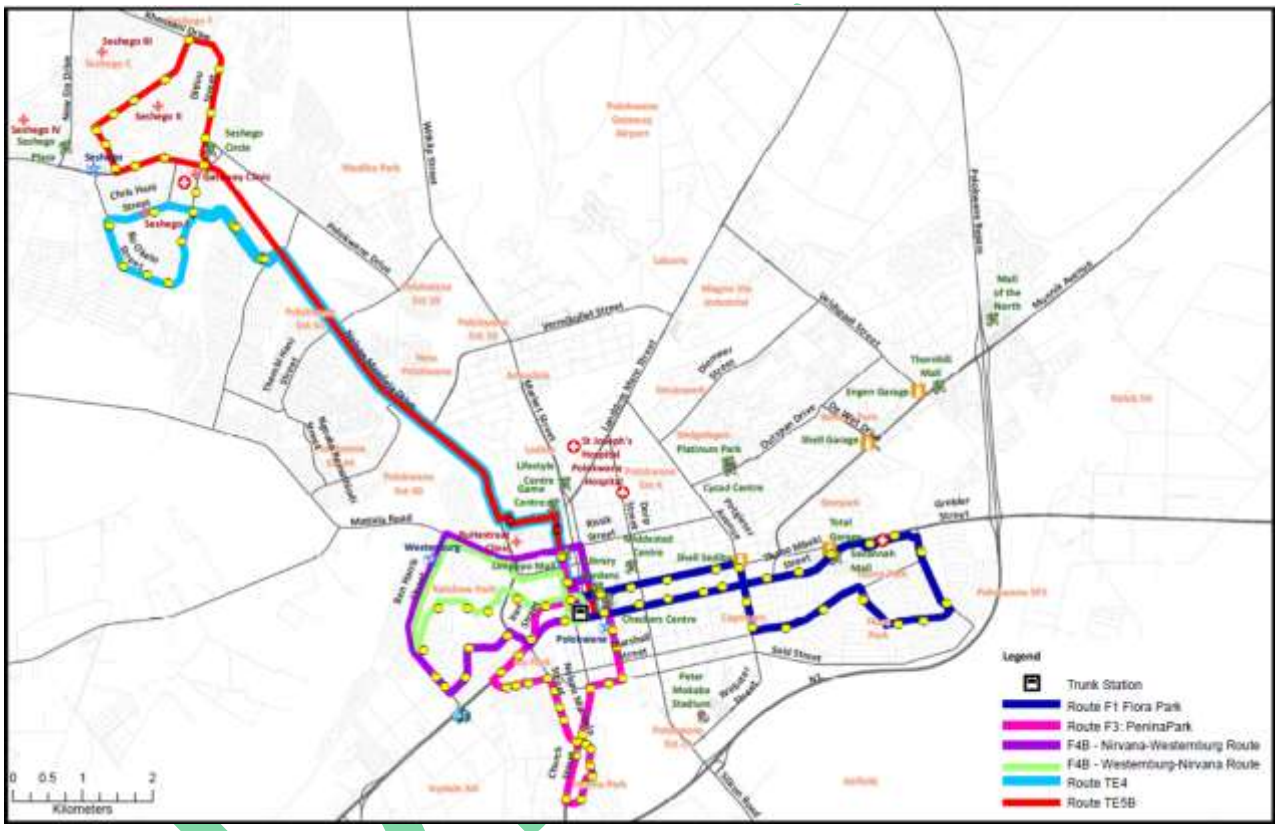


Figure 1: Current Route Network of Leeto la Polokwane

- More routes will be implemented in 2026/2027 financial year to cover areas such as Meropa, Mall of the North, Peter Mokaba Stadium, Cycad and Provincial Hospital. The planned route network at the end of 2026/2027 financial year is shown in figure 2 below:

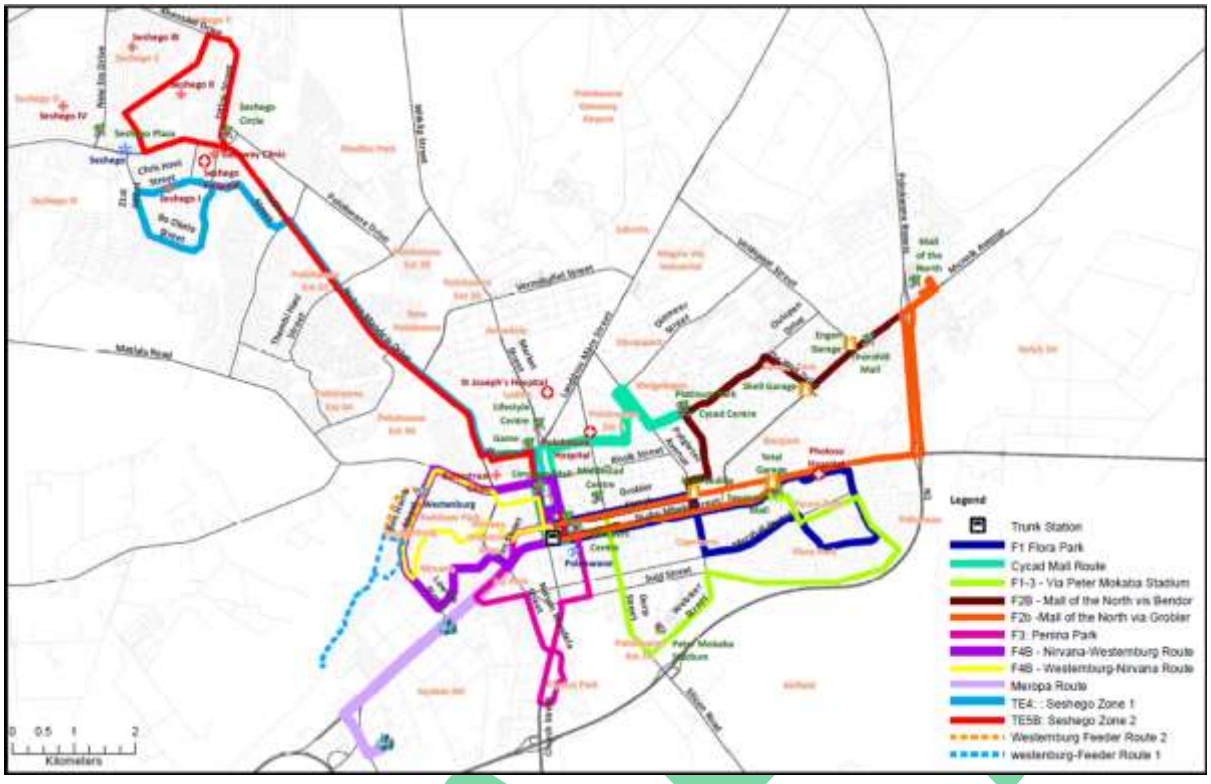


Figure 2: Planned Route Network of Leeto la Polokwane (2026/2027 financial year)

10.8.6 Intelligent Transport System Modelling

- Revenue collected through the Account-Based Ticketing (ABT) compliant Automated Fare Collection (AFC) system.
- QR-code payment and concession cards for pensioners (over 60 years old) and learners (under 20 years old), have been implemented as alternative fare media to the ABT Travel Card.
- An Operational Control Centre has been established at Peter Mokaba Stadium, utilising the upgraded Public Transport Management System (PTMS). The system supports fleet management, route planning, scheduling, camera monitoring, and communication with drivers and customers.
- CCTV cameras at Thabo Mbeki Bus Station have been integrated into the Operational Control Centre to enable centralised monitoring and improved operational oversight
- The new Leeto La Polokwane Application (App) was launched in October 2025 to enhance the passenger experience and improve access to public transport services. The App provides commuters with convenient, real-time travel information, including journey planning, live bus tracking, nearby bus stops and route maps. It also provides wallet services, enabling passengers to check card balances and reload their travel cards.

DRAFT

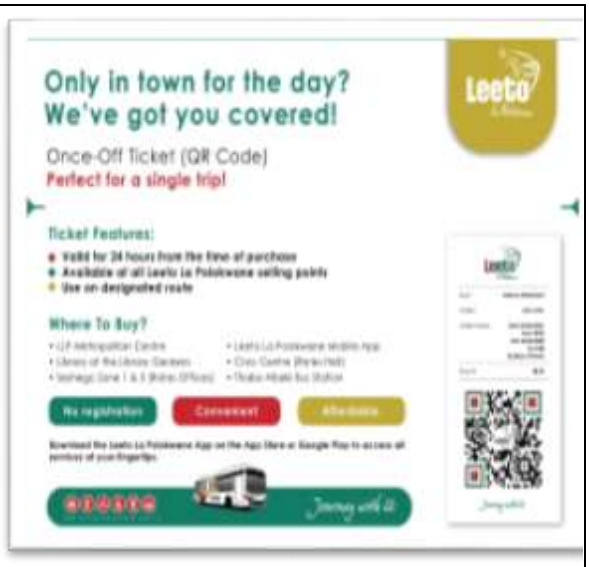
10.8.7 Leeto La Polokwane fare increase

- Council has approved a fare increase of **R1.00** for Leeto La Polokwane operations from 1st of July 2026, with the adjusted fares as follows: **(Seshego R15, Nirvana, Westenburg, Penina Park and Flora Park –R9.50).**
- The concession programme is implemented at a R3.00 discount per trip for school learners and pensioners

10.8.8 Leeto Marketing, Communications and Stakeholder Relations

- System Marketing - Leeto brand awareness and placement of information/marketing material on social media platforms, website and other digital platforms, activations, and brand partnerships.
- Communication and Public Relations - Public notices and posters on new Phase 1B routes (Ivy Park, Penina Park, Westenburg) Leeto ABT card selling-top-up points, special bus operations for sporting events and other partnership events, Concession, and QR code (one-off ticket).
- System Branding - Branding application at the Leeto bus station and the walk-in centre, and branding at events/activations.
- Continuous Stakeholder consultations have been taking place with parties affected by PT facility, transit mall, bus stop shelters etc.
- Provision of Leeto La Polokwane customer relationship management services.

Leeto Marketing and Communications



DRAFT

Leeto Marketing and Communications 1

Leeto Marketing and Communications 2

Leeto Marketing and Communications 3

Source: PLK Transportation Services Directorate

10.8.9 Business and Finance

- Revenue Management Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) for Leeto La Polokwane operations have been developed, including specific SOPs covering the Concession Programme and QR-code payments.

- A Fare Policy and Fare Structure has been updated and approved by Council.
- Monthly fare revenue reconciliations are being performed.
- Financial Model between the City and Esilux has been finalised.
- The Municipality is currently reviewing the Operational plans for expansion of Leeto la Polokwane. The plan includes the roll out of the three additional routes (Merope, Flora Park via Stadium and Mall of the North), which form part of Phase 1B.
- The implementation of these expansion will be guided by the municipality's affordability and its ability to cover the operations cost associated with providing the transport services.

10.8.10 Leeto Infrastructure

- **5.092km** of Dedicated Bus route (Nelson Mandela Drive to Seshego) completed.
- **35.5km** of CBD feeder routes have been rehabilitated.
- **20.41km** of Seshego Bus routes have been upgraded.
- **17** of Non-Motorised Transport Facilities have been completed.
- Construction of 10 Bus Stop Shelters in progress.
- Upgrading of Transit Mall Phase 1 in progress.
- Upgrading of PT Facility is completed.
- Widening of Sand River Bridge Phase1 is completed.

10.9 Construction of 10 x Bus Stop Shelters

10.9.1 Shelters and Paving in Flora Park and Seshego

DRAFT

Bus Stops 306 and 308 are under construction in Flora Park

Bus Stops 100 (Industrial) and 208 (Cashbuild) under construction in Seshego

Source: PLK Transportation Services Directorate

10.10 Polokwane's Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTN),

The City of Polokwane's Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTN), Leeto la Polokwane, is currently implementing the upgrading of Transit Mall Phase 1. The project is implemented along Genl Joubert Street from the intersection of Grobler Street and Genl Joubert Street and along Jorrisen Street between Church and Landros Mare Street.

The Upgrading of Transit Mall Phase 1 is under construction. The aim is to provide a dedicated, unobstructed right-of-way through the Transit Mall, which shortens bus arrival and travel times for everyday commuters. Upgrade sidewalks, verges, and intersections to create safe, accessible walkways for all users, including people with disabilities.

10.10.1 Upgrading of the PT Facility is completed.

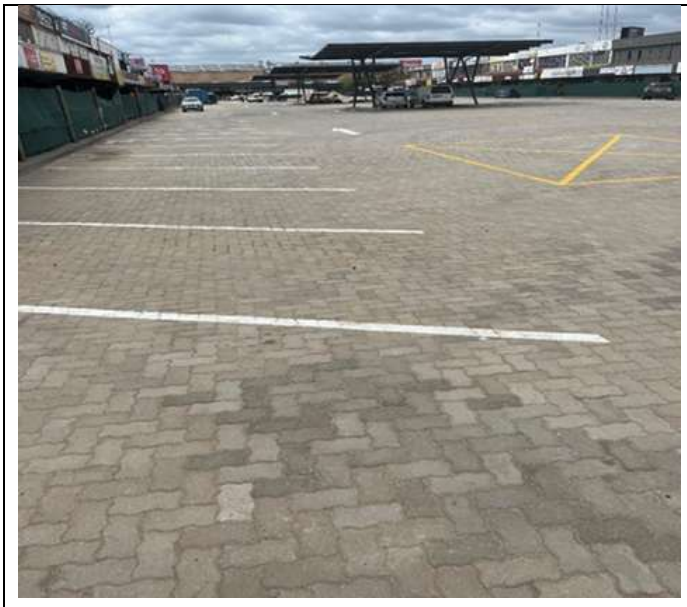
Indian Centre Taxi Rank is transformed as part of our programme to revitalise and empower the taxi industry and to improve commuting experience, **The City of** Polokwane is Constructing a modern taxi facility with all-new infrastructure:

- **Fresh new paving.**
- **Smooth new asphalt.**
- **Dedicated loading bays.**
- **Functional offices.**
- **24/7 lighting.**
- **Reliable backup power**

The stylish new Indian Centre will be expected at the end of this Project

Food Court Completed (Indian Street)

DRAFT

	
Paving completed	**Fencing installed**
Male ablution facility tapes replaced	**Male Urinary renovated**

Shelters completed

Solar Panel installed

Source: PLK Transportation Services Directorate

10.10.2 Widening of Sandriver Bridge

The Widening Sand River Bridge along Nelson Mandela trunk route, the City has completed the Phase 1 and Phase 2 under planning to ensure the project is completed.

Widening of Sandriver Bridge –Shuttering and completed Parapets

Installation of guardrails and completed guardrails

10.11. Leeto La Polokwane (LLP)

Leeto La Polokwane (LLP) is an Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTN) that aims to improve the state of public transport in the Municipality by integrating various modes of public transport operating within the jurisdiction of transportation. LLP is a safe, reliable, and convenient integrated public transport system for all of Polokwane's citizens. One of the features of LLP is the Bus Service which is a partnership between the municipality and the affected public transport operators.

Leeto La Polokwane is an Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTN) of the City of Polokwane. The system aims to provide a high-quality public transport service aligned to the Public Transport Strategy and Action Plan of 2007, implemented under the requirements of the National Land Transport Act (NLTA) of 2009, and the public transport vision that was articulated in the White Paper on Transport Policy of 1996.

The aim of Leeto La Polokwane is to integrate various public transport modes across the municipality as well as capacitating current public transport operators who are directly affected by the System as per the requirements of the NLTA.

DRAFT

Leeto Bus Fleet

Leeto Bus stop

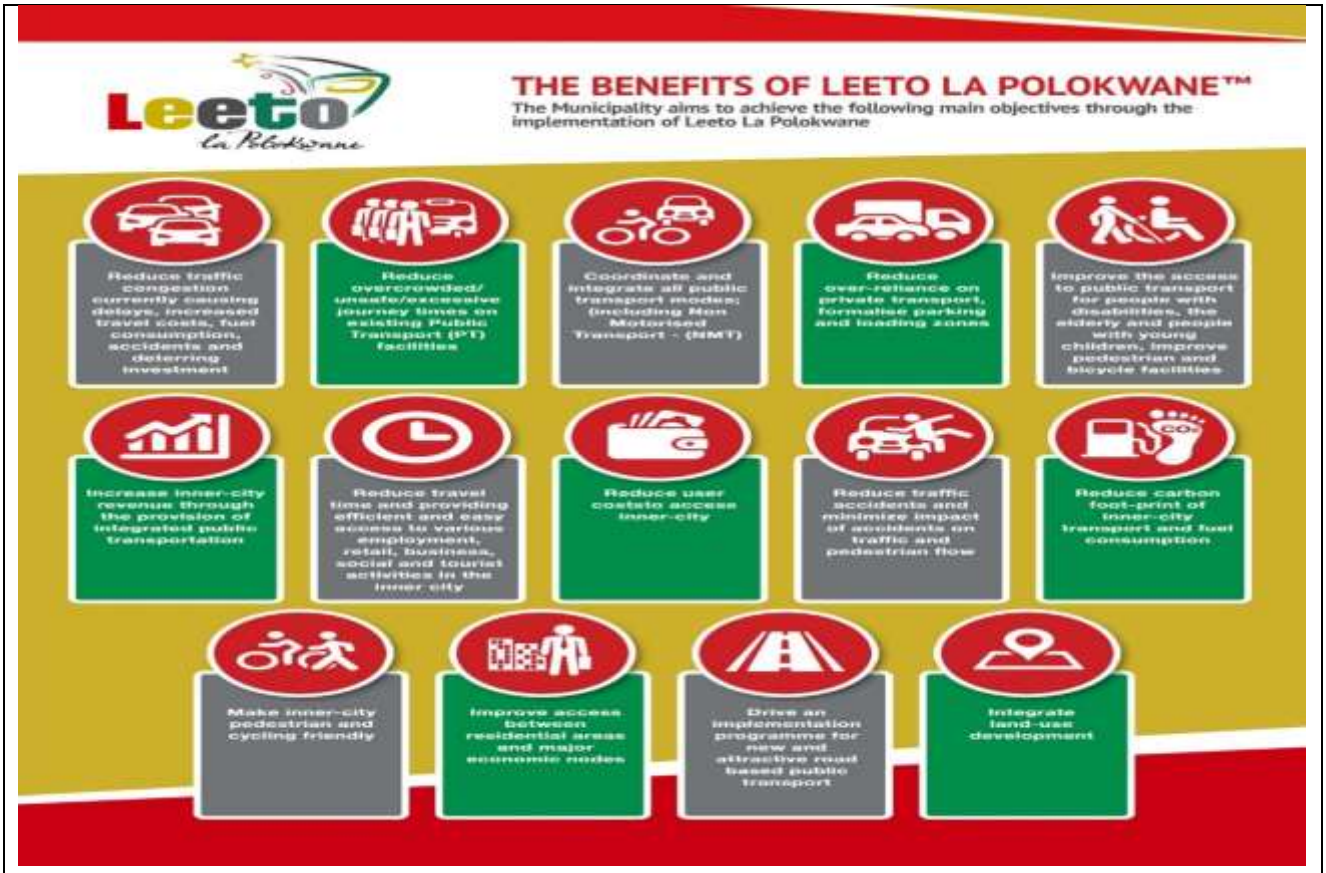
Inside leeto Bus

Schools Roadshows

Source: PLK Tr

ansportation Services Directorate

10.11.1 Benefits of Leeto La Polokwane



Benefits of Leeto La Polokwane

Source: PLK Transportation Services Directorate

The Public Transport System is intended to transform the public transport sector through the provision of a high-quality and affordable public transport system in line with the national policy. The Public Transport System will also be aimed at reducing the overall journey times for public transport users.

The key characteristics of the system are an improvement in access between residential areas and major economic nodes. The main objective of the Public Transport System is therefore, to provide new and attractive road-based public transport services.

Leeto La Polokwane Phase 1A Compensation payment effected to 123 affected minibus taxi (MBT) operators from Flora Park Pietersburg (FPTA), Seshego Polokwane (SPTA), and Westenburg (WTA) Taxi Associations. A Vehicle Operating Company Agreement (VOCA) concluded with Esilux (Pty) Ltd; a vehicle operating company (VOC) established by Phase 1A affected taxi associations.

- The AFC and PTMS equipment have been fitted in the 21 x 12m buses, layover facility, control centre and General Joubert station.
- The construction of the Depot and the Station at General Joubert is underway, while the construction of the Layover Facility has been completed.

10.11.2 Ridership on Leeto la Polokwane Bus Service

Table 1: Ridership on Leeto la Polokwane Bus Service

Ridership on Leeto La Polokwane (Fleet of 26 buses and 116 daily bus trips)	
Baseline (end of June 2025)	**Actual (end of June 2026)**
3 248 passengers per day	**6 423** passengers per day

10.12 Upgrading of Transit Mall Phase 1

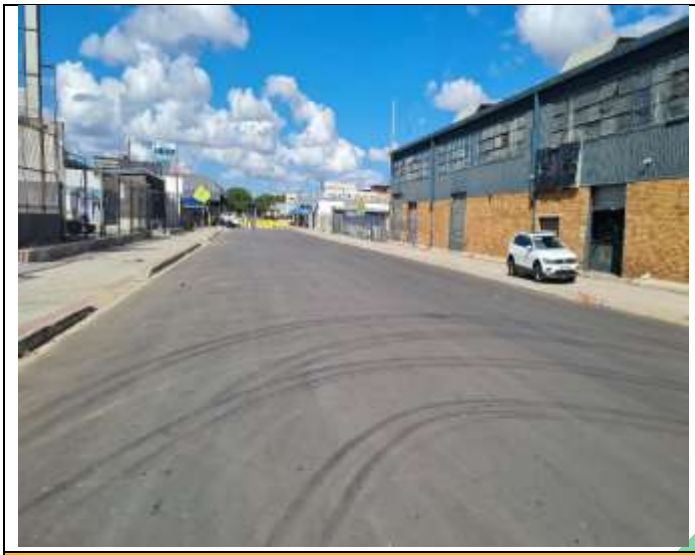
The City of Polokwane's Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTN), Leeto la Polokwane, is currently implementing the upgrading of Transit Mall Phase 1. The project is implemented along Genl Joubert Street from the intersection of Grobler Street and Genl Joubert Street and along Jorrisen Street between Church and Landros Mare Street.

The Upgrading of Transit Mall Phase 1 is under construction. The aim is to provide a dedicated, unobstructed right-of-way through the Transit Mall, which shortens bus arrival and travel times for everyday commuters. Upgrade sidewalks, verges, and intersections to create safe, accessible walkways for all users, including people with disabilities.

10.12.1 Upgrading of a Transit Mall Progress

Upgrading of a Transit Mall Progress as at **06 July 2026**

DRAFT



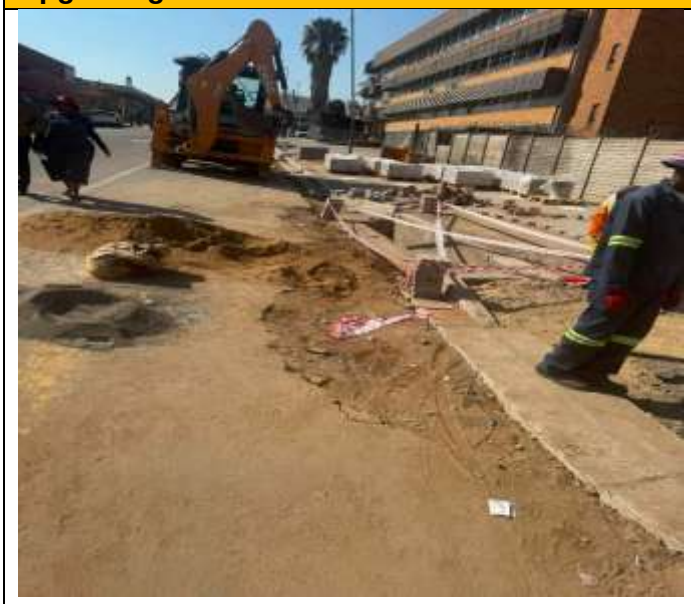
Upgrading of a Transit Mall

Upgrading of a Transit Mall

Upgrading of a Transit Mall

Upgrading of a Transit Mall

Upgrading of a Transit Mall



Upgrading of a Transit Mall

Upgrading of a Transit Mall

Upgrading of a Transit Mall

Upgrading of a Transit Mall

CHAPTER Eleven: Roads and Storm Water Analysis

11.1 ROADS AND STORM WATER

11.1.1 Rehabilitation of Boshoff Street in Flora Park

Rehabilitation of Boshoff Street in Flora Park

Rehabilitation of De wet street

11.1.2 Introduction to Roads and Storm water

Polokwane Municipality is characterised by radial road network of approximately **7 495 km** covering its area of jurisdiction with a backlog of approximately **5 957.67**km as per the recent inventory. This backlog translates to a total of **79.50**%. This is due to the establishment of new developments both formal and informal settlements. It is situated at the point where National and Provincial roads converge from where they radiate out in all directions providing good regional accessibility.

The Municipality is faced with huge challenges in providing and maintaining the local roads at an acceptable standard for smooth, reliable and convenient transportation of goods and commodities. Coupled with the latter, there is storm water management and control to an extent that it poses as a threat to mobility, infrastructure and communities.

The long-term strategy of the municipality is to surface and pave roads within the municipal area. Based on this high road backlog, different strategies are implemented including preventative maintenance of the road infrastructure

The Municipality has since moved from implementing an average of **19km** road upgrading per annum to an average of **16km for surfacing and paving**–per annum. In the 2026/27 FY financial year the Municipality has budgeted a total of **R158 604 094** for upgrading of arterial road as well as Paving of internal streets in townships and rural areas which will have an impact in reducing backlog of gravel roads in those areas.

The over commitment challenge of the 2024/25 Roads Budget, has been settled fully in the 2025/26 financial year. In the 2026/27fy the Municipality will be implementing a total of 65 new roads projects in all municipal clusters. These projects vary from Upgrading to surfacing, paving of roads, rehabilitation of surfaced roads as well as the construction of low level bridges in various wards. 9 of these projects are already on construction, while 21 are at establishment stage and 19 are at planning stages and 11 are at procurement stage. Only 7 projects of the 2025/26 could not be fully completed but out of these 7 projects, 4 are at practical stage.

Municipality will also be upgrading some of the RAL roads as agreed with RAL. Council has taken a decision to request RAL to transfer to the municipality, those RAL roads implemented or that are being implemented by the municipality. These roads are deemed necessary as they connect villages. As of now, the process is at an advanced stage.

DRAFT

There are panel of contractors and consultants procured to reduce lag time for procuring service providers as and when the project is to be implemented. The service providers are readily obtainable from the panel as and when the need arises and this has also enhanced the planning ahead where designs are planned ahead of implementation to avoid delays and delays in projects implementation. Contractors will be allocated from the panel of contractors for implementation.

As an interim approach to have accessible gravel roads municipal wide, the SBU is implementing a clustering maintenance of key roads infrastructure as joint effort for service delivery. The city is currently heading towards full service of gravel roads in rural areas and surrounding plots through continuous procurement of yellow plants. The city has managed to cover each cluster as well as the city plots with one new grader through phased fleet replacement strategy. The city will be procuring new graders, Mechanical broom, Road Marking machines, Jet patcher to ease the patching of potholes within the municipal clusters.

In terms of the current analysis, City/Seshego and Mankweng Cluster have roads that deteriorated due to limited routine and preventative maintenance hence most of the roads have exceeded their design life. There are significant changes regarding refurbishment of existing aged infrastructures through Rehabilitation of existing road.

The Municipality has so far abled to rehabilitate apportion of most important roads within the city and surrounding areas like Boshoff street, Oost street etc. The other challenge affecting the roads is the unavailability or the insufficiency of Storm water system.

Roads Infrastructure development SBU is made up of two divisions but only Roads is mostly considered over Storm water when it comes to budgeting. Storm water should have its own sufficient budget. The other challenge affecting the roads is the unavailability or the insufficiency of Storm water system. The Municipality has for long time neglected the issue of storm water in that there is never a dedicated budget for storm water to address areas that are too problematic. Areas like Seshego, Flora Park, Sterpark, CBD, Welgelegen and Mankweng get flooded each time that it rains. Whenever a budget for storm water is made available, you find that it is insufficient to kick start a project. Another challenge is the high vacancy rate in the SBU but there has been some movement in the filling of positions. Another challenge faced by the directorate is the unavailability of dedicated project managers like other SBU. Under Roads Infrastructure Development, you find that, an acting person who is not even compensated is running more than 9 projects and is expected to also carry out the duties he or she is appointed for.

DRAFT

The City has also discovered that the stream feeding all the runoff from the entire city and the surrounding suburbs is very confined to drain the runoff for the entire city. The plans to widen the existing stream from Flora Park dam to Sand River is at an advanced stage as the designs are now completed and the implementation will commence in the next few weeks as the service provider is allocated. The stream will be widened to flatten the runoff overflow and thereby reducing water concertation time within the storm water system in a phased approach.

Apart from storm water measures mentioned above, the Municipality has also been reconstructing several storm water infrastructures which were affected by the recent flood. R 4 061 954.22 was allocated through National Disaster Management Centre to address flooding adjacent to Waste Water treatment plant. Asbes street in Futura.
R30M has been budgeted for through MDRG for implementation of storm water R10m), Rehabilitation R3.5m and reconstruction 16,5M within the city cluster.
The city has planned to construct 10 low level bridges Municipal wide to bridge the cut-off which were experienced on rural roads.

The Traffic safety can be linked with the existing condition of roads in the municipal area. With increased road users, congestion has also increased in recent years and has now become problematic in the City/Seshego and Mankweng clusters. In addition, road safety has become a concern with increasing accidents occurring on municipal roads. The Municipality has from the previous financial years approved three (3) speed humps yearly per ward in areas that are critical. The approved 3 speed humps will not be possible, however only two speed humps will be prioritised in most critical wards due to limited budget. Traffic calming measures are still a problem on most roads. The municipality has also planned a new road linking R71 and the N1 bypass that is to be planned in the 2026/27 financial year. The aim of this bypass is the reduce traffic from the R71 road in and from the city.

11.1.3 Classification of Roads

The municipality has developed the Road Master Plan that has been approved by Council in 2014.This Master plan will be updated to include the incorporated area of Aganang. It was in anyway due for review and such will take place in the **2027/28** financial year.

The Roads Provincial Gazette was published and Roads authorities are familiar with their new Road Network.

The municipality is faced with huge challenges in providing and maintaining the local roads at an acceptable standard which always ensures accessibility. Coupled with the latter, there is a

challenge with storm water management and control to an extent that it poses a threat to mobility, infrastructure and communities. The Municipality will develop storm water master plan in the **2027/28 financial** year for municipal wide which will assist in planning and addressing storm water challenges that are faced by the Municipality.

The long-term strategy of the municipality is to surface and pave roads within the municipal area. Based on huge road backlog, different strategies are implemented including preventative maintenance of the road infrastructure, paving of internal streets. In terms of the current analysis, City / Seshego and Mankweng Cluster have roads that deteriorated due to limited routine and preventative maintenance.

11.1.4 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Roads.

- Ageing infrastructure (deterioration of roads due to limited routine and preventative maintenance)
- Most of roads have exceeded their design life span (approximately **R2.5Billion** required to rehabilitate the existing roads) in both Polokwane and Aganang area.
- Unavailability or insufficient storm water systems
- Huge rural backlog with minimal impact of 16Km per annum.
- Though the municipality has approved a new organogram, most critical positions are still vacant due to the insufficient funding.
- 98% of Roads that Community prioritize during IDP's do not belong to the Municipality but to RAL and the Department of Roads.
- Insufficient budget
- Insufficient plant (construction machinery)
- High vacancy rate in the Roads SBU

11.2 ROADS BACKLOG

Below is the current status of existing backlog, which without annual maintenance will escalate.

Service	H/H	Access	Backlog
Roads (7 495km)	**280 225**	1537.34km (20.51%)	5957.67 km

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.2.1 Municipal Roads Current Status Quo

Operational issues /Capacity

- Inadequate routine maintenance staff/ high vacancy rate/ reliance on casuals

DRAFT

Status of Yellow fleet

- Seven new graders were procured as part of fleet replacement plan.
- The Municipality has managed to procure and deliver two more new graders and 3 service delivery bakkies as part of the mitigation to bridge the shortage of grading machinery.

Number of graders broken down

- There are 5 graders which are frequently broken and not reliable after the recent auction where 5 graders were disposed.
- The three graders which were normally on operational are now augmented by the seven new graders recently received.
- The downtime for graders has reduced significantly as a result of the continuous effective fleet replacement plan.

11.2.2 Potholes Repairs in the City CBD, Seshego, Westernburg.

- The Executive mayor launched a war on pothole whereby the available and around all inward bound roads into the city.
- The resources and teams are clustered to attend to any emerging potholes in the CBD to ensure that all the inward bound roads are pothole free and viable for freight transportation and new business as well as economic adventures.
- The credibility and accessibility of all inbound roads has increased significantly since the inception of the war on pothole programme.
- The programme for war on pothole is coupled with sundry works such as road markings, maintenance of sidewalks and other road furniture's. This is undertaken to ensure that the entire inbound roads are clean, clear from obstructions and free from localized runoff ponding.
- The programme is also aimed to be decentralized to outbound roads leading to surrounding suburbs, townships and clusters.
- This will also enhance local economic investments and decentralization of business opportunities to all Municipal clusters in particular rural areas which in turns will make an impact on providing conducive environment for the job creations across all Municipal clusters.

11.2.3 Refurbishment of streets around the City CBD

Roads infrastructure network are classed as fundamental aspects of economic growth, health and safety and freight linkages between the Cities and countries. The City also hubs overland freights road network for SADC countries and economic stimulation of the Limpopo province.The City of Polokwane has over the past two financial years advanced significantly in terms of investing more on the refurbishment of the most economic and strategic roads infrastructure within the City's Central Business District and surrounding suburbs. The City has successfully managed to improve significantly in terms of rehabilitation of streets from

DRAFT

10.734km in the past year to 12.36km in the 2025/26 financial year through R 17.3M budget and has further reserve R36.8M in 2026/27 financial year to further rehabilitate the strategic and economical road network.

Rehabilitation of Boshoff Street	**Rehabilitation of De wet street**

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.2.4 War on pothole programme

The Polokwane Municipality is continuing with its war on pothole programme as part of the strategic goal for ensuring to provide a safe, reliable and quality road networks that are economical viable. The City has amplified and strengthened its war on pothole by means of repairing and restoring damaged road infrastructure and layers back to a safe, usable conditions. The City will be embarking more on more durable pothole repair material that will exhibit minimal cracking and deformation of surfaces. The City will be amplifying its war on potholes by procuring a technological pothole patching vehicle that will cuts repair time from 45 minutes' manual labor to just 7minutes per hole. The procurement of a self-contained road maintenance vehicle that uses spray injection technology to clean, fill and seal potholes and surface defects is already at an advanced stage to enable faster reactive maintenance time.

The Municipality has so far managed to patch 78 002.05m2 during 2025/26 financial year through manual operating system and this will increase immensely upon the acquisition of Jet patching truck.

DRAFT

War on pothole programme

War on pothole programme

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.2.5 Grading of Roads

The City of Polokwane is still thriving towards bridging the backlog of surfacing gravel roads to either rigid or flexible pavement structure. It is still consisting of 5957.67 gravel road network that connects clusters and villages. Grading of this gravel road network is still a prime maintenance requirement to enable smooth, safe and reliable gravel road network that will stimulate economic growth and decentralization of services to clusters. The yellow fleet replacement plan is part of the City continuous development whereby five redundant graders where successfully disposed through auction in 2025/26.

The City has also purchased an extra low bed truck that will be enhancing with the relocation of graders and track wheeled moving machinery between various service delivery points and wards. The maintenance cycle time will be improved significantly through the acquisition of new low bed truck and it will also reduce downtime as well as maintenance costs for machinery which was caused by lengthy travelling distances.

11.2.6 Grader's status QUO Report per Cluster (Their Condition)

1. **Dikgale Sebayeng**=**2 graders allocated,** 1x new grader in fair condition, 1x new
2. **Mankweng**= **3 graders allocated,** 1x redundant, 1 is fair, 1 x new
3. **City cluster and Seshego**= **1 grader allocated**,1 new
4. **Moletjie** = **2 graders allocated**, 1 in fair condition, 1 new
5. **Aganang**= **2 graders allocated**, 1 in good condition,1 new
6. **Molepo Chuene Maja**= **3 graders**, 1 redundant and 2 new graders

DRAFT

11.2.7 New Low Bed Truck Procured

New lowbed truck

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.2.8 Roads SBU Yellow Fleet Status Quo

Type of Fleet	Status of the fleet (How many functions and how many not functional)	Type of Service Required	Condition of the Fleet (Poor, Fair Good)
Graders	8 functional; 5 not fully functional	3 graders to be scrapped, regular Transmission fault and overheating, no torque, Frequent overheating,	8xnew grader, 3xfair condition, 2x extremely poor
Roller	1 functional		
Maintenance trucks	10 Functional and 2 not functional	Overheating, Roadworthy, Exhausted engines.	6 trucks in good condition, 6 trucks fair and 4 trucks auctioned
Water Trucks	0	Disposed off during auction	0
TLB	2 functional, 3 not functional	Frequent overheating, thrust on loading buckets nipples, hydraulic pipe bursts	2 good and 3x fair
Front end loader	1 x functional		

Type of Fleet	Status of the fleet (How many functions and how many not functional)	Type of Service Required	Condition of the Fleet (Poor, Fair Good)
Tipper Trucks	5x10cubic 2 functional, 3 not functional	hydraulic cylinder diagnosis, Aged Engines and low tipping torque, one beyond repair.	2 fair, 1 poor and 2 good
Dozer (track wheel)	0	Disposed during auction	0
Lowbed truck	1XFunctional and 1x new	Low torque and fuel suction problem	Good
Light delivery vehicle	8 functional,3 new LDVS procured	4 scraps and 1xaccident, disposed during 2025/26 auction.	5 good,3 fair and 3 new bakkie s procured in 2025/26 FY

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11. 3 Construction of low-level bridges

11.3.1 CONSTRUCTION OF LOW-LEVEL BRIDGES PROGRAMME

Apart from grading of gravel road, the city of Polokwane is also constructing low level bridges to provide a safe and reliable cross over structure in areas which are separated by streams. The objective was initiated and derived to cap and prevent frequent drowning of communities and derailment of transportation of commodities as well as public during rainy seasons. The City has since moved from constructing 4 low level bridges in the past year to 12 bridges in the 2025/26 financial year.

- Targeted low level bridges= 14
- Achievement =2.
- Project status: It is an ongoing project.

11.3.2 Areas where low level bridges were constructed and completed

1. Koppermyn to Schoenuit
2. Maripathekong
3. Spitzkop
4. Linking Mothapo and Tjatjaneng
5. Segopye Mahlohlokwe
6. Titibe Mogabane
7. Mankweng Sencherere

DRAFT

8. Peter Nchanbeleng to Mabotja
9. Makeketela
10. Matlala to Juno
11. Makanye newstand to Thoka
12. Moremadi Park

CONSTRUCTION OF LOW LEVEL BRIDGES

CONSTRUCTION OF LOW LEVEL BRIDGES

11.4 Repairs on Storm Water Drainage

The City of Polokwane has several storm water infrastructures designed to capture and redirect excess surface runoff from flooding adjacent properties and prime business areas. The city has also discovered through several past flooding's that the stream running along the outlet and downstream of the entire city is very narrow and unable to convey the runoff. This has been causing flash back and pooling of runoff inside thereby resulting in high concentration time. The confinement of the feeding stream has been affecting downtown and central business district of the city through flooding.

The stream is currently widened in stages due to limited budget and the segment stretching from the intersection of D19 and Nelson Mandela up to Sand river bridge was widened. The remaining segment of the stream will be completed during 2026/27 financial prevent further pooling of storm water as well as flushing back of the runoff into the business properties.

Consulting Engineer was procured during 2025/26 financial year to design and investigate all storm water challenges in the city central and surrounding suburbs.

The Consultant was able to accomplish the concept and viability study for the storm water in the city, and will accomplish a detailed study and method statement in 2026/27 financial year.

The steel frames on the storm water kerb inlet were frequently vandalised and missing subsequently impacting more on ineffective collection of runoffs.

The replacement of steel frames kerb inlet at spots prone to vandalism and damages is underway. The replaced concrete slabs are strong enough to bear different surcharges and requires heavy machineries to lift.

- Targeted storm water drains for June= 72 storm water drains
- 128 x Storm water kerb inlet maintained:
- Targeted area: CBD and surrounding suburbs and township.

11.4.1 Challenges for Storm Water Infrastructure Maintenance

- Polokwane Municipality has been prone to flash flooding each time when it rains as a results of inefficient storm water systems and regular damage to the kerb inlet as a results of missing and damaged steel frames.
- The procurement of yellow machineries for clearing of storm water debris and widening of embankment along the Sterkloop stream is at an advanced stage. The stream will be widened adequately to enable speedy inflows of storm water system around the city as well as quick draining of runoff along the street.
- The City is continuously experiencing theft and vandalism of steel support frames on the kerb inlet which are merely caused by high demand of steel recycling.
- Areas such as 44, 78, Legae La Batho, Ivy Park Emperor and Ridge road, Makanye, Moremadi and Mamadimo Park, Asbes street along the Water treatment plant and Outlet structure adjacent to Buite clinic as well as other areas not listed, are frequently prone to flash flooding each time when it rains.

11.4.2 Interventions to storm water challenges

- The replacement of steel frames kerb inlet at spots prone to vandalism and damages is underway. The replaced concrete slabs are strong enough to bear different surcharges and requires heavy machineries to lift.
- The City has so far upgraded the following storm water systems in areas prone to flooding:
- Upgrading of storm water system in Jumbo,
- Ext 76, Asbes street

DRAFT

- Upgradding of stormwater system, Seshego canal.
- Upgrading of stormwater in Seshego,
- Upgrading of storm water in Asbes street towards Sand river stream
- Upgrading of storm water system in Ivy Park
- Upgrading of storm water system in Makanye
- Upgrading of storm water system in Nelson Mandela.

STORM WATER UPGRADING

STORM WATER UPGRADING

11.4.3 Blocked Storm Water Drainage infrastructure

The City of Polokwane is continuously experiencing frequent blockage of storm water systems which are caused by illegal dumping of food left overs into the kerb inlets, heavy vehicle turning over the catch pit slabs and vandalism of steel frames for metal recycling benefits.
The unblocking and maintenance of storm water system is often derailed and repeatedly executed on same spots as a results of challenges mentioned.
This in turn hardened the clodding of debris into the system which closes off the inlet system and subsequently resulting in flooding of runoff to adjacent properties.
The City is so far embarking on the replacement of steel frame with 250mm thick concrete slabs that will be able to withstand the load pressure and heavy to be removed.
War on Storm Water Drainage Programme

Unblocking Storm water Drainage System

Unblocking Storm water Drainage System

Unblocking Storm water Drainage System

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.4.4 Unblocking of Storm Water Drainage System in the City

Unblocking of Storm Water Drainage System in the City CBD

Unblocking of Storm Water Drainage System in Seshego

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.5 Various Roads Projects under Construction within Various Municipal Clusters

The Municipality has already commenced with the procurement of panel of contractors who will be dealing with routine, preventative and emergency maintenance.

War on pothole program is continuing to derive speedy attention to surface defects to achieve a pothole free city in the Municipality. The in-house maintenance team for roads maintenance will be procuring more hot mix asphalt as opposed to cold mix asphalt to perform lengthy patches and improve maintenance durability.

11.5.1 Paving of Sekoala primary school road to Mehlakong (ward 29)

Paving of Sekoala primary school road to Mehlakong (ward 29)

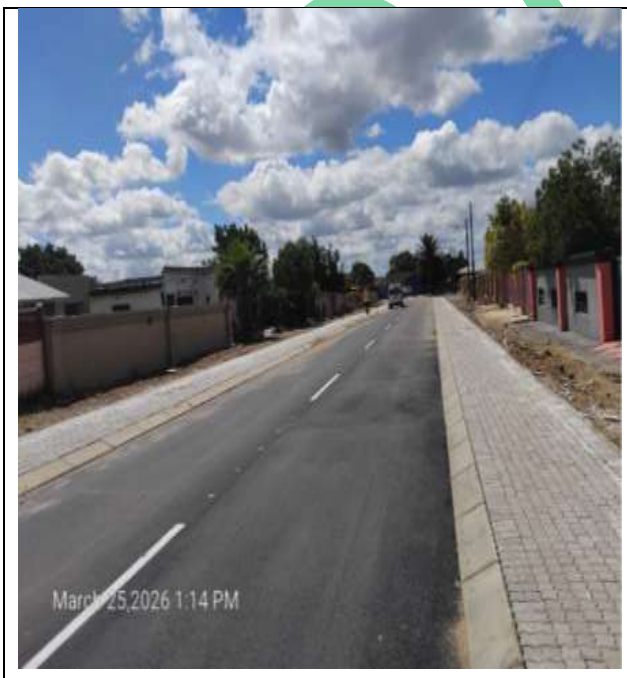
Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.5.2 Dual carriage way access road to Mankweng

Dual carriage way access road to Mankweng

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.5.3 Upgrading of gravel 1 road to tar at 28 th,29 and 30th street in zone A Seshego



Upgrading of gravel 1 road to tar at 28 th,29 and 30th street in zone A Seshego

Hospital view Road 1,2 and link

Hospital view additional road

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.6 Paving of Economically Strategic Roads

Paving of economically strategic Roads - The City of Polokwane is thriving positively towards Paving Roads Network that are Economically Strategic as Guided by **GROW Resolution** taken at the Municipal Strategic Planning Session which indicates Progress as Follows:

- Economically strategic roads to be paved were identified, and consultants were appointed to plan and design these roads over the MTREF period.
- Roads services have managed to achieve 1.921km of paved road through the new approach for paving strategic road.
- The Directorate is Conducting contractor and consultant **monthly meetings** to ensure that all those Roads Are Completed on time within the allocated Budget as approved by Council.

DRAFT

11.6.1 Upgrading of arterial road D3355 from Monotwane to Matlala clinic (ward 41)

Upgrading of arterial road D3355 from Monotwane to Matlala clinic (ward 41)

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.6.2 Flood Repair and Storm water upgrade in Futura Street to Sandriver stream

Flood Repair and Stormwater upgrade in Futura Street to Sandriver stream

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.6.3 Paving of road from Sengatane (D3330) to Chebeng (ward 09)

Paving of road from Sengatane (D3330) to Chebeng (ward 09)

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.7 Personnel for Roads and Storm Water

Number of Vacancies:

8x Budgeted Positions: i.e.

- 1x Technicians
- 4x Special Worksman
- 9x labourers

Other Essential vacancies with no budget: i.e.

- 1x Assistant Management, Storm water management, Railway sidings and traffic lights.
- 3 x Foreman City cluster.
- 6 x Senior Operators
- 2x Senior Technician.
- 3x technicians
- 4 x operators.
- 2 x drivers.
- 1 x Project administrator.
- 1 x Wayleave Technician.
- 30x labourers.

Achievement for personnel:

The following strategic positions were filled during 2025/26 financial year as part of the Municipal forward planning to improve service delivery of roads and storm water infrastructure: 2x superintendent, 1x technician, 2 senior engineering technicians and one assistant manager for planning and design.

DRAFT

11.8 Grading of Rural Roads Per Cluster

11.8.1 Grading of Roads Status Quo

CLUSTERS	GRADER AVAILABILITY	REMARKS
City	PM711 PM25/01	Bush worn and wearing on cylinder hinge New grader
Molepo Chuene Maja	PM23/01 PM 712 PM 24/03	New grader Tendrum worn out and not rotating New Grader
Dikgale Sebayeng	PM17/02 PM 25/15	Injectors and fuel suction New grader
Aganang	PM23/02 PM18/96	New Grader Functional
Mankweng	PM710 PM 18/101 PM25/04	Turn table and cycle drive damaged Replacement of copper slide and spacer. New grader
Seshego	PM25/03	New grader
Moletjie	PM711 PM 24/02	PM711 oil leakage and loss torque New grader

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.8.2 Challenges and interventions for Rural Roads Grading

Inadequate functional graders

- The directorate needs at least **two graders** per cluster, this will reduce long travelling distances and over utilization of machinery. This will also improve service delivery and elimination of overtime cost.
  1. Total number of Municipal graders=13
  2. New graders=8

DRAFT

3. Redundant graders= 5
4. Functional grader Aganang=2

Shortage of Grader operators.

- There are only 5 Senior Operator who are currently performing grading services and are not sufficient to deliver adequate grading service.
- At least two senior operators are required per cluster to enable effective grading of roads in rural areas.

Intervention for Rural Grading works: Procurement and delivery of lowbed truck

The City of Polokwane has so for procured a new low bed truck that will be enhancing the relocation of earth moving machines and track wheeled fleet between points of service delivery. The Municipality has been experiencing frequent overheating of graders due to length travelling distance over the past years. The new lowbed procured will be assisting in reducing the high downtime which were caused by the length travel distances.

11.8.3 Roads SBU Fleet analysis

ANALYSIS OF FLEET REQUIRED TO RENDER ROADS FULLY FUNCTIONAL

FLEET DESCRIPTION	TOTAL ALLOCATION	AVAILABLE	OLD FLEET	REQUIRED ADDITIONAL FLEET
Graders	12	9	4	8
TLB	5	3	2	2
Lowbed Truck	2	2	1	0
LDV's	12	9	5	6
4 Ton Maintenance Trucks	17	7	5	12
Excavator	0			1
10m3 Tipper trucks	5	3	2	7
Front End Loader	1	1	0	0
Water trucks	0	0	0	2 x 18000litres
Smooth roller	1	1	0	0
Grid Roller and Tow tractor	0	0	0	1
Tamping roller	0	0	0	1
Dozer	0	0	0	1
Crane Truck	0			1
Road Marker self-propelled	0	0	0	5
Asphalt milling machine	0			1
Double drum asphalt compactor	6	2	4	6

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.8 .4 Incomplete Provincial D-Roads (Bermuda Roads)

DRAFT

Incomplete Provincial roads implemented by the Municipality (Bermuda Roads)

PROJECT NAME	ROAD NUMBER	TOTAL KM	KM COVERED TO DATE	OUTSTANDING KM
Phomolong to Moshate to Tjatjaneng	D4030	7.2KM	4 KM	3.2 KM
Upgrading of arterial road in Ga-Rampheri	D4032	11 KM	7 KM	4 KM
Upgrading of Mohlonong to Kalkspruit	D3370	13 KM	5.2 KM	7.8 KM
Upgrading of Lonsdale to Percy Clinic via Flora	D3405	4.9 KM	3.5 KM	1.4 KM
Upgrading of Mamatsha (Makubung to Boshega	D4000 - D4020	21.5 KM	11.3 KM	10.2 KM
Upgrading of arterial road Kgohloane to Makgofe	D3422 – D3390	16.4KM	10.8KM	5.6 KM
Upgrading of arterial road D977 (Silicon to Matobole)	D977	19 KM	7 KM	12 KM
Upgrading of arterial road (Nobody to Laastehoop to Mothapo)	D1809 – D4030	20 KM	5.4 KM	14.6 KM
Upgrading of arterial road Sebayeng Mantheding to Ga-Dikgale	D3959 – D3997	8.5 KM	6.4 KM	2.1 KM
Upgrading of arterial road Mamadila to Ramakgaphola to Manamela	D3413 – D3414	15.3 KM	5 KM	10.3 KM
Arterial roads Molepo Maja Chuene Cluster (Paledi)	D4016	18.4 KM	8.4 KM	10 KM
Upgrading of Mmotong to Sengatane road	D3422	13.8 KM	5.8 KM	8 KM

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.9 ROAD PER WARD PROGRAMME

As the community of Polokwane have prioritise Roads as their top priority need during the Draft IDP Public Participation Process, Council of the City of Polokwane have approved the Final IDP with road project for **all 45 wards.** Below are some of the road's projects that are currently under construction in all 7 Municipal Clusters.

The directorate has managed to complete 18.36 km of surfacing and paving 1.92km of road during the 2025/2026 financial year with the aim of improving accessibility of services to the communities, rehabilitated 12.36km, 14.94 km of road was re-gravelled to at least improve accessibility to villages and 3968.9 km of roads were bladed, 12 low level bridges constructed, 8 speed humps constructed, 78 002.05 m^2 of Pothole patched

DRAFT

11.10 ROADS MARKING PROGRAMME

11.10.1 Road Marking at Church Street

Road Marking Church Street

Road Marking at Church Street

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.10.2 Road Marking in the City CBD

Road Marking in the City CBD – Church Street

Road Marking at Seshego Cluster

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.10.3 Road Marking in Mankweng Cluster (Ga Thoka)

Road Marking in Mankweng Cluster

Road Marking in Mankweng Cluster

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.10.4 Road Marking in City Cluster

Road Marking in Klein Munnik

Road Marking in Compensatie Street

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.10.5 Road Marking at Seshego Cluster

Road Marking at Seshego Cluster

Road Marking at Seshego Cluster

Source: PLK Roads SBU

DRAFT

11.11 ROADS SIGNS PROGRAMME

11.11.1 Installation of New Road Signs

Installation of New Road Signs

Installation of New Road Signs

Installation of New Road Signs

Installation of New Road Signs

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.11.2 Refurbishment of Street Names Boards at Ladanna (Ward 23)

Refurbishment of Street Names Boards at Ladanna (Ward 23)

Refurbishment of Street Names Boards at Ladanna (Ward 23)

Refurbishment of Street Names Boards at Welgelegen

DRAFT

CHAPTER TWELVE -Financial Analysis

12.1. FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT AND VIABILITY

12.1.1 Revenue Management

The municipality derives revenue from rendering of services as mandated through the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) and other related regulations. Municipal revenue comprises of own revenue as well as grants from the national government. Own revenue contributes **59%** of total revenue and which shows an increase as compared to 56% in the prior financial year.

The municipality main sources of own revenue are as follows:

- Property Rates
- Electricity
- Water
- Refuse
- Sewerage
- Other income such as rental of property, investment income, traffic fines and others.

The municipality's own revenue across the board has increased by an average of around 5**%.** The main contribution to the year-on-year increase in service charges is mainly due to the increase in the tariffs and the implementation of the new valuation roll which commenced from 01 July 2024 until 30 June 2029 and the implementation of strict credit control measures.

All the grants from the National government is dealt with in terms of the requirements of Division of Revenue Act (DoRA) and management of own revenue is dealt with in terms of the MFMA. The municipality also applies its indigent policy to cater for the indigent population within its jurisdiction.

12.1.2 Status on Revenue Management

The collection rate has increased by 5% from 89% reported in the prior year to an average of 94% in the current year. The increase was attained despite having a significant impact in the poor performance of the economy. The improvement is as a result of intensifying credit control measures and the appointment of debt collectors which resulted in increase in revenue collection.

12.1.3. Revenue Enhancement

Tariff setting challenges.

The MFMA and enabling legislations such as the Water and Electricity Acts requires tariffs to be cost reflective.

DRAFT

Although the municipality is showing a positive gross profit percentage on service charges the following **challenges** remain:

- High tariff increases by Eskom and Lepelle Northern Water
- Increase in water and electricity distributions costs.

.

The municipality is **addressing** these challenges by exploring alternative cost savers such as power banks and the installation of pre-paid meters to ensure customer are charged at the rate that they can afford.

The municipality have approximately at total of 61 130 prepaid electricity meters and 2270 on conventional electricity meters. The revenue collected from prepaid electricity meters amounts to R68 839 272.36 (20 281 072.6 kwh) and conventional electricity meters amounts to R68 826 472.71 (23 618 348.6 kwh) and basic charges amounting to R12 009 929.27 (billed on the flat rate).

A total of 30 001 prepaid water meters install and approximately 26 910 conventional meters. The revenue collected from prepaid water meters amounts to R4 041 860.43 (161 222.8 kl) and conventional water meters amounts to R24 519 701.01 (896 497.9195 kl) and basic charges amounting to R1 391 419.23 (billed on the flat rate). The municipality has a total of 19 318 prepaid water meters which are not purchasing as the meters are dysfunctional.

12.1.4 Credibility of bills and data

Since the implementation of the new system around 2019, the municipality is able to produce **credible billings**. The installation of **prepaid meters** has also assisted in the production of credible revenue bills and reports and lessened the number of queries on consumption. The municipality has implemented revenue of services to be billed according to the permitted use instead of the category of the valuation which changes during supplementary valuation, furthermore the implementation of the new valuation roll which commenced from 01 July 2024 to 30 June 2029 is dominantly the only alter which changes the charges of the account triggered by a change in category, Market value or the effective date of the change mainly for billing of property rates, waste water manager and waste management.

12.1.5 Collections from households, businesses and Government Departments.

The municipality has averaged a collection rate of 94% percent closest to the budgeted rate of 87% regardless of the global socio-economic challenges.

The installation of the new system has allowed the municipality to interface the billing module with the credit control module. This ensures that the cut off list is done almost at real time thereby making it possible to perform more cut offs on a daily basis improving the collection rate.

As far as government is considered, collections have improved as a separate cut off list is implemented. The debt of government debts increased due to the data cleansing and updates on the treasury data for AD report.

DRAFT

12.1.6 Implementation of revenue enhancement strategy

The municipality has implemented a revenue enhancement strategy which came into effect in the 2025/26 financial year. The purpose of the revenue enhancement strategy is to provide a strategic framework of resolving the cash flow constraints that undermine the service delivery challenges to the City of Polokwane residents.

Polokwane Local Municipality, as the economic hub of Limpopo, faces increasing demands for infrastructure development, service delivery, and financial sustainability. However, the municipality continues to face challenges with revenue collection efficiency more specifically on older debt, a narrow tax base, and public resistance to tariff increases. This strategy outlines targeted interventions to enhance both existing and potential revenue streams while promoting fiscal accountability and improving service delivery to residents and businesses.

The strategy focuses on optimising existing revenue sources for the Polokwane Municipality which involves improving efficiency in revenue collection, reducing leakages, and enhancing the value derived from current income streams. Below is a structured approach to optimising existing revenue sources:

1. Property Rates

- Complete the General Valuation Roll (GVR) review and update every 5 years.
- Expand the valuation roll through a GIS-based property audit.
    - Regularize informal properties with community engagement and incentives.

2. **Service Charges**

- Implement cost-reflective tariffs for electricity, water, sanitation, and refuse.
- Improve meter reading accuracy (smart metering where feasible).
- Reduce water and electricity losses through infrastructure upgrades

12.1.7 Key Challenges and Interventions in Revenue Management

No	Challenge	Intervention
1	Meter tempering/faulty meters	The establishment of the revenue protection unit to deal with specific matters on possible meter tempering and addressing faulty meters and other challenges that may contribute to under billing and under collections. Use of third-party data to analyse possible tempering or dysfunctional meters through the revenue protection unit.
2	Poor economy impacts	Implement quarterly road shows for indigent support and incentive programme to qualifying customers. Implement quarterly vetting of the approved indigent customers to ensure their financial position still falls within the indigent criteria.
3	Mankweng debt book	Enforce credit control - Discontinue flat rate charges and bill for actual fixed charges and fixed estimated consumption.

DRAFT

No	Challenge	Intervention
		Installation of prepaid water meters in Mankweng
4	Growing Debt Book	Implement stricter credit control measures through handing over long outstanding debts to debt collects to implement blacklisting measures and sale in execution for qualifying properties.
5	Revenue collection not maximised	Utilisation of the implemented revenue enhancement strategy to maximising revenue collection as well as maintenance of existing revenue streams.
6	Inability to perform credit control measures in Eskom supplied areas	Enter into MOA with ESKOM to enable the municipality to implement credit control measures such as disconnection of services and to further implement stricter credit control measures such as blacklisting and sale in execution for qualifying properties,

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.2. FINANCIAL POLICY FRAMEWORK

In terms of governing legislation, the municipality is required to develop and implement rates and tariff policies or bylaws to guide the revenue management of the Municipality. The following budget related policies have been approved and adopted by council.

1. Asset Management Policy
2. Billing Policy
3. Borrowing Policy
4. Budget and Virement Policy
5. Cash management and Investment Policy
6. Claims committee and loss Policy
7. Consumer Deposit Policy
8. Cost Containment Policy
9. Credit control and debt collection Policy
10. Expenditure Management Policy
11. Fare Policy and Fare Structure
12. Funding and reserves Policy
13. Indigent and Social Assistance Policy
14. Integrated Customer Care Policy
15. Inventory Policy
16. Leave Policy

DRAFT

17. Performance Management System Policy (Organizational and Employee Management Policy)
18. Property Rates Policy
19. Subsistence and Travelling Policy
20. Supply chain management Policy
21. Tariff Policy
22. Unauthorized, Irregular, Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure Policy
23. Petty cash policy

12.3 DEBTORS MANAGEMENT

12.3.1 Debtor Book

The debtors book decreased by 1.8%, from R2.099 billion reported in June 2025 to R2.061 billion in the current financial year. The reduction is attributable to improved collections arising from intensified credit control measures including collection from long outstanding debt from rural development of R135 million, and the introduction of the Debtors Incentive Scheme, which created favourable conditions for customers to settle their outstanding balances at reduced amounts. These interventions have contributed to a reduction in long outstanding debt when compared to the previous financial year. The City will continue to implement and strengthen credit control and debt collection measures to sustain revenue collection and manage the accumulation of arrear debt.

DRAFT

12.3.2 Debtors Aging (30 June 2026)

DEBTORS AGE ANALYSIS FOR THE MONTH ENDING JUNE 2026										
Description		Budget Year 2025/26								
R thousands	NT Code	0-30 Days	31-60 Days	61-90 Days	91-120 Days	121-150 Dys	151-180 Dys	181 Dys-1 Yr	Over 1Yr	Total
Debtors Age Analysis By Income Source										
Water	1200	R29 701 680	R9 722 935	R7 124 806	R6 254 043	R15 005 412	R3 965 447	R3 759 837	R255 309 190	R330 843 350
Electricity	1300	R92 029 623	R15 376 620	R9 601 855	R5 093 582	R4 169 225	R3 482 945	R3 271 567	R127 187 076	R260 212 493
Property Rates	1400	R55 368 762	R18 786 123	R13 941 399	R11 869 370	R11 015 324	R10 692 759	R10 008 191	R344 135 879	R475 817 807
Waste Water Management	1500	R17 207 266	R6 866 630	R5 107 453	R4 499 133	R4 197 337	R3 898 541	R4 390 681	R118 714 296	R164 881 337
Waste Management	1600	R15 716 605	R6 655 634	R4 898 659	R4 231 882	R3 921 660	R3 854 310	R3 634 177	R137 288 445	R180 201 372
Property Rental Debtors	1700	R0	R0	R0	R0	R0	R0	R0	R102 827	R102 827
Interest on Arrear Debtor Accounts	1810	R10 898 528	R10 637 957	R10 310 136	R11 058 893	R10 789 568	R10 600 908	R10 472 006	R443 911 736	R518 679 732
Other	1900	R3 914 559	R3 291 982	R3 515 206	R3 036 636	R3 157 234	R3 002 416	R2 733 945	R108 399 054	R131 051 032
Total By Income Source	**2000**	**R224 837 023**	**R71 337 881**	**R54 499 514**	**R46 043 539**	**R52 255 760**	**R39 497 326**	**R38 270 404**	**R1 535 048 503**	**R2 061 789 950**
Debtors Age Analysis By Customer Group										
Organs of State	2200	R33 095 196	R9 207 774	R6 944 866	R7 367 115	R7 170 252	R7 111 107	R7 048 850	R169 506 217	R247 451 377
Commercial	2300	R90 152 230	R18 255 524	R13 921 273	R9 203 038	R8 262 976	R6 308 675	R5 722 437	R255 789 808	R407 615 961
Households	2400	R101 589 597	R43 874 583	R33 633 375	R29 473 386	R36 822 532	R26 077 544	R25 499 117	R1 109 752 478	R1 406 722 612
Other	2500	R0	R0	R0	R0	R0	R0	R0	R0	R0
Total By Customer Group	**2600**	**R224 837 023**	**R71 337 881**	**R54 499 514**	**R46 043 539**	**R52 255 760**	**R39 497 326**	**R38 270 404**	**R1 535 048 503**	**R2 061 789 950**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.3.3 Debtors Aging (30 June 2025) Comparative

DEBTORS AGE ANALYSIS FOR THE MONTH ENDING JUNE 2025									
Description	Budget Year 2024/25								
R thousands	0-30 Days	31-60 Days	61-90 Days	91-120 Days	121-150 Dys	151-180 Dys	181 Dys-1 Yr	Over 1Yr	Total
Debtors Age Analysis By Income Source									
Water	R 26 421 205.00	R 8 972 085.00	R 5 992 649.00	R 5 030 752.00	R 5 479 119.00	R 4 546 304.00	R 4 274 305.00	R 259 410 993.00	R 320 127 412.00
Electricity	R 88 032 222.00	R 21 460 144.00	R 7 438 662.00	R 5 846 315.00	R 7 711 816.00	R 6 809 984.00	R 5 389 284.00	R 124 981 701.00	R 267 670 128.00
Property Rates	R 56 199 190.00	R 21 359 707.00	R 14 684 121.00	R 12 895 748.00	R 11 996 995.00	R 11 282 436.00	R 10 851 399.00	R 411 811 084.00	R 551 080 680.00
Waste Water Management	R 19 039 811.00	R 7 483 899.00	R 6 253 571.00	R 5 561 514.00	R 4 270 271.00	R 4 043 484.00	R 3 816 310.00	R 103 621 861.00	R 154 090 721.00
Waste Management	R 15 691 287.00	R 7 072 254.00	R 5 323 249.00	R 4 746 323.00	R 4 347 222.00	R 4 135 831.00	R 3 917 719.00	R 131 965 858.00	R 177 199 743.00
Property Rental Debtors	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R 102 827.00	R 102 827.00
Interest on Arrear Debtor Accounts	R 12 861 170.00	R 12 455 247.00	R 12 127 186.00	R 11 898 638.00	R 11 679 095.00	R 11 502 164.00	R 11 297 479.00	R 417 926 561.00	R 501 747 540.00
Other	R 4 658 326.00	R 3 756 965.00	R 3 064 895.00	R 2 774 434.00	R 2 615 572.00	R 2 808 040.00	R 2 205 485.00	R 105 726 716.00	R 127 610 433.00
Total By Income Source	**R 222 903 211.00**	**R 82 560 301.00**	**R 54 884 333.00**	**R 48 753 724.00**	**R 48 100 090.00**	**R 45 128 243.00**	**R 41 751 981.00**	**R 1 555 547 601.00**	**R 2 099 629 484.00**
Debtors Age Analysis By Customer Group									
Organs of State	R 28 881 006.00	R 11 211 663.00	R 8 405 332.00	R 7 610 872.00	R 7 478 227.00	R 7 195 713.00	R 7 005 046.00	R 249 186 529.00	R 326 974 388.00
Commercial	R 97 138 081.00	R 25 058 373.00	R 11 413 694.00	R 10 055 058.00	R 10 340 658.00	R 8 826 155.00	R 7 663 384.00	R 251 357 935.00	R 421 853 338.00
Households	R 96 884 124.00	R 46 290 265.00	R 35 065 307.00	R 31 087 794.00	R 30 281 205.00	R 29 106 375.00	R 27 083 551.00	R 1 055 003 137.00	R 1 350 801 758.00
Other	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -
Total By Customer Group	**R 222 903 211.00**	**R 82 560 301.00**	**R 54 884 333.00**	**R 48 753 724.00**	**R 48 100 090.00**	**R 45 128 243.00**	**R 41 751 981.00**	**R 1 555 547 601.00**	**R 2 099 629 484.00**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

DRAFT

Description	Amount	%
Mankweng	R447 686 706.55	22
Govt debtors	R157 870 911.68	8
Interest on outstanding debts	R516 344 149.91	25
Indigent debtors	R40 183 370.61	2
Staff & Councillor Report	R31 743.19	0
Other debtors (commercial, institutions and households)	R899 673 068.06	44
TOTAL	**R2 061 789 950.00**	**100%**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.3.4 Mankweng Debt

The Mankweng debt constitutes **22%** of the total debt. The Mankweng residential customers were allowed to enter into agreement on the R292.00 which was R200 for water and R92 for sewerage and refuse removal. The agreement entailed would lapse as soon as a smart meter is installed.

The municipality has already made headway with regards to the installation of the smart meters, and process will mean that once a meter is installed for the residents, the billing will be based on the actual consumptions. To date a number of 1388 prepaid meters ranging 416 naked scientists and 972 ultrasonic meters

Intensive credit control measures such as disconnection of electricity cannot be implemented as the electricity in the Mankweng area is supplied by Eskom. A number 5306 out of 6211 debtors that have defaulted on their accounts have been handed over to the debt collectors to the value of R441 million during the 2025/2026 financial year.

12.3.5 Credit Control & Debt Collection Initiatives

The Municipality is currently implementing various credit control and debt collection initiatives aimed at reducing the debtor's book and improving the collection of outstanding municipal debt. These initiatives include:

1. Disconnection of non-paying customers through the regular termination of municipal services in accordance with the Municipality's Credit Control and Debt Collection Policy.
2. Blocking of electricity vending/purchases for customers who are in arrears, until an approved payment arrangement has been entered into or the outstanding balance has been settled in full.
3. Hand-over of qualifying outstanding debt to external debt collection agencies for further recovery, including the initiation of legal proceedings where necessary.

DRAFT

4. Offering structured payment arrangements and debt relief mechanisms to qualifying households and businesses experiencing financial difficulties, subject to the applicable municipal policies and approved programmes.
5. Pursuing legal proceedings against customers involved in illegal meter connections and tampering, including prosecution where sufficient evidence exists and in accordance with the applicable legislation.
6. Continued monitoring and follow-up of accounts under payment arrangements to ensure that customers remain compliant with their agreed repayment terms.
7. Implementation and administration of the Debtors Incentive Scheme Programme, aimed at facilitating the recovery of long outstanding debt by offering approved discounts to qualifying customers, thereby creating favourable conditions for the settlement of arrears.

The municipality implemented the following Debt Collection measures to date:

- The appointment of three (3) external debt collection agencies mandated to recover outstanding municipal debt that is more than 90 days in arrears.
- As at **30 June 2026**, a total of **38590** accounts with an outstanding debt of **R1.627 billio**n had been handed over to the three (3) appointed debt collection agencies for recovery.

DESCRIPTION	QUANTITY	HANDOVER VALUE	TOTAL PAYMENTS
ALPHA COLLECTIONS	12488	R495 336 022.67	-R118 781 013.76
MAHUMANI INC	13059	R492 930 242.11	-R130 502 261.35
REVCO COLLECTIONS	13043	R421 509 301.29	-R166 048 230.94
	38590	**R1 409 775 566.07**	**-R415 331 506.05**

- Intensified credit control measures, including targeted engagement with government departments, have accelerated the settlement of outstanding government debt. These interventions contributed to payments by several departments, including the settlement of the long-standing Mankweng Hospital debt.

12.4 Indigent support

12.4.1 Status of Municipal Indigent Register

The municipality currently has **11166** approved indigent beneficiaries on its database and spends around **R15.4 million** for free basic services within the urban area.

DRAFT

12.4.2 Processes in indigent Applications

TASK	TIMELINE	OUTPUT
Receipt of application files from the Municipality and consumption and account confirmation	**5 days**	Received documents to be sorted according to the wards
Capturing of the information on the indigent system and scanning of documents	**3 days**	Verification of the collected files and the existing information on the system
Distribution of Public Notice Letters and SMS	**2 days**	Clear and precise instructions to be forwarded to the applicants beforehand, for the required attachments
Site Visits	**1 days**	Collection of the required documents from the applicants, and photographic evidence of the indigent household
Capturing of updated documents on the system	**2 days**	Scanning and uploading of the updated documents on the system. And quality check.
External Vetting	**14 Days**	The collated documents and the information to be vetted for correctness.
Vetting Results and follow up and customisation	**4 days**	Compilation of a Report to the Municipality on recommendations of the applications based on the results of the external vetting.
Send Report to the Municipality for decision	**3 days**	Compiled and consolidated report to be forwarded to the Municipality.
Upload results of the application unto the system	**3 Days**	Receipt of the decisions of the applications from the Municipality
Send outcome results to the applicant through sms	**1 day**	Informing the applicants of the outcome of their applications.
Write Off and flagging as indigent on the system	**3 to 15 days after month end done**	The capturing and rebates and possible write off applied on the system after system month end is processed.

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.4.3 Challenges and Mitigation/Control – Indigent Support

Challenges	Description	Mitigation/Control
Late application	Residents frequently apply for indigent assistance only after their municipal services have been terminated due to non-payment, at which point they claim indigent status.	Customers remain liable for payment of their municipal accounts until they have been formally assessed and approved as indigent. Submission of an application does not automatically confer indigent status or suspend the customer's payment obligations.

Challenges	Description	Mitigation/Control
Incomplete/ inaccurate information	Applicants frequently submit incomplete, inaccurate or outdated information and supporting documentation, which delays the verification and assessment process.	A checklist of required information and documentation is compiled for each application, and officials undertake verification of the information provided. The vetting process may identify additional information that was not initially disclosed by the applicant, requiring further investigation and supporting documentation.
Unavailability of applicant	• Customers are often unavailable when requested to participate in the verification process, resulting in delays in finalising applications. • In some instances, applicants are unable to complete the site verification process because the required supporting documentation or confirmation of household circumstances are not readily available.	Up to **three site visits** may be conducted before an application is disqualified due to the applicant's failure to facilitate the verification process, after which the application may have to be re started from the initial phase.
Ownership & Deceased estates	In instances where the registered owner of a property has passed away, the property may continue to be occupied as a family residence, while other members of the household may be employed or have income.	These circumstances require additional verification of the household's composition, income and ownership status and may require supporting documentation relating to the deceased estate. Consequently, such applications often take longer to finalise.
False information/claims	Applicants and existing indigent beneficiaries do not always disclose changes in their circumstances timeously, including changes in employment status, the employment of a spouse or other household members, or improvements in the household's financial circumstances.	Where verification establishes that a beneficiary provided incorrect or incomplete information or no longer meets the qualifying criteria, the beneficiary may be disqualified from the programme and the indigent status reversed, subject to the applicable policy and verification process.

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.4.4 Indigent Support

The total value of indigent subsidies provided by the council for June amounts to R15 474 902. 73 for 11 165 beneficiaries.

Indigent Report as at 30 June 2026	
Opening Indigent Beneficiaries	13257
Additions during June 2026	149
Disqualifications during June 2026 (Deceased, Not recommended by June Vetting)	2241
Closing Beneficiaries	11165

.

New Applications 30 June 2026	
Indigent Applications Received for the Month June 2026	97
Indigent Applications received & finalized June 2026	97
Indigent Applications Pending review after month-end June 2026	0

Appeals for June 2026	
Total Appeals received	198
Indigent appeals Finalized and Approved	103
Indigent appeals Finalized and Declined	95
Description	**Amount**
Balance Write off	R4 735 699.61
Assessment rates rebate	R1 965 388.53
Service Rebate (Sewerage, Refuse, Other Basic charges)	R5 541 405.61
Meter Rebate (Water) @ R 87.02	R958 612.32
Meter Rebate (Electricity) @ R 210.81	R2 273 796.66
Total Cost to Council in June 2026	**R15 474 902.73**
Indigent Levies @ R 134.44	R1 481 932.12
Balances	
Opening Balance	R44 009 788.87
Payments	R1 481 932.12
Closing Balance	**R40 183 370.61**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.4.5 Debtors Incentive Scheme

The municipality currently offers a debt incentive scheme which commenced from 29 October for a period of 12 months to encourage customers to settle their accounts promptly, allowing the municipality to recover at least a portion of the cost amounting to R34 852 340.77.

DESCRIPTION	INCENTIVE	PAYMENT
Oct-25	R1 300 672.46	R556 909.50
Nov-25	R1 728 041.09	R590 905.08
Dec-25	R14 925 820.61	R13 200 770.46
Jan-26	R7 728 975.01	R2 691 749.01
Feb-26	R3 389 051.28	R2 388 770.59
Mar-26	R4 935 258.75	R3 062 844.41
Apr-26	R3 328 539.42	R3 233 623.29
May-26	R3 330 487.00	R3 033 069.00
Jun-26	R5 339 162.42	R6 093 699.43
TOTAL	**R46 006 008.04**	**R34 852 340.77**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

The Incentive Scheme Programme has continued to produce positive results in debt recovery by providing financial relief to customers with long-outstanding municipal debt while simultaneously improving the Municipality's cash flow.
To maximise customer participation before the incentive programme comes to an end, the following interventions will continue to be implemented:

- Intensification of public awareness campaigns through all municipal communication platforms.
- Distribution of SMS notifications and municipal account inserts to customers with outstanding debt.
- Increased customer engagement through quarterly cluster outreach programmes and stakeholder engagements.
- Intensified credit control measures, particularly the blocking of prepaid electricity vending for defaulting customers, to encourage the settlement of arrear accounts through the Incentive Scheme.

12.5 Revenue generation from other SBUs

Revenue component	Activity to enhance revenue
Traffic fines	Integrated system to collate all fines payable within Polokwane's jurisdiction. To be paid when renewing annual license fees
Illegal dumping	Utilizing our fleet to perform monitoring

DRAFT

Revenue component	Activity to enhance revenue
Clean up fees after conferences	Utilize our cleaners to clean up after conferences for a fee
Hawkers	Create an automated database and ensure debt is collected
Markets	Encourage flea markets and others for a fee
Revenue Maximisation	Revenue generation committee established, monitor and enhance controls to achieve maximum revenue. Develop revenue enhancement strategy

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.6 FINANCIAL POLICY FRAMEWORK

In terms of governing legislation, the municipality is required to develop and implement rates and tariff policies or bylaws to guide the revenue management of the Municipality. The following budget related policies have been approved and adopted by council.

1. Asset Management Policy
2. Billing Policy
3. Borrowing Policy
4. Budget and Virement Policy.
5. Cash management and Investment Policy
6. Claims committee and loss Policy.
7. Consumer Deposit Policy
8. Cost Containment Policy
9. Credit control and debt collection Policy
10. Customer Care Policy
11. Expenditure Management Policy
12. Fare Policy and Fare Structure
13. Funding and reserves Policy
14. Indigent and Social Assistance Policy
15. Integrated Customer Care Policy
16. Inventory Policy
17. Leave Policy
18. Organizational and Senior Managers Performance Management Policy
19. Petty Cash Procedure Manual
20. Property Rates Policy
21. Subsistence and Travelling Policy

DRAFT

22. Supply chain management Policy
23. Tariff Policy
24. Unauthorized, Irregular, Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure Policy
25. Petty cash policy

12.7 Expenditure Management

12.7.1 Expenditure Management Status Quo/Achievement

- All conditional grants maintained through Grant register and accounted in primary bank account.
- No double payments encountered to service providers.
- Long - Term Loans are paid on time per loan agreement and conditions
- Salaries, Eskom, and Lepelle Northern Water bills are paid on a monthly basis, with an exception of 50% payment of LNW which is currently on dispute.
- **Roll overs** are **cash backed** in terms of National Treasury circular 99.
- All creditors submitted to Finance and recorded on the system at the end of June were paid within 30 days.
- Monthly VAT declaration to SARS are done.
- Timeous payment of Third Parties and SARS.

12.7.2 Expenditure analysis

Description	Total Budget	Total Actual	% to total expenditure
Bulk Purchases	1 299 124 630.99	1 299 124 425.14	22%
Contracted Services	1 529 554 647.86	1 410 307 519.83	24%
Depreciation and Amortisation	407 814 169.00	846 066 939.38	15%
Disposal of Fixed and Intangible Assets	-	7 139 378.35	0%
Employee Related Cost	1 263 284 848.93	1 202 733 495.85	21%
Impairment Loss	180 169 073.00	-	0%
Interest; Dividends and Rent on Land	41 124 330.00	46 143 854.77	1%
Inventory	-	2 769 350.89	0%
Inventory Consumed	353 911 523.49	385 234 179.17	7%
Operational Cost	418 248 663.10	342 336 316.79	6%
Remuneration of Councillors	67 841 438.63	67 841 437.15	1%
Transfers and Subsidies	67 120 961.00	67 120 000.00	1%
Water Losses	100 000 000.00	115 047 452.16	2%
Total	**5 728 194 286.00**	**5 791 864 349.48**	**100%**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

The municipality incurred total operating expenditure of R5.792 billion against an approved budget of R5.728 billion, resulting in an overall over-expenditure of R63.67 million (1.1%). The expenditure profile was primarily driven by Contracted Services (24%), Bulk Purchases (22%), and Employee Related Costs (21%), which together accounted for approximately 67% of total operating expenditure.

Bulk Purchases amounted to R1.299 billion, in line with the approved budget, indicating effective management of bulk electricity purchases throughout the financial year.

Contracted Services recorded expenditure of R1.410 billion, reflecting an under-expenditure of R119.25 million (7.8%) against budget. This is attributable to delays in the implementation of outsourced projects and contracted service activities.

Depreciation and Amortisation amounted to R846.07 million, exceeding the budget by R438.25 million (107%). The significant variance is likely due to year-end asset register updates, additional asset capitalisation, and depreciation adjustments, and should be further investigated.

An unbudgeted loss on the disposal of fixed and intangible assets of R7.14 million was recognised during the financial year.

Employee Related Costs totalled R1.203 billion, resulting in savings of R60.55 million (4.8%) compared to the budget. The under-expenditure is mainly attributable to vacant positions, delayed appointments, and staff turnover during the year.

Although R180.17 million was budgeted for Impairment Losses, no impairment expenditure was recognised during the financial year.

Interest, Dividends and Rent on Land amounted to R46.14 million, exceeding the budget by R5.02 million (12.2%), mainly due to higher-than-anticipated finance charges and interest costs.

Inventory expenditure of R2.77 million was incurred despite no budget provision being made for this item.

Inventory Consumed amounted to R385.23 million, exceeding the budget by R31.32 million (8.9%), indicating higher consumption of stores and materials to support service delivery.

Operational Costs totalled R342.34 million, reflecting an under-expenditure of R75.91 million (18.1%), mainly due to cost-containment measures and delays in implementing planned operational activities.

Expenditure on Remuneration of Councillors and Transfers and Subsidies was in line with the approved budget, indicating effective expenditure management in these categories.

Water Losses amounted to R115.05 million, exceeding the budget by R15.05 million (15.0%). This indicates that water losses were higher than anticipated, highlighting the need to strengthen interventions aimed at reducing non-revenue water.

DRAFT

Overall, while the municipality maintained expenditure within budget for several key cost categories, the overall over-expenditure was mainly driven by the substantial increase in Depreciation and Amortisation, together with higher expenditure on Inventory Consumed, Water Losses, and Interest Charges. These increases were partially offset by savings on Contracted Services, Employee Related Costs, Operational Costs, and the absence of impairment losses. Continued monitoring of expenditure, particularly non-cash accounting adjustments and water loss management, will be essential to improve financial performance.

12.7.3 Key Contracted Services

The top 20 contracted service categories account for the majority of the municipality's expenditure on contracted services. Overall, expenditure was largely within budget. See table below: -

Description	Total Budget	Total Actual
Civil	301 932 429	248 299 443
Security Services	181 512 984	180 111 110
Commissions and Committees	135 855 206	135 597 033
Refuse Removal	117 743 966	120 504 361
Maintenance of Equipment	101 416 811	106 209 230
Maintenance of Unspecified Assets	74 815 880	64 443 505
Transport Services	57 315 161	56 206 228
Transportation	57 812 251	55 175 943
Legal Advice and Litigation	59 360 000	53 170 542
Sewerage Services	54 483 670	52 804 106
Personnel and Labour	51 468 172	50 002 657
Maintenance of Buildings and Facilities	53 708 672	49 161 837
Electrical	54 240 518	44 180 887
Business and Financial Management	51 478 216	40 093 746
Laboratory Services:Water	50 568 894	35 884 326
Communications	33 270 675	33 146 608
Safeguard and Security	12 034 196	12 147 213
Accounting and Auditing	12 130 456	11 483 986
Call Centre	7 700 000	7 700 000
Gardening Services	2 038 881	5 420 961

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.7.4 Operational Costs

The top 20 operational cost items reflect varied spending patterns, with most expenditure categories remaining within their approved budgets. Overall, the expenditure demonstrates prudent financial management, although some categories indicate slower implementation of planned activities.

Description	Total Budget	Total Actual
Advertising; Publicity and Marketing	77 082 157	70 721 158
Wet Fuel	45 000 000	43 615 576
Insurance Underwriting	39 850 785	29 608 126
External Computer Service	36 294 257	32 115 008
Municipal Services	32 889 092	4 507 996
Uniform and Protective Clothing	24 686 020	20 256 616
Communication	20 753 932	13 603 691
Indigent Relief	20 000 000	18 148 502
External Audit Fees	18 874 656	16 788 962
Professional Bodies; Membership and Subscription	15 288 810	11 961 789
Ward Committees	14 440 000	10 946 010
Hire Charges	13 315 744	4 327 939
Skill Development Fund	12 375 706	10 344 290
Registration Fees	9 020 069	6 264 414
Travel Agency and Visa's	8 936 652	7 541 881
Bank Charges; Facility and Card Fees	8 331 870	6 387 376
Workmen's Compensation Fund	7 657 138	7 651 434
Travel and Subsistence	4 622 108	2 246 131
Learnerships and Internships	3 440 978	2 665 086
Bursaries (Employees)	1 763 850	696 569

Overall, the top 20 operational cost items indicate that the municipality effectively managed most expenditure categories within the approved budget. High budget utilisation was achieved in Wet Fuel, Advertising, Publicity and Marketing, Indigent Relief, External Audit Fees, and the Workmen's Compensation Fund.

DRAFT

12.7.5 Overtime

Vote Description	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Adjusted Budget with Virements	June	YTD actual	YTD Budget	YTD variance	% Spent vs Budget	% Spent vs YTD Budget
Vote 1 - CHIEF OPERATIONS OFFICE	1 011 996	1 011 996	983 671	51 614	760 934	1 011 996	- 251 062	75%	82%
Non Structured	999 988	999 988	983 671	51 614	760 934	999 988.00	- 239 054	76%	83%
Structured	12 008	12 008		-	-	12 008.00	- 12 008	0%	0%
Vote 2 -MUNICIPAL MANAGER'S OFFICE	-	-		-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Non Structured	-	-		-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Structured	-	-		-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Vote 3 - WATER AND SANITATION	8 413 986	10 739 374	18 151 275	1 623 173	17 925 530	10 739 374	7 354 901	167%	182%
Non Structured	8 413 986	10 570 629	17 982 530	1 623 173	17 925 530	10 570 629.00	7 354 901	170%	185%
Structured	-		168 745	-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Shift Additional Remuneration		168 745				168 745.00			
Vote 4 - ENERGY SERVICES	8 399 999	8 568 744	11 752 712	837 086	10 614 420	8 568 744	2 214 421	124%	139%
Non Structured	8 399 999	8 399 999	11 583 967	837 086	10 614 420	8 399 999.00	2 214 421	126%	138%
Structured	-		168 745	-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Shift Additional Remuneration	-	168 745				168 745.00			
Vote 5 - COMMUNITY SERVICES	8 399 999	12 338 457	15 025 023	1 454 590	14 336 661	12 338 457	- 1 998 204	116%	127%
Non Structured	8 399 999	9 703 009	15 025 023	1 454 590	14 336 661	9 703 009.00	4 633 652	148%	161%
Structured	-			-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Shift Additional Remuneration		2 635 448				2 635 448			
Vote 6 - PUBLIC SAFETY	8 399 976	13 170 519	16 490 034	1 619 876	16 342 155	13 170 519	5 396 821	124%	135%
Non Structured	8 399 976	10 946 334	16 457 777	1 619 876	16 342 155	10 946 334.00	5 395 821	149%	163%
Structured	-		32 258	-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Shift Additional Remuneration		2 224 185				2 224 185.00			
Vote 7 - CORPORATE AND SHARED SERVICES	1 999 999	2 099 999	2 329 426	96 892	1 545 974	2 099 999	- 554 025	74%	80%
Non Structured	1 999 999	1 999 999	2 229 426	96 892	1 545 974	1 999 999.00	- 454 025	77%	84%
Structured	-	100 000	100 000	-	-	100 000	- 100 000	0%	0%
Vote 8 - PLANNING AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT	499 999	495 488	559 962	33 391	314 543	495 488	180 945	63%	69%
Non Structured	499 999	495 488	559 962	33 391	314 543	495 488.00	- 180 945	63%	69%
Structured	-	-		-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Vote 9 - BUDGET AND TREASURY OFFICE	2 000 000	3 157 607	3 173 894	226 596	2 198 902	3 157 607	958 705	70%	76%
Non Structured	2 000 000	3 157 607	3 173 894	226 596	2 198 902	3 157 607.00	- 958 705		76%
Structured	-	-		-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Vote 10 - TRANSPORT SERVICES	100 000	493 705	581 723	46 150	212 302	493 705	281 403	43%	47%
Non Structured	100 000	230 000	318 018	46 150	212 302	230 000.00	- 17 698	92%	101%
Structured	-		263 705	-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Shift Additional Remuneration		263 705				263 705.00			
Vote 12 - ROADS AND STORMWATER	2 000 000	1 000 000	1 008 010	312 080	673 187	1 000 000	326 813	67%	73%
Non Structured	2 000 000	1 000 000	1 008 010	312 080	673 187	1 000 000.00	- 326 813	67%	73%
Structured	-	-		-	-	-	-	0%	0%
Total	41 155 954	53 191 233	70 055 731	6 301 449	64 952 010	53 191 233	13 997 660	122%	133%

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

Overtime spending is within the Budget.

12.7.6 Grant Performance

Grant	Allocations	Revised Allocations	Received	Spend	Actual vs Receipts	Unspent
Local Government Financial Management Grant	2 400 000	2 400 000	2 400 000	2 400 142	100%	- 142
Infrastructure Skills Development Grant	8 000 000	8 000 000	8 000 000	8 000 465	100%	- 465
Neighbourhood Development Partnership (Schedule 5B)	44 320 000	44 320 000	23 000 000	38 832 628	169%	- 15 832 628
Integrated Urban Development Grant	433 487 000	433 487 000	433 487 000	425 139 880	98%	8 347 120
Municipal Disaster Recovery Grant	4 765 000	34 765 000	34 765 000	10 113 165	29%	24 651 835
Public Transport Network Grant	189 331 000	189 331 000	189 331 000	179 295 058	95%	10 035 942
Expanded Public Works Programme Integrated Grant (Municipality)	6 531 000	6 531 000	6 531 000	6 531 000	100%	0
Integrated National Electrification Programme (Municipal) Grant	11 755 000	11 755 000	11 755 000	11 734 598	100%	20 402
Energy Efficiency and Demand Side Management (Municipal) Grant	3 000 000	3 000 000	3 000 000	2 774 288	92%	225 713

Grant	Allocations	Revised Allocations	Received	Spend	Actual vs Receipts	Unspent
Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant (Schedule 5B)	155 509 000	155 509 000	155 509 000	155 230 971	100%	278 029
Water Services Infrastructure Grant (Schedule 5B)	65 000 000	65 000 000	65 000 000	65 050 572	100%	- 50 572
Human Settlements Development Grant	47 584 826	133 887 165	77 585 096	70 846 785	91%	6 738 311
TOTAL GRANTS	**971 682 826**	**1 087 985 165**	**1 010 363 096**	**975 949 549**	**97%**	**34 413 547**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.7.7 Non-core expenditure

Non-Core Function	Total Budget	Total Actual
CULTURAL SERVICES	44 609 668	42 958 295
DISASTER MANAGEMENT	81 370 320	79 278 391
ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH SERVICES	6 411 312	6 667 730
ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT	73 981 981	120 583 240
TRAFFIC AND LICENCES	150 099 615	157 192 605
Grand Total	**356 472 896**	**406 680 261**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

The municipality incurred expenditure of R406.68 million against a budget of R356.47 million on non-core (unfunded mandate) functions, resulting in over-expenditure of R50.21 million (14%). The overspending was primarily driven by Environmental Management, which exceeded its budget by R46.60 million (63%), and Traffic and Licences, which exceeded its budget by R7.09 million (5%). Environmental Health Services also recorded a marginal over-expenditure of R0.26 million (4%), while Cultural Services and Disaster Management remained within their allocated budgets.

The continued funding of unfunded mandates places significant pressure on the municipality's financial resources, as these functions are undertaken without adequate funding from the relevant spheres of government. This diverts resources from core municipal service delivery and increases the financial burden on the municipality. Continued engagement with the relevant provincial and national departments is required to secure sustainable funding or appropriate reimbursement for these mandated functions.

12.7.8 Challenges and Intervention for Expenditure Management

No	Challenge	Intervention
1	Municipal tariffs for electricity will soon not be cost reflective due to the high anticipated increase in Eskom tariffs in the coming years.	Diversifying energy sources through investment in renewable energy projects and independent power producers (IPPs) to reduce reliance on Eskom. improving revenue collection and reducing electricity losses (technical and non-technical losses).

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.7.9 Creditors

Outstanding trade creditors amounted to **R 392 953 830** as at **30 June 2026.**

Description R thousands	Budget Year 2025/26 0 - 30 Days	31 - 60 Days	61 - 90 Days	91 - 120 Days	121 - 150 Days	151 - 180 Days	181 Days - 1 Year	Over 1 Year	Total	Prior year totals for chart (same period)
Creditors Age Analysis By Customer Type										
Bulk Electricity	160 400	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	160 400	153 130
Bulk Water	36 068	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	36 068	30 680
PAYE deductions	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
VAT (output less input)	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Pensions / Retirement deductions	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Loan repayments	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Trade Creditors	196 486	–	–	–	–		–	–	196 486	138 407
Auditor General	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Other	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Total By Customer Type	392 954	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	392 954	322 216

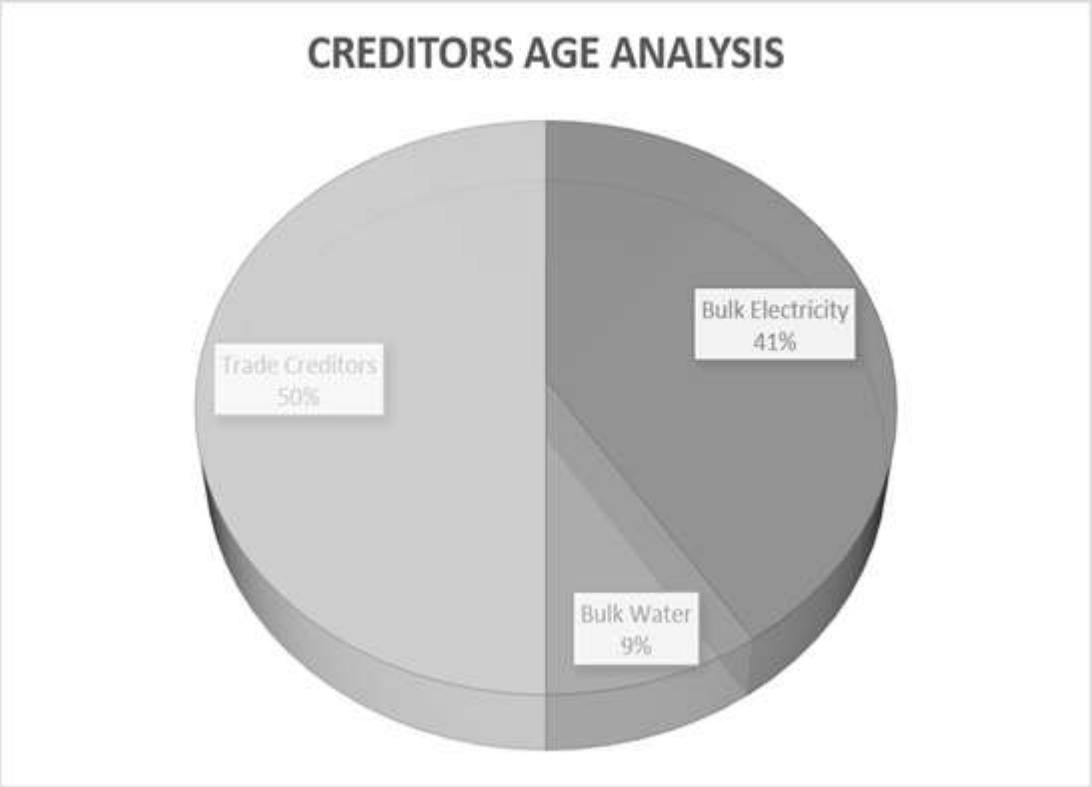
Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.7.10 Payment of creditors

Description	Ageing	0-30 days
Eskom	Current	R160 400
Lepelle Northern Water	Current	R 36 06
Other service providers	Current	R 196 486
Total		**R392 953**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.7.11. Expenditure Flow Chart



Council pays its creditors within **30 days**. In terms of MFMA Circular 49 issued by National Treasury and further section 65(2) (e) of MFMA emphasize that municipality must honour its obligation within 30 days.

12.8 BORROWINGS

INSTITUTION	APPROVED % INTEREST	OPENING BALANCE 01 JUNE 2026	INTEREST ACCRUED	INTEREST PAID JUNE 2026	REDEMPTION JUNE 2026	BALANCE 30 JUNE 2026	EXPIRY DATE/ REDEMPTION DATE
DEVELOPMENT BANK OF SOUTH AFRICA	10.75	142 555 294		-	-	142 555 294	31.01.2032
STANDARD BANK	10.98	146 264 015.93	6 643 913	-	-	146 264 016	31.07.2032
TOTAL		288 819 310	6 643 913	-	-	288 819 310	

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.8.1 Extent of existing loans, and associated finance and redemption payments.

- Repayments are made on the due dates and the municipality has not defaulted in its loans since inception.
- The loans were incurred to finance **the replacement of AC pipes and pre-paid metering projects around 2016/17 financial year**.
- These projects have returned 76% return on capital since inception in line with the 5 year pay-back period.
- However, we need to reassess how to pay back the loans sooner since the returns are being realised as plan.

12.9 Key ratios – Financial Health Assessment

SHORT TERM AND LONG TERM FINANCIAL SUSTAINABILITY					Status
Category	Indicator No	Indicator	Norm	2025/26	
FUNDING COMPLIANCE	1	Cash & Cash Equivalents	Positive situation	944 255 131	Compliant
	2	Cash less applications	Funded position	944 255 131	Compliant
	3	Cash Coverage	1 to 3 months	2 months	Compliant
ASSET MANAGEMENT AND SUSTAINABILITY	4	Repairs & Maintenance	8%	6%	Non compliant
	5	Asset renewal/rehabilitation expenditure	40% of CAPEX	24%	Non compliant
	6	Asset renewal-depreciation	100%	26.80%	Non compliant
	7	Total CAPEX as a percentage of total expenditure	10% - 20% of total capex	15%	Compliant
	8	Liquidity Ratio	1	2.12	compliant
	9	Debtors Days	30	97	Non compliant
ASSET/ LIABILITY RATIOS	10	Creditors days	30	30	Compliant
	11	Debt vs total operating revenue	45%	36%	Compliant
	12	Current ratio	1.5	2.22	Compliant
	13	Solvency Ratio	1.1	8.41	Compliant

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.10. Roll Overs Projects

MFMA Circular No. 91 refers to Section 22 (2) of the **2019** Division of Revenue Act **(DORA)** which states that any conditional grant which is not spent at the end of the municipal financial year must revert to the National Revenue Fund.

12.11. Budget Adjustments

The adjustment budget is conducted in February each Financial year. Municipal Budget is Adjusted after assessing the following:

1) Cash flow analysis on own revenue (actual vs budget).
2) Revenue performance (actual vs budget).
3) Revenue and cost optimization measures.
4) Spending trends on own funded Capital projects.
5) Unspent conditional grants.

DRAFT

12.12 Investments

The municipality is implementing stringent investment measures to ensure financial sustainability and that all the investments are made in line with the investment policy through the establishment of an investment committee. The investment policy is fully aligned to the municipal investment regulations.

Our cash resources will be invested in various institutions as per the Cash Management Policy and Investment Terms of Reference. Project Managers have provided Grant Cash flow projections to ensure smooth running of operations.

12.13 Asset Management

The asset management unit is responsible to oversee the assets with total value of **R 15 614 691 011 (15 billion)** at net book value. The municipal asset register has the following key components.

1. Investment property
2. Community and infrastructure assets.
3. Movable assets.
4. Finance leased assets.
5. Biological assets.
6. Heritage assets.
7. Library books.
8. Living and Non-Living Assets
9. Land
10. And other assets.

Municipality makes hybrid method to account for municipal assets and verification of assets is performed ongoing basis. Assets are recorded either at fair value, cost or depreciated replacement cost.

The asset management team together with the PMU and town planning unit developed a capital expenditure framework (CEF) which is high-level long-term-infrastructure plan that flows from a spatial development framework. The CEF estimates the level of affordable capital investment by the municipality over the long term. This framework largely informed our capital expenditure budget over the MTEF. The Municipality have finalised the review of the CEF and ensured long term and medium-term objectives in terms of infrastructure development are aligned.

12.13.1 State of Assets

With respect to **immovable assets,** City of Polokwane owns or otherwise controls some **372,974 fixed point assets** (e.g., facilities such as buildings, pump stations and bridges, as

DRAFT

well as water and electricity meters), and **19,920 km of linear assets** such as electricity cables and lines, water and sanitation pipes, and information and communications technology (ICT) cables. Additionally, the city's investment property portfolio **includes 38 hectares of land.**

Polokwane's immovable asset portfolios have a combined current replacement cost (CRC) value of +- **R 42 billion** and depreciated replacement cost (DRC) of +- **R 15 billion.**

	Cost	Carrying Value
Investment Property Assets	1 213 679 582	1 213 679 582
PPE	38 835 100 647	14 331 407 123
Biological Assets	16 869 981	16 869 981
Living and Non-Living Assets	17 770 117	15 446 994
Heritage Assets	22 003 568	22 003 568
Intangible Assets	70 802 975	42 052 999
	40 176 226 870	**15 641 460 247**

12.13.2 State of Infrastructure Assets – Asset Portfolio

Asset Class	Sum of 2026 Closing Cost	Sum of 2026 Accumulated Depreciation	Sum of 2026 Accumulated Impairment	Sum of 2026 Carrying Amount Before Revaluation
Community Facilities	1 533 290 541.35	- 974 442 581.04	- 8 883 536.86	549 964 423.45
Electrical Infrastructure	6 678 024 894.60	- 5 105 164 729.90	- 3 272 634.92	1 569 587 529.78
Housing	49 649 475.82	- 38 741 182.07	- 46 968.50	10 861 325.25
Information and communication infrastructure	55 799 149.56	- 41 365 282.80	- 583 624.72	13 850 242.05
Land	470 429 098.83	-	-	470 429 098.83
Operational Buildings	922 407 208.41	- 726 769 795.27	- 3 039 513.22	192 597 899.92
Roads and Stormwater Network	297 552 328.40	- 76 637 017.87	-	220 915 310.53
Roads infrastructure	9 706 023 043.46	- 6 838 778 890.36	- 31 527 286.27	2 835 716 866.83
Sanitation Infrastructure	1 892 669 838.29	- 1 338 794 683.77	- 9 059 278.37	544 815 876.15
Solid Waste Infrastructure	352 900 866.45	- 180 400 755.36	- 1 783 242.32	170 716 868.77
Sport and recreation facilities	4 319 727 881.98	- 2 853 510 121.62	- 6 175 056.01	1 460 042 704.35
Storm water infrastructure	1 521 962 035.63	- 1 126 773 991.26	- 467 633.14	394 720 411.24
Water Supply Infrastructure	7 888 551 011.29	- 4 676 864 037.46	- 25 524 243.06	3 186 162 730.77
	35 688 987 374.07	**- 23 978 243 068.77**	**- 90 363 017.39**	**11 620 381 287.92**

Source: City of Polokwane Fixed Asset Register

12.13.3 Asset Consultants

Reason for the need of Asset Consultants

Key Points

- Specialist expertise: Around 21 employees with diverse technical skills are required to ensure compliance with GRAP standards.
- Cost efficiency: Hiring all these specialists full-time is not financially viable. Consultants bridge the gap.

DRAFT

- Organizational structure: The approved asset management unit includes positions that, once filled, will absorb much of the consultants' workload.
- Reduced consultant scope: As internal capacity grows; external consultant involvement will shrink drastically.

Implications

- In the short term, consultants remain essential for compliance.
- In the medium to long term, filling internal positions will reduce costs and build institutional knowledge.
- Strategic workforce planning is key: balance between permanent staff and consultants should evolve as the unit matures.

Value for money

Unbundling of assets, conditional assessments Unit rate calibration to ensure compliance to GRAP standards and asset register. The municipality attained unqualified audit opinion in 2024/25 financial year on these assets that require such expertise.

Skills transfer

The transfer skill plan was drafted/compiled, and progress was given on a yearly basis to **APAC)**.

All officials involved in preparation of the Asset Register were involved in the process, being financial and technical officials.

Monitoring

Weekly meeting chaired by Internal Audit in the form of OPCA (operation clean audit) and AFS readiness meetings chaired by Group CFO. Quarterly Asset Steering Committee meeting chaired by the GCFO or DCFO to ensure that all asset related issues are extensively discussed and resolved.

DRAFT

12.14 Auditor General Outcomes

12.14.1. AUDIT OUTCOMES OPINIONS PER FINANCIAL YEAR

FINANCIAL YEAR	AUDIT OUTCOME
2019/2020	Qualified
2020/2021	Qualified
2021/2022	Unqualified
2022/2023	Unqualified
2023/2024	Unqualified
2024/2025	Unqualified

FINANCIAL YEAR	AUDIT OUTCOME
2025/2026	Not yet Released

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.14.2 Audit Strategy

The Municipality established a task team to drive the Clean Audit initiative called “Operation Clean Audit” and which aims at improving governance, financial systems and service delivery at both local and provincial government level, reversing poor internal controls, poor quality of financial statements and non-compliance with Supply Chain Management whilst attaining a clean audit opinion.

The Task Team report to Council via the **APAC)** which is responsible to Council for financial and internal control oversight in line with the **APAC)** Charter.

Committee	Purpose	Frequency	Attendees
Operation Clean Audit (OPCA)	To report progress on the audit action plan.	Weekly	Management, Internal Audit and MMC for Finance
Asset management	To report progress on specific asset issues. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	GCFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
Annual Financial Statement	To report progress on the AFS process plan. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	GCFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
APAC)	To review the annual financial statements and audit action plan.	Quarterly and through special meetings.	Management, Internal Audit, Provincial Treasury and COGHSTA

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

DRAFT

12.15 FINANCIAL SUSTAINABILITY

It has been recognized that the well-managed physical development of the municipal precinct and the sustainable provision of infrastructural and social services to the citizenry of Polokwane Municipality, both depend to a large degree on the efficiency of the municipality as an institution, as well as its financial viability.

Repairs and maintenance become fundamental to financial sustainability. All revenue generating assets have to be maintained and refurbished all the time to continue rendering the requisite services and yielding the revenue required to continue as a going concern. To this end the municipality has continued to set aside more and more resources both operational and capital to ensure that the assets are in a good state.

One of the processes the municipality embarked on as part of the turnaround was to develop a turnaround strategy striving to reduce costs and enhance revenue. Specific areas were targeted for budget reduction and streamlining. Luxury spending and unplanned spending was discouraged. Certain measures have been put in place to improve the management of revenue and collection thereof. In general municipality is working hard to ensure full compliance to circular 70 of the MFMA issued by National Treasury.

12.16. SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT POLICY (SCM)

The Polokwane Municipal Council adopted the Supply Chain Management Policy which is in accordance with the requirements of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, No. 56 (MFMA), as well as the Municipal Supply Chain Management Regulations, Government Gazette Notice No. 868 of 2005. Comply with section 168(1) of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act No. 56 of 2003), made amendments to the Regulations published under General Notice No. 868 of 30 May 2005, as amended by Government Notice No. R.31 of 20 January 2017 and Government Notice No. 49863, volume 702 of 14 December 2023, regarding supply chain management, as set out in the Schedule.

Section 217 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa requires that when an organ of State contracts for goods and services, it must do so in accordance with a system which is fair, equitable, transparent, competitive and cost effective.

The Supply Chain Management Policy gives effect to these principles and the Preferential Procurement Legislation, and furthermore to comply with the provisions of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act and its Regulations promulgated in terms thereof. The SCM policy has recently been reviewed and approved by Council to ensure that controls are tightened to combat fraud and corruption in procurement processes.

12.16.1 Supply Chain Committees

Chapter 11 of the MFMA compels the municipalities to establish Supply Chain Management Units and implement the SCM Policy, which gives effect to all SCM functional areas. The

DRAFT

Supply Chain Management Unit has been established and operates under a direct supervision of the **Group Chief Financial Officer**.

Regulation 26 of the Municipal Supply Chain Management Regulations stipulates that a municipality's Supply Chain Management system must provide for a committee system for competitive bids consisting of at least a bid specification, bid evaluation and bid adjudication committee. The Municipality has established the following committees: -

- **Bid Specification Committee.**
- **Bid Evaluation Committee and**
- **Bid Adjudication Committee.**

Each Committee consists of a practitioner from Supply Chain Management and officials from key Directorates in the Municipality. The Accounting Officer is responsible for the appointment of bid committees and committees are appointed once a year and reviewed accordingly by the Accounting Officer. Although the chain of work of these Committees is intertwined, they operate separately from each other. All members of the Committees sign an Oath of Secrecy and Declaration of Interest to ensure that the bidding system is fair, transparency, openness and equitable.

Currently municipality is advertising the tenders on the CSD and municipal website as part of National Treasury initiative.

To curb irregular expenditure, the Office of the Group Chief Financial Officer has strengthened its compliance unit and developed a procurement checklist. The compliance officers verify whether all bids have been processed in accordance with the MFMA procurement regulations before been awarded.

12.16.2 SCM Challenges on Projects

List of SCM challenges on Projects	Progress to date	Solutions
Non-Responsive Bid Non-responsive bid is when service providers or contractors are failing to respond to the bid evaluation requirements. In this case, the bid is cancelled and re-advertised.	All the bids where bidders were non-responsive to the bid have been cancelled and re-advertised.	Bid specification committee to ensure that terms of reference are not biased or ambiguous and that briefing sessions be conducted for technical bids to avoid non-responsive.
Under-quoting by bidders The recommended bidders quote below the market related prices and pose a challenge in procurement of goods and services.	All bidders are invited to price negotiations in line with SCM policy section 16(1)(c) to accept or reject the proposed rates before appointment.	All recommended bidders under-go price negotiation. Those quoted below market related or average will remain at their price, will not be allocated work for items under quoted and SCM will impose the condition of not

DRAFT

List of SCM challenges on Projects	Progress to date	Solutions
		accepting bids with the lowest amount.
Bidders rejecting allocated work order for specific project On rotational basis, bidders are sent work allocation as per the consultant or in-house priced BOQ for projects, but the bidders tend to reject.	Bidders are sent the priced BOQ to assess if the allocated amount is acceptable for the project as per the market analysis and if rejects the work order will be allocated to the next in line.	SCM and PMU working together to assist the process of appointment and avoid delays. PMU and end user ensure that every request for allocation has a priced BOQ done either internal/external, but market based
Scammers targeting Potential Bidders The potential bidders are a target on a syndicate that is making promises and false demands which most are falling for the scam and exploited.	All reported cases are referred to Risk Management unit, awareness to the public and the tender document alert all bidders not to fall for the scam.	Constant awareness to all potential bidders about the scam and all bid documents outlines this scam at all times.

Source: PLK SCM SBU

12.17 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS ON A STANDARD CHART OF ACCOUNTS (mSCOA)

Background

mSCOA stands for **Municipal Standard Chart of Accounts**. It is a standardized chart of accounts implemented by **National Treasury** in South Africa to improve financial management and reporting in local government. The system aims to bring uniformity and consistency to how municipalities record and report financial transactions. Here's a more detailed explanation:

Purpose:

- ✓ mSCOA was introduced to address issues like inconsistent financial processes, irregular reporting, and poor data integration within municipalities.

Key Features:

- ➢ **Standardized Chart of Accounts:** mSCOA provides a uniform framework for classifying financial transactions, ensuring consistency across all municipalities.
- ➢ **Multi-dimensional Recording:** It requires municipalities to record transactions across seven segments: Funding, Function, Item, Project, Costing, Regional, and Standard Classification.
- ➢ **Integration with IDP:** mSCOA aims to align municipal infrastructure, planning, development (IDP), budgets, and annual financial statements.

Implementation:

- ✓ mSCOA became fully effective on **July 1, 2017**.

Benefits:

- Improved data quality and credibility.
- Greater standardization in financial management.
- Better alignment between budgets and financial reporting.
- More efficient and transparent financial processes.

- **Impact:**

mSCOA is a business reform that impacts various aspects of municipal operations, including financial management, IT infrastructure, and organizational structure.

mSCOA provides a uniform and standardized financial transaction classification framework. Essentially this means that mSCOA prescribes the method (the how) and format (the look) that municipalities and their entities should use to record and classify all expenditure (capital and operating), revenue, assets, liabilities, equity, policy outcomes and legislative reporting. mSCOA is a "proudly South African" project researched by National Treasury based on municipal practices, reporting outcomes, policy implementation and review, etc.

12.17.1 mSCOA as a Business Reform

mSCOA is a business reform rather than a mere financial reform and requires multidimensional recording and reporting of every transaction across the following 7 segments:

Minister of Finance has, in terms of section 168 of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act No.56 of 2003), and acting with the concurrence of the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs gazette the Municipal Regulations on Standard Chart of Accounts (mSCOA) into effect on 22 April 2014. Municipal SCOA provides a uniform and standardized financial transaction classification framework. Essentially this means that mSCOA prescribes the method (the how) and format (the look) that municipalities and their entities should use to record and classify all expenditure (capital and operating), revenue, assets and liabilities, policy outcomes and legislative reporting. This is done at transactional level and ensures that a municipality and its entities have minimum business processes in place. This will result in an improved understanding of the role of local government in the broader national policy framework and linkage to other government functions.

The Regulations apply to all municipalities and municipal entities and indicate its applicability and relevance to each specific municipal environment while accommodating organizational uniqueness and structural differences. The Regulation provides for a three-year preparation and readiness window and all 278 municipalities had to be compliant to the mSCOA classification framework.

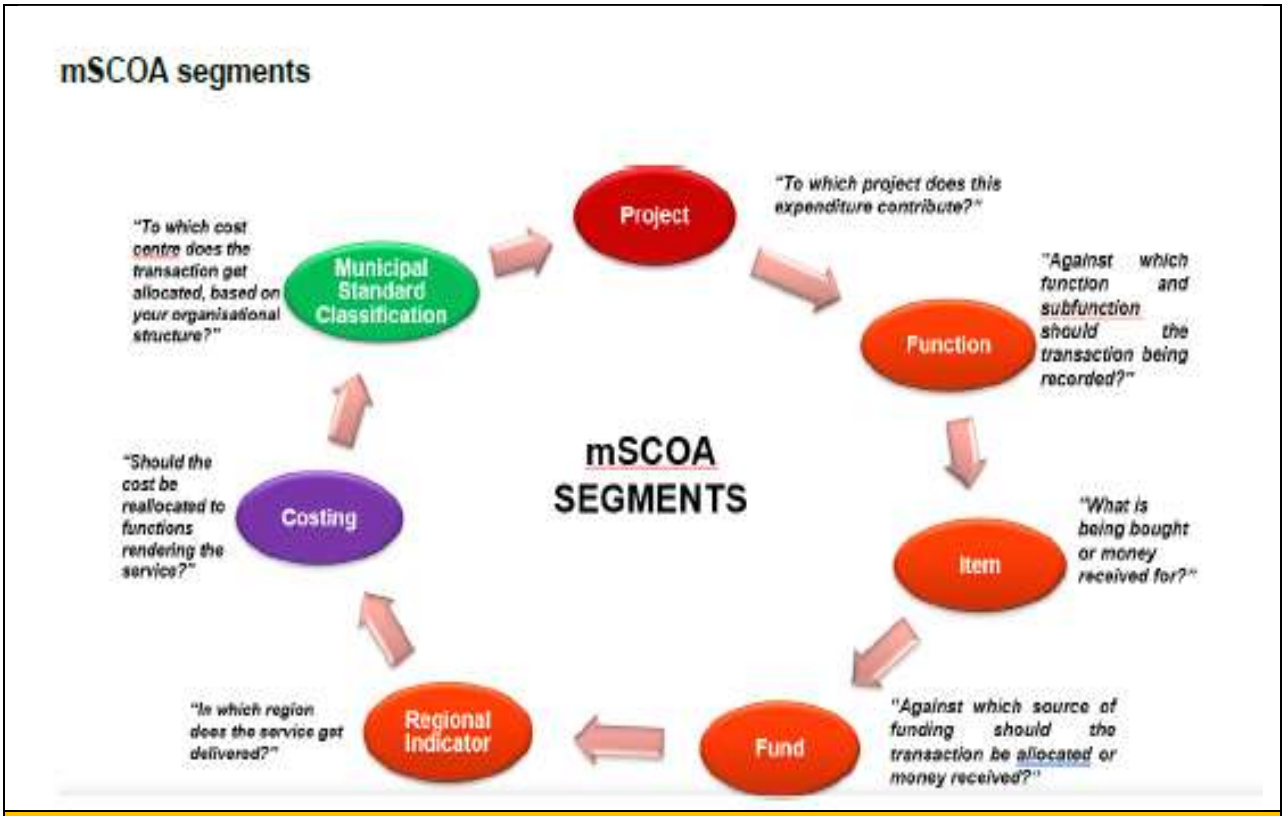
12.17.2 Implementation of mSCOA by City of Polokwane

The City of Polokwane is one of the best performing municipalities in the country in the compliance of MSCOA regulations. To date we have not lost any of our equitable shares due to non-compliances and our reporting is extracted directly from the system by National

DRAFT

Treasury due to the strict compliances to the MSCOA regulations. The municipality is the first in the province to utilize the MSCOA specimen to produce Annual Financial Statements. The city was awarded the Big Moss Award for “The Leading Mscoa Implementation Champion”

12.17.3 mSCOA Segments



mSCOA Segments

Source: PLK BTO

12.18 COST CONTAINMENT

The cost containment regulations came into effect on 1 July 2019. The regulations require the municipality to monitor certain categories of expenditure with the objective to contain costs. The municipality is also required to report on the budget and actual expenditure relating to the regulated costs on a regular basis as outlined below

Cost Containment Measure	Budget	Total Expenditure	Savings
Contracted Services	246 532 882	177 773 675	68 759 207
Advertising Publicity and Marketing	77 358 762	70 292 399	7 066 363
Overtime	41 270 884	36 678 065	4 592 819

Catering Services	3 464 450	2 659 034	805 416
Travel Agency and Visa's	13 314 585	7 541 881	5 772 704
Travel and Subsistence	6 936 896	2 400 243	4 536 653
Total	**388 878 459**	**297 345 297**	**91 533 162**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.18.1 UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR AND FRUITLESS EXPENDITURE SUMMARY

UIF SUMMARY

Description	Opening balance	Movement	Write offs by Council	Closing balance
Irregular	132 603 852	186 196 482	(318 800 334)	0
Unauthorised	14 569 309	504 822 972	(71 088 338)	448 303 943
Fruitless and wasteful	3 928 759	0	(3 928 759)	0
TOTAL	**399 757 769**	**406 106 205**	**(805 863 974)**	**0**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

UNAUTHORISED

UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR, FRUITLESS AND WASTEFUL EXPENDITURE DISALLOWED	2026	2025	2024	2023	2022	2021
Depreciation - non cash item	504 822 972	183 921 788	721 104 460	278 769 927	511 893 476	614 252 938
Bad Debts written off	-	-	88 102 425	59 491 224	4 219 800	-
Interest on Landfill site - non-cash)	-	-	0	-	6 500 022	-
Pholoso Private Hospital Cash	-	-	-	-	-	1 419 877.69
Impairment loss	-	19 343 763	45 352 723	31 148 802	-	-
Losses on disposal of assets	-	-	-	583 009 739	-	-

DRAFT

UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR, FRUITLESS AND WASTEFUL EXPENDITURE DISALLOWED	2026	2025	2024	2023	2022	2021
Inventory(consumed/issued/write down)	-	28 574 426	77 498 913	88 136 685		
Total		**219 909 723**	**932 058 521**	**1 040 556 577**	**539 098 503**	**615 672 816**

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

IRREGULAR EXPENDITURE PER FINANCIAL YEAR

Financial year	2021/22	2022/23	2023/24	2024/25	2025/26
Irregular expenditure	89 762 828	255 808 363	382 524 464	186 196 482	160 469 073

FRUITLESS AND WASTEFUL EXPENDITURE PER FINANCIAL YEAR

Financial year	2021/22	2022/23	2023/24	2024/25	2025/26
Fruitless expenditure	1 199 127	17 125 047	25 462 290	32 395 298	1 555 986

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.19 APAC) Outcomes

Committee	Purpose	Frequency	Attendees
Operation Clean Audit (OPCA)	To report progress on the audit action plan.	Weekly	Management, Internal Audit and MMC for Finance

Committee	Purpose	Frequency	Attendees
Asset management	To report progress on specific asset issues. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	GCFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
Annual Financial Statement	To report progress on the AFS process plan. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	GCFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
APAC)	To review the annual financial statements and audit action plan.	Quarterly and through special meetings.	Management, Internal Audit, Provincial Treasury and COGHSTA

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

DRAFT

THE END

DRAFT

DRAFT